







Class DA32

Book L88











Item 39

A

116845  
5715-D

HISTORY  
OF  
ENGLAND,  
POLITICAL, MILITARY, AND SOCIAL,  
FROM THE  
EARLIEST TIMES TO THE PRESENT.

BY  
BENSON J. LOSSING,  
AUTHOR OF "PICTORIAL FIELD-BOOK OF THE REVOLUTION AND WAR OF 1812,"  
"HISTORY OF THE GREAT CIVIL WAR," "HISTORY OF THE UNITED  
STATES," "LIFE OF WASHINGTON,"  
ETC., ETC., ETC.



NEW YORK:  
G. P. PUTNAM & SONS,  
ASSOCIATION BUILDING.  
1871.



Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1871,  
BY G. P. PUTNAM & SONS,  
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

DA32

.L88



## P R E F A C E .

---

IN the work of preparing this volume, I claim no larger share of merit than that which justly belongs to a careful compiler of facts from the best and most recent sources of information.

I have given, within as small a space as a clear presentation would allow, a narrative of the most important events in the history of the civil and military transactions of England, from the time of its occupation by the ancient Britons and Gauls until now; also, an account of the progress of the people in the organization of government, the establishment of laws, the practical assertion of popular liberty, the practice of useful occupations, which give strength and beauty to society and the State; the modes of dress, living, and recreations; and the cultivation of science, literature, and the fine arts; by all of which the reader may comprehend the growth and philosophy of that civilization and power which distinguish the British Empire to-day.

This volume is specially intended for the use of students of the History of England in families and schools. It is divided into eras, which mark important changes in the civil, political, and social condition of the country; and is subdivided into convenient chapters and sections, in a manner to combine the advantages of a text-book with those of an attractive story of the life of a great nation.

For the purpose of assisting the reader and the student in obtaining a clear understanding of the unity of events, remote and near, which make up the History of England, a running concordance is introduced in the form of marginal references, by which the relations of a fact noticed in any portion of the work to another fact already

Mar. 27-02. JMS.

mentioned is indicated, and the nature of that relation may be instantly observed. This will be found eminently useful, not only as forming a continuous chain of connection, but as a means for saving a great amount of time that might be spent in searching for such connection.

B. J. L.

THE RIDGE, DOVER PLAINS, N. Y.,  
*August, 1871.*



# CONTENTS.

---

## BOOK I.

### INTRODUCTION.

	PAGE
CHAPTER I. The British Islands and their Inhabitants.....	1

## BOOK II.

### THE ROMAN INVASION AND RULE. [From B.C. 55 to A.D. 410.]

I. Civil and Military Transactions.....	7
II. Geographical and Political Divisions.....	20
III. Society before the Saxon Invasion.....	24

## BOOK III.

### THE SAXON ERA. [From the 5th to the 11th Century.]

I. The Early Invaders from the North.....	27
II. The Rise and History of the Heptarchy. [From the 5th to the 9th Century.]	
III. Reign of Egbert [A.D. 800 to 837].....	40
IV. Reign of Ethelwulf [A.D. 837 to 858].....	43
V. Reign of Ethelbald and Ethelbert [A.D. 858 to 866]....	44
VI. Reign of Ethelred [A.D. 866 to 871].....	45
VII. Reign of Alfred [A. D. 871 to 901].....	46
VIII. Reign of Edward the Elder [A.D. 901 to 925].....	50
IX. Reign of Athelstan [A.D. 925 to 940].....	52
X. Reign of Edmund the First [A.D. 940 to 946].....	54
XI. Reign of Edred [A.D. 946 to 955].....	55
XII. Reign of Edwy [A.D. 955 to 958].....	57
XIII. Reign of Edgar [A.D. 958 to 975].....	58
XIV. Reign of Edward the Second [A.D. 975 to 979].....	60
XV. Reign of Ethelred the Second [A.D. 979 to 1016].....	62



	PAGE
CHAPTER XVI. Reign of Edmund Ironsides [A.D. 1016].....	67
XVII. Reign of Canute [A.D. 1016 to 1035].....	68
XVIII. Reign of Harold the First [A.D. 1035 to 1040].....	71
XIX. Reign of Harthacanute [A.D. 1040 to 1042].....	72
XX. Reign of Edward the Confessor [A.D. 1042 to 1066]...	73
XXI. Reign of Harold the Second [A.D. 1066].....	78
XXII. Society during the Saxon Era.....	85

## BOOK IV.

## THE NORMAN RULE. [From A.D. 1066 to 1154.]

I. Reign of William the First [A.D. 1066 to 1087].....	95
II. Reign of William the Second [A.D. 1087 to 1100].....	105
III. Reign of Henry the First [A.D. 1100 to 1135].....	116
IV. Reign of Stephen [A.D. 1135 to 1154].....	125

## BOOK V.

## THE PLANTAGENETS. [From A.D. 1154 to 1485.]

I. Reign of Henry the Second [A.D. 1154 to 1189].....	130
II. Reign of Richard the First [A.D. 1189 to 1199].....	144
III. Reign of John [A.D. 1199 to 1216].....	154
IV. Society during the Norman and Early Plantagenet Period.....	162
V. Reign of Henry the Third [A.D. 1216 to 1272].....	171
VI. Reign of Edward the First [A.D. 1272 to 1307].....	182
VII. Reign of Edward the Second [A.D. 1307 to 1327].....	196
VIII. Reign of Edward the Third [A.D. 1327 to 1377].....	205
IX. Reign of Richard the Second [A.D. 1377 to 1399].....	217
X. Society from the year 1201 to the year 1400.....	228
XI. Reign of Henry the Fourth [A.D. 1399 to 1413].....	237
XII. Reign of Henry the Fifth [A.D. 1413 to 1422].....	245
XIII. Reign of Henry the Sixth [A.D. 1422 to 1461].....	253
XIV. Reign of Edward the Fourth [A.D. 1464 to 1483].....	264
XV. Reign of Edward the Fifth [A.D. 1483].....	274
XVI. Reign of Richard the Third [A.D. 1483 to 1485].....	277
XVII. The Plantagenets. Scotland [A.D. 1154 to 1485].....	283
XVIII. Society during the rule of the later Plantagenets.....	288

## BOOK VI.

## THE TUDORS. [From 1485 to 1603.]

I. Reign of Henry the Seventh [A.D. 1485 to 1509].....	295
II. Reign of Henry the Eighth [A.D. 1509 to 1547].....	308
III. Reign of Edward the Sixth [A.D. 1547 to 1553].....	320
IV. Reign of Mary [A.D. 1553 to 1558].....	338



	PAGE
CHAPTER V. Reign of Elizabeth [A.D. 1558 to 1603] .....	352
VI. Society in the time of the Tudors.....	377

## BOOK VII.

## THE STUARTS. [From 1603 to 1649.]

I. Reign of James the First [A.D. 1603 to 1625] .....	388
II. Reign of Charles the First [A.D. 1625 to 1649].....	400

## BOOK VIII.

## THE COMMONWEALTH. [From 1649 to 1660.]

I. The Republic [A.D. 1649 to 1653].....	428
II. The Protectorate [A.D. 1653 to 1660].....	437
III. Society during the first half of the Seventeenth Century.....	444

## BOOK IX.

## THE RESTORED STUARTS. [From 1660 to 1714.]

I. Reign of Charles the Second [A.D. 1660 to 1685].....	456
II. Reign of James the Second [A.D. 1685 to 1689].....	469
III. Reign of William and Mary [A.D. 1689 to 1694].....	480
IV. Reign of William the Third [A.D. 1694 to 1702].....	487
V. Reign of Anne [A.D. 1702 to 1714].....	490
VI. Society during the later rule of the Stuarts.....	498

## BOOK X.

## THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK. [From A.D. 1714 to the present time.]

I. Reign of George the First [A.D. 1714 to 1727].....	510
II. Reign of George the Second [A.D. 1727 to 1760].....	516
III. Reign of George the Third [A.D. 1760 to 1820].....	533
IV. Reign of George the Fourth [A.D. 1820 to 1830].....	560
V. Society during the reigns of the Four Georges.....	565
VI. Reign of William the Fourth [A.D. 1830 to 1837].....	582
VII. Reign of Victoria [A.D. 1837].....	590
VIII. The Present Condition of Great Britain.....	611
IX. Natural Features and Remarkable Events .....	618

## APPENDIX.

I. Royal Families and Principal Cotemporary European Sovereigns..	629
II. Chronology of Events in the History of England.....	634







# **BRITAIN** **UNDER THE ROMANS** Illustrating Lossings **SCHOOL HISTORY** of **ENGLAND**

Scale. Eng. Stat Miles  
 0 25 50











# HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

---

## BOOK I.

---

### INTRODUCTION.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### THE BRITISH ISLANDS AND THE INHABITANTS.

§ 1. THE mists of fable puzzle inquirers after the original population of the British Islands. History and tradition tell us that they were inhabited a thousand years before the Christian era, or almost thirty centuries ago.

§ 2. Scholars now generally agree in opinion that the earlier settlers of the islands were Celts, a part of the great Indo-European family who migrated from Central Asia in pre-historic times, and whose language was close akin to the Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and German.

§ 3. The British Islands are two in number, and are called respectively GREAT BRITAIN and IRELAND. They lie in the North Atlantic Ocean, between the 49th and the 61st degrees of north latitude, and the 2d of east and the 11th of west longitude from Greenwich, England. On the west is the open ocean between them and North America; on the east is the German Ocean or North Sea; and to the south and south-east lies France, which in some places is but twenty miles distant. It is believed that the two countries were once connected.

## Geographical Divisions.

## Great Britain and Ireland.

§ 4. GREAT BRITAIN, the larger of the two islands, contains in its southern part, *England*; in its western, *Wales*; and in its northern, *Scotland*. The English Channel on the south, and the German Ocean on the east, divide it from France and Germany; and the Irish Sea, of which a narrow part is called St. George's Channel, separates it on the west from the smaller island, Ireland.

§ 5. *England and Wales* form together a tract of country of triangular shape, which is separated from Scotland on the north by the rivers Tweed and Solway, and the Cheviot hills, and on the south, east, and west sides it is washed by the sea. Its extent, from Berwick on the Tweed in the north, to the North Foreland in Kent on the south, is 355 miles; from Spurn Point in Yorkshire on the east, to Holyhead in Wales on the west, is 210 miles; and from the North Foreland in the east, to the Land's End in Cornwall on the west, is 320 miles. It contains 58,320 square miles.

§ 6. *Scotland*, like England and Wales, is washed on three sides by the sea. On the fourth or southern side it joins England. Its extent, from Cape Wrath in Sutherland in the north, to the Mull of Galloway opposite Ireland in the south, is 280 miles; from east to west, between Aberdeen-shire and Ross-shire, its width is 150 miles, but in Sutherland, which reaches from coast to coast, it is only 40. It contains 31,324 square miles.

§ 7. IRELAND lies to the westward of Great Britain, from which in one place it is but 15 miles distant; in other parts the two countries are from 60 to 120 miles apart. Its extent, from Fair Head in the north-east, to Mizen Head in the south-west, is 300 miles; from Carnsore Point in the east, to Smerwick Head in the west, is 170 miles; whilst from Dublin in the east, to Galway in the west, the distance is only 120 miles. The island contains 32,513 square miles.

§ 8. These countries are now all divided into districts called counties, or shires, of which England has 40, Wales 12, Scotland 33, and Ireland 32. But formerly they were arranged in a very different way; there were Roman provinces, British, Saxon, and Irish kingdoms, and British-Norseman principalities.

§ 9. In the waters around the British Islands are several smaller ones, single or in groups, which were known to the Romans and Saxons. The chief of these are, *Sheppey*, at the mouth of the Thames; the *Isle of Wight*, off Hampshire; the *Scilly Isles*, off Cornwall; *Anglesey*, off the coast of Wales; *Man*, in the Irish

## British Islands.

## Great Britain visited by Foreign Navigators.

Sea; and the *Hebrides* and *Orkneys*, off the west and north coast of Scotland. These are their modern names, and differ but little from the Saxon ones. But the Romans called Sheppey, *Toliatis*; Wight, *Veetis*; Scilly, *Cassiterides*; Anglesey and Man, both *Mona*; and the Hebrides and Orkneys, *Ebudes* and *Orcades*.

§ 10. The British Islands, as we have observed, were known at a very early period. History tells us that at least five hundred years before Christ, Phœnician navigators, in the service of the merchants of the old Syrian seaports of Tyre and Sidon, visited what is now the coast of Cornwall, in the south-west part of England, and the adjacent Scilly Islands. There they procured tin for the manufacture of bronze, a metal used by the ancients for many purposes for which we employ iron and steel.

§ 11. The Britons, as the older inhabitants were called, dug the tin from mines, or washed it from the sands of streams, and cast it into ingots for the traders. These traders called the region the tin-land, or tin-islands; and it is supposed that the name of Britannia, by which the Greeks and Romans knew the country, is derived from the compound Celtic word, *Bruit-tan*—*bruit*, tin, and *tan*, land, as in the same language *Hindos-tan* is Hindoo-land.

§ 12. Ireland appears to have been known to the same navigators and others from the ancient Greek colony on the site of Marseilles, in France; and there are in history glimpses of an older and higher civilization there than in the island of Great Britain.

§ 13. The Syrian merchants, and those of Carthage who were their successors in making distant trading voyages, tried to conceal from others all knowledge of the mineral wealth of Britannia. They failed; and in time, not only traders but settlers came from the neighboring coasts of Gaul (now France), and the Netherlands, to possess themselves of other riches in various parts of Great Britain, such as fertile soil, abundance of cattle, spacious and sheltered harbors, and pearls in the rivers.

§ 14. Upon the coasts and along the banks of rivers these later Celtic emigrants soon established themselves, either with or without the consent of the earlier inhabitants. In time they became so numerous and powerful that they pushed the ancient Britons back into the interior, when the social degeneration which they had experienced since their emigration from Asia, went on with accelerated pace, in isolation, until they ceased to be agriculturists and workers in metals.



## Condition of the Britons.

## Gaulish Settlers.

§ 15. They became, in time, almost as barbarous as were the Indians of our coasts when Europeans found them; and nothing distinguished them from the wild hunter state of our aborigines but the fact that they were shepherds and herdsmen, and possessed accumulated wealth in cattle, sheep, and horses. Their clothing was made of the skins of beasts. They painted their half-naked bodies so as to be frightful to enemies. They shaved their beards, but let their mustaches and hair grow in wild profusion. Their weapons were hatchets of stone, and bows, and arrows with flint-heads. Caves were their dwellings in winter, and temporary wigwams of wicker-work sheltered them in summer.

§ 16. As herdsmen they were compelled to wander in search of game for food, and forage for their animals. To protect their wealth they made enclosures of felled trees, forming a sort of *abatis*, with a ditch outside; for, divided into hostile tribes, they were continually at war with each other. These strong enclosures were their fortified towns. They were usually built in a forest on the borders of a stream, and were large enough to shelter a whole tribe, with the horses and cattle. They had many of these. The city of London, the town of St. Alban's, and many other modern cities and villages, occupy the sites of these capitals of the ancient semi-barbarian princes of Great Britain.

§ 17. Very different was the condition of the Gaulish settlers and traders. They had orderly governments of kings, and nobles, and priests, as in Gaul; they dwelt in circular houses, resembling those of their mother country; were well clothed, often in garments of black cloth, which reached to their feet; wore long beards, and walked gravely with staves in their hands. They had a gold coinage, many specimens of which yet remain; and they wore rings of gold and other ornaments. They also made pottery, which they sometimes ornamented in style like that made by other semi-barbarous people. They made light boats of skins for fishing on the rivers, such as the Welsh, the descendants of these ancient inhabitants, yet use, and call coracles. They assiduously cultivated the soil, and also traded with the opposite shores of France and perhaps Spain; and they were renowned for their fondness for, and courtesy to, strangers.

§ 18. But what for a long time chiefly distinguished them from the native Britons was, that they were skilful in the art of war. They had weapons of iron and bronze, and war chariots, and

Religion of the Britons.

Druidism.

fleets of ships ; and they were in the habit of taking part in the wars of Gaul. Indeed Divitiacus, a king of the north and east of Gaul, who lived about sixty years before the birth of Christ, is said to have reckoned Great Britain as part of his dominions.

§. 19. The religion of the ancient Britons was the same as that of the Gaulish or Gallic intruders. It was Druidism, the prevalent theology of the Celtic race in Europe, and supposed to be identical, in corrupted form, with that of the ancient Persians, which Zoroaster reformed, and whose devotees are known as fire-worshippers. They acknowledged one God, omnipotent, invisible, and without form ; the creator, preserver, and ruler of the universe, and the final judge. Among the Druids a sort of pantheism had been ingrafted upon that pure Deism of the Persians, and there was a tendency to the worship of the symbol rather than the thing symbolized, as the sun and the powers of nature. They professed to reform morals, to secure peace, and to encourage goodness. They assumed to be conversant with the secrets of nature concerning the origin of worlds ; the movements of the stars ; the nature of planets ; and the essence, power, and mode of action of the Supreme Deity, and of the inferior gods such as Egyptians and Greeks worshipped. Yet, like the most benighted pagans, they indulged in human sacrifices on great religious festivals or state occasions. Captives taken in war, criminals, and even children, were, by direction of the Druid priests, cast into huge human figures of wicker-work, in the making of which the ancient Britons were expert, and burnt to death on such public occasions.

§ 20. The Druid priests, who dressed in a peculiar and costly manner, and were maintained at the public expense, were the acknowledged and revered teachers of the people. Their dwellings and their colleges were in forests of oak trees, which, with the mistletoe that grew upon them, were held to be sacred. They also exercised highest judicial functions, and from their decision there was no appeal. As priests, judges, teachers, philosophers, and soothsayers—holding all knowledge and all power—they attained to almost absolute rule over the ignorant multitude. That rule was beneficent, for they taught the principles of a higher civilization than prevailed among the degenerate people, and prepared the soil for the planting of Christianity in Great Britain in after years.

## Government of the Britons.

## Pursuits of the People.

§ 21. The government of the early Britons, especially after their admixture with the Gauls on the coast, appears to have been monarchical in form. The executive power, under the Druid priests, was lodged in the chief of a tribe. Among the more northerly tribes, inhabiting Caledonia (Scotland) and adjacent islands, the king possessed no property, but had the free use of that of all his subjects. This regulation was to prevent his doing acts of injustice for the sake of possessions. He was not allowed to have a wife of his own, but the wives of all his subjects were at his disposal. So, not knowing his own children, he could not be tempted to encroach upon the rights of his subjects in the aggrandizement of his own family. Such was the plan of Plato, in his "Republic," for guarding against the same evils.

§ 22. Agriculture and the arts were almost wholly unknown. The inhabitants lived upon the milk and flesh of their flocks and herds, and the winnings of the chase. They did not sow the land nor eat of the abundance of fishes in the waters; neither of the flesh of the hare, the goose, or the domestic fowl, which they raised for amusement. Even the Gaulic inhabitants of the coast, when the Roman legions came, were ignorant of the use of the flail and fan in the proper preparation of their grain for the flouring-mortar. But, in time, the intercourse between the dwellers by the sea and those inland caused a modification of barbarism all over the island. The more ancient inhabitants began to cultivate the soil; to make coarse cloth from wool; and they became expert in the manufacture of war-chariots, and in their use with swift horses, as in the days of the Hebrew kings.

§ 23. Such were the inhabitants of Great Britain when the Romans landed on its shores, in the pleasant summer-time, fifty-five years before the birth of Christ. They found the island thickly populated.



## BOOK II.

### THE ROMAN INVASION AND RULE.

[FROM B.C. 55 to A.D. 410.]

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### CIVIL AND MILITARY TRANSACTIONS.

§ 1. AT midnight, between the 24th and 25th of August, in the year 55 before Christ, Julius Caius Cæsar set sail for Great Britain from Portus Itius or Witsand, near Gessoriacum (now Boulogne), on the coast of Gaul, with two Roman legions, or about ten thousand men, all veterans, borne in eighty ships. These were accompanied by several long war-galleys that carried catapulta, or simple engines which, by the force of springs, hurled huge darts and heavy stones. Cavalry were ordered to follow in other vessels, but were detained by adverse winds.

§ 2. Cæsar was then about forty-five years of age, and bore the honors of conqueror and governor of Gaul. His father was of prætorian rank; his mother was of the eminent Cotta family, and he was related to several powerful men of rank and station. He was tall, slim, physically weak, and subject to epileptic fits; but his mind was a marvel of power, by which he made himself "the foremost man of all this world."

§ 3. He married at the age of seventeen years; and at the same time, or soon afterward, he entered warmly into politics as a member of the democratic party. His life, from that time, was marked by many vicissitudes. He was bold and ambitious, and was always more intent upon securing his own aggrandizement than in serving his country. He held highest offices of trust and emolument; and finally, when in debt to the amount of several million dollars, he was appointed governor of Cisalpine Gaul. In the course of

Invasion of Britain by Romans.

Preparations for it by both Parties.

eight years, after a series of the most sanguinary struggles, he reduced the whole of Gaul to a Roman province.

§ 4. As the Gauls had received aid from Great Britain, Cæsar made that fact a pretext for invading the island, whose shores, on a clear day, he had dimly seen. His real motive for the enterprise was the gathering of pearls and other riches said to abound there, and to gain personal renown by the conquest of a mysterious country among the waves.

§ 5. Traders told the Britons that the conqueror of Gaul was about to visit them in wrath. They sent ambassadors over the Channel to promise him their obedience to his will. This was to delay his coming until the islanders might gather in sufficient numbers to oppose his landing. He sent back with the ambassadors, Commius, a Gaul, whom he had lately made king of a territory, and who was well and favorably known to the Britons. He was instructed to visit as many of the tribes as possible, inspire them with good feelings, and announce his speedy coming. The Britons imprisoned Commius, defied Cæsar, and prepared for a vigorous defence.

§ 6. Meanwhile Cæsar had sent Caius Volusenus in a galley to explore the coast and collect facts concerning the harbors; but the bold aspect of the Britons, many of whom were made hideous by staining their half-naked bodies blue with woad, so daunted the voyager that he returned in the course of five days. Then Cæsar sailed from the coast of Gaul.

§ 7 The Roman fleet entered Dover Bay at ten o'clock [Aug. 25, B.C. 55]; but it was judged too dangerous to attempt a landing, because the cliffs were swarming with armed men. Therefore the invaders moved on until they had passed the South Foreland, and reached an open sandy shore, now known as Deal Beach. There the contest with the Britons commenced.

§ 8. When the Romans attempted to land, they found they were engaged in a most desperate service. The Britons had followed them along the shore, and as their army was composed mostly of horsemen and charioteers, they had for a long time the advantage. The Romans, encumbered with armor, were obliged to quit their ships at some distance from the shore, and wade through the shallow water; and while thus struggling, the Britons rushed into the sea and drove them headlong into pools and holes, where many of them perished. The men soon became disheartened, and hesitated



Landing of the Romans.

Conflicts.

Romans in peril.

to leave their vessels, when Cæsar ordered the ships of war to discharge their darts and stones. The Britons were obliged to give way before this kind of attack, which was to them both new and terrible.

§ 9. Still the legionaries did not move until the standard-bearer of the Tenth Legion, invoking the gods with a loud voice, threw himself into the sea. They then felt obliged to follow him, lest their standard, a silver eagle, should be taken, and which would have been an indelible disgrace. They landed in great confusion, and as the Britons returned fiercely to the charge, they were in imminent danger of perishing. Cæsar again employed his war-ships. He also sent all his boats, filled with soldiers, to aid them; and at last, after a very hard struggle, the Romans gained the firm land, and threw up an intrenchment for their protection on the height of Walmer. They did not venture to pursue the Britons, for the night was close at hand, and they had no horsemen.

§ 10. The Romans remained in their camp for three days, anxiously expecting the ships from Gaul, with the cavalry and most of their provisions and baggage. The Britons, however, who knew from their friends in Gaul the great power of their invaders, sent ambassadors to Cæsar on the fourth day to treat of peace. With them came Commius, whom they had imprisoned, and they begged that the act might be excused on account of their ignorance. Cæsar pardoned them, and promised them peace on condition of their sending hostages, and agreeing to submit to his commands.

§ 11. Scarcely was this peace concluded, when the expected ships from Gaul came in sight; but before their men and stores could be landed a storm arose, and they were driven away, some to the coast of Cornwall, where they were in danger of being wrecked, and others to the port they had sailed from. The same storm also destroyed many of the ships that Cæsar had with him, and the invaders were filled with consternation. Their desperate condition induced the Britons to break the peace they had concluded; for they thought that if they could succeed in destroying the whole body of Romans, whether by sword or by famine, they would not again be invaded.

§ 12. Accordingly they collected their forces, and falling on the Seventh Legion, which, unarmed, had moved a short distance

A severe Battle.

Mode of Fighting.

Withdrawal of the Romans.

from the camp to gather in the standing corn, they surrounded it with chariots and horses, and nearly succeeded in cutting it off. Cæsar was obliged to go himself to its assistance; and he could scarcely secure its retreat to the camp, as his men were dismayed at the Britons' mode of fighting.

§ 13. The Britons had many horsemen; but their chief strength was in their charioteers, who displayed at once the speed of horse and the firmness of foot. The chariots were drawn by small but very swift horses; and these were so well trained that they could be turned or stopped when at full speed, even on the hillsides; and the warriors, who carried swords, spears, and darts, were most active and courageous. As they came on they threw their darts; and when, by driving furiously about, they had broken their enemies' ranks, they leapt on the ground and fought hand to hand. Their chariots, with drivers, kept near them, as a retreat if they were too hardly pressed; and the charioteers showed wonderful skill in running along the pole, or standing on the yoke, and still continuing the combat.

§ 14. Rather encouraged than daunted by this battle in the open field, the Britons soon after attempted to storm the Roman camp; but this was beyond their power. The legions were masters of the art of fortification, so they remained secure behind their intrenchments until the assailants were disheartened, and then Cæsar drew out his forces, and after a fierce battle defeated them.

§ 15. Soon after this, the Britons renewed their offers of peace, which Cæsar gladly accepted; and having repaired his damaged ships with the timber and iron from some of the wrecks, he crowded his men into them, and sailed for Gaul a little after midnight, about the 20th of September, having been in the island but about three weeks, and never having ventured out of sight of the shore. Yet he sent to Rome an account of his having subdued the Britons; and a twenty days' thanksgiving was decreed on account of his imaginary victory.

§ 16. In the next year [54 B.C.] Cæsar renewed his attempt on Britain. His aid had been solicited by Mandubratius, the exiled son of a British king who had been conquered and killed by Cassivellaunus, a chief whose territories lay on the north of the river Thames. Having experienced the courage of the Britons, Cæsar made much greater preparations than before, and commenced his campaign earlier.



## Second Invasion by Romans.

## Inland Operations.

§ 17. After having been detained for twenty-three days by unfavorable weather, he left Gaul in May with a fleet of above 800 ships, and a force of 25,000 foot and 2,000 horse. He sailed from Boulogne, and landed on Deal Beach, as before.<sup>a</sup>

The sight of this great force dismayed the Britons. <sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 8. They did not venture to oppose his landing, and disappeared; so leaving a guard of 5,000 foot and 300 horse with the ships, Cæsar marched soon after midnight in search of them.

§ 18. About twelve miles inland, on the banks of the river Stour, near Canterbury, the Romans were attacked by the horsemen and charioteers of the Britons, who, when repulsed, threw themselves into a strong fortification of felled trees in the woods, but were at length driven out by the Seventh Legion, which had had some experience of their mode of fighting in the former campaign.<sup>b</sup> Cæsar halted there for <sup>b</sup> § 8, p. 8. the night, but when on the following day he was despatching horse and foot in pursuit, he learned that a great storm had arisen, and had destroyed nearly all his shipping. This obliged him to hasten back to the shore, where he passed ten days and ten nights in repairing the damage as well as he could; and drawing up such ships as had escaped the storm, he joined them to the camp by a fortification, some traces of which still remain among the sand-hills between Deal and Sandwich.

§ 19. Cæsar again marched toward the Stour. He found the banks occupied by a large army of confederated Britons, who were under the command of Cassivellaunus. This prince was a renowned warrior, who had conquered many of his fellow-kings and added their states to his own, and he was now the leader of the whole force of the country. But many of his subjects and allies were secretly hostile to him, and were ready to abandon him if he was unsuccessful. Mandubratius<sup>c</sup> was employed to tamper <sup>c</sup> § 16, p. 10. with them, and he applied himself to a tribe called the Trinobantes, who inhabited the present Essex and Middlesex, and who had been his father's subjects, and he soon gained them and others over to the Roman cause.

§ 20. The force with Cæsar was too great to be opposed in a pitched battle, so the Britons were obliged to retire before them, disputing their passage, however, wherever the ground was favorable to their horsemen and charioteers, cutting off the stragglers and foragers, and killing Liberius, an officer

The Romans successful.

The Britons subdued.

The Romans retire.

of rank, whose reputed grave is still to be seen near Chilham, in Kent.

§ 21. The Romans marched on day by day, and on arriving at the river Thames, they forded it near Walton, though the water rose up to their shoulders. They made the passage without much opposition; for the Britons, who had assembled to dispute it, were dismayed, it is said, at the sight of an elephant with a tower filled with armed men—an object they had never before seen. Their horses could not be brought to face the monster, and, for the first time, their riders fled without a blow.

§ 22. This decided the war. The tribes in the neighborhood of the Roman army now abandoned the confederacy, and made terms for themselves. Cassivellaunus, forsaken by all but 4,000 charioteers, could only harass the invaders as they marched to his capital, which stood among woods and marshes, where now is St. Alban's. This was stormed and taken; and though Cassivellaunus tried to protract the war by inducing four of the chiefs in Kent to attack the Roman camp, this did not avail him. The Britons were beaten off, and a great leader named Cingetorix was made prisoner.

§ 23. Cassivellaunus was at length obliged to send Commius to treat for peace. Cæsar demanded a great number of hostages; and having obtained them, he imposed a yearly tribute on the Britons. Then, with a strict charge that no injury should be done to the tribes that had joined him, he marched back to the seashore.

§ 24. Here he found his ships repaired, and fresh ones sent to him from Gaul; but his army and his prisoners were too numerous to be all carried over at once. Some were sent off first, and the remainder waited in their encampment for more ships. But these, though despatched from Gaul, were driven back by autumn storms; and at last Cæsar, fearing the tempests of the coast, crowded his men into such vessels as he had, and taking advantage of a calm night in September [54 B.C.], put to sea, and reached Gaul by break of day.

§ 25. Cæsar did not conquer Britain. He was more a discoverer than a victor. He saw but a small portion of the island and the people, and could only maintain himself on the coast. He terrified the tribes and carried away many prisoners, but he did not erect a fort or leave a cohort or legion to hold the territory which he temporarily seized.



Long Peace in Britain.

British Kings.

Cymbeline.

§ 26. From the time of Cæsar's invasion, for nearly a century, Britain was not further molested by the Romans. The people had shown that they could not be readily subdued, and in the third year after Cæsar's last visit they were not afraid to give a refuge to Commius, his former ally, who fled from Gaul in consequence of a base attempt to assassinate him at a conference. The tribute that had been promised to Cæsar<sup>a</sup> was not paid, and though his successor Augustus made preparations for invasion, he was easily pacified by some trifling submissions. The Britons indeed were quite independent, though they seem to have been friendly to the Romans, for in the days of Tiberius [A.D. 16] they succored and sent back some of their soldiers who had been shipwrecked on their coast.

<sup>a</sup> § 23, p. 12.

§ 27. Of the kings who reigned in Britain during this period the most conspicuous in history was Cunobeline or Cymbeline, the son-in-law of Mandubratius,<sup>b</sup> and with whom Shakespeare has made us familiar. He ruled the eastern part of the country, as Essex and Suffolk, and many of his gold coins have been preserved. He was the first of the British monarchs who had his own image stamped upon his coins, in imitation of the Roman Emperors. They have inscriptions in Latin, and bear usually the figure of a horse or horseman, and an ear of wheat; hence they are taken as evidences of the warlike power and the civilization of the Britons at that period. Cymbeline was one of the hostages taken to Rome, who, in time, was called back to Britain to take the seat of his royal father. Cymbeline's wife, Cartismandua, was the first of the British queens after the Roman conquest that made a conspicuous figure in history. It was in the time of Cymbeline that the Romans renewed their attacks, and commenced the real occupation of Britain.

<sup>b</sup> § 16, p. 10.

§ 28. It was at about the time of the death of Cymbeline that the Romans were again moved to attempt the subjugation of the Britons. Rome was then the refuge for all the disaffected princes of that island. Among them was Adminius, the eldest son of Cymbeline, who, having offended his father, had been expelled from Britain. He induced the Emperor Caligula, an epileptic, a madman, and idiotic monster, to undertake an expedition against his country. With a large force the Emperor crossed Gaul to the sea [A.D. 40]. He went a little way from shore, looked toward Britain, caused his soldiers to gather shells into their helmets from



Caligula's folly.

Third Invasion by Romans.

Vigorous defence.

the beach on the coast of Gaul, and then proclaiming that he had conquered the ocean, returned to Rome.

§ 29. Caligula was murdered a few months afterward, and was succeeded by Claudius, a recluse fifty years of age. That Emperor was induced by Bericus, a fugitive from Britain, to undertake the conquest of the island. For that purpose he sent an army, horse and foot, of nearly 50,000 men, under the command of Aulus Plautius, assisted by Vespasian, who afterward took Jerusalem and became Emperor of Rome.

§ 30. This large force landed [A.D. 43] on the shores of Britain without much opposition. The confederated tribes were led by Caractacus and Togodumnus, sons of Cymbeline, but were thoroughly defeated in the inland country, where these princes were slain. The Britons were weakened by the disaffection of some tribes, and the Romans pushed their victories beyond the Severn. At length Plautius withdrew to the south bank of the Thames, where he awaited the arrival of the Emperor, whose presence, and re-enforcements, he had earnestly solicited. Claudius remained in the island but sixteen days, yet in that time Camaludunum,

<sup>a</sup> § 19, p. 11. the capital of Cymbeline, late king of the Trinobantes,<sup>a</sup>

was taken. The Emperor, on his return to Rome, celebrated a triumph, and took the surname of Britannicus, as if he had subdued the whole country.

§ 31. The war, however, was only begun. The Britons defended themselves vigorously, and though the Romans secured every conquest that they made by building forts, and placing veteran soldiers with many privileges in towns which they founded, it was not until the seventh year of the contest that Caradoc or Caractacus, a Silurian or Welsh chief, the great leader of the Britons, was defeated. He was the son-in-law of Cymbeline and brother of Boadicea, queen of the Iceni. His mother-in-law, the

<sup>b</sup> § 27, p. 13. now aged Cartismandua,<sup>b</sup> had become by marriage  
<sup>c</sup> § 17, p. 23. with Cadellan, queen of the Brigantes,<sup>c</sup> who were allies  
of the Romans. When Caractacus was defeated and

wounded, he sought refuge with his mother-in-law. She delivered him to his enemies for a price, and he was sent in chains to Rome, with his wife and children. After being detained there for some time, he was, by an act of generosity then very unusual, set at liberty, and he returned to his native land.

§ 32. The Silures (Welsh) continued the contest after they had

Combats and Insurrections.

Oppressors of the People.

Queen Boadicea.

lost their leader, defeated Valens and a legion, and so harassed Ostorius Scapula, the governor, that he died of grief. Fresh generals were sent, but they accomplished very little. Venusius, a northern chief, who had become the third husband of Queen Cartimandua, maintained the contest, and at last Suetonius Paulinus, with Agricola for his lieutenant, was appointed to the command. He overran a great part of the country, and captured the Isle of Anglesey (then called Mona),<sup>a</sup> where the Druids<sup>b</sup> had their chief seat; but while he was absent on this expedition a general rising took place, which threatened to root out the Roman power altogether.

<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 2.<sup>b</sup> § 19, p. 5.

§ 33. This was caused by Catus Decianus, who, as procurator, or treasurer, had the chief government in civil affairs, and in league with Seneca, a money-lender, practised the most cruel oppression on the subjugated Britons. One of their kings named Prasutagus, who ruled in Norfolk, in the hope of securing good treatment to his family, bequeathed one-half of his dominions to the Romans, but Decianus at once seized on the whole [A.D. 61], and when his widow, Boadicea, sister of Caractacus, remonstrated, she was scourged like a slave, and her daughters were infamously used.

§ 34. Being a woman of sense and spirit, the queen (who could trace her descent from the monarchs of Egypt) roused her countrymen, and was soon at the head of a vast, though disorderly army. She is described as one of the tallest of women, with a fierce countenance and a harsh voice. She had yellow hair, which hung below her waist. She wore a collar of gold, and a party-colored flowing vest, and over this a thick mantle secured by a clasp. Standing in her war-chariot, she brandished a spear, and pointing to her dishonored daughters, who crouched in grief and shame on the ground, she exhorted her troops to "play the man," and avenge them.

§ 35. The call was terribly answered. One Roman town after another was captured, and all within, whether foreigner or native, mercilessly slaughtered. London, which had already become a place of abundant commerce, was thus destroyed, Petilius Cerialis and a legion were routed, and Catus Decianus, the chief cause of the war, with difficulty escaped to Gaul.

§ 36. On hearing the news of this outbreak, Suetonius marched with haste toward the ruins of London with 10,000 veterans, and defeated Boadicea with terrible slaughter. It is said that 80,000



The Britons under Boadicea slaughtered. Agricola's Campaigns and Conquests.

Britons perished on that occasion. The queen died soon afterward, and though her countrymen held together until they had honored her with a magnificent funeral, they were obliged at last to submit to Suetonius, who behaved so rigorously that he was recalled, lest his cruelty should provoke another revolt.

§ 37. For eight years the natives bore the yoke in sullen submission; but when in the year 69 quarrels broke out among the Romans themselves, as to the choice of an emperor, Venu-  
§ 32, p. 15. sius<sup>a</sup> again took up arms. Trebellius Maximus, the general, fled from him, and Petilius Cerialis was appointed in his place. Agricola, who had served under Suetonius, now took the command in the field, and he had such success that he and the legion especially under his orders (the Fourteenth) received the appellation of "Conquerors of Britain."

§ 38. Thus the time passed on until the year 78, when Agricola received the sole command, and he then began a series of seven campaigns, which ended in firmly establishing the Roman power. As he was a wise and humane man, he reconciled the people to their bondage, and induced their chiefs to adopt much of the manners and customs of their masters, to study their language, and to imitate their buildings.

§ 39. In the first campaign [A.D. 78] Agricola conquered Mona (Anglesey), which had become independent again when Suetonius withdrew. In the second [A.D. 79] and third [A.D. 80] he overran the whole country as far as the Frith of Tay, and exacted as hostages the sons of the chiefs, whom he caused to be educated in the Roman manner. In the fourth, fifth, and sixth [A.D. 81, 82, 83] he steadily advanced through Scotland, and built a chain of forts between the Clyde and the Forth. He also sought and obtained a knowledge of Ireland, with a view to attempting its conquest and subjugating the people.

§ 40. In his last campaign [A.D. 84] Agricola overthrew Galgacus, the last champion of the North Britons. Then taking to his ships, he sailed as far as the Orkneys, and discovered, what was not before known, that Britain was an island. His great services, however, had provoked the jealousy of the Emperor Domitian, and he was recalled in the same year.

§ 41. Though the Roman rule endured in Britain for no less than 326 years after the recall of Agricola, very few of the important incidents that must have occurred are recorded. The



The Roman Policy and Government in Britain.

Insurrections and Invasions.

country was governed at first by an officer styled a Legate, and afterwards by a Vicar, under whom were Presidents for each of the provinces, and a Procurator, who attended to the finances. But the chief support of the Roman power was in their settlements of veteran soldiers, who received lands and privileges, instead of the pensions of modern times. They dwelt together in fortified towns called colonies, and in an army usually of three legions, to which was attached about an equal number of auxiliaries from Gaul or Germany, making together full 30,000 foot and 6,000 horse. Rebellions were guarded against, as far as possible, by at least as large a body of the native youth being sent to serve in other countries along with the legions—a policy that the Romans always pursued. The troops were stationed in strong forts and camps at very moderate distances from each other, of which about 150 are known; and they also garrisoned two formidable ramparts, known as the Wall of Agricola and the Wall of Hadrian, which stretched across the island, and separated the subdued from the unsubdued Britons.

§ 42. Many of the British chiefs were allowed to retain the title of King, and some part of their territories; but the policy of Agricola, which was followed by his successors, had the effect of rendering them utterly powerless, and they seem seldom to have headed their countrymen in the struggles that were still occasionally made for freedom.

§ 43. One of these risings occurred in the year 117, and it appeared so formidable, that in 120 the Emperor Hadrian visited the island and ordered the wall that bears his name to be built. In 138 the Brigantes, being despoiled of their lands, took up arms, and this occasioned the strengthening of the Wall of Agricola. About forty years later the northern tribes burst through this barrier, and the repulsing them was thought so important that the reigning Emperor, Commodus, took the title of Britannicus, as for a new conquest of the island. This commotion was scarcely quieted when Clodius Albinus, the Roman commander, assumed the title of Emperor. He held possession of the island for a while, but at length, in 197, passing over into Gaul, he was there defeated and killed, and the first British army that had fought on the continent was cut to pieces.

§ 44. The Roman power in Britain was of course greatly weakened by this misfortune, and in the year 201 Virius Lupus, the

Campaign of Severus. Decline of the Roman Empire. An independent British Emperor.

governor, was obliged to purchase a peace of one of the northern tribes. Soon afterward the Emperor Severus visited Britain, had the Wall of Hadrian rebuilt, and made a campaign against the Caledonians. He also took the surname of Britannicus, as if successful; but full 50,000 of his men perished in the war, and he himself died at York soon after his return, in the year 211 of the Christian era.

§ 45. From this time forward the power of the Roman empire declined daily. Generals rose up in almost every quarter, and proclaimed themselves emperors, and all things fell into confusion. The governors of Britain took advantage of this to render themselves almost independent, and for nearly eighty years they remained so, until a Romanized Britain found means to reduce the island to his obedience.

§ 46. This was Carausius, who was the commander of a fleet that was employed to guard the coast of Britain and Gaul from the ravages of the unsubdued nations of the north of Europe, afterwards so well known as the Saxons. These people, before the year 286, had visited Britain, and small bodies had even established themselves there, with the connivance of Carausius, as was supposed. Finding himself suspected, and in danger, he acted promptly. He set sail from Gessoriacum <sup>a</sup> (Boulogne), where he

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 7. left a strong garrison, landed in Britain, repulsed several formidable attacks by the Emperors Maximian and Diocletian, and at length obliged them to acknowledge him as a sharer of their empire.

§ 47. Carausius now struck coins with the proud inscription, "Romano renova," and others with a ship, showing his knowledge of the true arm of strength for Britain. Although Gessoriacum was taken from him in 292, and he himself was killed two years afterwards by his minister Allectus, who succeeded to his power, it was not until 296 that the island was subdued, and then mainly through the circumstance of Constantius Chlorus, the Roman general, passing the British fleet in a mist. That victorious general, who had formerly married a British princess, the renowned St. Helena in the annals of the Christian Church, remained in the island until his death. His power descended to his son by Helena, afterwards known as Constantine the Great, who was the first Christian emperor.

§ 48. In the year 367 a revolt broke out in the army and navy



Ravages of the Picts and Scots.

End of Roman Rule in Britain.

in Britain, when Fullofaudes and Nectaridus, the commanders, were slain. Theodosius, a general, being sent over, restored order, drove back the northern tribes, named the country that they had occupied Valentia, in honor of the Emperor Valentinian, and repaired or rebuilt many of the towns. These northern tribes were known as Picts (because they painted themselves) and Scots, who inhabited the present territory of Scotland. They were first mentioned at about this time. In 383 there was another revolt, when the army made their general, Maximus, emperor, and passing over to Gaul, may be said to have abandoned Britain.

§ 49. The semblance of the Roman rule was, however, kept up for nearly thirty years longer, and hence the Britons, when harassed by the northern tribes and the sea-robbers, still applied to the Emperors for assistance. Thus in the year 396 a legion was sent to Britain, which drove back the Picts and Scots, and repaired the Wall of Severus; but it was soon recalled, and a British army was then raised to defend the country. This army soon imitated the Romans, by choosing an emperor for itself,—first Marcus, then Gratian,—but both were killed within a short time. Then the title was by them bestowed on a private soldier named Constantine, who, not content with ruling in Britain, carried an army over to France and Spain, and held possession of them until he was defeated and killed, four years after.

§ 50. As soon as Constantine and the army had departed, the northern tribes again burst in and ravaged the country. The people in a body then took up arms, but instead of driving back the invaders they expelled all the Roman magistrates, and utter anarchy in consequence soon prevailed. The Emperor Honorius then wrote letters to the British cities releasing them from allegiance to the empire, and thus their long connection with it came to a close.

§ 51. This was in the year 410, the same year that Rome itself was taken by the Goths; but many of the Romans remained in the island until the year 418, when, an old English writer says, “they collected all the treasures that were in Britain, and some they hid in the earth, so that no one has since been able to find them, and some they carried with them into Gaul. And so departed from this island the Roman people and the Roman rule.”



## CHAPTER II.

## GEOGRAPHICAL AND POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

§ 1. THE Roman conquests of Great Britain introduced a civilizing agent there in Christianity. The seeds of the new religion were planted here and there, one by one, and germinated and spread without any of the miracles mentioned in legends. It was first gradually diffused over the South of England, where the influence of the Romans was chiefly felt, and seems to have made considerable progress as an organized institution when Diocletian persecuted the Church of Christ everywhere. Then it was, late in the third century, that a pagan convert, who was canonized "St. Albans," perished for the faith, and is held to be the first British Christian martyr.

§ 2. At the evacuation of the country by the Romans, Christians were numerous in Great Britain and Ireland. Churches, prelates, priests, and monks abounded; and the country was represented in ecclesiastical councils as a province of the Church of Rome. Druidism had corrupted the purity of Christianity; and the ecclesiastics were not much more saint-like in life than the laity. They were politicians, and when occasion required they fought with carnal weapons while shouting Allelujahs. But with zeal they planted the *principles* of Christianity in the hearts and minds of the people, which bore glorious fruit.

§ 3. We have already observed that the form of government in ancient Britain was monarchical, and largely influenced by, if not wholly under the control of, a theocracy composed of the Druid priesthood. Before noticing the government introduced by the Romans, and for the purpose of obtaining a clearer understanding of the history, early and later, of Great Britain, it seems proper here, at the close of the brief record of Roman rule, and the beginning of the British independence that was followed by Saxon invasions and conquests, to give an account of the political divisions of the people and country into tribes or nations, and provinces, at the period which we have been considering.

§ 4. We have noticed the origin of the word Britain or Britania.<sup>a</sup> The island was also called Albion, or White

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 3.

Land, a name suggested by the white chalk cliffs of Dover, nearest Gaul. It was also called Ierne, or the Sacred

## Political Divisions of Great Britain.

Isle, the fabled resting-place of the sun in the far west to Orientals.

§ 5. The Romans did not visit Ireland, but held a portion of Great Britain for almost 400 years. The territory which they actually occupied they called Hither Britain (*Britannia Citerior*), and that which they failed to subdue, Farther Britain (*Britannia Ulterior*).

§ 6. They divided Hither Britain into five great provinces, whose names show the gradual progress of the Roman arms. These were, First Britain (*Britannia Prima*); Second Britain (*Britannia Secunda*); Flavia Cæsarean province (*Flavia Cæsariensis*); Great Cæsarean province (*Maximus Cæsariensis*), and the province of Valens (*Valentia*).

§ 7. First Britain was the South of England, and was first conquered by the Romans. Second Britain was Wales, which resisted the invaders several years longer. The Flavian Cæsarean province was the central part of England, or the midland and eastern counties of the present day. This, as we have seen, was subdued about the same time as Second Britain,<sup>a</sup> and was secured by a line of forts extending from the Nen to the Avon.

<sup>a</sup> § 39, p. 16.

§ 8. The last conquest by the Romans was the Great Cæsarean province, which occupied the rest of the country, and which was divided from the north country by two great walls,<sup>b</sup> to keep out the Picts and Scots. These broke over the walls<sup>c</sup> and reconquered what is now Northumberland and the South of Scotland. They were driven out, and the country between the walls was then named Valentia, in honor of the reigning emperor. See the map forming the frontispiece of this work.

<sup>b</sup> § 41, p. 17.

<sup>c</sup> § 43, p. 17.

§ 9. We will now consider more particularly those Roman divisions, with the British tribes, the Saxon kingdoms, and the modern counties contained in each.

*First Britain (Britannia Prima).*

§ 10. This comprised all that part of the South of England which lies between the sea and the rivers Thames and Severn, and which is now divided into the counties of Kent, Surrey, Sussex, Southampton, Berks, Wilts, Somerset, Dorset, Devon, and Cornwall. The British tribes in this province, who are known to us only by their Romanized names, were the *Cantii*, who occupied Kent; the *Regnii*, who inhabited Surrey; the *Atrebatii* and *Belge*,

## Second and Central Britain and the Inhabitants.

who dwelt in Hants, Berks, Wilts, and Somerset; the *Durotriges*, who occupied Dorset; and the *Dumnonii*, who held Devon and Cornwall. The Saxons divided the province into the kingdoms of Kent, Sussex, and Wessex. Kent had about the extent of the county at the present day. Sussex included Surrey, and Wessex occupied the rest of the district. The capitals of these kingdoms, in the order named, were respectively Canterbury, Chichester, and Winchester.

*Second Britain (Britannia Secunda).*

§ 11. This province comprised the district beyond the Severn, now called Wales, which is divided into two districts, known as North and South Wales. In North Wales are the six counties of Anglesey, Caernarvon, Flint, Denbigh, Montgomery, and Merioneth. In South Wales are six more, called Radnor, Brecon, Glamorgan, Pembroke, Caermarthen, and Cardigan. The Roman province also comprised Monmouthshire and Herefordshire, counties on each side of the Severn, which have long been parts of England.

§ 12. The British tribes in this province were the *Ordovices*, in the northern part; the *Silures*,<sup>a</sup> in the south; and the

<sup>a</sup> § 32, p. 14.

*Demetæ*, on the western sea-coast. The Saxons did not subdue Wales. The country was generally divided during the Saxon era into the three kingdoms of Gwynneth, or North Wales; Dynevor, or South Wales; and Powys, on both sides of the Severn. The rulers respectively bore the titles of kings of Aberfraw, of Cardigan, and of Mathraval, the names of the chief towns in their several states.

*Flavia Casariensis.*

§ 13. This was the central part of England, which lies north of the Thames and south of the Humber, with the German Ocean on the east and the Severn on the west. Passing westward along the course of the Thames we have the counties of Essex, Middlesex, Buckingham, Oxford, and Gloucester. Along the Severn, or near it, going northward, are Hereford, Worcester, Salop, and Chester. On the coast are Lincoln, Norfolk, and Suffolk; and in the centre are Hertford, Bedford, Huntingdon, Cambridge, Northampton, Rutland, Leicester, Warwick, Stafford, Derby, and Nottingham.



## Central and Northern Britain and the Inhabitants.

§ 14. The British tribes in this province were the *Trinobantes*, the *Catyeuchlani*, and the *Dobrinii*, near the course of the Thames; the *Cornarii*, along the east side of the Severn; the *Coritani*, in Lincolnshire and the interior; and the *Icenii*, in Norfolk and Suffolk.

§ 15. The Saxons established in this province the four kingdoms of Essex, Middlesex, East Anglia, and Mercia. Essex and Middlesex were nearly the same as the modern counties of the same name. East Anglia comprehended Norfolk and Suffolk, and Mercia occupied the rest of the province.

*Maxima Cæsariensis.*

§ 16. This province was the region north of the Humber, extending to the Tyne. It now includes the counties of York and Durham, on the German Ocean; and Lancaster, Westmoreland, and Cumberland, on the Irish Sea.

§ 17. The powerful British tribe known as the *Brigantes*,<sup>a</sup> occupied the greater part of this province. There was a tribe known as the *Parisii*, who were seated on the Yorkshire coast, near the mouth of the Humber. <sup>a</sup> § 31, p. 14.

§ 18. The Saxons divided the province into the two kingdoms of Deira and Bernicia. The former lay to the north, and extended into the present Scotland; but the two states were often governed by the same rulers, and formed the kingdom of Northumberland.

*Valentia.*

§ 19. This province lay between the Tyne and the Frith of Forth, a territory conquered by Agricola,<sup>b</sup> afterward recovered by the Britons, and again reconquered<sup>c</sup> and named Valentia. <sup>b</sup> § 39, p. 16. <sup>c</sup> § 48, p. 18.

§ 20. The tribes that inhabited that region were the *Novantæ* and the *Selgovæ*, in the west; the *Gadenii*, in the centre, and the *Ottadini*, in the east. They occupied the present counties of Galloway, Ayrshire, Selkirk, and Northumberland. The *Damni* dwelt in the country extending from the Clyde to the Tweed.

§ 21. Besides the Saxon kingdom of Deira, which projected into this province, there were, for a while, some small British states on the western side, in what is now Strathclyde; and at a later

North Britain.

Tribes of the Highlands of Scotland.

date the Northmen and the Scots had principalities in Cumberland.

§ 22. Within the boundaries of VALENTIA were the famous Roman Walls. The Northern, known as Agricola's, and now as Graham's dyke, extends from the Forth to the Clyde, and was the northern boundary of the Roman dominions in Britain. The Southern, known as the Wall of Hadrian, and also as the Picts' Wall,

<sup>a</sup> § 44, p. 17. stretched from the Tyne to the Solway. This was rebuilt by Severus,<sup>a</sup> and much of it is well preserved.

On the north side, exposed to the barbarians, it presented a face of stone, with a ditch; and on the south side was an earth embankment and ditch. It was 68 miles in length, and had numerous watch-towers. See the frontispiece map.

§ 23. The tribes beyond the Northern Wall inhabited the mountainous region now known as the Highlands of Scotland. They bore the general name of Caledonii or Caledonians, and for that reason the whole country was called Caledonia. The Orkney and Shetland Islands, beyond the mainland on the north, and the Hebrides on the west, were almost unknown to the Romans, and were never occupied by the Saxons. In later times Northmen from Iceland or Norway established principalities on them.

### CHAPTER III.

#### SOCIETY BEFORE THE SAXON INVASION.

§ 1. WITH the Roman conquest, Roman laws were imposed upon the Britons. They were administered by a series of dependent officers, each subordinate to the one above him, up to the emperor, and were mere executors of his will. There were no co-ordinate powers to serve as mutual checks. It was a simple administrative despotism, whose highest officer was at first a single president of the Romanized portion of Great Britain. In

<sup>b</sup> § 6, p. 21. time there were five, who governed the five provinces already mentioned.<sup>b</sup>

§ 2. These presidents also exercised judicial functions. Having thus despotic power placed in their hands, they often used it without





BRITAIN  
UNDER THE SAXONS  
Illustrating Lossings  
SCHOOL HISTORY  
of  
ENGLAND

# Some King State Lakes









The Roman Government in Britain.

Industrial Operations.

stint in the levying and collecting of extortionate taxes, supplying soldiers for the Roman army, and in various other ways serving the State. Some Britons, residing in towns or municipalities, were invested with the privileges of Roman citizens while the great mass of the people were slaves to cruel oppressors, without any political rights. They were in bonds as inexorable as those with which their ancestors had been bound by the Druid theocracy. And yet Roman laws, literature, manners, and industries were levers which lifted the people up from the dark regions bordering on barbarism to the illuminated heights of an advancing civilization.

§ 3. Very soon after the conquest, new industrial operations appeared in Britain. When the Romans came they had no traffic but in tin and lead. They had no ships for trade or war, and were but infants in the business of the world. Under the stimulus of Roman influence, Great Britain became, before the departure of the conquerors, a great mine of agricultural wealth, from which the continent drew large supplies. Gold, silver, iron, tin, lead, skins, fleeces, horses, cattle, sheep, dogs, human slaves, cheese, chalk, lime, marl, pearls, fish, and other products, were exported in British vessels, whose managers were such expert seamen that the navy of Carausius <sup>a</sup> was manned chiefly by them. <sup>a</sup> § 46, p. 18.

§ 4. Literature and the fine arts of poetry and music were cultivated exclusively in the Druidic order. The common people had no part in it. That priesthood possessed remnants of the old civilization of the East, and some were quite proficient in song, eloquence, music, astronomy, medicine, botany, and chemistry. But with the advent of the Roman rule, the whole people became instructed by the sight of elegant and even magnificent specimens of architecture; works of the chisel exquisitely wrought, and in time a great variety of skilful handicraft; and in the Roman cities in Britain, schools were established for the education of the chiefs and princes of the tribes.

§ 5. We have already <sup>b</sup> considered some of the habits and customs of the ancient Britons. Little more may be said. In marriage there seems to have been a sort of permitted polygamy. Several men and women clubbed as residents under one thatch, and these husbands and wives were in common relations. Yet there is evidence that woman was held in so high esteem that this practice must have been exceptional. <sup>b</sup> § 15, p. 4.

## Literature and the Fine Arts.

## Customs and Costume.

§ 6. At death the old Britons, like the barbarians of our wildernesses, generally buried the body with weapons, implements, and ornaments. Frequently all were placed in a strong coffin of wood, and a tumulus raised over the dead. Some of these tumuli or barrows, as they are called, resembled in form and size the sepulchral mounds found in this country, that were reared by a people of whom we have no other knowledge. The British barrows were evidently the sepulchres of chiefs, for no other persons could have commanded the labor necessary to erect them. In some instances the earth was brought from long distances. In the more ancient barrows the bodies were placed in a sitting posture, the knees drawn up to the chin. Sometimes the remains were burnt, and the ashes, placed in vessels, were deposited in such sepulchres. This practice they probably learned from Cæsar's men.

§ 7. After the invasion, the manners and customs of the people rapidly changed. They abandoned their wicker-work and mud huts for stone and brick houses. So early as the time of Agricola, the sons of British chiefs wore the Roman costume, and men and women cut and dressed their hair after the Roman fashion. Even the common people ceased tattooing and painting themselves. The whole aspect of society and the country changed; and the eulogies of Roman writers lead us to believe that at the time of the evacuation, and perhaps long before, Britain was regarded as one of the most advanced, best, and happiest of the Roman provinces. A Roman writer, expatiating upon the excellences of the island, spoke of it as "a land so stored with corn, so flourishing in pasture, so rich in variety of mines, so profitable in its tributes; on all its coasts so furnished with convenient harbors, and so immense in its extent and circuit." Another speaks of it as a land whose "woods have no savage beasts; no serpents harbor there to hurt the traveller. The days are long, and no night passes without some glimpse of light."

## BOOK III.

### THE SAXON ERA.

[FROM THE FIFTH TO THE ELEVENTH CENTURY.]

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### THE EARLY INVADERS FROM THE NORTH.

§ 1. BEFORE the Romans evacuated Great Britain, the inhabitants of Northern Europe, near the borders of the German Ocean and the Baltic Sea, who had not been brought under Roman rule, made predatory excursions, in stout little vessels, to the coasts of Germany and Gaul, and occasionally to Albion. These are known in history and romance as Scandinavian sea-kings. They came from the now separate countries along the Elbe and Rhine; from Jutland, Denmark, Sweden, and Norway. They were all of the Teutonic or Gothic race. The Roman writers speak of them all as Saxons, so named, probably, from the short-sword, called *seax*, which they all wore.

§ 2. So early as the second century these marauders were known and felt by the Romans, and before the end of the third century they had established themselves in various parts of Britain. When the Romans finally withdrew, there were in Great Britain more than thirty cities which had been allowed to govern themselves in many matters. Among these were London, York, Chester, Canterbury, Winchester, and Exeter. Instead of joining for common safety, they became so many petty and hostile States; and the ravages of the Scots and Picts, and the sea-rovers, grew more dreadful than ever. The country was reduced almost to a desert, and Roman civilization was nearly obliterated.

§ 3. From the time of the Roman evacuation until the Northern pagans became absolute masters of Britain, a period of about one hundred and fifty years, the truth of history is so covered in fiction that it is difficult to find it. The tales about Vortigern and



Influence of Christian Bishops. Stories of Vortigern and Rowena, and of King Arthur.

- Rowena, Hengist and Horsa, and of King Arthur, are evidently "founded on facts," but they cannot be called history.

§ 4. There are, doubtless, grains of truth in the story that the Bishop of London united the Britons by inducing them to accept a king in the person of a British-born prince named Constantine, who, during a reign of ten years, pushed back the Picts and Scots; that Vortigern, a powerful noble, crowned one of dead Constantine's sons with his own hands, when all bishops refused to do so; that Vortigern caused the new king to be murdered, and then seized the crown for himself; that his cruelty made his subjects refuse to fight the Picts; and that he invited two brothers, Hengist and Horsa, Saxon chiefs, with their followers, to help him, and gave them, for their services in dispersing the Picts, the Isle of Thanet.

§ 5. There are, doubtless, grains of truth in the story that Vortigern loved and married Rowena, the beautiful daughter of Hengist; that the Britons deposed Vortigern, and made his son, Vortimer, king; that he fought the Saxons well, but was driven by them out of Kent, when Hengist took the title of king, and began the Saxon dominion in Great Britain; that Vortimer was poisoned by his step-mother, Rowena; that Hengist, under pretence of friendship, invited Vortigern and other chiefs to a council, and treacherously murdered all but Vortigern; and that the huge stones at Stonehenge, on Salisbury Plain, mark the place of the massacre.

§ 6. Then we have stories of the struggles between Vortigern and the brothers Ambrosius and Pendragon, who drove the former into Wales, where he was burnt to death in a castle; how they fought their way to London, where Ambrosius was crowned king; then fought and killed Hengist; restored the churches which the pagans had destroyed; was poisoned by a son of Vortigern and Rowena, and was succeeded by his brother Pendragon, father of the celebrated Arthur.

§ 7. Then we have the marvellous stories of the deeds of Pendragon, and Arthur, whose chief adviser was Merlin, the Welsh magician, by whose direction the commemorative stones on Salisbury Plain were brought from Ireland; how Pendragon was poisoned, and Arthur, who became king, defeated the Saxons in twelve desperate battles, and expelled or made tributary all of the pagans; how he made a pilgrimage to Jerusalem; held a splendid court at

True Story of the Saxon Invasion, and of Arthur.

Character of the Invaders.

Carlisle; established the order of the Round Table, composed of valorous knights, both Christian and pagan; wielded his enchanted sword, and after reigning thirty years, was mortally wounded by his nephew, and was buried in the Isle of Avalon by the side of his faithless wife, Guenever.

§ 8. The plain story of Arthur's military life appears to be, that he kept the Saxons in check, so that until after his death they had no footing in Britain, excepting in the eastern part, and that the hope of eventually driving them from the island died with him.

§ 9. The Saxons, as has already been told, had established themselves in various parts of Britain before the end of the third century, and as the Roman empire grew weaker, their settlements no doubt increased. It seems most probable that they seized on the Isle of Thanet,<sup>a</sup> and then, being in no danger of expulsion from their strong position, mixed in the quarrel

<sup>a</sup> § 4, p. 28.

between Vortigern and his great rival Ambrosius, whose father was a Roman general, and his mother a British princess. Their fellow-rovers joined them in numbers, when, after two battles, the Britons abandoned Kent to them, and fled in great terror to London. Horsa, one of the Saxon leaders, had been killed at Aylesford two years before this, and now his brother Hengist became the first Saxon king of Kent.

§ 10. The people who had now established themselves in Britain were idolaters, and took especial delight in destroying churches and murdering priests. They believed that all who fell in battle would be at once received into Valhalla, or the Hall of Woden, one of the gods of the Scandinavian theology from whom most of their chiefs professed to be descended. For this reason they exhibited a fearlessness as to their own lives, and a joy in combat, that appeared more than human. They seemed to delight in storms and tempests, braving the roughest seas in their small boats; and when they chose to land in any country, they ravaged all around with fire and sword. They often ascended the rivers as far as their vessels could go, and then, abandoning them, seized on all the horses that they could find, and, as a mixed body of horse and foot, forced their way to some other stream. Then they built fresh barks, and descending to the sea, carried off their spoil and captives. A large portion of each was given to the temples of their gods, and the victims to be sacrificed were determined by lot. All these ravages they practised in Great Britain, but they

The People who invaded Britain, and their Settlements.

The Heptarchy.

met a resistance there which they never encountered elsewhere. According to the best calculation of dates, nearly a hundred and fifty years elapsed between the foundation of their first sovereignty in Kent, and their complete establishment in the central parts of

the country, to which they gave the name of the kingdom of Mercia.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 12, p. 33.

§ 11. The Romans confounded the sea-rovers together under one general name of Saxons, but we are able to distinguish at least three different tribes among the conquerors of Britain—the Saxons, the Angelns or Angles, and the Jutes.

§ 12. The Jutes, the least numerous of the three, were the first to establish themselves, and they soon became more civilized than the rest, as is testified by the discoveries that have been made of rich ornaments in their graves. They came from Jutland, now a province of Denmark, at the mouth of the Baltic Sea, and conquered Kent and the Isle of Wight.

§ 13. The Saxons, who came from the country between the mouths of the Elbe and the Rhine, now Hanover and Holland, conquered all the south and west of Britain except what the Jutes held, and the country on the north of the Thames from London to the sea, and the river Stour, in Suffolk.

§ 14. The Angles, who dwelt on the Elbe, between the Saxons and the Jutes, were the last to arrive. They occupied the land from the Stour to the Forth, and from the German Ocean to the Severn and the Irish Sea. Holding then so large a portion of the country, they have given its present name of England (Angeln-land), or the land of the Angelns, or Angles, to South Britain. (See the frontispiece map.)

## CHAPTER II.

RISE AND HISTORY OF THE HEPTARCHY. [FROM THE FIFTH TO THE NINTH CENTURY.]

§ 1. ACCORDING to the dates usually followed, Hengist founded the kingdom of KENT in the year 457, and after a reign of thirty-one years, he was succeeded by his son Esc. In the mean time Ella, the Teutonic chief, with his three sons, Cymen, Cissa, and



Foundations of Kingdoms.

The Britons aroused.

Ravages of the Invaders.

Wlencing, accompanied by a large body of men, had landed on the south coast in 477, and established the kingdom of SUSSEX. Cerdic followed in 495, and laid the foundation of a third kingdom, but he was unable to effect much until assisted by Port, and his sons Bieda and Mægla, and Stuf and Withgar, the latter of whom gave his name to the Isle of Wight,<sup>a</sup> as Port did to the towns of Portsmouth and Porchester. <sup>a § 9, p. 2.</sup>

Cerdic suffered a great defeat near Bath from Arthur, but he succeeded in establishing the kingdom of WESSEX in 519.

§ 2. The coming of so many bodies of invaders had effectually roused the spirit of the Britons, and they evidently made a most gallant defence. Anderida, a Roman town, on the site of which stands Pevensey, was captured after a long siege by Ella, and utterly destroyed, when he assumed the title of King, and was besides chosen as the commander-in-chief of his countrymen, under the name of Britwalda, a Saxon term meaning “a widely-ruling chief,” or emperor of Brit (Britain). Six other monarchs bore the title after him, but in their case it was assumed by themselves, and had a different meaning: it implied with them an imperial supremacy over the other Saxon kings in peace as well as in war.

§ 3. The ravages of the invaders had hitherto been confined to the south and west of Britain, but the east and the north were at length assailed. Erkenwin established the kingdoms of the East and Middle Saxons (ESSEX and MIDDLESEX) about the year 526; Uffa landed in Norfolk or Suffolk about the same time; and in 547 Ida began the conquest of the country between the Humber and the Frith of Forth. He landed at Flamborough Head, and passing northward, built a castle at Bamborough. But this must not be confounded with such structures as the Romans erected, for we are told that it was only a hedge enclosing the top of a cliff on the sea-shore. To replace the hedge by a wall of wood, and that by a wall of stone, was the work of later rulers than Ida, and the stately fortress that at last arose there, and still stands, was built in the time of William the Norman.

§ 4. The conquest of Ida formed the kingdom of NORTHUMBRIA, which is considered as founded by him in 547; but Uffa and his successors met so much resistance that it was not until 571 that they took the title of Kings of EAST ANGLIA or ANGLE. The interior of the country was reduced by Crida about 586, and he is reckoned the first King of MERCA.

Britons driven into Wales.

Explanation of names.

The Britwaldas.

§ 5. At about this time, or a little later, Cavetius, the leader of the unconquered Britons, was driven with his followers across the Severn into Wales, Cornwall, and Cumberland, where they gave up the contest in despair, and left the rest of the country to the pagan Saxons. These had already divided the conquered territory into a number of States called the Heptarchy, or Seven Kingdoms, though they really amounted to nine, and sometimes ten.

§ 6. It may be well to explain here the names that these different States received. *Kent* is a corruption of a British word meaning "a corner," a term descriptive of its position. *Sussex*, *Wessex*, *Essex*, and *Middlesex* mean the kingdoms of the South, West, East, and Middle Seax or Saxons. *East Anglia* is the State of the Angles, which was on the east coast; *Northumbria* is the kingdom north of the river Humber or Umber; and *Mercia*, derived from a word now corrupted into "march," is the Frontier State. Mercia had the unconquered Britons on its western side, and was thus the "march land" of the Heptarchy.

§ 7. The title of Britwalda was first bestowed on Ella of Sussex, and for more than fifty years after his death no other king aspired to it. At length it was assumed at about the same time by Ethelbert of Kent and by Ceawlin of Wessex; and as it was then meant to imply a superiority over their fellow-kings, this led to a war, in which Ethelbert was defeated, and the title was secured by Ceawlin. On the death of Ceawlin, however, it passed to Ethelbert, and in succession was held by Redwald of East Anglia, and by Edwin, Oswald, and Oswy of Northumbria; but, for some reason which is not now known, it was not assumed by the kings of Mercia or of Wessex, though these gradually incorporated the other States with their own.

§ 8. A history of the successive transfers of this supremacy will give the chief points in the affairs of each State, and show how the number of kingdoms became gradually less and less, until all were annexed to Wessex, and the kingdom of England, properly so called, was founded.

§ 9. KENT, as the earliest founded and more powerful kingdom, had a supremacy over the neighboring States of Essex and Middlesex, so that they have little history of their own. Neither has Kent after the first contest with the Britons, until the war with Wessex [A.D. 568], in which Ethelbert was defeated at Wimbledon, in Surrey.



Strife between the States.

Kingdom of Mercia.

Introduction of Christianity.

§ 10. Ceawlin, the victor, who was the grandson of Cerdic, turned his arms next against the Britons, and for thirty years he was their most formidable foe. His brother Cuthwolf drove them from Buckingham and Oxford shires, whilst Ceawlin and another brother, Cutha, pushed westward, and captured Gloucester, Cirencester, and Bath. The Britons, however, still opposed him, and though defeated near Stroud, killed Cutha. Ceawlin then returned to Wessex, when his pride on account of the towns and spoil that he had taken provoked a confederacy against him, in which his brother Ceol joined, and he was driven from his kingdom. Attempting to recover it, he was defeated at Wembury, in Devonshire [A.D. 593], and he died a fugitive two years afterward.

§ 11. The envied title of Britwalda was now assumed by Ethelbert, but the real supremacy passed to Northumbria, where there reigned a cruel and warlike usurper, Ethelfrid, who made war on the Scots in Cumberland, and on the Britons in North Wales. For many years he sought the life of Edwin, the rightful heir, but was at last defeated and killed by one of Edwin's protectors, [A.D. 617], Redwald of East Anglia. Redwald bore the title of Britwalda, but little except this defeat of Ethelfrid is recorded of him.

§ 12. In the mean time a new State had arisen, <sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 29. that of Mercia; <sup>a</sup> but Crida, its founder, was killed in 593, and his son Wibba became a dependent on Ethelbert of Kent. Four years later [A.D. 597] an event occurred in Kent, the most important of any since the landing of the Saxons.

§ 13. King Ethelbert had married, twenty years before, Bertha, the young and beautiful daughter of Charibert, king of Paris, in Gaul or France. She was a Christian princess, and brought with her a French bishop, Luidhard, as her chaplain. A small British church, that stood on a hill outside the walls of Canterbury, and had escaped the destruction that had overtaken so many nobler edifices, was granted to her as a place of worship. St. Martin's, Canterbury, now occupies its site. This, of course, was a means for making the truths of the Gospel in some measure known among the idolatrous Saxons; and when Ethelbert himself appeared favorably disposed, Pope Gregory the Great sent a mission to endeavor to effect his conversion and that of his subjects.

§ 14. This was a matter that Gregory had long meditated. Several years before, while yet but a priest, he had conceived the idea of attempting the conversion of the Saxons, from seeing in



Efforts of Pope Gregory.

The Angles in Rome.

Augustin in Britain.

the slave-market at Rome three boys, who were distinguished from the rest of the captives by their fair and ruddy complexions and their long flowing hair, which last, in those days, was a mark of noble, if not royal birth. He inquired of the slave-dealer about their country and their religion. He learnt that they came from the distant Isle of Britain, and that they were pagans. Asking their nation and the name of its king, he was told that they were Angles from the province of Deira, and that its ruler was named Ella. He replied they should rather be called angels; that they were truly Deirans (which means, plucked from the wrath of God), and that not Ella, but Allelujah, should one day be named in their country.

§ 15. Anxious to accomplish his saying, Gregory left Rome for the purpose of journeying to Britain; but he was followed and carried back by the people, to whom he was much endeared, and he was soon after chosen Pope. He intrusted the British mission to Augustin, a Benedictine monk, who, with about forty others of his class, landed in Thanet in the spring of 597, and there held a conference under an oak with Ethelbert. Augustin spoke through an interpreter. The king listened attentively, and invited them to Canterbury. Bertha received them with joy; and in June Ethelbert and his court were baptized. He was the first Christian king of the Saxon race. His subjects followed his example, and thousands of them were baptized in an arm of the Medway, which separates Sheppey from Kent. Christian churches again appeared in the land. Pagan temples resounded with Christian hymns, and pagan religious ceremonies and feasts were converted into Christian rituals and festivals.

§ 16. Augustin was appointed Archbishop or Primate of the Church in Great Britain. The royal palace at Canterbury was given to him for a residence; and he proceeded to organize his See, and bring the independent British bishops beyond the Severn into unity with the Church of Rome, and make them his auxiliaries in the work of converting the Saxons. Because they refused to acknowledge the supremacy of the Pope, several of those bishops were put to death with the sanction of Augustin. He died at Canterbury in the year 605, leaving Laurence, a fellow-missionary from Italy, as his successor.

§ 17. Christianity was thus established among the Saxons. But the seed had taken feeble root. On the death of Ethelbert [A.D. 616]

Lapse into Paganism. Story of Edwin of Deira. He becomes King of Northumbria.

the sin of the beautiful Bertha caused the people of Kent to relapse into paganism. Ethelbert's son and successor, Eadbald, became enamored of his step-mother, and they were married. His Christian subjects reproved him for the incestuous act, when, in anger, he turned to his old Teutonic idols. Very soon the whole people of Kent also forsook Christianity. At length Laurence, the Archbishop, persuaded Eadbald to return to the fold, when his Kentish subjects followed like a flock of sheep. His sister, Ethelburga, who was baptized by Laurence, was the means of afterwards introducing Christianity among the Northumbrians.

§ 18. This was brought about in a remarkable manner. Edwin, the son of that Ella of Deira already mentioned, had, on his father's death, been deprived of his kingdom by his kinsman and brother-in-law Ethelfrid, and had lived nearly thirty years an exile, when the usurper discovered that Edwin was protected by Redwald of East Anglia. Then he threatened that king with war unless he either gave him up or put him to death. Redwald, in great alarm, deliberated on what to do, when his queen, fearing that the dread of the power of Ethelfrid might induce her husband to betray his guest, warned Edwin of his danger, and he left the palace at night to seek shelter in the woods. Here he fell asleep, and in a dream was assured by a majestic person that his kingdom should be restored to him. Next he inquired if, when that had been accomplished, some more excellent way of life than any that his ancestors had followed should be proposed to him, he would adopt it. Edwin eagerly promised that he would. The figure laid his right hand solemnly on his head, and saying, "When this sign is repeated, remember your pledge," vanished.

§ 19. While Edwin mused on this wondrous vision, the queen sent to tell him that her husband had resolved to defend him; and he did so. Redwald defeated and killed Ethelfrid, and Edwin became king of Northumbria. He soon grew so powerful that he became Britwalda,<sup>a</sup> and was esteemed the sovereign of all Britain, the kingdom of Kent only excepted.

<sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 31.

§ 20. With this kingdom Edwin now formed an alliance by marrying Ethelburga, sister of Eadbald of Kent, who, like her mother Bertha, was accompanied by a bishop, Paulinus, to her new home. Paulinus labored to convert the king, but his labor seemed vain, until Edwin's heart had been softened by his providential escape from an assassin sent by Cwichelm of Wessex, and



Edwin becomes a Christian.

Spread of Christianity checked in Northumbria.

by joy for the recovery of his young queen, whose death at childbirth had appeared imminent. He then listened more favorably, and allowed his infant daughter, Eanfleda, and twelve of his nobles, to be baptized.

§ 21. Paulinus awaited Edwin's return from an expedition against Wessex, and then coming into the King's presence he laid his right hand on his head, as the figure in the dream had done, and cried, "Redeem your pledge." All Edwin's scruples gave way before the remembrance of the vision, and he prevailed on his chief men to become Christians. They were baptized together in a wooden church, hastily built for the occasion, on Easter-day, in the year 627. The cathedral of York occupies its site.

§ 22. Edwin's subjects followed his example, and the heathen temples throughout his dominions were destroyed; Coifi, the chief priest, who is believed to have been a Druid, leading the way in the attack on them.

§ 23. The reign of Edwin had hitherto been prosperous, and his just and wise government endeared him to his subjects. But now the Mercian kingdom was become powerful. Penda, the son of that Wibba who had been the tributary of Ethelbert,<sup>a</sup> ascended the throne, and leagu-  
<sup>a</sup> § 12, p. 33. ing himself with Cadwallader, a British or Welsh chief, he attacked Edwin, who was defeated and killed at Hatfield Chase, in Yorkshire, in 633.

§ 24. This event put a stop to the exertions of Paulinus to convert the Northumbrians. He retired to Kent, taking Edwin's widow and child with him, and the people relapsed into idolatry. But his place was supplied by Aidan, a Scottish bishop, who labored successfully among them, and became the first bishop of Lindisfarne. He and his successor Colman belonged to the ancient British Church, which differed from that of Rome in many matters, as in the time of celebrating Easter; and when Roman missionaries again appeared, great dissensions broke out, which ended in the British bishops being obliged to retire.

§ 25. By the death of Edwin, the supremacy passed to Mercia. That kingdom, as has been mentioned, had become dependent on Kent; but in 627 Penda, the grandson of the founder, succeeded. He was fifty years old when he became king, and he ruled for thirty years, the terror of the surrounding States. In the early part of his reign he allied himself with the Britons, and in concert with



Career of Penda.

Northumbria supreme.

Christianity restored there.

them ravaged Northumbria as far as Bamborough, burning every house or hut that he found in his way. He killed Edwin and Oswald, the kings of Northumbria; drove Kenwalch of Wessex from his kingdom; and slew in succession three kings of East Anglia. These were Sebert, the first Christian king of that country (who had become a monk, but was dragged from his cloister when the land was invaded, and was killed along with his brother Ecgric), and Anna, whose brother Ethelhere joined Penda against him. At last Penda was himself slain at the age of eighty, and the treacherous Ethelhere fell with him.

§ 26. The supremacy now reverted to Northumbria. Its former ruler, Ethelfrid,<sup>a</sup> left several sons, who on his death retired to Scotland, where they became Christians, and remained until the fall of Edwin. One of them, named Oswald, then came forward, secured the throne, and assumed the title of Britwalda. Aidan, the Scottish bishop already mentioned,<sup>b</sup> acted as his interpreter to the people. After a reign of nine years, he too fell before the arms of Penda, at Oswestry, in Shropshire, in the year 642, and the barbarous victor fixed his head and hands on stakes, where they remained many years until they were recovered and honorably buried by his brother Osway, son-in-law of the good Edwin, whose daughter, Eanfleda,<sup>c</sup> he had married.

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 33.<sup>b</sup> § 24, p. 36.<sup>c</sup> § 20, p. 35.

§ 27. Osway at first succeeded to but a part of the dominions of Oswald, but at length he obtained the whole. He defeated and killed the ferocious Penda, at Winwidfield, near Leeds, in 655, and reduced Mercia to submission. He suffered Peada, the son of Penda, who had become a Christian and married Ostryth, Osway's daughter, to reign as his vassal. In concert with him Osway founded the celebrated abbey of Medeshamstede, which was afterward called Peterborough. In his time was held a council at Whitby, where the mode of celebrating Easter and other matters were decided according to the views of the Roman party, upon which the Scottish teachers withdrew to their own country. Osway died in 670, after a prosperous reign of twenty-eight years.

§ 28. Christianity had by this time been firmly planted in all the kingdoms excepting Sussex, chiefly through the influence of women. "Thus," says Hume, "the fair sex have the merit of introducing the Christian doctrine into all the most considerable kingdoms of the Heptarchy." The East Anglians were converted

General spread of Christianity. Introduced into the Isle of Wight. The Career of Ina in 631, through the exertions of Sebert, who was afterwards killed by Penda. Felix, a Burgundian, was their first bishop, and he was placed at Dunwich. Wessex received the faith in 635, and Birinus, a Roman monk, became their first bishop at Dorchester, in Oxfordshire. Kent, Essex, and Northumbria had been converted long before, and now that Northumbria was again triumphant, Mercia was converted, and Diuna, a British bishop, was placed at Lichfield by Osway.

§ 29. Peada, the son of Penda, as we have seen,<sup>a</sup> was tributary to Osway, his father-in-law, but his brother Wulfhere regained his independence, and made war success-

<sup>a</sup> § 27, p. 37. fully on Wessex. Having conquered the Isle of Wight, he sent priests to convert the people, and bestowed the land on Ethwalch of Sussex, who had been baptized at his court, but the people of Sussex did not receive the Gospel until the year 680.

§ 30. Wulfhere died in 675, and both Ethelred his brother and Coenred his son became monks. Thus the superiority passed to Wessex, which had been depressed by the power of Mercia. Kenwalch, Escwin, and Kenwin were successful against the Britons, and Ceadwalla, who was still a heathen, made war on Kent and subdued Sussex, but after a three years' reign he went to Rome, and was there baptized, under the name of Peter. He died seven days afterward, when Ina, who was a distant kinsman, succeeded, and ruled with vigor and success for forty years.

§ 31. Ina made war on Mercia, and killed Ceolred, its king; reduced Kent to dependence, and again subdued Sussex, where Aldbright, a member of the old royal family, had taken arms against him. He also defeated the Britons; but he is most remarkable for a collection of laws which bears his name, and which served as the base of those of the great Alfred long after. Ina built a monastery at Wells, in Somersetshire, and rebuilt Glastonbury, endowing both with rich gifts. At length he resigned his crown to his kinsman Ethelhard, and retired to Rome, where he died. He gave one penny yearly from each house in his kingdom to support an English school and house of pilgrims at Rome, and this payment was the origin of the Peter-pence so often mentioned in history, as the edifices built were the precursors of the English College at Rome of the present day.

§ 32. Under the successors of Ina, Wessex maintained its pre-eminence, and was sometimes allied with Mercia against the Brit-



The last great Prince of the Heptarchy.

The Career of Offa.

ons, sometimes at war with it. At last, in 755, Offa, the nephew of Ethelbald of Mercia, who had been defeated by Cuthred of Wessex, became king, and he was the last great prince of the Heptarchy. He subdued Essex and Kent, defeated Cynewulf of Wessex, and also the Britons; but he showed his weakness rather than his strength against the latter, by constructing a vast wall and ditch to protect his States from their ravages. It extended from Flint to Bristol, and is still to be traced in many places. It bears the name of Offa's Dyke.

§ 33. Whilst Offa thus ruled, Mercia was the paramount State. Northumbria had fallen into a condition of anarchy; East Anglia was seized, after Ethelbert, its king, had been treacherously murdered; Essex and Kent were tributaries; and Wessex fell under the influence of Mercia, when its throne was usurped by Brithric, who married Edburga, a daughter of Offa. In his latter years Offa professed penitence for the murder of Ethelbert. He built the famous monasteries of St. Alban's and Bath, made Lichfield the see of an archbishop, and greatly added to the donation of Ina, so that Peter-pence became payable from the whole of England, and not, as before, from Wessex only. The tribute was exacted until the reign of Henry the Eighth, almost eight hundred years afterward.

§ 34. Offa, though warlike and cruel, was an enlightened prince. He enacted laws which Alfred embodied in his own, patronized learned men, and cultivated the friendship of Charlemagne, the ruler of France and Germany, to whom he sent several Saxon scholars, by whose labors the famous University of Paris was founded;—so greatly had England advanced in learning, even in times that are usually represented as ages of blood and confusion.

§ 35. Offa died in 794, and the power of Mercia died with him. The tributary States endeavored to shake off the yoke, and though they did not at once succeed, their discontent had great influence in again bringing Wessex forward as the ruling State, and eventually breaking up the Mercian kingdom. Brithric, "of the blood of Cerdic," as he is termed, the son-in-law of Offa, drove Egbert, another of the royal family, into exile, and reigned tyrannically in Wessex for sixteen years; but at last he was poisoned by his wife, when Egbert, who had long resided in the court of Charlemagne, was by the unanimous voice of the people called to the throne.



Strife for Independence.

The first Monarch of England.

His wars.

Egbert, by mingled war and policy, rendered all the other States tributary to Wessex; and thus becoming the first monarch of the whole of England, brought the Heptarchy to a close in the early part of the ninth century.

## CHAPTER III.

## REIGN OF EGBERT. [A.D. 800 TO 837.]

§ 1. WHEN Egbert was chosen king he was at Rome along with his protector, Charlemagne. He speedily returned to Wessex, which had already been attacked by the Mercians under Kenwulf, the nephew of Offa, a warlike prince. The Mercians however, were defeated, and had too many troubles with their tributary States to be able to carry on the war; therefore a peace was concluded.

§ 2. Egbert ruled Wessex for several years in peace, but in the year 813 he conducted a large army against the Britons in West Wales,<sup>a</sup> and ravaged their country. This greatly added to his renown, and he was henceforward considered the chief prince of the Heptarchy. Still he made no attempt on the other kingdoms until the death of Kenwulf, in 819. The murder of his son Kenulf, by his sister Quendreda, threw Mercia into anarchy, and its tributary States renounced their obedience.

§ 3. Egbert at length, in 823, sent his son Ethelwulf into Kent, where Baldred, the last king, was defeated and driven out; Sussex, Essex, and East Anglia submitted to him; two usurpers of the Mercian throne were slain, and that kingdom was entirely conquered in 827. The Northumbrians were invaded in the same year, and, daunted by the power of Egbert, they submitted without a battle.

§ 4. The Heptarchy was now brought to a formal close; but as the conquered States were still ruled by tributary kings, as many of them had been long before, the change was not so great as is usually represented. The country now consisted of four States, Wessex, Mercia, East Anglia, and Northumbria, which differed in laws, in manners, and even in language. Wessex was at most but the first among them. This supremacy was often endangered, and

The Heptarchy ended.

The British States.

Invasion by Northmen.

more than once lost; but it was always recovered, and it endured until the close of the Saxon power.

§ 5. In token of his success, Egbert now took occasionally the title of King of the English, instead of that of King of Wessex; and the appellation of Britwalda, unused for nearly 200 years, was revived by him.

§ 6. He next turned his arms against North Wales, and ravaged the country; but this was almost his last success, for a new enemy now appeared, who inflicted on the Saxons as many calamities as they in former ages had brought upon the Britons. These were fierce adventurers, or pirates, from Denmark, Norway, and the neighborhood, who are properly to be termed Norsemen, or Northmen, but who, as coming at first principally from Denmark, are usually styled Danes.

§ 7. These people had commenced their ravages in England in the time of Brithric, Edgar's predecessor. They destroyed the church of Lindisfarne (Holy Island), and another at the mouth of the Weir in 794; but some of their ships being wrecked, and the men who reached the shore murdered, they withdrew to Ireland, where they ruined a very celebrated monastery and seat of learning at Rachline Island. Then, partly as traders and partly by force, they established themselves in strong positions along the east coast.

§ 8. In the mean time, others attacked the Scottish coast; but meeting a formidable resistance, they also gradually settled in Ireland, where, as has been mentioned, the natives had hitherto lived securely, cultivating learning and sending forth missionaries, who diffused the light of the Gospel to very distant regions, and were consequently little able to oppose these armed hordes.

§ 9. These settlers were known in Ireland as the Ostmen (or Eastmen), because they came not direct from the north, but from the eastern countries, England and Scotland. Irish writers distinguished the Danes from the Norwegians, calling the first the Dark strangers, and the latter the Fair strangers; but whether this refers to the difference of their complexions, or of their arms and equipments, is not known.

§ 10. The chief commercial cities of Ireland, as Dublin, Waterford, Cork, and Limerick, were all possessed by the Ostmen, and ruled by chiefs, who struck coins on which they are styled kings. They soon became Christians, and had bishops who owned obedience to the Archbishop of Canterbury; and thus an intercourse was

Ireland invaded.

Christianity in Ireland.

Political Divisions.

maintained with England which eventually led to the conquest of the island by Henry the Second.

§ 11. Ireland was never occupied by the Romans or Saxons. When, in later times, we find it connected with English history, it was divided into five kingdoms, known respectively as Munster, Leinster, Meath, Ulster, and Connaught. There were some little independent domains, composed of a seaport and adjoining lands that had no political significance. The English invaders broke up the Irish kingdoms; but four of them retain their ancient names as modern provinces, namely, Munster, Leinster, Ulster, and Connaught.

§ 12. Munster is in the south and south-west of the island, between Waterford and Galway, in which are the cities of Waterford, Cork, Limerick, Cashel, and Clonmel.

§ 13. Leinster (which includes ancient Meath) is on the east coast, from Carlingford to Waterford and Wexford, and comprises the cities of Dublin, Trim, Kildare, and Kilkenny.

§ 14. Ulster extends across the north of Ireland, from Carlingford to Donegal Bay. In it is Armagh, the ecclesiastical capital of the island; also Belfast, Londonderry, and Enniskillen.

§ 15. Connaught, in the west, lies between the bays of Donegal and Galway, and the river Shannon, and contains the cities of ancient and modern Galway, Tuam, Elphin, and Kilala, all cathedral cities; also Athenry, Athlone, Aughrim, and Ballinamuck.

§ 16. It was in the year 832 that the Norsemen reappeared in England, and ravaged the Isle of Sheppey.<sup>a</sup> They next  
<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 2. landed in Dorsetshire, and defeated Egbert at Charmouth, and then they formed an alliance with the Britons in Cornwall. Egbert marched against them, and defeated them at Hengistdown, near Callington; but his victory did not put a stop to their invasions, and in the midst of the anxieties caused by these new foes he died, leaving the crown to his son Ethelwulf, who was ill-fitted to supply his place.

§ 17. Egbert died in the year 837, and was buried at Winchester. His wife was named Redburga, but her parentage is unknown. Besides Ethelbald, who died before him, he had two sons—Ethelwulf, who succeeded him, and Athelstan, who is known as king of Kent. The genealogy of the present royal family of England is satisfactorily established from his time. Queen Victoria is the thirty-sixth in lineal descent from Egbert.



Norsemen invaders again.

Pilgrimage to Rome.

## CHAPTER IV.

## REIGN OF ETHELWULF. [A.D. 837 TO 858.]

§ 1. ETHELWULF had been educated for the Church, but the death of his elder brother obliged him to ascend the throne. He seems to have been a pious and liberal man, but he had not the warlike spirit that was necessary to cope with the invading Northmen or Norsemen, who were led by Ragnar Lodbrok, a fierce chief. Before he was king he commanded the army that conquered Kent from the Mercians; but this and a victory over the Norsemen at Ockley, in Surrey [A.D. 851], where his son Ethelbald was present, were his only successes.

§ 2. Ethelwulf gave up the government of the southern and eastern parts, as the most exposed, to his brother Athelstan, and there the Norsemen received checks both by sea and land; but they defeated Ethelwulf at Charmouth [A.D. 840,] ravaged London, Rochester, and Canterbury, and in 851 remained encamped for the winter in Thanet for the first time. In the same year Athelstan died, and an attempt to drive them from Thanet signally failed. The pirates discovered that there was no longer an Egbert in the land, and they ravaged the country almost without check. In the year 855 they wintered in Sheppey, which was ever after one of their strongholds.

§ 3. No longer supported by his warlike brother Athelstan, Ethelwulf seems to have given up the contest in despair, and leaving the kingdom to the government of his two great advisers, —Swithin, bishop of Winchester, and Alstan, bishop of Sherborne,—he went on a pilgrimage to Rome, taking his youngest and favorite son, Alfred, with him. These pilgrimages were then very common among princes and ecclesiastics of the Christian Saxons who could afford the expense. They crossed the Alps and Apennines in considerable numbers; and the Popes already began to receive a considerable annual revenue from England in the shape of tribute and costly presents. Ethelwulf remained in Rome with Alfred almost a year.

§ 4. On his way home Ethelwulf married a young French princess (Judith, the daughter of Charles the Bald), and, by insisting on having her crowned, an honor that was refused to Saxon

Ethelwulf's offence.

His benevolence.

His kingdom divided.

queens on account of the crimes of Edburga, the wife of Brithric,<sup>a</sup> he so offended his subjects that they forsook him, and he was obliged to retire into the eastern provinces, leaving the rest of his dominions to his sons.

<sup>a</sup> § 35, p. 39.

§ 5. Ethelwulf died shortly after, and was buried at Winchester. By his first wife, Osburga, who was of the race of Cerdic, he left four sons, Ethelbald, Ethelbert, Ethelred, and Alfred, who all became kings; also two daughters, one of whom was married to Burgred, the tributary king of Mercia.

§ 6. Besides many rich presents which he made at Rome for pious and charitable purposes, Ethelwulf ordered that at least one poor person in ten, whether foreigner or native, should be fed and clothed at his expense on each of his estates; and he solemnly charged his successors on the throne to imitate him. He also gave one-tenth of all his lands to the Church, probably for the foundation of monasteries. This grant is often incorrectly spoken of as if it were the origin of tithes in England. These, on the contrary, had been claimed by Augustin and conceded by Ethelbert and his chiefs on the conversion of the Saxons, nearly three centuries before.

§ 7. A gold enamelled ring, which bears the name of Ethelwulf, and which gives a good idea of the state of the arts in the ninth century, is preserved in the British museum.

## CHAPTER V.

REIGN OF ETHELBALD AND ETHELBERT. [A.D. 858 TO 866.]

§ 1. ETHELBALD and Ethelbert, the two elder sons of Ethelwulf, shared his dominions between them, the former possessing Wessex, and the latter the other territories. The whole of their reign was passed in contending against the Norsemen. The invaders stormed Winchester, the capital, ravaged Kent, and wintered yearly in Sheppey and Thanet; and though on one occasion they were followed to the sea-shore, and deprived of the spoil of Winchester, that city had been evidently ruined and rendered an unsafe abode by them; for both the kings, when they died, instead of being buried there with their ancestors, were interred at the remote monastery of Sherborne.

Ethelbald's disgrace.

Ravages of the Norsemen again.

§ 2. Ethelbald, who, like Eadbald,<sup>a</sup> disgraced himself by marrying Judith, his father's widow, died in 860, and Ethelbert in 866. Ecclesiastical and popular displeasure compelled Ethelbald to separate from his step-mother, who returned to France, eloped from a convent with Baldwin, Count of Flanders, and by him became the mother of Matilda, wife of William the Conqueror. The first left no family; his brother left a young son, Ethelwald; but he, according to the Saxon practice, was set aside in favor of his uncle Ethelred, the third son of Ethelwulf.

<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 34.

---

CHAPTER VI.

## REIGN OF ETHELRED. [A.D. 866 TO 871.]

§ 1. THE reign of Ethelred was even more disastrous than the preceding ones. The Norsemen, led by Inguar and Hubba, the sons of Ragnar,<sup>b</sup> whom the Northumbrians had put to death, landed in large numbers in East Anglia, where the people were probably little attached to their rulers from Wessex; and being by them supplied with horses, they commenced a course of horrible devastation. They captured York, and having defeated and killed Ella, whom the people had chosen as their leader, established themselves firmly in the city, and thence sent a force into Mercia. This force was besieged in vain in Nottingham, by the king and his young brother Alfred; but at length a truce was agreed on, and the Norsemen withdrew to York, which they regarded as their capital.

<sup>b</sup> § 1, p. 43.

§ 2. In the fifth year after their landing [A.D. 870] the Norsemen, under Inguar and Hubba, returned to East Anglia, where they defeated and put to death the tributary king Edmund, and left his headless body in the woods. Both head and body were recovered by his friends, and were interred in the place in Suffolk since well known as Bury St. Edmund's. The invaders utterly destroyed the noble monasteries of Peterborough, Croyland, Ely, Bardney, and many others; while at about the same time Anlaf, the chief of another body from Ireland, devastated the north. The invaders lost a great number of men, but they were continually receiving re-en-



Alfred the Great.

His Escape, Flight, and Seclusion.

forcements from the continent. Scandinavia seems to have been then, as in later times, a swarming hive.

§ 3. In the following spring the Norsemen invaded Wessex; and though defeated at Englefield, in Berkshire, they gained victories soon after at Reading, and Basing, and Merton, in the last of which Ethelred received a wound of which he died soon after Easter, 871, and was buried in Wimborne Minster. As he had met his death in battle with idolaters he was esteemed a martyr and a saint, as was, for the like reason, Edmund of East Anglia. The name of the last is still retained in the Calendar, but the other is not.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### REIGN OF ALFRED. [A.D. 871 TO 901.]

§ 1. THIS great prince, the fourth son of Ethelwulf and Osburga, was born at Wantage, in Berkshire, in 849. In his fifth year he was sent to Rome, where the Pope is said to have consecrated him as king, and two years later his father Ethelwulf took him with him on his own journey thither. He assisted his brother Ethelred in his wars with the Norsemen, and when he came to the crown he fought no less than ten battles with them in one year. But he was unsuccessful, and the different kingdoms that had been united by Egbert acted each for itself, and made peace or truce with the invaders. Alfred, however, stubbornly maintained the contest in Wessex, and was at one time successful against the Norsemen at sea. At another time he retook the city of Exeter from them.

§ 2. The army of the invaders usually remained quiet during the winter in some town that they had seized; but in the first days of the year 878, Guthrum, their leader, made a sudden march to Chippenham, where Alfred was keeping Christmas, when the king was surprised and nearly captured by them. Finding himself utterly deserted by his people, he fled for safety to a small island in Somersetshire, since called Athelney, which means the Isle of Nobles. There, by degrees, some of his bold warriors gathered around him.

§ 3. Here Alfred remained until the following May, employed

Alfred in Disguise.

The Danes conquered.

Kingdom dismembered.

in constructing a fortress from which he and a small band of followers made frequent assaults on the enemy; and here, according to old chroniclers, he displayed his humility in quietly bearing the rebuke of a shepherd's wife for neglecting her cakes, which she told him to watch; also his charity, by dividing his only loaf with a beggar.

§ 4. Meanwhile the Norsemen, under Hubba, had landed in Devonshire, but had been defeated and their leader killed, and a standard, to which they attributed magical powers, was taken.<sup>1</sup> This encouraged the people to seek for their king, who was soon at the head of an army. Disguised as a minstrel, he visited the enemy's camp and learned all their plans. Finding them dwelling carelessly, he attacked and defeated them at Ethandune, in Wiltshire; and following them to their stronghold, he soon compelled their whole army to surrender.

§ 5. Hoping to find an aid in these Norsemen, or Danes, as they were generally called, against other enemies, Alfred granted to them the old East Anglian kingdom,<sup>a</sup> <sup>a § 15, p. 23.</sup> where they settled as his tributaries, and generally professed themselves Christians. Guthrum, their chief, was baptized at once, and received the name of Athelstan.

§ 6. Halfdane, another Norseman, and brother of Hubba, had already possessed himself of Northumbria, and other chiefs had apportioned Mercia, so that Alfred had little more than Wessex left to him. Thus the conquests of Egbert were all lost; and England was divided into Wessex, with Mercia as a doubtful dependency, and the Danelagh, or the country to the east and north, where the new settlers lived as a fierce military aristocracy, governed by their own laws. The native inhabitants, as a writer of the time tells us, "long dwelt in captive chains to heathen men."

§ 7. Even before Guthrum and his men had retired to East Anglia, a fresh body of spoilers arrived in the Thames, and for a long time they remained in a strong camp at Fulham, plundering the adjoining country. At last they withdrew to France. Alfred took the best measure in his power to hinder their return by build-

<sup>1</sup> This was a small triangular flag, of blood-red color, on which a black raven had been worked by the three daughters of Ragnar Lodbrok, one of the earliest of the rovers who visited Britain. The bird was believed to flutter its wings or to hang them down on the eve of a battle, and thus to indicate victory or defeat.



Alfred's wise measures.

His Learning, Patriotism, and Piety.

ing a fleet, with which he cruised about in the English Channel and captured many of their ships.

§ 8. The Norsemen, having ravaged France, returned to England in 885, and being joined by their countrymen from East Anglia, who could be bound by no oaths or promises, and were called by the old writers "truce-breakers," they besieged Rochester. Alfred drove them beyond sea again, and captured sixteen of their ships. Although his fleet was soon afterwards defeated by the East Anglians, he strengthened it, and thus was able to hinder any other invasion or war for nearly eight years.

§ 9. This interval of peace was most judiciously employed by Alfred. His first care was to repair the ruined cities and churches; his next to draw up a code of laws, and to improve the administration of justice. Then, to provide for the better defence of the country, he organized something like the present militia, by which every freeman was obliged to appear in arms when called on, and a select body of guards was kept constantly on foot. This was the first standing army maintained in England.

§ 10. But these were not the only matters that engaged the attention of Alfred. Unlike his elder brothers, he had been induced to learn to read, in order to acquire a beautiful book which his mother showed to him; and his thirst for knowledge being thus awakened, he neglected no opportunity of improvement. Asser, a Briton and monk, and constant companion of the king; John, from Ireland; Grimbold, from France, and other learned men, were bountifully maintained at his court; and when near his fortieth year he acquired the Latin language, from which he translated several works on religion or philosophy.

§ 11. By his example Alfred revived the taste for learning among his subjects, which had greatly decayed in consequence of the wars; and he established schools in many places, though he did not found the University of Oxford, which he is sometimes said to have done. He evinced, too, his gratitude for his deliverance from his enemies by founding the monasteries of Athelney and Shaftesbury; also his charity by sending relief to needy scholars in Ireland, Scotland, Wales, and France, as well as to the Christians in the East Indies.

§ 12. But the calamities of Alfred's reign were not yet over. In the year 893 the Norsemen, who had experienced some severe defeats in France, again visited England in great force under



Alfred's success against Invaders.

Peace and its Results.

Hasting, a skilful leader, a sort of Scandinavian Hannibal. One body landed in Romney Marsh, and built a fort at Appledore, while another fixed its quarters at Milton, near the Isle of Sheppey. This new war lasted four years, and extended to every part of England.

§ 13. The settlers joined the invaders, and whilst those from Northumbria attacked Devonshire, those from Kent passed through Essex across the country as far as Shropshire. Alfred, however, dealt vigorously and successfully with them. Those in Shropshire were besieged in their camp, and obliged to surrender after starvation had compelled them to eat their horses. Those who had ascended the Lea had their ships left dry by the river being cut into the several channels that are now to be seen about Ware and Hertford; and the wife and sons of Hasting were made prisoners, but were set at liberty by Alfred. At last, in 897, after the greater part of their shipping had been destroyed, the main body laid down their arms and retired to East Anglia or Northumbria.

§ 14. Some, however, went to their countrymen in France, and, procuring fresh ships and arms, returned in small bodies and plundered the southern coasts. Alfred built swift vessels and went in pursuit of them; and regarding them no longer as public enemies but as pirates, he hanged all the prisoners that he made, which soon brought the war to a close.

§ 15. For the brief remainder of his reign Alfred lived undisturbed, and carried on his valuable labors for the improvement of his people. Nothing was too great or too small to engage his attention if benefit could be derived from it. He invented horn lanterns to shield the tapers, which served for clocks, from the wind; he taught his subjects improved modes of building both houses and ships, and procured the most skilful mariners and hunters and workers in metals to settle among them. An interesting specimen of the personal decorations of his time, known as Alfred's jewel, was found near his retreat of Athelney, and is now preserved at Oxford.<sup>1</sup>

§ 16. At length Alfred's health, which through his whole life

<sup>1</sup> It is an ornament of gold of oval form, evidently intended as a pendant. It was well wrought and skilfully ornamented. In the centre is a rudely engraved outline of a human figure (feminine) holding flowers, and around it is the inscription, AELFRED MI HÆT GEWEREAN—Alfred had me wrought.

Alfred's Family.

His Laws.

Troubles of his Successor.

had been very delicate, gave way entirely under his toils. He died on the 26th of October, 901, and was buried at Winchester, in the new minster, which he had founded.

§ 17. Alfred married, in 868, Elswitha, the daughter of Ethelred, an East Anglian noble. Among their children were Edward, who succeeded his father on the throne; Ethelfleda, who married Ethelred, the tributary king of Mercia, who after her husband's death greatly assisted her brother's operations against the Norsemen; Elfrida, the wife of Baldwin, Count of Flanders; and Ethelgina, who was abbess of the nunnery at Shaftesbury, founded by her father.

§ 18. Writers are unanimous in the praise of Alfred, but in their admiration many ascribe to him matters that really belong to his predecessors. His laws, he himself says, are only a selection of what was current before his time, and they make no mention of trial by jury, which is usually attributed to him. On the other hand he may justly be considered the founder of the militia system of Great Britain, and also of that invaluable safeguard to its shores, the royal navy.

## CHAPTER VIII.

REIGN OF EDWARD THE ELDER. [A.D. 901 TO 925.]

§ 1. EDWARD was thirty years of age when he became king, and had had experience in war during his father's lifetime. His succession was opposed by his cousin Ethelwald, a son of Ethelbald, Alfred's elder brother,<sup>a</sup> who, as already mentioned,<sup>b</sup> had been set aside on the death of his father, on account of his youth, and who had been educated by Alfred. The people of Wessex refused to allow his claim, on which he retired among the Norsemen in Northumbria.

§ 2. These gladly took advantage of the death of the great king to renew their ravages. In this they were assisted by Ethelwald. A body of them penetrated into Kent, but were there defeated by Edward. Ethelwald then passed into Essex, and with his allies ravaged Mercia; but while they were thus employed Ed-

<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 44.

<sup>b</sup> § 2, p. 45.

## Ravages of Norsemen.

## Ethelfred's Conquests.

ward burst into the fen country between the Ouse and the sea, and desolated it. A great battle ensued, in which Ethelwald was killed [905], as well as Eric, the chief of the Norsemen; but the horde of plunderers was still so powerful that Edward, from necessity, made a truce with them [A.D. 906], which left them in undisturbed possession of all their spoil and all their conquests. Edward was a politic prince, and he took steps which in the end reduced the greater part of the invaders to obedience. His plan was, as soon as he had recovered strength, to move slowly but steadily against them, and to erect fortresses at each favorable spot to secure his conquests. Ethelfleda, his sister, and widow of the Earl of Mercia, in whom Alfred's spirit seemed to survive, ably seconded him by rebuilding Chester, and establishing forts at Stafford, Tamworth, and Warwick, and other places in Mercia.

§ 3. In the fourth year of the truce [A.D. 910] Edward sent a force which remained for five weeks in the Danelagh, ravaging everything, and which totally defeated the Norsemen at Tettenhall, in Staffordshire. In the next year he obtained possession of London, and thence he marched into the counties of Essex and Hertford, where he built castles at Witham, Maldon, Ware, and Hertford, which commanded the course of the rivers, and prevented the ravages of pirates from the sea.

§ 4. The Britons of Powys (Central Wales) had allied themselves with the Norsemen, but they were defeated by Ethelfleda in a battle at Brecknock. Leicester and York were soon afterward surrendered to her by treaty. Edward captured in succession all the Danish strongholds called the Five Burghs, and then turning southward, took Bedford and Towcester, and strengthened them with stone walls, as was the habit of his father. The Norsemen now began to treat with him; and while the great body swore to be his subjects, the chief, Thurkytel, and the more warlike, withdrew to France.

§ 5. In 922 Ethelfleda died, and Mercia was incorporated with Edward's dominions. He then advanced into Northumbria, building by the way forts at Thelwall and Manchester, as well as at Nottingham and in the Peak of Derby. To retard his march, Regnold, a Norseman, seized York, but he was soon obliged to surrender, and Edward was [A.D. 924] acknowledged as "father and lord," not only by the Norsemen, but by the Britons in North



Edward acknowledged King of the whole Country.

Wales and in Cumberland, and by the Scots south of the Clyde. This fact gave rise to the claim of superiority over Scotland which was put forward by Henry the Second, Edward the First, and other kings in later days. The primitive foundation of the British monarchy was now laid. Hitherto the imperial title of Britwalda<sup>a</sup> carried with it very little of imperial power, for tributary rulers were not dutiful subjects. And Edward was by no means an imperial ruler, for the king formed only a co-ordinate branch of the government in which the people took part, in a representative assembly composed of bishops and nobles.

§ 6. Thus triumphant, and ruling a far larger extent of country than the great Alfred, Edward died in 925, and was buried at Winchester by the side of his father. His son Athelstan succeeded. Edward left two other sons, who also became kings, and several daughters, most of whom were married to foreign princes. Among them may be mentioned Egina, the wife of Charles the Fourth of France; Ethilda, the wife of Hugh, Count of Paris, from whom sprang the Capetian line, which ruled France, under various appellations, until the flight of Louis Philippe in 1848; Edith, the wife of the emperor Otho the Great; and Thyra, the wife of Gormo, king of Denmark, and grandmother of Sweyn, the father of Canute.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### REIGN OF ATHELSTAN. [A.D. 925 TO 940.]

§ 1. ATHELSTAN, the eldest son of Edward, steadily pursued his father's policy. He gave his sister Edith to Sihtric, the Norseman or Danish prince who ruled Northumbria, on condition of his becoming a Christian; but as he neglected to do so, and treated his young wife harshly, her brother attacked and killed him, and reduced his dominions. Then Eadulf of Bamborough, a Norseman, as well as Constantine, king of the Scots, and the kings of Cornwall and Gwent (Monmouthshire), made a formal submission to Athelstan at a place called Eamot. Edith retired to a nunnery at Tamworth, where she lived many years, and was esteemed a

The Career of Athelstan.

A Terrible Battle.

saint ; but the sons of Sihtric, who were her step-children, retired to Ireland.

§ 2. The marriages of his sisters with so many foreign princes naturally connected Athelstan with the affairs of the continent, and he gave a refuge to his nephew, Louis the Fourth of France, who from his long stay in England acquired in France the surname of the Foreigner. Athelstan was liberal in endowing monasteries, and made laws which favored commerce. He was strict in his administration of justice against thieves, but caused the death of his brother Edwin, it is believed, who, on a false charge of conspiracy against him, was sent to sea, it is said, in a crazy boat and left to perish. The charge is made upon slight evidence.

§ 3. The States above mentioned which had been subdued did not adhere to their agreement, and in 933 Athelstan ravaged the south of Scotland with a fleet and army. He also imposed a tribute of threescore and three pounds in money, besides a number of horses, hawks, and dogs, on the kings of North Wales. But this did not prevent a formidable rising against him, which he had **great difficulty in crushing.**

§ 4. Anlaf, the son of Sihtric, a Norwegian prince, who had become the head of the Ostmen in Ireland,<sup>a</sup> leagued himself with Constantine, the king of the Scots, and <sup>a § 9, p. 41.</sup> prepared to recover Northumbria. He collected a large army in Ireland [A.D. 937], and being joined by the Scots, landed on the Humber. Athelstan marched against them, accompanied by his brother Edmund, but no battle was fought until they had reached the extremity of Northumbria.

§ 5. There, at a place called Brunanburg, the Norsemen and the Scots had fortified themselves, after the Scandinavian fashion, with a strong stockade of timber within a deep trench, and when attacked by the Saxons a most desperate contest ensued. The trench was passed, the "board-wall" was cleft, and after a day's fighting the allies were put to flight. Five kings and seven earls lay dead on the field, besides an innumerable host of their men. Anlaf escaped ; but the chronicler who celebrates this great victory in verse, says the carnage was as great as had ever been on the island since the coming of the Angles and Saxons. The victors pursued the "loathed nations" throughout the night, and the Mercians, who were supposed to be in their favor, showed themselves as fierce as the West Saxons. The fugitives fled north of

Athelstan Supreme Ruler.

Edmund's Career.

His Cruelty.

the friths, and Anlaf escaped with a few followers to Ireland, greatly dispirited.

§ 6. Athelstan next turned his arms against the West Welsh. He captured Exeter, which he fortified, and passing entirely through Cornwall, subdued the Scilly Isles.<sup>a</sup> In token  
<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 2. of his victory, and in accordance with a vow in the event of his success, he rebuilt the church of St. Burian near the Land's End, and bestowed certain privileges on it which it retains to the present day. After this no one seems to have dared to raise arms against him in any part of the island. Athelstan died in 940, at Gloucester, and was buried at Wimborne Minster. He was never married, and he was succeeded by his half-brother Edmund, his fellow-soldier at Brunanburg.

## CHAPTER X.

REIGN OF EDMUND THE FIRST. [A.D. 940 TO 946.]

§ 1. THE reign of Edmund was occupied much as that of his brother had been. Anlaf, recalled by the Danes from Ireland, was chosen by the Northumbrians as their king, and he was at first so successful in his war with Edmund as to capture Tamworth, then the chief town of Mercia. The king, however, retook it, and besieged Anlaf in Leicester, when the latter, consenting to be baptized, had his kingdom confirmed to him. Regnold of York also submitted, when Edmund, free from his hostility, again turned his arms against Anlaf, put him to flight, and appointed another ruler.

§ 2. Edmund next expelled the inhabitants of the Five Burghs,<sup>b</sup> and having peopled these towns with Saxons, marched against the Norsemen in Cumberland. He conquered them, expelled their King, Dunmail, and granted the province to Malcolm, King of Scotland, who promised to be his ally both by sea and by land. He barbarously deprived the two sons of Dunmail of their eyes, and then returned homeward. The king did not long survive this atrocious act. He was killed soon afterward in his own hall, at Pucklechurch, in Gloucestershire, by an outlaw named Leofa.

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 51.



Edwin's violent Death.

Treachery of Northumbrians, and Intrigue.

§ 3. He was holding a banquet in honor of St. Augustin, the converter of the nation, and seeing Leofa among the guests, ordered him to be expelled. The outlaw persisted in remaining, when Edmund seized him by the hair and threw him on the ground, but was himself stabbed by Leofa, and expired on the spot. He died on the 26th of May, 946, and was buried at Glastonbury, where a monastery had been established by Dunstan, his chaplain. Edmund showed such a determined and practical taste for elegance and improvement, that he has been called "the magnificent." His brother Edred succeeded him, as his two sons, Edwy and Edgar, were children. Their mother's name was Elgiva, and she became a nun on her husband's death.

## CHAPTER XI.

## REIGN OF EDRED. [A.D. 946 TO 955.]

§ 1. THE Northumbrians rose in insurrection on the death of Edmund; but Edred marched against them, and extorted a fresh submission. This took place at Topcliffe, in Yorkshire, to which place Wulstan, the Archbishop of York, and all the chief men repaired, and pledged themselves by oaths to be Edred's faithful subjects. But he had scarcely left their country when they chose Eric, the brother of the King of Denmark, for their ruler, and a new war ensued, in which the great church of Ripon was burnt.

§ 2. Edred soon reduced them to another temporary submission, and Eric was abandoned. They were not, however, to be reconciled to the sway of the southern king, and they speedily again chose Anlaf, the Norwegian,<sup>a</sup> for their ruler; and though they expelled him in a short time, it was only to re-  
 call the greater Eric. Much of this confusion was caused by the intrigues of Wulstan, and in consequence Edred seized and imprisoned him; after which the Northumbrians again expelled Eric, and submitted. The archbishop was restored to them after a two years' confinement; but, to mark their reduction to the condition of subjects, their rulers for the future, though almost independent, had no longer the title of kings; they were called only dukes, or counts, or earls.

<sup>a</sup> § 4, p. 53.

The famous Dunstan Prime Minister.

Edred's character.

§ 3. Whilst Edred pursued these wars, which endured for nearly the whole of his reign, he left the government of the State mainly in the hands of the abbot Dunstan, who labored earnestly to bring about a change in the religious affairs of the land. This was to substitute monks for the married or secular clergy, who, like the canons and prebendaries of the Anglican Church of the present day, were attached to the different cathedrals. He also labored earnestly for the firm establishment of the Pope's supremacy in Great Britain. The Roman pontiff at that time assumed the right to exercise spiritual dominion over all the earth as the infallible vicegerent of God.

§ 4. Dunstan was the nephew of Athelm, a former Archbishop of Canterbury, and had been educated for the Church; but visiting the court of Athelstan, he there became a royal favorite, and relinquished his intention. He was skilled in music and painting, and many other arts; but he met with rivals, who accused him of magic, and he was driven from the court. He now passed over to Fleury, where there was a famous Benedictine monastery, and joined the order. After a time he returned to England, became chaplain to Edmund,<sup>a</sup> the brother of Athelstan, and induced that prince to found a monastery at Glastonbury on the model of that at Fleury, on the Continent, and to place him at its head.

<sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 54.

§ 5. Here Dunstan remained a while, training up future abbots and bishops, and gaining applause for his austere religious life; but Edred, who was the brother of Edmund, drew him from his retreat, and made him in effect his chief minister. He soon procured the foundation of a second monastery at Abingdon, over which he placed Ethelwold, one of the monks from Glastonbury, who labored incessantly to render his community a model in music and singing, the performance of public worship, and rigid sanctity of life.

§ 6. Whilst Dunstan was thus high in power, his plan for spreading Benedictine monasteries far and wide received a sudden check by the death of his royal patron. Edred, who from boyhood had suffered from disease and was puny in body, died at Frome on the 23d of November, 955, and was buried at Winchester. He was called by the surname of Edred the Weak-footed. He had no child to inherit his title, and his eldest nephew, Edwy, succeeded him.

Edwy the Fair outraged by Prelates.

## CHAPTER XII.

### REIGN OF EDWY. [A.D. 955 TO 958.]

§ 1. EDWY, when he became king, was a gay, thoughtless, handsome youth of only fifteen, and was called "Edwy the Fair." He at once married a princess named Elgiva, although she was very nearly related to him, in spite of the remonstrances of Odo, a Dane, who was the Archbishop of Canterbury, Dunstan, and other counsellors. He was crowned at Kingston by the archbishop, but gave great offence to his nobles by withdrawing from the banquet that followed, disgusted with the coarse carousals. They despatched Dunstan and Cynesius, Bishop of Lichfield, to request his return; and the messengers, finding him unwilling to comply, dragged him from the side of his young wife and brought him back almost by force. And while in her chamber, the insolent monk, flushed with wine, assailed the queen and her mother with brutal language.

§ 2. Edwy was stung by the outrage. A quarrel was thus commenced which only ended with the king's life. Dunstan withdrew to Glastonbury; but being then called on to account for the treasure that had passed through his hands in the reign of Edred, for the establishment of the monasteries, and unable to produce vouchers, he found his solemn declaration that all had been duly expended disregarded. He felt that his ruin was impending; and escaping from a party sent to seize him and put out his eyes, he retired to Flanders, where he was protected by the Count, who was a grandson of King Alfred. The king now seized on the property of the new monasteries, and placed them in charge of clergy who claimed the right to have wives, like other men. The nobles, whose messenger Dunstan had been, espoused his cause. Finding that Edwy would not listen to them, they took up arms, and declared his young brother, Edgar, their king. After a brief struggle Edwy was deprived of Mercia and Northumbria; but by the mediation of Odo, who stirred up the revolt, he was allowed to retain Wessex.

§ 3. The archbishop now formally declared the marriage of Edwy with Elgiva unlawful and invalid; and as Edwy refused to separate from her, Odo had her seized, branded in the face with red-hot iron to spoil her beauty, and carried over to Ireland as a



Death of Elgiva and Elwy.

Edgar's Arrogance.

Dunstan.

slave. The king, in revenge, plundered the churches: but the people of Wessex took up arms against him, and he soon became a fugitive. Elgiva, who had escaped from Ireland, returning to join him, fell into the hands of some of the partisans of Dunstan and Odo, who put her to death by cruel tortures.

§ 4. The unhappy young king did not long survive the loss of Elgiva. He died on the first of October, 958, after a merely nominal reign of less than three years: but whether his death was occasioned by violence or not is uncertain. His brother Edgar succeeded him.

---

## CHAPTER XIII.

### REIGN OF EDGAR. [A.D. 958 TO 975.]

§ 1. THE accession of Edgar, a boy only fifteen years of age [A.D. 957], was immediately followed by the return of the abbot Dunstan, who became his minister, and he and the monks managed the kingdom. His reign was distinguished by its peaceable, orderly character, and the king received the name of the Pacific. He engaged in no wars: but he kept up a strong fleet, with which he every year made the circuit of his dominions, and thus prevented the invasions of the Norsemen. Eight petty kings paid homage to him, and on one occasion even rowed his barge that bore him on the Dee to the monastery of St. John at Chester, he himself acting as steersman. He styled himself monarch of Albion.

§ 2. On the first occasion that offered, Dunstan made himself a bishop. He took the see of Worcester in 957, and that of London in 958: and in 960 he was translated to Canterbury as Archbishop or Primate of the Church. In this high station he was enabled to carry forward the work that the death of King Edred had interrupted. The monasteries that had been plundered were restored. Ely and Peterborough, which had been destroyed by the Norsemen, were rebuilt, and forty-eight more were founded by the king, besides others by his subjects. Ethelwold, the abbot of Abingdon, became Bishop of Winchester: and Oswald, the nephew of Archbishop Odo, was made Bishop of Worcester and afterwards Archbishop of York.

The married Clergy persecuted.

Trickery of Monks.

§ 3. Occupied as Dunstan was with the civil affairs of the State, his work of displacing the married clergy was mainly carried on by these two bishops; and so earnestly and successfully did they do the will of the fiery primate, that Ethelwold is known as "the father of monks," and "Oswald's law" became a term for the conversion of a chapter into a monastery. One instance will show how this unrighteousness was accomplished.

§ 4. Oswald, as soon as he was appointed Bishop of Worcester, assembled the canons, or resident married clergy, and urged on them the duty of becoming monks of the order of St. Benedict, which would involve the surrender of all their property, and separation from their families. This they resolutely refused; and when he threatened to expel them they sought the protection of powerful friends, and he was obliged to give way. But the bishop was far from abandoning his design. He procured funds from the pliant and profligate king, and erected a monastery adjoining the cathedral, in which he planted a number of monks, some Saxon, but mostly French, who sang, and preached, and prayed, and made gorgeous processions, and gave alms, and led an austere life. The consequence was, that the church of the monastery was continually crowded with the dazzled, while the cathedral was half deserted. And as every worshipper was compelled to bring an offering, however small, to the altar, the chapter suffered greatly in purse as well as in public estimation.

§ 5. In the course of a year a few of the secular clergy began to yield to the pressure of necessity, and wives and children were abandoned at the bidding of arrogant ecclesiastics, who wielded the temporal power of the State. At this crisis [A.D. 961] a pestilence swept over the land. The prelates and monks declared it to be a warning of greater evils unless the married clergy should yield. The king called councils of nobles to urge the measure. At one of these, held at Winchester, the friends of the clergy were so numerous that the king wavered, and was about to dissolve the meeting, when Dunstan resorted to a clever trick. A peculiar sound was heard. The Primate declared that a crucifix on the wall spoke to him, "God forbid it to be done!" The awe-struck nobles forsook the married clergy, and those who refused to become monks were driven from their places.

§ 6. The reign of Edgar, which lasted sixteen years, presents few incidents in common with those of his predecessors. He made

Edgar's Career and Character.

His Death.

His Family.

stately journeys yearly through every part of his dominions, in which he looked strictly to the administration of justice. His great assemblies made many laws for the protection of the property of the Church; and he encouraged commerce by affording substantial protection to traders. Of this he gave a memorable instance in the year 968, when he ravaged the Isle of Thanet, because some Norseman merchants from York had been ill-treated there.

§ 7. The personal conduct of Edgar was very bad. Although he was liberal to the Church, and in public matters suffered himself to be guided by Dunstan, in his private life he neglected all his admonitions, and was licentious and cruel. He carried away nuns by force from the convents, and murdered one of his nobles in order to marry his wife. For these crimes Dunstan forbade him to wear his bawble, the crown, on his head for the space of seven years, and to fast; but not a word was said about restitution and repentance. His treatment of his vassal kings also was overbear-

ing and haughty, as already mentioned.<sup>a</sup> When he

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 58. imposed a tribute of wolves' heads on the Welsh princes instead of money, it was probably more to show that he did not need their property, than with the enlightened view that has been ascribed to him, of extirpating the wolves, which was not accomplished for ages after his time.

§ 8. Edgar, when very young, married Ethelfleda, who died soon after, leaving him two sons, the eldest named Edward; and he afterwards married Elfrida, the widow of his murdered noble, Ethelwold, just mentioned, who became the mother of Ethelred. Edgar died in the thirty-second year of his age [July 8, 975], and was buried, not with former kings at Winchester, but at Glastonbury, the favorite retreat of his adviser, Dunstan. His son Edward succeeded him.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

REIGN OF EDWARD THE SECOND, THE MARTYR. [A.D. 975 TO 979.]

§ 1. THE orderly government that Dunstan had established seems to have fallen to pieces on the death of Edgar. Both his sons by Ethelfleda were young; and Elfrida, his widow, endeavored to



Dunstan's Monks Expelled.

Public Discontent.

Edward murdered.

secure the throne for her own child in preference to Edward, the elder born. Dunstan succeeded in placing Edward on the throne, but, as he had no longer the active support of a king, much that he had done to establish monasteries was promptly undone. The monks were driven out, and the canons or secular clergy were restored; but each body had its partisans, and their fierce disputes reduced the country to a state of anarchy, which prepared the way for the miseries of the next reign. These religious contests, always selfish because they were for personal power, and not for an idea, were very bitter.

§ 2. The Norsemen settlers were greatly irritated by seeing one of their number, Oslac, the earl of Northumbria, driven into exile, and they seem to have encouraged the sea-rovers to renew their depredations. A famine occurred, which the monks represented as a judgment on their oppressors. A council was held at Calne in consequence, where the secular clergy, by the aid of Beornhelm, a Scottish bishop, pressed hard upon Dunstan, and he was only saved from a formal defeat by an accident. The floor of the chamber on which his adversaries stood gave way, and many were killed and wounded, whilst he escaped unhurt by clinging to a beam. This was looked on as an interposition of Providence in his favor, and secured him from further opposition. But the disorders of the State soon called off attention from the affairs of the Church, and the plans of Dunstan were never fully carried out. They were partially executed afterward.

§ 3. In the fourth year of his reign, the young king, being out hunting in the neighborhood of Corfe Castle, where his step-mother Elfrida resided, paid her a visit unattended. She received him with apparent joy, but by her direction one of her attendants stabbed him in the back as he sat on horseback drinking the parting cup at her gate. The youth attempted to rejoin his companions, but falling from his horse he was dragged along the ground until he died. That event occurred on the 18th of March, 979, when his half-brother Ethelred succeeded him. Edward's body was at first buried secretly at Wareham, but was afterwards removed to Shaftesbury, where it was interred with royal pomp. The sufferer was esteemed a martyr, and the superstitious people, made to believe that miracles were wrought by his remains, visited his tomb in great numbers, and made offerings to the monks in attendance.

## CHAPTER XV.

REIGN OF ÆTHELRED THE SECOND. [A.D. 979 TO 1016.]

§ 1. THE reign of Æthelred was longer and more calamitous than that of any of his predecessors. He was but in his eleventh year when he became king, and Dunstan, who crowned him, predicted, it is said, the evils that afterwards befell the land. "Thus saith the Lord," he cried, "The sword shall never depart from your house, but shall rage against you all the days of your life, slaying your offspring; until your kingdom is transferred to another family."

§ 2. The prophecy, as it was esteemed, of Dunstan soon began to receive its fulfilment. The great fleet that his vigilance had maintained under Edgar, had apparently been dispersed by the advisers of Edward, and the Norsemen at once recommenced their ravages. Southampton and the Isle of Thanet first felt the scourge; then Cheshire was devastated; next the Cornish and Welsh coasts were visited, and a celebrated monastery at Padstow was destroyed; and so low had the naval power of the State fallen from the 3,600 ships that Edgar is said to have maintained, that "three ships of pirates" were strong enough to desolate the whole Isle of Portland.

§ 3. In the midst of these calamities the young king showed his tyrannical nature by laying waste the lands of Elfstan, the Bishop of Rochester, against whom he had conceived offence. Dunstan adjured him to desist, but he would not listen to the Primate until he had received a bribe of a hundred pounds of silver. Dunstan sent the money, but accompanied it by a repetition of his declaration that evil days were coming, though he should not live to see many of them.

§ 4. This was, indeed, Dunstan's last public act, as he died very soon afterwards at the age of seventy, leaving a name that has suffered as much from the indiscriminate praise of his friends as from the attacks of his enemies. Judging him by the age in which he lived, he was undoubtedly a great and wise man. Miracles were ascribed to him, and the Pope canonized him as a saint.

§ 5. The ravages of the Norsemen were so furiously carried on, that the king and his councillors lost all heart; and in the year 991



Ethelred's Cruelty.

Invasion of Norsemen.

Tribute.

a tribute of £10,000 (\$50,000) was paid to them by the advice of Biricius, a successor of Dunstan in the see of Canterbury, but no inheritor of his spirit. In the following year a fleet was fitted out. The command of it was given to Elfric, the son of a duke of Mercia who had been banished, and who now took vengeance by deserting to the enemy. The weak and cruel Ethelred ordered the eyes of the deserter's son to be put out; but in after years he again intrusted Elfric with an army, when he again became a traitor. But unfortunately he was far from being the only one; indeed, the incapable monarch seems hardly to have had one really trustworthy adherent.

§ 6. Fresh bodies of the Norsemen assailed Northumbria and East Anglia, and as the troops raised against them were mainly of the same race, no effectual resistance was offered. Bamborough, the great stronghold of Northumbria, was stormed, and the country permanently occupied. Then followed a still more formidable attack by Sweyn and Olave, or Anlaf, two Norwegian kings, who ravaged Kent and the southern coast, and took up their winter quarters at Southampton, in 994. The former expedient of paying a tribute was resorted to, and the invaders at last withdrew on receiving the sum of £16,000, or \$80,000. Olave, who had become a Christian, took an oath never more to come in hostile manner against England, and he kept his word; but Sweyn returned in after years.

§ 7. There would seem to have been a period of tranquillity from this time up to the year 997; but after that the Norsemen renewed their ravages, and never desisted from them until they had seated Canute, the son of Sweyn, on the throne. They burnt the monastery of Tavistock; settled themselves in the Isle of Wight; gained victories wherever they fought, and at last neither fleet nor army durst meet them. A fresh tribute of £24,000 (\$120,000) was paid to them in 1002, and a peace concluded; but this was soon broken by Ethelred, who with equal cruelty and folly ordered a treacherous massacre of a body-guard of Norsemen which he had taken into his pay, and who, he was informed, had a design on his life. The butchery was fixed for St. Brice's day (Nov. 13) in that year, as the Norsemen, even if not Christians, usually laid aside their arms and visited the churches on festival days.

§ 8. The people had suffered much from the insolence and



Butchery of Norsemen.

Coalition.

Ravages by Sweyn.

rapacity of these mercenaries, and they even exceeded the orders of Ethelred. They dragged many of them from a refuge that they had sought in a church outside the wall of London, which is still known as St. Clement Danes, and put them to death, and even more barbarously murdered women and children. Among the sufferers was Gunhilda, the sister of Sweyn, who had married a Saxon noble, and was in general highly esteemed as a mediatrix between her countrymen and the people. Her sons were put to death before her face, and she was then beheaded, declaring with her last breath, that God would not suffer her blood to flow unavenged.

§ 9. Such was soon seen to be the case. Ethelred had just before endeavored to strengthen himself by marrying Emma, the sister of Richard, Duke of Normandy, with whom he had lately been hostile, probably hoping for that prince's assistance in case of an invasion; but the event was precisely the reverse. The Normans were of the same blood as the Norsemen; and although settled for a century in France, looked on them as their countrymen, whose cause they were bound to favor. Hence many of them who came over with the new queen, and were put in places of trust, regarded Sweyn, and not Ethelred, as their king.

§ 10. Early the following year [A.D. 1003] Sweyn appeared on the west coast of England with a powerful fleet and army, breathing vengeance and ravaging with fire and sword. The flag-ship of the Norwegian was in the form of an enormous serpent, and was called "The Great Dragon." Exeter, a strong city that had in former years successfully resisted him, was betrayed to him by Hugo, a Norman, who governed it for Queen Emma, and it was entirely ruined; Salisbury and Wilton were sacked; Norwich and Thetford were burnt, and Ulfkytel and all the chief men of East Anglia were cut off in a terrible battle. At last, in the year 1004, "the great famine," the natural consequence of their ravages, obliged the invaders to withdraw for a time.

§ 11. In 1006 Sweyn again landed at Sandwich, and ravaged

Kent. Then making the Isle of Wight<sup>a</sup> his winter quarters, his plundering parties spread far and wide,

<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 2.

in a manner that showed their contempt for any force that might be brought against them. Ethelred fled to the remote district of Shropshire, and there summoned his council to devise "some means by which the land might be saved before it was utterly de-

Treachery and Piracy.

Ravages by Pirates.

Sweyn King.

stroyed." Their deliberations had the usual result, and peace was again purchased by a tribute of £36,000, or \$180,000.

§ 12. This was in 1007, about which time the government of Mercia was committed to Edric Streona, great-uncle of Earl Godwin, the father of King Harold, and a descendant of the old royal family of the South Saxons, who had married Ethelred's daughter, but is accused of most treacherous conduct towards him. That and the following year were passed in fitting out a great fleet, which at last rendezvoused at Sandwich, in 1009; but scarcely was it collected when Wulfnoth of Sussex (the nephew of Edric, who had married Ethelred's daughter), and one of its chiefs, was accused of treason, on which he fled with twenty ships and turned pirate. Eighty ships were sent against him, but a storm damaged many of them, and he burnt the rest; so that when Thurkill, a Norseman, appeared at Sandwich, there was no one to resist him. Having laid Kent under tribute, he proceeded to besiege London with part of his forces, and remained before it during the winter, while others burnt Oxford. But London successfully resisted them; and in the spring they marched from East Anglia into Wessex, the Saxons being now so disheartened that "each one fled as he best might." The invaders now scornfully refused a fresh offer of tribute, and continued their ravages until in the year 1010 they captured Canterbury, through the treachery of Aelmar, the abbot of St. Augustin's, and made the Archbishop Alphege, who had defended it, their prisoner.

§ 13. The next year [A.D. 1011] a tribute of £48,000 (\$240,000) was offered to the invaders and accepted, when they withdrew, but not before they had barbarously murdered the Archbishop, who had been for several months a prisoner in their hands, and who refused to pay an enormous ransom for his life, saying that he had no wealth but what belonged to the Church and the poor, and he would not rob them to save himself.

§ 14. The following summer saw another invasion by Sweyn, but it was his last. He was accompanied by his son Canute, and made a kind of triumphal progress through the country, no one dreaming of opposing him except the Londoners. Leaving them, he marched to Oxford, and Winchester, and Bath, and then returning to Northumbria, he was formally accepted as king. Ethelred now sent his queen, Emma, and her sons Edward and Alfred, to Duke Richard in Normandy, and followed them himself. The



Death of Sweyn.

Canute King.

Ethelred's career.

Londoners at last submitted, when Sweyn levied "a full tribute" on them, and his general, Thurkill, encamped with a strong force at Greenwich.

§ 15. It was towards the close of the year 1012 that the Danish king seemed thus firmly established in Great Britain; and at the middle of January, 1013, he was acknowledged as "Full King of England." On the 3d of February he died; and though his army chose his son Canute as their king, the council of the English recalled Ethelred. He returned; promised amendment of his conduct, and for once displayed unexpected spirit, by attacking Canute and driving him to his ships. Canute showed his barbarity by cutting off the hands, ears, and noses of numerous hostages, and then setting them on shore at Sandwich.

§ 16. Instigated by Edric, who was yet his favorite, Ethelred, soon after Canute's departure, put to death Siferth and Morcar, two powerful chiefs of the Anglo-Danes, and thus again disgusted his subjects. Encouraged by this discontent, Canute again landed in Wessex, when he was joined by the treacherous Edric, and passed through Mercia to Northumberland, while Ethelred, though he had collected an army, feared to engage him, and once more shut himself up in London. Meanwhile the Danish army had proclaimed Canute king of the whole country. He prepared to attack Ethelred in London; but before he could reach the city the Saxon king died [April 23, A.D. 1017], leaving to his son Edmund a kingdom which was comprised within the walls of London.

§ 17. Ethelred was twice married, and left a numerous family. His first wife, Elgiva, the daughter of Thorold, an East Anglian earl, was the mother of his successor, and ten more children; his second wife, Emma, bore him Edward, and Alfred, and Goda, who married Eustace of Boulogne. Emma was so beautiful that she was called the "Pearl of Normandy," but the Saxons disliked her name, and styled her Elgiva.

§ 18. The title of the "Unready," given to Ethelred by Dunstan, is sufficiently descriptive of his character if taken in its modern English meaning; but in the Saxon it is a scornful jest on his name. Ethelred means "noble counsel;" but "se Unrede" added to it gives the meaning of "The noble counsellor who cannot advise." His whole reign is one picture of crime and suffering, cruelty and weakness, and no redeeming features of piety, or generosity, or courage are recorded of him by any historian.



## CHAPTER XVI.

## REIGN OF EDMUND IRONSIDES. [A.D. 1016.]

§ 1. THE Saxons chose for their king, Edmund, a natural son of their monarch, who had given proof of his wisdom and valor. He was surnamed Ironsides. He was in London at the death of his father; and being chosen king, he at once left the city to the guard of its burgesses, and hurrying into Wessex, raised an army with which he defeated the Norsemen or Danes at Pen, in Dorsetshire, and a few days after at Burford, in Oxfordshire. Meanwhile Canute had besieged London, and dug a trench on the south side by which the assailants brought their ships above the bridge; but they were suddenly attacked and defeated by Edmund, and obliged to retire.

§ 2. The young king now returned to Wessex to raise fresh forces, and London was again besieged, but its people gallantly defended themselves. At length, on the approach of Edmund, many of the Norsemen retired to their ships, and sailing up the Orwell penetrated into Mercia, whilst others passed into Kent. Here they were followed by Edmund, who defeated them at Otford, when they fled into Sheppey, where they were too strong to be attacked.

§ 3. Edmund then marched into Essex, where he encountered the enemy at Ashdown, near Saffron Walden; but being forsaken by Edric,<sup>a</sup> who had again attached himself to the Saxons, he suffered a terrible defeat. He retired into Gloucestershire, pursued by Canute, and there an agreement was made by which the country was partitioned between them. Edmund retained Wessex, and Canute was acknowledged as sovereign of all the rest. The fleet and army again appeared before London, when, as further resistance was hopeless, a peace was bought of them, and the Norsemen's winter quarters were established there.

§ 4. Edmund died very shortly after this, on St. Andrew's day [Nov. 30, 1016]. He is supposed to have been murdered by Edric. He was buried at Glastonbury, with his grandfather Edgar. He had married Algytha, the widow of Siferth,<sup>b</sup> and he left two young children, Edward and Edmund, but neither succeeded to his throne. Edmund was a

<sup>a</sup> § 12, p. 65.

<sup>b</sup> § 16, p. 66.

Canute's Cruelty.

Marries Emma of Normandy.

man of powerful frame and great courage. He proposed to Canute to decide their claims by a duel, saying it was a pity so many lives should be lost or imperilled for their ambition. Canute declined to fight because Edmund was very stout and he was slender, but thought it wiser to divide England between them.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

REIGN OF CANUTE. [A.D. 1016 TO 1035.]

§ 1. CANUTE was in possession of London when Edmund died; and powerful persons being brought forward to swear that Edmund had appointed him guardian of his children, he was at once chosen king of the whole of England, which he divided into four States, reserving the government of Wessex for himself, and committing East Anglia to his general, Thurkill, Mercia to Edric the traitor, and Northumbria to Eric, a Dane, as his viceroys.

§ 2. The guardianship of the children of Edmund that Canute had undertaken was but badly performed. He sent them to Sweden, expecting them, as it would seem, to be put to death, but the Swedish king, instead, sent them to the king of Hungary, who kindly protected them. Canute next seized and executed Edwy, a brother of Edward, and many of the English nobles. Having thus secured his throne, he abstained from further severities, and did all that lay in his power to induce the English and the Danes to dwell amicably together. A great assembly was accordingly held at Oxford in 1018, when a solemn reconciliation was effected.

§ 3. As Edric,<sup>a</sup> from his treachery to all parties, had rendered himself hateful alike to English and Danes, Canute seized an opportunity of putting him to death. He also relieved himself from the fear of any attempt against his power by the sons of Ethelred, by marrying their mother Emma,<sup>b</sup> the "Pearl of Normandy," and promising that his issue by her should succeed to the throne. This marriage, though entered into merely from motives of policy, had a very happy effect on the character of Canute. He was not ignorant of Christianity before, but Emma succeeded in inducing

<sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 67.

<sup>b</sup> § 17, p. 66.

Emma's Influence.

Canute's Dominions.

His character.

him to lead a life more suitable to its profession than his career had hitherto been.

§ 4. At her persuasion he took what seemed a very hazardous step, but the result justified her wisdom. He levied the heavy tribute of £82,500 (\$412,500) on the land; but as it was known that it was to pay and dismiss his army, it was willingly given. Accordingly all the fierce mercenaries were sent home, excepting the crews of forty ships, who, with their vessels, he wisely kept for the protection of his coasts. Thus England was once more free from the ravages of the Norsemen.

§ 5. Canute claimed for himself the crown of Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, and held them by force of arms. He passed over to Denmark [A.D. 1019], taking with him Godwin and other nobles, and a large body of English, probably to prevent insurrection at home; but they served him gallantly in war, and Godwin became such a favorite that the rise of his power may be dated from this time.

§ 6. Canute was descended from Alfred the Great,<sup>a</sup> and he evinced something of his ancestor's wisdom in his endeavors to repair the ravages of war. He enacted just laws, rebuilt ruined churches, and showed much regard for the clergy. He also took great pleasure in their solemn church music. His example was followed by his fierce Danish nobles; and Thurkill, the general whose troops had murdered Archbishop Alphege,<sup>b</sup> joined with his master in building a stately stone church at Ashdown, on the site of his great victory over Edmund. Stigand, who was afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury, was placed in it at the head of a body of monks who were provided to pray for the souls of the slain.

§ 7. Soon after the return of Canute from Denmark, his viceroys Thurkill and Eric fell into disgrace and were banished. They had many friends, however, and he apprehended an invasion from them; therefore he put himself at the head of his fleet, and narrowly watched the seas. At length Thurkill regained his favor, and was made governor of Denmark. About this time Canute brought into submission Duncan, under-king of Cambria, and Malcolm, king of Scotland, who refused allegiance to the Dane.

§ 8. Up to this time the body of Archbishop Alphege had lain in St. Paul's Church, in London; but Canute now determined to remove it to the prelate's own cathedral. This was accordingly



Canute's endowment of Monasteries.

He goes to Rome.

His Family.

done with solemn pomp, the king accompanying the body to Canterbury, and Queen Emma, with her young son Harthacanute, taking part in the procession.

§ 9. The affairs of Denmark more than once called Canute away to Sweden or Norway, and he took with him large bodies of English, who served him so gallantly that he eventually became the most powerful monarch of the North. Each successful return to England was marked by some fresh act of bounty to the Church. Almost every year witnessed the foundation or endowment of a new monastery, the most remarkable being one in

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 54. honor of Edmund of East Anglia,<sup>a</sup> whose tomb had been profaned by Canute's father, Sweyn.

§ 10. In 1027 Canute undertook a pilgrimage to Rome, where he was most honorably received. By rich gifts he secured English pilgrims from many vexatious exactions which they had been subject to on their journey, and he procured important privileges for the English school at Rome. Shortly after his return he made an expedition against Scotland, and received the submission of Kenneth, the king, as well as of inferior chiefs, among whom is mentioned the familiar name of Macbeth, who had caused the murder of Duncan.

§ 11. Canute's English subjects seem to have been thoroughly reconciled to his sway, and we read of no disturbances among them. With his own Danes, however, it was otherwise; and in 1029 one of their most powerful earls, Hacon, the husband of Canute's niece, Gunhilda, was banished. He became a pirate, but died the following year before he could effect much mischief.

§ 12. After the death of this man the days of Canute passed on quietly in acts of piety and charity until his own decease, which occurred at Shaftesbury, on the 12th of November, 1035. He was buried at Winchester. He left three sons, Sweyn, Harold, and Harthacanute, of whom the first two were his illegitimate children by his concubine Algiva, the daughter of a Northumbrian earl, and the last was the offspring of Emma, the widow of Ethelred. Sweyn received his portion in Norway, but England was divided between Harold and Harthacanute. Canute had also a daughter by Emma, who was named Gunhilda, and was married to the young emperor Henry the Third of Germany, who was called "the pious," because he gave three Popes to the see of Rome.

§ 13. The story of Gunhilda is an interesting one, as showing

Story of Gunhilda.

Ill-treatment of Canute's Widow.

the spirit of the age. She was a princess of extreme beauty, but was still more famed for her virtue and her charity. She had not long been married when she was accused of infidelity to her husband, and was condemned to death, unless she could find a champion to vindicate her honor. All her attendants believed her innocent, but none dared to encounter the champion that the emperor had chosen, who was a soldier of almost gigantic size. She would have suffered but for the love and courage of an English boy, who from his small size was called Mimecan. Finding his mistress forsaken by all, he undertook her cause, and, by what was esteemed a miracle, overcame the giant. The Emperor wished his injured wife to return to him, but she refused, and retired to Bruges, the court of her cousin Eleanor of Normandy, where she died soon afterward, greatly lamented. The Emperor was sorely grieved at her death, and felt remorse.

---

## CHAPTER XVIII.

REIGN OF HAROLD THE FIRST. [A.D. 1035 TO 1040.]

§ 1. It had been agreed that the crown of England should descend to Harthacanute, Emma's son; but as he was absent when Canute died, Harold succeeded in obtaining it. At first the rivals agreed to a partition; but as Harthacanute lingered abroad in Denmark, he soon lost the favor of his partisans, and Harold was acknowledged king of the whole by the Witenagemot, or council of the wise men—the germ of the British parliament.

§ 2. Harold's first act was to despoil his step-mother Emma of her property, and to confine her at Winchester under the care of his body-guard. Next he invited her sons Edward and Alfred from Normandy, under pretence of friendship, when Alfred was murdered by his order, and Edward, who soon after Canute's death had made an unsuccessful invasion of England, only escaped the same fate by flight. Then he drove out Emma in the middle of winter, and she found a refuge at the court of the Count of Flanders, who had married her niece, Eleanor of Normandy. Here she was joined by Harthacanute, who was preparing for an

The last Danish King of England.

His Violence.

invasion of England, when Harold died at Oxford, March 17, 1040, and thus the coming contest was prevented.

§ 3. Harold was termed Harefoot, from his lightness and activity in the chase, to which great part of his time was given. His reign is a record of violence and cruelty. It is believed that he was never crowned. The Archbishop of Canterbury, who was a Saxon, refused to perform the ceremony himself, or allow any bishop to do so. Because of this affront Harold showed an open contempt for Christians. He did not marry. After a reign of about five years he was buried at Winchester.

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

REIGN OF HARTHACANUTE. [A.D. 1040 TO 1042.]

§ 1. INVITED by a deputation of English and Danish thanes, Harthacanute came over to England, accompanied by a large fleet, and landed at Sandwich. His first act was the disgraceful one of disinterring his half-brother's body, and casting it into the river. It was recovered by a fisherman, and again buried in the church of St. Clement, in which the Norsemen had taken refuge at the time of the massacre by order of Ethelred,<sup>a</sup> outside of London. He liked the Danes, among whom he had long lived, better than the English, and brought with him many Teutonic courtiers and chiefs, and a large army and navy. Then he levied a heavy tax to pay his fleet, and, as a chronicler remarks, "all were then averse to him who before had desired him." The payment of the tax was resisted in many places, particularly at Worcester, where two of the royal guard, who were assisting in the collection, were killed. Harthacanute ordered the whole shire to be ravaged, and thus increased the hatred of the people.

§ 2. Though thus violent, he would seem to have possessed some good qualities, as he showed much affection for his mother, and his half-brothers Alfred and Edward. It was with difficulty that he was brought to forgive the actors in the murder of Alfred, and only on their solemn oaths that Harold had commanded it. He invited Edward to England, received him cordially, and treated him most kindly.

<sup>a</sup> § 8, p. 63.



Death of Harthacanute.

Normans favored by Edward.

§ 3. Harthacanute's reign was very short. His high steward, Osgod Clapa, gave a banquet at Lambeth, on the occasion of the marriage of his daughter, at which the young king was present. He stood up to drink the health of the bride, when he was seized with a sudden fit, and fell to the ground speechless. He died on the 8th of June, 1042, and was buried at Winchester. And so the last Danish monarch of England died drunk. He was a sot and a glutton. An old chronicler, of a little later period, lamented that Englishmen had learned from the example of Harthacanute "their excessive gormandizing and unmeasurable filling of their bellies with meats and drinks."

---

## CHAPTER XX.

REIGN OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR. [A.D. 1042 TO 1066.]

§ 1. WHEN Harthacanute died, there was no legitimate Danish successor to the English throne. He was the last of Canute's acknowledged sons. He had treated kindly his half-brother Edward, who, being in England at the time of the king's death, was at once called to the throne. His inclinations would have carried him back to Normandy, to whose more cultivated people he had become attached; but he yielded to the Saxons, and ascended the throne in the year 1042.

§ 2. The Danes in England were dissatisfied with the accession of Edward, but were obliged to submit. His preference for the Normans dissatisfied his whole people. He invited Normans of every condition to England, and endeavored to fill every post of trust with them. Robert, a Norman monk, was appointed Bishop of London, and afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury; other Normans were placed in other sees; Hugolin, a Norman, was his treasurer and especial favorite; Otho and Ralph, with bands of Norman followers, garrisoned the castles and formed the royal body-guard; and the Norman dialect was the language of his court.

§ 3. But there was one exception to this favor, and in making it the king dishonored his own character as a son and sovereign.

## Edward's cruel treatment of his Mother.

It was his treatment of his mother Emma, the "Pearl of Normandy," as she was called.<sup>a</sup> Edward accused her of having wished to hinder his accession to the throne, though she had no other son to take it. On this charge he confiscated her lands and imprisoned her, and deprived Stigand,<sup>b</sup> her spiritual adviser, of his bishopric. He even compelled her to submit to the ordeal of fire. By this she was acquitted, when Edward, having no pretext for further persecution, gave an island and manors to the church at Winchester in token of his penitence.

§ 4. It was chiefly through the influence of Godwin, the powerful and unscrupulous Earl of Wessex, that Edward's peaceable accession to the throne had been secured. He knew that Edward shared in the common belief that the earl was guilty of the murder of the king's brother, Alfred,<sup>c</sup> and he took early measures to secure himself and family from harm. He obtained extensions of territories; honors and commands for himself and sons; a solemn assurance that the past should be forgiven, and a pledge for the future. He compelled Edward to marry his fair daughter, Editha, who was worthy of a better husband. Edward detested the man to whom, in a degree, he was indebted for the throne, and refused to be a husband to his daughter. She was queen of the realm, but not of her husband's affections. And on occasion of a quarrel with her relations, Edward imprisoned her in a nunnery. But Edward was a mere tool in the hands of Godwin and his six sons.

§ 5. Soon after Edward's marriage, Magnus, the king of Norway, threatened to renew the horrors of former years by a fresh invasion [A.D. 1043]; but Godwin promptly collected a large fleet at Sandwich, and also procured the banishment of the widow of Hacon and her sons,<sup>d</sup> and of Osgod Clapa, the favorite of Harthacnute,<sup>e</sup> and other influential Danes, who were suspected of having invited him. Magnus himself being attacked by Sweyn of Denmark, the nephew of Canute, the invasion was never attempted. The first attack on England proceeded from one of Godwin's own family.

§ 6. This was Sweyn, his second son, a man of cruel and lawless habits, who was outlawed for carrying off the abbess of Leominster from her convent. He retired to Flanders, and joined with Lothen and Yrling, two Danish chiefs, in a piratical cruise along the

<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 66.<sup>b</sup> § 6, p. 69.<sup>c</sup> § 2, p. 71.<sup>d</sup> § 11, p. 70.<sup>e</sup> § 3, p. 73.



Earl Godwin's Career.

William of Normandy.

English coast. After a time he wished to make his peace, and offered to join the royal fleet with seven ships; but his terms being refused, he treacherously murdered his kinsman Beorn, who had opposed his pardon, and again fled to Flanders. Osgod Clapa also ravaged Essex, and some others of the banished Danes procured a fleet from Ireland, which joined with the Welsh to devastate the west of England.

§ 7. Godwin, being at the head of affairs, had no wish to see these depredations continue, and therefore after a time Sweyn was reinstated in his lands; but this was scarcely accomplished when a quarrel broke out between the king and Godwin, which resulted in the temporary banishment of the whole family, in the year 1051. The cause was as follows:—

Eustace, the Count of Boulogne, who had married King Edward's sister Goda, paid a visit to England, bringing with him a numerous armed retinue. The people were irritated by their insolent behavior, and when they reached Dover, on their way back, a quarrel broke out between them and the townsmen, in which several lives were lost. Eustace hurried back to the king and demanded redress, and Godwin, in whose earldom the affair had happened, was strictly charged to punish the townsmen. He found, however, that they were the injured party, and in his turn demanded redress for them. Edward showed unwonted spirit, and calling Siward and Leofric, the Earls of Northumberland and Mercia, to his aid, the result was a meeting of the chief men, by which Godwin and all his family were banished.

§ 8. The Norman party was now strengthened by the arrival, as a visitor, of Duke William, the grandson of Edward's protector in Normandy, who was an able and crafty prince, and already meditated the seizure of the realm of England. Robert, the Norman monk already mentioned,<sup>a</sup> was now made archbishop, and Spearhafoc, a Saxon abbot, was appointed to succeed him; but Robert refused to consecrate him, and got William, another Norman, made Bishop of London instead. The discontent that this occasioned was not lost on Godwin and his family, who were men not likely to bear quietly the loss of lands and honors.

<sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 73.

§ 9. Godwin and Sweyn had retired to Flanders, and Harold and his brother Leofwine to Ireland. They soon collected fleets; but when about to sail Sweyn went on a pilgrimage to Jerusalem,



Death of Godwin. Expedition against Scotland. Contests between the Nobles.

from which he never returned. Godwin, however, joined his other sons, and appearing in the Thames with a powerful force, another assembly was held, which reinstated him and his family, and drove out the Normans. Robert, and Ulf the Bishop of Dorchester, fled in a crazy boat across the sea, and their military comrades sought refuge in Scotland, where many of them perished in supporting the cause of the usurper Macbeth, in the year 1054.

§ 10. Godwin did not long survive the triumph of his house and re-establishment of the Saxon supremacy. He was seized with illness at Easter, 1053, while sitting at the royal table, and died three days after. His son Harold succeeded to his possessions, but resigned his own earldom of East Anglia to Elfgar, the son of Leofric of Mercia.

§ 11. In the following year occurred the only foreign expedition of Edward's reign. This was against Scotland, and was conducted by Siward, the powerful Earl of Northumberland, who died shortly after his return, when his earldom was bestowed on Tostig, a brother of Harold, and the power of the family became greater than ever.

§ 12. Elfgar was now outlawed, for what cause is unknown, but he leagued himself with Griffin, the King of South Wales, and by his aid and that of a fleet from Ireland he regained his lands in the year 1055. Three years later the same scene was renewed. Elfgar was once more outlawed by Edward; but though the help of Griffin (who had married Elfgar's daughter Edith) re-established him, that help brought on the Welsh prince the arms of Harold and Tostig, who attacked him both by sea and land, and at last reduced his people to such distress that they cut off the head of Griffin, and sent it to the king in token of submission [A.D. 1063], and his two brothers, Blethin and Rywallon, acknowledged themselves the vassals of England.

§ 13. While these contests between his great nobles were going on, Edward summoned to England his nephew Edward the Atheling, who had for many years resided abroad, with the intention that he should succeed him, but the prince died shortly after his arrival, and the king's hopes were transferred to his son, Edgar the Atheling.

§ 14. Tostig, who was even more violent and cruel than his brother Sweyn, treated the people of his earldom so tyrannically, that at last, in the autumn of 1065, they expelled him, and chose

William of Normandy.

His Courtship and Marriage.

Edward's Piety.

Morcar, the son of Elfgar, for their governor. Harold endeavored to reconcile the contending parties, but in vain, and at last Tostig was obliged to retire to Flanders, where he leagued himself with his brothers-in-law, Baldwin and William of Normandy,<sup>a</sup> and thus succeeded in causing the conquest of his native country by foreigners.

<sup>a</sup> § 8, p. 26.

§ 15. William, afterwards known as the Conqueror, was the natural son of Robert, Duke of Normandy, the descendant of Rollo, a Norseman, who wrested the province called Neustria from Charles the Simple, King of France, about the beginning of the tenth century. William succeeded to the dukedom when a child; but as he grew up he showed so much vigor and address, that he at length became one of the most considerable princes of his day. He was a man of great size and strength, a famous horseman and archer, and of harsh and stern aspect. His character was alike treacherous, resolute, and cruel; but it suited the people he had to deal with, as may be seen by the manner in which he obtained a wife, whose connections greatly added to his strength.

§ 16. He demanded of Baldwin, Count of Flanders, his daughter Matilda, and the Count was willing to grant his suit; but the princess scornfully declared she would never take a bastard for her husband. The refusal was of course conveyed in more courteous terms; but William afterward learnt what had been said, and in a rage he repaired to Baldwin's court almost alone. He left his attendants in the hall, and going to the chamber of Matilda, he seized her by the hair, dragged her about the ground and kicked her; then he mounted his horse and rode off unmolested. Instead of war following from this piece of brutality, Matilda now readily agreed to marry him, saying that a man who would dare to act thus would be her sure protector against any one else.

§ 17. King Edward had, while in exile, made a vow to undertake a pilgrimage to Rome, if he should ever return to England. Not seeing any prospect of fulfilling it, he prevailed on Pope Leo IX. to allow him to build a monastery instead. He chose to rebuild, on a large scale, an abbey dedicated to St. Peter, that stood on a wild swampy piece of ground on the bank of the Thames, called Thorney Island; Westminster Abbey now occupies its site. The work went on year by year, and Edward sent ambassadors to

Edward's Death.

He is Canonized.

The "King's Evil."

Rome to procure extraordinary privileges for the monks that he intended to place there. At last it was finished, and he came to the consecration, which took place on the third day after Christmas, 1065. He fell ill during the ceremony, and after lingering a few days he died on the 5th of January, 1066. He was speechless during the greater part of the time, but when his end drew near he uttered some words which his attendants interpreted as a bequest of the crown to Harold. On the day following he was buried in his new church, and his shrine (for he was afterwards sainted) still remains in Westminster Abbey, the only one of such relics of superstition there that has escaped destruction.

§ 18. Edward is known as "The Confessor,"<sup>1</sup> but in earlier ages he was called "the good King Edward." He was long regarded as the patron saint of England, and his generosity and kindness were themes of many a story. Laws made long before his time were ascribed to him. It was believed by the simple that his relics and his tomb wrought miracles; and it was widely declared that his touch had cured scrofula. Even until the time of Queen Anne, seven hundred years afterward, the superstitious believed that the gift was hereditary in the monarchs of England, and the "touch" for "king's evil," or scrofula, was sought. At Christmas, 1682, the Bishop of Durham wrote:—"The number of Persons that have been Touched for the [King's] Evil, and so many medals delivered for that Use, from July 24, to December 23, 1682, was 3535."

---

## CHAPTER XXI.

### REIGN OF HAROLD THE SECOND. [A.D. 1066.]

§ 1. Now, again, there was strife for the crown of England.

<sup>a</sup> § 4, p. 74. The powerful Godwin<sup>a</sup> and his friends declared that Edward, just before he expired, recovered his speech sufficient to bequeath his crown and kingdom to Godwin's eldest

<sup>1</sup> This name was given in the early days of Christianity to persons who incurred suffering for adhering to their religion among heathen nations, but were not, like the martyrs, put to death. In the case of Edward, however, it only meant that he was a man of exemplary piety, and of monastic strictness of life.



Harold the Second. Claims of William of Normandy. Harold's War with his Brother. son, Harold. The "Great Earl" was descended from the kings of the South Saxons, and was son of Wulfnoth, already mentioned,<sup>a</sup> and Harold, it is recorded, had few of the vices of his family. <sup>a</sup> § 12, p. 65.

§ 2. Edward left no children. As we have seen,<sup>b</sup> he intended his grandnephew, Edgar the Atheling, to be his heir. The false Earl's assertion concerning Edward's dying bequest set aside Edgar's claim, and not waiting for the consent of the great council of wise men,<sup>c</sup> as usual, Godwin procured the coronation of Harold on the day of the dead king's funeral. The new king made a peace-offering to Edgar by bestowing upon him the Earldom of Oxford. After that the monarch made a journey to the north, where he was well received, and at Easter he was recognized by the great council as king. <sup>b</sup> § 13, p. 77. <sup>c</sup> § 26, p. 84.

§ 3. Harold's reign was very brief. William, the Duke of Normandy,<sup>d</sup> also professed to be the heir of King Edward, who, he declared, had promised it to him when he was in England. Harold had once been thrown into his power by shipwreck, and he obliged him to take an oath to support his claim to the crown as the price of his release. On hearing of the accession of Harold, the Duke claimed his promise, and formally demanded the throne, but Harold declined to comply, saying that his oath was invalid, as it had been extorted by force and fraud. He at once raised an army and fleet to watch the coast, and William on his side prepared for an invasion. <sup>d</sup> § 8, p. 76.

§ 4. The first blow, however, came from Harold's brother, Tostig, who arrived in the Isle of Wight and plundered it, in the month of April, 1066. He next attacked Thanet, but was repulsed, and on the approach of Harold he fled to the Humber. Thence he was driven by Morcar, his successor in the earldom of Northumberland, and obliged to flee to Scotland.

§ 5. Harold's fleet kept the sea during the summer; but early in September he was obliged to dismiss it from want of provisions, and this gave his enemies a fatal advantage over him. A renowned sea-rover, known as Harold Hardrada (Harold the Stern), who had lately made himself master of Norway, came into the Tyne, when Tostig repaired to him, and, by a promise of dividing the spoil, engaged him to make an attack on England.

§ 6. Their first act was to burn the town of Scarborough, after

Battle with the Norwegians. William's Preparation for Invasion. The Pope's Help.

which they landed near Selby, and advancing to Fulford, near York, they there defeated Morcar and Edwin his brother [Sept. 20, A.D. 1066], when the whole province submitted to them. The news was carried quickly to Harold, and he marched with such despatch that he reached York four days afterward, just as the castle there had surrendered.

§ 7. The Norwegians thought that their work was done, and retired quietly to their ships, which lay in the river Ouse, near Stanford bridge. They landed the next morning, expecting to receive some promised hostages, but instead, they beheld Harold in full march towards them. Tostig advised an instant retreat to their ships, but this Hardrada refused to do. Before their forces met, Harold advanced, and offered one-third of the kingdom to Tostig rather than fight with a brother. "And what is to be the portion of my ally?" inquired Tostig. "Seven feet of English earth, or more if his height requires it," answered the king, for Hardrada was almost a giant.

§ 8. A fierce battle at once ensued, which ended in the total defeat of the Norwegians, and the death of both of their leaders. But Harold also lost heavily. The remainder of the Norwegians, including a son of Hardrada, the Earl of Orkney, and a bishop, submitted themselves to the mercy of Harold, and were allowed twenty-four ships to take them to their own country.

§ 9. Meanwhile, Duke William of Normandy<sup>a</sup> had pushed on his preparations with vigor. He built ships, and offered liberal pay to soldiers of all countries. They flocked to his standard—the three lions of Normandy—in large numbers. He enlisted Pope Alexander the Second in his cause. That pontiff sent him a diploma of good-will, signed with the cross, and bearing a round seal of lead.<sup>1</sup> He also sent him a consecrated banner, and a valuable ring, containing, it was pretended, a hair from the head of St. Peter; also a declaration that Harold was a perjured man.

§ 10. With these certificates that his cause was just, William found no difficulty in getting supplies of money, even from bishops and abbots, promising to repay them from the spoils of England. His fleet, composed of about 3,000 vessels, was soon ready

<sup>1</sup> Called, in Latin, "Bulla;" hence the common name of "Bull" for the Pope's diplomas, proclamations, letters, etc.



William's Invasion of England.      Battle of Hastings.      The Parties in the Contest.

for sea; and when he ascertained that Harold's ships had been withdrawn,<sup>a</sup> he sailed from St. Vallery, in Normandy, his splendid flag-ship presented to him by his wife, <sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 79. Matilda, leading the van. On the second day (September 28, A.D. 1066) they entered Pevensey Bay, on the coast of Sussex, and landed without opposition. The invaders then marched eastward a few miles along the shore, and at a suitable spot not far from Hastings they established a fortified camp,<sup>1</sup> from which they sent out plundering parties into the neighboring country.

§ 11. Harold was soon told of the landing of Duke William while sitting at table, in York. Weakened as he was by the battle near the Ouse, only three days before, he lost no time in marching against the invader. His friends, who began everywhere to raise an army, tried to persuade him to wait until his troops could be strengthened by re-enforcements, but Harold would not listen to them. He pressed forward with energy, and came in sight of the Norman camp on the 13th of October, 1066.

§ 12. The fight that ensued next day (October 14, A.D. 1066) is usually known as the battle of Hastings, though in reality it was fought where now stand the remains of Battle Abbey, some ten miles from the sea. The Saxon account of it is very brief; but Norman writers give a variety of details disparaging to their enemies and laudatory to the invaders, many of which are manifestly untrue. According to them, the Saxons passed the preceding night in riot and jollity, which is hardly likely to have occurred on the bleak hills of Sussex, after a fortnight's forced march; while the Normans were intent on nothing but their devotions, which is equally unlikely, after their fortnight's plunder and ravage.

§ 13. The Saxons, or English, were encamped on a hill, in one solid mass, enclosed by a rough intrenchment of wattles, and with a piece of marshy ground between them and their enemies. The Kentish men were in front, and the Londoners guarded the standard. By the side of the latter stood Harold himself, and his brothers Gyrth and Leofwin. The force of the English appears to have been entirely foot-soldiers. They were armed with heavy swords and battle-axes, and long spears for close combat, and javelins for casting at the foe as they approached. The Normans, on the con-

<sup>1</sup> Near the railway station of St. Leonard's is a large stone, which for centuries has been pointed out as "the Conqueror's dining-table," and is supposed to be on the site of the Norman camp.



How the Battle raged.      The English Shields.      A Stratagem and an Ambush.

trary, had horse and foot heavily armed, besides archers and slingers.

§ 14. The Norman cavalry picked their way through the marsh, and then galloped up the hill, led by a giant champion, juggler and bard, on horseback, singing an old war-ballad called the Song of Roland. They were repulsed in an attempt to force their way into the Saxon camp, and they soon retired, leaving Taillefer, the bard, dead on the ground. A second and a third charge was made with the same want of success; for the Saxons, shoulder to shoulder, formed a wall with their shields which Norman arrows could not penetrate. William rode about encouraging his men, and had three horses killed under him. His warlike half-brother Odo, the Bishop of Bayeux, who wore a hauberk over his robes, and carried a mace in his hand, brought up re-enforcements, crying to the dispirited horsemen, "Stand fast, stand fast! If God please, we shall conquer yet." This for a time seemed very unlikely,

<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 76. and Eustace of Boulogne<sup>a</sup> even proposed to draw off; but William saw that this would be destruction, and

instead changed his mode of attack.

§ 15. Finding the English closed shields almost invulnerable, and that their bearers fought with heads uncovered, he again brought his archers forward and directed them to shoot their arrows upward, so that their heavy sharp points should fall like hail within the stockade. Many of the English were now slain. But they stood firm. The battle raged fiercely, and to the Norman war-cry, "Dieu aide!" the English shouted "Holy Cross, God Almighty!"

§ 16. For six hours the fight had gone on most furiously, when William, convinced that he could not drive the English from their stronghold, employed a stratagem to draw them out from it. He placed a strong force in ambush, and ordered a thousand cavalry to make a feigned charge, and to retire in disorder. The English fell into the snare. They rushed out upon the broken line, and were assailed on both flanks by the concealed foe. Many fell, but a greater portion fought their way back. They were made victims a second time by the same stratagem, but they did not lose their fortified camp.

§ 17. A third time the English fell into the same snare with disastrous results. The Normans, horse and foot, burst into the bravely defended stockade, and broke the English line at several

Death of Harold.

The English Standard.

Normans victorious.

points. Harold's soldiers gathered thickly around him. Throughout the day he had fought with distinguished gallantry, and they were determined to defend him and their national standard until the last hope should fade.

§ 18. At length an arrow came down from its flight high in air, struck the king in the eye, and, penetrating his brain, killed him instantly. Then the English gave way for a moment, but with Harold's brothers, Gurth and Leofwin, they rallied around the standard and fought desperately with their battle-axes and spears for its possession. In that struggle the king's brothers were killed. At last, when the English, after a continuous fight for nine hours, were nearly exhausted, twenty iron-clad Norman knights undertook to capture the standard. They did so, but with the loss of half their number. Then the ensign of England, glittering with gold and precious stones, was lowered and the consecrated banner sent by the Pope to William<sup>a</sup> was raised upon the same spot, over the stockade, amid shouts of victory.

<sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 80.

§ 19. After a desperate attempt to rally again, in which both sides lost many men, the English at every point gave way and fled to the woods in broken columns, pursued by the light of the moon. They turned frequently and disastrously upon their pursuers, who soon gave up the chase.

§ 20. So ended in victory the invasion of William of Normandy. "So," as an old English writer said, "the Frenchman had possession of the field of carnage, all as God granted them for the people's sins." "Thus," said another old writer, "was tried by the great assize of God's judgment in battle the right of power between the English and Norman nations; a battle the most memorable of all others; and howsoever miserably lost, yet most nobly fought on the part of England."

§ 21. The victors passed the night on the battle-field, where William had been once prostrated by a blow on his helmet by a battle-axe, and had three horses killed under him. Of the splendid army led by proud lords and knights, one-fourth of those who sailed from Vatery had perished. He was yet far from being the conqueror of England, for he had not gained one-fourth of the kingdom. It took him seven long years to complete what he had so auspiciously begun.

§ 22. In the morning after the battle the victors began to bury



Harold's Family and Destiny. Battle Abbey. England Plundered, not Conquered.

the dead. According to the best accounts, the body of Harold was recognized by his wife, and delivered by Duke William to his mother, Githa, Earl Godwin's wife, who was the sister of Ulf, Canute's brother-in-law. By her it was buried in Waltham Abbey, a church which Harold had founded in Essex. Harold's queen

<sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 77.

<sup>b</sup> § 12, p. 77.

was "Edith the Fair," daughter of his rival, Elfgar of Mercia<sup>a</sup>, and widow of Griffin, king of South Wales.<sup>b</sup> He had several sons and daughters, who

finally returned to Norway. One became a monk. One daughter was married to Waldemar, a Swedish prince. Another (Gunhilda), with her mother and Harold's sister, retired to Flanders and became a nun. At her death she was buried in the same church as

<sup>c</sup> § 13, p. 70.

Gunhilda, the persecuted empress,<sup>c</sup> where the monumental inscriptions of both yet exist.

§ 23. William cleared the space around the spot where Harold's standard was humbled and the Pope's consecrated banner was set up, and then he and his nobles feasted. Then he made a vow that on that spot he would build a splendid Abbey. The vow was fulfilled, and over the ground once wet with the mingled blood of Englishmen and Frenchmen—where their ensigns of war were planted—the high altar of "Battle Abbey" stood for centuries. Such was the name given by William to the structure reared and endowed chiefly by the use of property plundered from the English.

§ 24. We have remarked that the victory of Hastings was not the conquest of England. It was only the beginning of the series of death-blows which the Normans gave to Saxon rule there, and the first important work in the establishment of Norman rule in Great Britain.

§ 25. Duke William was too much crippled in the field of Hastings to be able to move forward at once. So he returned to his camp and awaited for re-enforcements, with a full expectation that the English would offer their submission. But no Englishman came near him; and with some fresh troops from Normandy he moved eastward along the coast, burning and plundering Romney and massacring its inhabitants, and laying waste Dover and other places. Then he pushed into the interior and penetrated Kent, where the overawed people did not offer opposition.

§ 26. Meanwhile the Saxon or English Witan, or Witenagemote<sup>d</sup>—the great civil council—had met in London to deliberate on public affairs. Unwilling to submit to

<sup>d</sup> § 10, p. 87.



Struggle for the Crown. The English Subdued. The Conqueror Crowned King.

the invader, they bestowed the crown of England on Edgar Atheling, the imbecile son of Edmund Ironsides,<sup>a</sup> and descendant of the great Alfred. London was very strongly fortified, and William passed by it after marching through Kent, and spread his troops over Hertfordshire. There he plundered and laid waste in every direction, and met with little resistance excepting by the resolute Frederic, then Abbot of St. Alban's (who was a member of the Danish royal family), who vainly endeavored to check the march of the invaders by blocking the roads with felled trees. <sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 67.

§ 27. William took a position at Birkhampstead, where he might intercept all communication with London from the north, and the city was soon threatened with famine. He sent a party of horse, which defeated the Londoners under their own walls. Sore pressed, the passive king and leading men of the realm repaired to William's camp, and humbly submitted to his authority. To him the king formally surrendered the crown, and William agreed to be a "loving lord" to the people.

§ 28. William now moved toward London, and upon the ruins of a Roman castle he built a fort which, in time, grew into the present Tower of London. He remained with his troops until his fortifications were completed, and on Christmas day [A.D. 1066] he was crowned king of England in the new Westminster Abbey, the last pious work of Edward the Confessor.<sup>b</sup> The crown was set upon his head by Aldred, Archbishop of York, who did the same for Harold less than a year before. From this event may be dated the Norman rule in England. <sup>b</sup> § 17, p. 78.

## CHAPTER XXII.

### SOCIETY DURING THE SAXON ERA.

§ 1. IN our brief view of the civil and military transactions of the Saxon era, we have seen little else than evidences of a half-barbarous state of society during about 600 years. Might made right, and vices of every kind stained the characters of men and women highest in social influence, to which the chroniclers have called our attention. That noble virtues abounded in humble and

Religion of the Invaders from the North.

Their Mythology.

private life we may not doubt; but they have not been, unfortunately, the subject of the historian's pen. To the piratical forays of the wild sea-rovers, and the internecine wars in Britain, the continuance of that half-barbarous state so long may be mainly attributed.

§ 2. During most of that time Christianity had a footing in Great Britain, but in corrupted form. At one time it was almost obliterated by the paganism of barbarian invaders, in whose religious system we find traces of Oriental mythology, which they brought with them from their Scythian home in northern Persia. It was a crude polytheism. Noden or Odin, who seems to have been a mortal leader in the great emigration from the Euxine to the Baltic, was the Supreme deity. Frigga, or Fria, his wife, was the goddess of love and sensuality. Their sons and daughters were gods and goddesses, and were their chief deputies in the management of the universe—Thor controlling tempests, Balder managing light, Kiord superintending the waters. These were inferior deities; and Genii and Spirits formed a universal Providence, meddling in all human affairs for good and for evil.

§ 3. Valhalla—Hall of the Gods—was the heaven of this fierce race. There, all day long, immortals were in furious combat with deadly weapons, but at night their wounds were all healed, and they indulged in drunkenness and gluttony to their hearts' content. The cowardly and slothful—the only sinners—went to another place, where a feminine fiend presided, whose palace was Anguish; her table, Famine; her waiters, Expectation and Delay; the threshold of her door, Precipice; her bed, Leanness; and her aspect, Terror.

§ 4. Heaven was the inheritance of all warriors; and those who had slain the most enemies would be there the highest in privileges. Hell—the abode of the feminine fiend—was the fate of those who never engaged in battle, or who died a natural death.

§ 5. Their temples had huge images of Woden brandishing a sword. Upon their altars human blood flowed freely. There crowds of captives were sacrificed, and even princes slew their sons in the sacred fanes to avert dreaded calamities. The penalty of dying a natural death could be commuted by a human sacrifice, and for this purpose many a slave was purchased and was offered



Christianity in England.

The Clergy.

The Saxon Government.

in the horrid rite. Superstition reigned supreme, and human life and human affairs were subjected to its awful control.

§ 6. We can easily understand how a people governed by such a religious system could be human fiends, and how, for centuries, they postponed the triumph of Christian civilization in Great Britain. The Saxons appear to have been less sanguinary than the Danes. The latter were the darker worshippers of Woden and his retinue.

§ 7. We have had sufficient glimpses of Christianity in Britain during the Saxon era to form an opinion of its general character. Its essence was everywhere meliorating and humanizing, but the practice of its higher ministers seems to have not always been in accordance with its pure spirit. The characters of many of the ecclesiastics were consonant with the age in which they lived; and the marvellous conversions of whole tribes, and universal backslidings, show us that, to a large extent, Christianity was a fashion rather than a sentiment.

§ 8. Its ministers everywhere asserted *power*, and ruled more by law than gospel. They were eminently worldly. Their greed was rapacious; and their extortions, through fear or force, were cruel. As a class they became enormously wealthy, and at times were the depositaries of the dominant power of the State. Pride, profligacy, and superstition were rife in the Church. Monastic establishments, which dotted the land, were, according to the Venerable Bede, "sinks of pollution," wherein luxury, idleness, and licentiousness revelled unrestrained. Priestcraft became an enormous burden upon the people, and a hindrance to the spread of the gospel.

§ 9. The government during the Saxon era was partly despotic, partly popular. Roman law, as we have seen,<sup>a</sup> was but the will of the Emperor in practice. When Roman civilization, such as it was, left Britain, a long period of disorder followed. But out of that chaos has grown the boasted English liberty, which has its most perfect development in our Republic. Its germ was seen in the independence of individuals, and assemblages of freemen to consider the affairs of State.

§ 10. For a long time after the Romans left, government was exercised by the heads of families or tribes. Afterward, when tribal alliances were formed for common defence, and there was a superior chief or *Britwalda*,<sup>b</sup> and there

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 21.<sup>b</sup> § 2, p. 31.



The Germ of Parliament.

The Law.

Commerce.

Slave-trade.

were conflicting local interests, disputes naturally arose, and wise men were appointed to meet and adjudicate. Although these assemblages were at first more courts of law than legislatures, they assumed the latter form in time. Such was the Saxon Grand Council, or Witenagemote—the prototype of the modern Parliament and Congress—in which bishops held the first rank, earls or aldermen next, and thanes, or lower class of nobles, next. The feudal system was not fully developed in Britain until after the Norman conquest.

§ 11. Out of the aristocratic system of popular representation in the government grew the custom of trial by jury; and Christianity, recognizing an overruling Providence in the affairs of men, suggested the ordeal, or imaginary appeal to heaven, in the law of chance, which, in a degree, took the place of the law of force. But the efforts of good and wise men, during all of the Saxon era, to establish justice and promote mercy, could not prevent the practical operation of the doctrine of the mailed hand, that might makes right.

§ 12. Commerce was a prominent, but by no means eminent feature of the natural industry of Great Britain during the Saxon period. It was fostered by insulation, and stimulated by intercourse with the East through the Christian pilgrimages to Jerusalem. In fact, a pilgrimage was often a cloak for smuggling, when customs were levied at seaports. The harbors of Britain were continually visited by foreign ships engaged in traffic; and British merchantmen were seen in all parts of the Mediterranean, Adriatic, and Baltic Seas and along the whole western coast of Europe, before the Conquest. The merchant who made three sea-voyages with his own ship and cargo was entitled to the rank ofthane or noble.

§ 13. Traffic was active toward the close of the Saxon period, and the subjects of it were numerous. They comprised domestic animals, skins, agricultural products of every kind, the treasures of the mines and of the sea, many kinds of manufactures, and men and women. Slave-dealers were seen in all parts of the country buying men and women, and exporting them from the port of Bristol to Ireland for gain. An old chronicler says: “You might have seen, with sorrow, large ranks of young persons of both sexes, and of the greatest beauty, tied together with ropes, and daily exposed to sale.” There was also an active internal

National Industries. Clerical Mechanics. Ship-building. Artisans honored.

traffic by which commodities were exchanged, or bartered for money, the prices being fixed by law.<sup>1</sup>

§ 14. The various useful arts and manufactures were carried on quite extensively. Iron-works were established, and skilled artificers in all metals were numerous. The jewelry of the Anglo-Saxons was sought after by dwellers on the continent. Smiths, wagon-makers, wheelwrights, carpenters, masons, millwrights, tanners, shoemakers, weavers, and tailors abounded. There were also skilful armorers. Toward the close of the Saxon era glass-making, learned from the French, was carried on in several places.

§ 15. Some of the most skilful mechanics were found in the monasteries. King Edgar<sup>a</sup> commanded that "every priest, to increase knowledge, should diligently learn some handicraft." St. Dunstan<sup>b</sup> was one of the most famous workers in metals for the sacred services. He made bells, candlesticks, crucifixes, images, and chalices of silver and gold, and ornamented with precious stones.

§ 16. Ship-building was an important branch of industry; and at that early age the ships of Britain, made of the oak, were noted for their strength and speed. The head of a royal ship was wrought with gold; the deck was gilded, and the sails were made of purple stuffs. Mechanics were held in high social esteem. In the court of the King of Wales, the seat of the monarch's chief smith, at table, was next to the royal chaplain. Then several distinct trades were practised by one man. The carpenter built houses and made wagons, carts, ploughs, and other agricultural implements, mills, and all kinds of household furniture. The smith made armor and weapons, iron implements of husbandry, and such as were required for domestic use. Women of the higher

<sup>1</sup> At about the end of the tenth century, the prices of certain articles were as follows:—

			£	s.	d.
Of a Man or slave,	1 pound,	equivalent to	2	16	3
Horse,	30 shillings,	"	1	15	2
Mare or colt,	20 "	"	1	8	5
Ass or mule,	12 "	"		14	1
Ox,	6 "	"		7	0½
Cow,	5 "	"		5	6
Swine,	1 shilling and 3 pence,	"		1	10½
Sheep,	1 shilling,	"		1	2
Goat,	2 pennies,	"			5½

Woman's Work.

Agriculture.

Live Stock and Grain.

as well as lower ranks were employed in the labors of the distaff, loom, and needle. King Edward the Elder <sup>a</sup> caused his daughters to be taught and employed in the use of such implements; and in the great Alfred's will the feminine portion of his family is spoken of as the spindle-side. From the common use of the distaff in the Anglo-Saxon period came the modern name of "spinster," as applied to unmarried women.

§ 17. Agriculture was the chief industrial pursuit. A greater portion of the population were employed in the production of food, and it was abundant and cheap. Meat was as common as bread on the tables of every class. Lands were cheap. The price of four sheep would buy an acre. Marl was used as a fertilizer so early as the Roman occupation of the island. Farms were of various sizes. The boundaries were defined by brooks, hedges, and ditches. Forests were protected by law. The value of a tree was estimated by the number of swine that might be gathered under it. Such animals, and sheep and goats, were abundant, and owing to the general absence of enclosures where they fed, had tenders. No employments are more frequently mentioned by the old writers than those of the swineherd, shepherd, and goatherd.

§ 18. The chief animal production was horned cattle. One-third of the land of the kingdom was devoted to their pasturage. Gardens, especially those attached to monasteries, were filled with figs, grapes, nuts, almonds, pears, and apples. Beans, peas, and a few other vegetables were cultivated. Flowers and flowering plants were also abundant, for the use of bees for honey was an important article before sugar was known.

§ 19. The products of the soil give us an idea of the diet of the people. It was abundant and nutritious. Barley was chiefly used in making bread. Meats were salted for preservation. Milk, cheese, and eggs were in common use. Poultry was extensively eaten, and so were fishes. The common drink of the people was ale, made from malted barley; and in towns ale-houses were found so early as Alfred's time. There were other more costly drinks, and wine. Fuel was abundant. The cabins of the poor were lighted by tallow candles; and the palace of the king and dwellings of the nobles were illuminated by waxen candles.

§ 20. The houses of the better class were comfortable, and sometimes elegant structures; those of the poor were turf-covered



How the people lived. Feasts. Personal Cleanliness. Condition of Women.

hovels, little better than caves. The furniture of the rich was often elegant and costly. Chairs were in the form of camp-stools, and of our common seats, with backs; they were often cushioned and covered with richly embroidered stuff. Their bedsteads, beds, and bedding were much the same as those we now use, often hung with costly curtains. Their walls were covered with rich silk, embroidered with gold by the hands of the young women; their tables were carved, and ornamented with gold and silver; and on them were sometimes seen urns, dishes, knives, and spoons of the same metals. The dwellings of the poor, on the other hand, were little better furnished than those of half-savage tribes. Their beds were of straw and rushes; their drinking-vessels and spoons were made of the horns of cattle, and the seats were rude benches.

§ 21. The sexes of both classes sat at table together, and they were participants in common at the feasts and convivial entertainments of the rich. At those feasts all ate to fulness and drank to exhilaration. The guests were expected to vie with each other in trying who should drain the drinking-cup to the lowest depth; in fact, excessive drinking, as among the Scandinavian ancestors of the Anglo-Saxons, was a common vice of all ranks of people, in which they spent nights and days without intermission. At these feasts songs and dances, and the music of the harp, were unfailing accompaniments. The ecclesiastics were not behind laymen in carousing; and the monasteries often presented scenes of gambling, singing, dancing, and drunkenness.

§ 22. Personal cleanliness was a virtue. The warm bath was daily used. When a stranger entered a house, cold water was brought to him to wash his hands and face, and warm water for his feet. Children were cleansed once a day, and were tenderly nurtured by women until after the period of childhood; then a father had a right, if poor, to give up his son to slavery for seven years, if the boy consented. Until a daughter was fifteen years of age, a father could marry her to whom he pleased; after that she was free to choose a husband. Women, as a rule, were treated with great respect and consideration, and enjoyed many rights and privileges as an equal of man. By law and custom they had a fair share of influence in society. The preliminaries of marriage were (1), the consent of the young woman and her friends; and (2), security given by the intended husband that he would support her and her children in a manner suitable to her social position. The

Learning.

Costumes of both Sexes.

Laborers of the Country.

nuptial ceremony was performed by a priest, and feasting followed.

§ 23. There was very little school learning among even the wealthy and noble. The brothers of Alfred the Great did not learn to read. Some youths were instructed in monasteries, where all learning was centred. But at a very early age they were practised in manly sports, and the chase was the chief pastime; hawking was ranked next to it.

§ 24. There is no pictorial authority for Anglo-Saxon costume earlier than the eighth century. The masculine attire was composed of a linen shirt, over which was a tunic of linen or woollen that descended to the knee, and was plain or ornamented round the collar and borders, according to the rank of the wearer. The tunic was open at the neck, and sometimes at the sides, and had long sleeves reaching to the wrists. It was generally confined at the waist by a girdle. Over the tunic a short cloak was worn, fastened on the breast or shoulder with a brooch. The legs were covered with linen or woollen drawers and stockings, and the feet were protected by leather shoes or buskins. The beard and hair were worn long, excepting on the upper lip, which was close shaven.

§ 25. The feminine attire was composed of a long and ample gown of any stuff chosen, worn over a closer fitting one, in form like a tunic or kirtle. The former had loose sleeves, and the latter tight ones reaching to the wrist. The shoes and stockings were similar to those worn by the other sex. Over the tunic was worn a mantle by the higher classes, in form resembling the ecclesiastical vestment known as a chasuble. A head-dress was made of a veil, or long piece of linen or silk, wrapped round the head and neck. The Anglo-Saxon ladies paid great attention to the arrangement of their hair, which they curled with heated irons. They wore cuffs and ribbons, brooches, ear-rings, and necklaces; to the latter a golden cross was sometimes suspended. In very rare instances gloves were worn.

§ 26. The labor of the country during the Anglo-Saxon era appears to have been performed almost wholly, excepting in the arts and manufactures, by a kind of half-independent serfs called *villani*, and absolute slaves, the latter numbering about one-tenth of the population. The *villani* were the chief cultivators of the soil. No master had a right to use them as his absolute property;



Serfdom.

Intellectual Culture.

The prevailing Language.

yet they had not the power of removing from the estate on which they were born; and when it was sold, they were transferred with it as really as were the trees that grew upon it. On the other hand, the *villani* could not be driven from the estate,—they had a right to stay and profit by the land they cultivated. This was simply the Teutonic system, of great antiquity, upon which the feudal system was constructed. The *villani* differed in one essential particular from the nobility, viz., that they were wholly destitute of political power, though constituting by far the largest portion of the population.

§ 27. Literature, Science, and Art were in a formative state during the Anglo-Saxon era, when the germs of what we now behold in the realm of British culture took powerful root. Ireland had more and better scholars, then, than Great Britain. By invitation of Charlemagne, teachers from that island established schools in the Western Empire. The Irish monks were the most skilful illuminators of manuscript books. Among the early men of letters was the great Irish apostle, St. Patrick.

§ 28. The British had native historians and chroniclers, such as Gildas and Nennius, as early as the seventh century, who wrote in Greek and Latin. So too did the more eminent Bede—the “venerable Bede”—who flourished at the beginning of the eighth century. And so it was that the great mass of the people of that era, who could neither read Latin nor purchase costly manuscript books, were ignorant of their own literature. The great Alfred<sup>a</sup> did better service for his people by translating books from the Latin into their native tongue. During his reign literature and the fine arts received great encouragement. Schools were established; and in the reign of Canute,<sup>b</sup> and the closing years of the Anglo-Saxon period, higher seminaries of learning were founded. Among these was the University of Oxford. The studies in these schools were few, embracing grammar, arithmetic, the Greek and Latin languages, astronomy, and theology.

§ 29. The language of the Anglo-Saxons was one of the dialects of the ancient Gothic, which so extensively prevailed in Northern Europe. They found that of the ancient inhabitants of Britain mixed with the provincial Latin introduced by the Romans. The Saxons almost destroyed that medley, as well as the earlier British tongue, and their own became the language of the country. It

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 46.<sup>b</sup> § 1, p. 68.



## Science and Art.

## Churches.

## Music and Musical Instruments.

remained so until after the Norman invasion, when an effort was made to root it out by compelling the conquered to have only the French language used and taught in the schools.

§ 30. Science was very little known and cultivated during the Anglo-Saxon era; and then music and painting could hardly claim the dignity of arts. But architecture attained to considerable eminence. The introduction of Christianity caused the build-

<sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 20. ing of many churches,<sup>a</sup> and on these the best skill was employed. Most of these sacred structures were built

of wood and thatched; but the York Cathedral, founded by Edwin,<sup>b</sup> was built of stone, and had its windows

<sup>b</sup> § 21, p. 36. glazed by Bishop Wilfred, the great promoter of architecture, in the year 669. He called French glass-makers from

<sup>c</sup> § 11, p. 3. France, and so introduced that art into Britain.<sup>c</sup> Numerous abbeys were built, some of them with

<sup>d</sup> § 17, p. 78. considerable skill, like that of Westminster.<sup>d</sup> Late in the Anglo-Saxon period, the Romanesque style appeared, and is

known in England as the Norman. Of the sacred buildings of that era not one stone now remains upon another.

§ 31. The Anglo-Saxons had musical instruments, of which the chroniclers mention the horn, trumpet, drum, flute, cymbal, rota or viol, lyre, and harp. They also had rude organs, an invention of the East, in their churches, whose pipes and bellows were of brass. The harp was in common use on all festive occasions. It was undoubtedly borrowed from the Irish, among whom music was cultivated from the remotest antiquity. So famous was the church music of the Irish at an early period, that the daughter of Pepin, King of France, sent to Ireland for persons to instruct the nuns of Nevelle in psalmody.

§ 32. As we glance back over the Anglo-Saxon era, we see in the half-barbarous state of the people the germs of what we most prize in modern society, which is the product of growth and culture. Out of the chaos of that period, as Guizot has said, sprang all of order, and light, and life which our present civilization boasts of.

## BOOK IV.

### THE NORMAN RULE.

[FROM A.D. 1066 TO A.D. 1154.]

---

#### CHAPTER I.

REIGN OF WILLIAM THE FIRST. [A.D. 1066 TO 1087.]

§ 1. BEFORE the ceremony of crowning William the Conqueror had ended, at which the new king swore that if his people would be faithful he would govern as well as any ruler before him had done, a tumult broke out between the Normans and the English, when several houses were burnt by the former, and many men were slain.

§ 2. This promised badly for the tranquillity of William's reign, and therefore, with the view of depriving the English of their natural leaders, as well as of proving to his ancient subjects the importance of his conquest, William, early in the spring of 1067, passed over into Normandy, taking with him Edgar, who bore the honorary title of Atheling, or the Illustrious, Stigand the archbishop, the Abbot Frederic, the Earls Waltheof, Edwin, and Morcar,<sup>a</sup> and many other nobles. A Norman chronicler tells us that all men beheld with curiosity these natives of Britain. "They admired their flowing hair, and their garments of gold tissue enriched with studs, their gold and silver plate of admirable workmanship, and their hunting and drinking horns tipped with gold."

<sup>a</sup> § 4, p. 79.

§ 3. William had left in England as governors, Odo the bishop, his half-brother, who was much more of a warrior than a priest, and William Fitzosborne, who had been created Earl of Hereford. These men acted so tyrannically that the English soon began to take up arms, and the Normans might have been speedily expelled but for the precaution that they had taken of building strong castles in or near every considerable town. These were garrisoned

The Norman Oppressors.

The Conqueror's Claims.

His Friends rewarded.

by large bodies of well-armed soldiers, and as their walls were too thick to be broken down, and too high to be scaled, they were in little danger of being captured. One chief, however, called Edric the Forester, who was the grand-nephew of Edric Streona and the

kinsman of Harold,<sup>a</sup> gained so many successes over  
<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 71.

the "castle-men" of Hereford, who attempted to drive him from his lands in Hereford and Shropshire, that a general rising was on the point of breaking out, when William hurried back from Normandy, and declaring that the discontent of

the English absolved him from his promise to be "a  
<sup>b</sup> § 27, p. 85. loving lord"<sup>b</sup> to them, he seized on the lands of most

of the nobles, partitioned them among his followers, and laid heavy taxes on the whole of the people. With part of this plunder he founded and endowed an abbey, still known as Battle Abbey, in Sussex, which, under the pretext of praying for the souls of the slain, might serve as a monument of his triumph at Hastings.

§ 4. At the beginning of William's reign all the land of the country was assumed to belong to him by right of conquest. He, however, then seized only the property of Harold and his chief supporters, and allowed the rest of the nation to retain their possessions on paying a heavy ransom. He also re-established the tax called Danegelt, which King Edward had remitted. Now he proceeded to carry out what, in spite of his promises, no doubt was his original intention, and he divided the whole country into 60,000 portions, which were termed knights' fees, the greater part of which he granted to his chief officers, but he also kept vast estates in his own hands.

§ 5. The persons who received these grants were termed tenants in chief, and instead of rent they were bound to find one fully equipped horseman and about six light-armed attendants, who were to serve the king for forty days in each year, without pay, for each fee. The whole were granted to about 1,400 persons, who, in their turn, granted portions to others, called under-tenants, for like services as they themselves had to render to the king.

§ 6. This great change in the country is known as the establishment of the Feudal System—the principles and constitution of feuds, or lands held by military service. Something like it, on

a limited scale, had been in use among the Saxons,<sup>c</sup>  
<sup>c</sup> § 26, p. 92.

but William extended it over the whole country, and on so firm a basis that many parts of it exist to this day, though



## The Feudal System.

## How it worked.

## Its Effects.

its most oppressive features, which he had introduced, have fortunately long disappeared. It supplied him, without expense, with a large army, and also produced a revenue that his predecessors had never enjoyed. Some account of what is termed "the feudal incidents" is necessary for the proper understanding of the history of this period, which is known as the Middle Ages.

§ 7. So long as the feudal system existed in full force, each person, beside doing homage and taking an oath to maintain the king's quarrel against all men, had, on obtaining possession of his land, even though his father had held it before him, to pay a sum of money, called a *relief*; for on the death of each tenant the land was taken into the king's hands, and it was not restored to the heir until an inquiry had been made (termed *Inquisitio post mortem*) as to what it consisted of, what payments were due, whether any part had been unlawfully parted with, and who was the heir, and what was his age. If the heir was a minor, the property was kept in charge, and what remained of its produce after his maintenance was paid for was at the royal disposal. Hence it became a very common mode of enriching favorites to grant them the custody of a wealthy ward.

§ 8. When the heir at length obtained possession, he was, if in the first rank of chief tenants, bound to attend the king to give him his counsel. This was the origin of the British House of Peers. The heir had to accompany the king to the wars, and ordinarily had some special duties to perform—to be his constable (or general of his army), his marshal (or leader of cavalry), his standard-bearer, his chamberlain, or his steward. All the tenants had to pay occasional sums of money, called *aids*, on the knighting of the king's eldest son, the marriage of his eldest daughter, or his own captivity, when a heavy ransom would be due to his enemies. These dues, which the chief tenants paid to the king, were in turn rendered to them by their under-tenants, who also did homage to them, and swore to maintain their quarrel against all men, excepting the king; but they frequently disregarded this clause, so that the great barons had little difficulty in making war on the sovereign, who was rather the first among them than a king, as generally understood.

§ 9. But the feudal system bore the hardest where a benevolent ruler would wish to make it light. On the death of a tenant the horse and arms of the deceased became the property of the superior lord, and had to be redeemed by the payment of a sum of money called a *heriot*. If he died without an heir, the fee (as it was

## Burdens of the Feudal System.

## The Knight and his Vocation.

termed) was forfeited to the lord, as it could neither be sold nor bequeathed by will; and, hardest of all, his widow could be given in marriage, without her own consent, to whomsoever the king pleased; hence money was often paid for permission to remain in widowhood. His sons, if under age, and his daughters, even if of age, were also at the king's disposal, and could be given in marriage in like manner against their will. It was considered an act of grace to accept a sum of money from them for leave to follow their own inclinations.

§ 10. These were all acknowledged and well-understood burdens, but they were made heavier by many of the kings, who exacted "unreasonable aids," which gave rise to the discontents that Magna Charta was intended to appease; and the claim of homage and investiture occasioned a long series of disputes and jealousies between the State and the Church, the beginning of which we shall have to notice in the next reign.

§ 11. Such is a brief view of the system that the Normans introduced. Under their kings it remained unchanged, but the first of the restored Saxon line (Henry the Second) effected a change that gradually brought about its fall. He allowed his knights and nobles the option of paying a sum termed *scutage* (or shield money) instead of personal service, and with these funds he and his successors were enabled to hire troops who owed no fealty to any other lord, and, unlike the military tenants, were bound to serve all the year round. Such were the mercenaries of King John, who supported his cause against the barons.

§ 12. Though the word is a Saxon one, it is under William that we first hear of knights, and it may be necessary to say that the knight was a soldier, who had already served in the capacity of squire or attendant on some other knight, and had been by some king, or bishop, or knight, admitted to the higher degree. He took an oath to be courteous and faithful, the protector of the innocent and the oppressed, and was girded with a sword, which he vowed never to draw except in the cause of right. The knight fought on horseback, and he was accompanied to the field by five or six spearmen or archers, who were ready either to secure or kill any opponent that he might conquer, or to come to the rescue if he was in danger. The oath of the knight was no doubt kept by thousands of individuals, but it certainly did not influence William or his great men in their conduct to the vanquished English.



Hatred between the English and Normans.

Civil War and Foreign Invasion.

§ 13. Soon after William's return, Edgar Atheling,<sup>a</sup> with his mother and sisters, fled to Scotland, and many of the despoiled nobles and others joined them. The hatred of the people to the Normans grew greater every day, and William, confident in his strength, took no means to conciliate them. The mother of Harold<sup>b</sup> had found refuge in Exeter, which the inhabitants had fortified, and where they cut off a party of Normans that were driven by bad weather into their port. The city was captured after an eighteen days' siege, but this did not prevent a much more formidable outbreak in the north.

§ 14. William had allowed Cospatric, a grand-nephew of Edward the Confessor,<sup>c</sup> to hold the earldom of Northumberland, but he now displaced him, and appointed instead another Saxon named Copsi. This man, by taking the office, became so hateful that he was murdered in a church in a month after. Cospatric, who had fled to Scotland, now returned and took up arms. Edgar Atheling joined him, and William was forced to march against them. On his way he built forts at Nottingham and Lincoln, and when he reached York the Saxons retired to Scotland. William built two castles at York, placed 3,000 soldiers in them, and bestowed the earldom of Northumberland on Robert de Comine, a Norman, who took his post at Durham with a strong garrison.

§ 15. During William's absence the sons of Harold had landed in Somersetshire, but they were opposed by Ednoth, who had been their father's standard-bearer. Ednoth was killed, but they were unsuccessful in their attempt and withdrew to Ireland.

§ 16. The year 1069 was one of desperate fighting. De Comine and his garrison of 900 men were all put to death in January, and Edgar Atheling prepared for another invasion. In the autumn, a Danish fleet of 240 ships arrived in the Humber, when Edgar, and Cospatric, and Merleswain, and other nobles joined them. York was captured, the castles were demolished, and the 3,000 Normans, with mercenaries, were put to the sword almost to a man, probably in revenge for their having plundered and burnt the city and the cathedral. William was hunting in the forest of Dean when he heard of the disaster, and he swore "by the splendors of the Almighty" that he would utterly exterminate the Northumbrian people. He marched against the invaders, when



Terrible Devastations.

The War Continued.

William's Exactions.

they retired to their ships, and remained in the Humber during the winter. He also remained in the north, and he employed the time in devastating the country around him. So effectually was this done, that in a tract of full sixty miles in extent, between the Humber and the Tees, not a house was left standing, the crops and the cattle were destroyed, and the people perished by thousands from famine. A writer who lived sixty years later assures us that it was a desert in his time. Confiscation of lands became general, and William's vengeance was almost satiated.

§ 17. This barbarity, however, did not break the spirit of the English. In the following spring a Danish fleet, commanded by King Sweyn himself, joined that already in the Humber. The people of East Anglia readily submitted to him, and Christiern, a Danish bishop, established himself at Ely. The fleet now came into the Thames, when William, acting like Ethelred  
a § 18, p. 66. the Unready,<sup>a</sup> bribed them to withdraw.

§ 18. William's conquest of England was by no means yet complete. Hereward, the younger brother of Edwin and Morcar, had plundered and burnt the abbey of Peterborough, where Thorold, a stern Norman, had replaced a beloved Saxon abbot, and then throwing himself into the isle of Ely, he was there joined by thousands of resolute men, and for a long time defied all William's efforts to reduce him.

§ 19. Meantime nothing was neglected by the Normans that could provoke fresh risings, and serve as the plea for fresh confiscations. William at his coming had professed great regard for the Church, and had granted charters of privilege to many abbeys. These were now resumed, and the treasures that had been laid up there, as in a place of security that no Christian ruler  
b § 2, p. 95. would touch, were seized; Stigand,<sup>b</sup> the archbishop, was deposed and imprisoned, but escaped to Scotland, while Agelric, formerly bishop of Durham, died in confinement. Wulstan, the bishop of Worcester, who was esteemed a saint, and a worker of miracles, was threatened with deprivation because he did not understand the Norman tongue; but he was so highly esteemed by the people that it was not deemed prudent to remove him. The sees as they became vacant were filled with Norman monks, one of whom, Lanfranc, who became Archbishop of Canterbury, was an exemplary man; but others, as Thomas, appointed to York, and Walcher to Durham, and Gundulf to

Tyranny of the Normans.

Civil War.

William's Family Troubles.

Rochester, and Robert to Hereford, were turbulent and tyrannical. Walcher, who was particularly odious, was put to death in his own church.

§ 20. To these acts, which deeply afflicted the English, so much were they in general attached to the clergy, was added the lawless tyranny of the hordes of "castle-men" who were scattered over every part of the country, and made the people feel their heavy hands as masters. Among other indignities they ordered fires and lights to be extinguished at a certain hour, which was announced by a bell (since known as the *couvre feu* or "curfew bell"); and though this was an old Norman, Scotch, Italian, and Spanish regulation for the prevention of fires, it was regarded by the Saxons as a badge of slavery.

§ 21. William advanced against the isle of Ely in 1071, with a fleet as well as an army, and though it was desperately defended it was at last taken, through the treachery of some monks. Edwin had been already killed, but his brother Morcar was now captured, and their sister Lucy was obliged to marry Ivo de Tailbois, a Norman, to whom their inheritance was granted. Many other prisoners were made, but Hereward, the last hero of Anglo-Saxon independence, cut his way through, and with a small band of followers, the chronicler tells us, "went out triumphantly." He was soon afterward treacherously killed by some Bretons, and Edric the Forester having been about the same time captured, the conquest of England was at last achieved, in the fifth year after William's landing.

§ 22. The remainder of the Conqueror's reign was, however, by no means peaceable. In 1075 some of his Norman nobles conspired against him, and invited aid from Denmark. The plot was disclosed, and it is chiefly remarkable as it was made the pretext for putting to death Waltheof, the son of Siward, the great Earl of Northumberland, who was regarded as the sole remaining champion of the people. Afterwards William's son Robert rebelled against him, for the purpose of gaining for himself the rule of the duchy of Normandy, which his father had promised him. In a skirmish at Gerberoi, William was wounded and thrown from his horse by his son, who, recognizing his father's voice as he called for assistance, raised him and implored his forgiveness, which the angry king would not readily grant.

§ 23. William made several foreign expeditions, in which he



William's Operations on the Continent.    Wales Subdued.    Royal Hunting-Grounds.

readily availed himself of the services of the English, though in England every office of honor or trust was closed against them. In 1072 he invaded Scotland, and in the following year he subdued Maine, but in 1076 he failed in an attack on Brittany. In 1079 the Scots burst into England, but they were driven back by Robert of Normandy, who had received his father's pardon and accompanied him to England. To restrain the Scots he built a strong castle on the river, and around this the important town of Newcastle-upon-Tyne gradually grew up.

§ 24. In 1081 William marched into Wales, and received the homage of many of its chiefs. The country was nominally subject to England when the Normans came, and as early as 1067 a fortress called Baldwin's Castle was built by an adventurer of that name where the castle of Montgomery now stands; but it was not until thirty years later that they gained a firm footing in the country.

§ 25. On one of the occasions of William's passing over to Normandy, Edgar Atheling repaired to him, and was well received. He soon became a friend of Robert, and accompanied him in many of his expeditions. His sister Margaret had married Malcolm the Third, king of Scotland, and through her daughter the Saxon line was eventually restored to the throne.

§ 26. In 1082 Odo <sup>a</sup> the bishop, William's half-brother, who aspired to be Pope, fell into disgrace, and was imprisoned for the remainder of the king's life. He was Earl of Kent as well as bishop, and when some of his friends ventured to remonstrate on his captivity, William replied that he would never think of imprisoning a bishop, but he would deal with the Earl of Kent as he chose.

§ 27. About this period two events occurred which are very remarkable in the reign of William. In 1079 he greatly enlarged the hunting grounds which adjoined the old palace of Winchester, and formed what has ever since been known as the New Forest. To do this he seized on the neighboring estates; but the country seems always to have been very thinly inhabited, the soil in general being too poor to repay cultivation, which renders unlikely the common tale that many churches and villages were destroyed to make room for the game. Other forests were made or enlarged, and William, who "loved the tall deer as if he was their father," enacted laws that whoever killed a hart, a hind, or a boar, should be blinded. This forest code, as it was termed, also imposed penal-

<sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 95.



Domesday Book and its Revelations.

Preparations for an Invasion.

ties on trespassers, and directed that all dogs in the neighborhood of the forests should be muzzled and have their claws pared. Neglect of these and a thousand more minute matters was made the pretext for ruinous fines and confiscations.

§ 28. The other event was the formation of the famous record called Domesday Book, which is still preserved in the Public Record Office. This was compiled by a body of commissioners in the year 1085, in which is recorded the value of all the property for the greater part of the kingdom, who were its then present holders, and who had held it in the time of King Edward.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 73.

It shows that the leaders at the battle of Hastings had been well provided for, and that much the greater part of the property of the Saxons had been confiscated. William's half-brothers, Robert Earl of Mortaigne, and Odo the bishop, had 1232 manors. The first had 793 and the second 439, and William himself had nearly 1300, though King Edward had possessed but 165, and Harold only 118. These eminent men, however, were not the only ones who profited by the confiscations. The Ab-  
bey of Battle<sup>b</sup> had manors in seven counties, and  
even menial servants (if foreigners) were rewarded in the same way. The names of the cook, the falconer, the steward, the carpenter, the farrier, and the porter appear along with those of the proudest nobles. The survey was intended to serve as a guide for apportioning taxation, and it bears indisputable evidence of William's bad government. Although the sums to be paid by the towns for his protection were greatly increased in amount, property in general was returned as of less value than in the time of King Edward.

<sup>b</sup> § 3, p. 95.

§ 29. William's reign was now drawing to a close. In 1085 a league was formed against him by the kings of Denmark and Norway and the Count of Flanders, and a fleet collected by them for an invasion. William levied taxes three times heavier than before, hired soldiers from abroad, and with his truly barbarous policy laid waste the sea-coast. The confederates, however, quarrelled, the King of Denmark was killed by his own men, and the enterprise was abandoned.

§ 30. As soon as this danger was over, William collected a vast sum of money and passed over to the continent, to make war on the French king. His troops burnt the town of Mantes, including all the churches, and two hermits who dwelt in them; but there the Conqueror also met with his death. His horse stepped on

William's Ravages on the Continent.

His signs of Penitence and his Death.

some hot ashes, and plunging violently, bruised his rider so that he was obliged to return to Rouen. There he lay sick at the priory of St. Gervaise a few weeks, and then died on the 9th of September, 1087. He showed some softening of heart before he

departed, and ordered the release of Earl Morcar,<sup>a</sup> the

<sup>a</sup> § 21, p. 101.

brother, and Alfgar and Wulfnoth, the sons of Harold, as well as some Norman prisoners; but it was with difficulty that he could be brought to pardon his ambitious and warlike brother, Odo the bishop. His son Robert was then at the court of the King of France; but he left him the duchy of Normandy as his birth-right. To William, whom he praised as a dutiful son, he gave his splendid conquest of England, and advised him to hasten over and secure it; while to his youngest son, Henry, he gave £5,000 in silver instead of domains, and the young prince is recorded to have been very careful in seeing it weighed, lest there should be any deficiency. This point ascertained, he departed, as his brother William had already done, and very soon afterward the great Duke of Normandy and King of England expired.

§ 31. A woeful scene followed the death of the Conqueror. The nobles, anticipating war between Robert and William, retired in haste to their own castles. The physicians and chief attendants departed, and the menial servants, left without control, seized whatever precious effects they could find, and fled from the priory, leaving the corpse on the floor. At length a knight named Herluin, from Christian charity, conveyed it to Caen, where it was to be buried in the church of St. Stephen, which William had founded.

§ 32. When the body arrived the clergy went out in solemn procession to meet it; but just as they reached the church a fire broke out in the town, and in the confusion the corpse was left in the street. At length the monks got into the church and performed the usual service; and when the body was to be lowered into the grave, the Bishop of Evreux preached a sermon, which he concluded by requesting any one who had been offended or injured by the late king to forgive him. Then a man named Ascelin, the son of Arthur, rose up and vehemently complained that the ground on which the church stood had been unjustly seized from his father, and added, "In the name of God, I forbid you to bury the spoiler in my inheritance!" A great tumult followed, but the man's tale was found to be true, and he received a



The Conqueror's Successor.

His first Acts.

Prisoners Released.

sum of money in hand and a promise of full compensation before the ceremony was allowed to proceed.

§ 33. A Saxon chronicler, who says that he had oft looked on William in his court, has drawn his character. "He was," he tells us, "wise and rich, mild to good men, but beyond all measure severe to those who withstood his will. In his time men had many sorrows. Rich men moaned, and poor men trembled; but he was so stern, he recked not the hatred of them all, for they must follow his will, if they would have lands or even life."

## CHAPTER II.

REIGN OF WILLIAM THE SECOND. [A.D. 1087-1100.]

§ 1. WILLIAM, the second surviving son of the Conqueror, who was surnamed "Rufus," or the red, because of his extremely florid complexion, seems to have more closely resembled his father than either of his brothers. He was the Conqueror's third son, and was born at about the year 1060. Like him he was an able soldier, active, fierce, and resolute; and also like him he was most extortionate and oppressive to his people, and ever bent on extending his dominion.

§ 2. While the Conqueror lay on his death-bed, William Rufus, as he had been directed, hurried over to England. He had a firm friend in Lanfranc the archbishop,<sup>a</sup> and being there-  
a § 19, p. 100.  
 fore well received by the Normans (for the Saxons were allowed no voice in the matter), he was crowned by him [Sept. 26, A.D. 1087] very soon after his arrival.<sup>1</sup> He then repaired to Winchester, where the royal treasure was kept; and he showed his obedience to his father's injunctions not only by making a profuse distribution of money, giving sums to every church in the land for prayers for William's soul, but also by setting free a large number of prisoners. Some of these were Saxons, and the act was very acceptable to their countrymen; but others were Normans,

<sup>1</sup> From William the First to Henry the Third, inclusive, the reign of each king was considered to commence only at his coronation, the doctrine of hereditary right to the crown not being fully accepted, and requiring to be strengthened by the open declaration of the people that they were willing to receive the new ruler.



Robert of Normandy.

Conspirators at work.

Fate of a bad Bishop.

and many of these showed their ingratitude by conspiring against him.

§ 3. Robert, his elder brother, had taken possession of Normandy and seemed willing to remain there, but Odo the bishop, who became his chief counsellor, wishing to revenge his former imprisonment, which he attributed to Lanfranc, resolved if possible to drive William from the throne. He engaged Robert to send troops in the spring of 1088, and passing over at once to England himself, he induced many of the Norman lords to take up arms and ravage the royal lands, while others, who professed to adhere to William, only waited for an opportunity to betray him. Finding his troops were not to be depended on, he, by the advice of Lanfranc, called on the Saxons for aid, promising them good government. Partly from gratitude for the release of the kindred of Harold, but far more from hatred of the Normans, they readily flocked to his standard, Wulstan, the Saxon bishop already

mentioned,<sup>a</sup> encouraging them to do so. William

<sup>a</sup> § 19, p. 100. had accompanied his father in his campaigns, and was skilful in war; therefore he very soon overcame his adversaries, driving them out of the strong castles of Tunbridge and Pevensey.

§ 4. As the succors that he expected from Normandy never came, Odo the bishop was obliged to shut himself up in the castle of Rochester. There he was besieged; and though the Norman lords held back as far as they dared, many of them having relatives in the castle, the Saxons pressed on the siege so vigorously that the garrison was soon obliged to surrender. William at first threatened to put them all to death, but at last he granted them their lives on condition of forfeiting their estates and quitting the kingdom. The Saxons of Kent, who had been terribly oppressed by Odo when he was earl of that county, crowded around him and his men as they marched out, and cried, "Bring halters, bring halters for the traitor bishop!" His fellow-countrymen, however, saved him from their hands, but he never returned to England.

§ 5. When this danger was past, William took no care to redeem his promise of good government, although Lanfranc, as long as he lived, had influence enough to keep him from any very gross acts of tyranny. But when the good archbishop died [A.D. 1089], the king took for his chief adviser a low-born Norman named Ralph, who, though called his chaplain, acted as his judge, but

A vicious Counsellor.

The People Oppressed.

Normandy wretched.

travelled about the country more intent on extorting bribes than on administering justice. This man was styled *Le Flambarde*, the name by which he is still known in history, and he is thus likened to a firebrand by which the whole country is set in a blaze. Mainly through his pernicious counsels, the remainder of William's reign was one continued scene of misrule and oppression. The bishops' sees as they fell vacant were kept so, and their revenues spent by the king; the possessions of the monasteries were seized, and the monks almost starved on a scanty pittance. The lands were surveyed and taxed anew, offices and honors were sold, and the forest laws,<sup>a</sup> one of the great grievances of the Saxons, were made even more rigorous than before, while the <sup>a</sup> § 27, p. 102. extent of the forests was added to. The court swarmed with worthless and cruel men, who were William's chief favorites, and they and their attendants practised every oppression and outrage. They accompanied him in his journeys, and wherever they came the poor people fled from them as from a foreign enemy. And no wonder, as we read that, not content with "living at free quarter," as it was termed, on their departure they often trampled under foot the bread that they did not choose to eat, washed their horses' feet in the ale, and burnt the building that they had lodged in.

§ 6. Meanwhile Normandy was in as wretched a condition under the careless misgovernment of Robert. The great lords made war on each other, and one especially, Robert de Belesme, who had been besieged in Rochester Castle along with Odo,<sup>b</sup> became the terror of the whole country. He seized <sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 106. the castles of many of his neighbors, and preferred torturing the inhabitants to death to enriching himself by their ransoms. As if bent on making as many enemies as possible, he supplied himself with money by plundering the churches. William gave bribes to him and to many other Norman barons, and they in return admitted his troops into their castles, so that Robert soon had little more than the title of duke. He was always poor, and thus had been induced to sell a large district, called the Cotentin, with several strong forts, to his brother Henry; but he was also jealous and passionate, and when Henry and Robert de Belesme returned from a visit to England, thinking that they had been plotting against him, he seized them as they set foot on shore and imprisoned them, but, ever inconstant in his purposes, he soon set them at liberty.



Fratricidal War.

War against the Scotch and Welsh.

Treachery.

§ 7. The partisans of William Rufus now took up arms, and had nearly succeeded in gaining possession of Rouen, the capital of Robert, when the town was preserved by the bravery of Henry, who had good reason to fear that his own district of the Cotentin would be seized, as well as the rest of the duchy, in the event of their success. Robert, though usually courageous, was now seized with sudden fear, and fled to a neighboring monastery. Soon afterwards William arrived in Normandy, and resided there in royal state for several months. The king and the duke now joined in making war on their brother Henry, who was driven into exile. Next an agreement was made, whereby Robert ceded many castles to William, and William agreed to restore their forfeited English lands to Robert's friends. At last the brothers returned to England together, when Robert took the field against the invading Scots,<sup>a</sup> and drove them from Northumberland; but finding that William was slow to perform his part of the agreement, he returned in anger to Normandy in the year 1091.

<sup>a</sup> § 23, p. 102.

§ 8. The affairs of Wales next engaged the attention of William. In the preceding reign many Normans had settled on the border, and had begun to mix themselves up in its affairs. In 1089 Jestyn, a subordinate Welsh chief, rebelled against Rhys ap Tudor, the prince of South Wales, but was defeated. Einion, a Welshman who had served in the Norman armies, procured him the help of Robert Fitzhamon and twelve other knights, who, with 3,000 men, invaded Wales and defeated and killed Rhys ap Tudor. But Jestyn soon found that his treacherous allies had fought not for him, but for themselves. They speedily quarrelled with him and drove him out, and while they established Einion as their vassal in the interior, seized upon the sea-coast, which they erected into a kind of independent state called the Honor of Glamorgan. They secured themselves by building in it eighteen strong castles, the ruins of which are now among the most picturesque objects in South Wales.

§ 9. The success of these adventurers encouraged others to apply to William for leave to make what acquisitions they could, and, as he claimed to be the superior lord of Wales, their prayer was readily granted. "The Norman spoilers had tasted the sweetness of the land," says an old Welsh chronicler, and they poured into it in every quarter. The district bordering on the Severn



The Struggle in Wales.    The Welsh Subdued.    The King Pious when Sick.

(termed Powys) was soon occupied, and all along the coasts of South and West Wales castles and colonies of Normans and Flemings were planted. The Welsh, though badly armed, strove fiercely against the intruders, and long kept all their posts in a state of siege. They usually carried only short swords and spears, and it was a point of honor among them not to wear armor, which they considered only fit for a coward. Yet they hesitated not to throw themselves on the heavy-armed Normans, and they were often successful against them. If defeated, their great fleetness of foot (for they had no cavalry) made pursuit useless, and they were ready to return to the attack at the first favorable opportunity. According to their own historians, they more than once cleared the land of the spoilers, and it is certain that they destroyed Baldwin's Castle,<sup>a</sup> near Montgomery, surprised and slaughtered many of the scattered garrisons, retook Anglesey and Brecknock, and often made plundering incursions into England as far as Chester and Worcester.

§ 10. But the Normans persevered, and using their usual policy of selling their aid first to one, then to another of the numerous claimants of the sovereignty who arose after the death of Rhys ap Tudor, they so weakened the country that they eventually established themselves in all but the mountainous region of Gwynneth, or North Wales, which maintained a semblance of independence for 200 years longer. Under the pretext of guarding against the Welsh, the Norman settlers along the course of the Severn and the Wye formed a league, of which the Mortimers, lords of Wigmore, were the head. These Lords Marchers, or Borderers, considered themselves almost independent, and they took a conspicuous part in the civil wars of the time of Henry the Third.

§ 11. In the year 1093 William fell ill, and whilst in fear of death he was induced to appoint Anselm, an Italian monk, archbishop of Canterbury, the see having been vacant four years. He also made restitution of part of the church property, but on his recovery it was again seized, and the other bishops' sees and monasteries were still kept in his hands, and supplied the chief funds for his foreign wars. These and other causes of dispute at length drove the good and learned Anselm into exile, and he remained abroad as long as the king lived.

§ 12. Soon after William's recovery he was visited at Gloucester by Malcolm, king of Scotland, to treat for peace, but nothing was

Invasion by Scots.    War in North of England.    Royal Troops Conquerors.

agreed on, and Malcolm in the following November invaded Northumberland, when he fell unarmed into an ambuscade near Alnwick and was killed, along with his eldest son. His queen,

<sup>a</sup> § 13, p. 99. Margaret (the sister of Edgar Atheling),<sup>a</sup> after commending her remaining children to the care of the Scottish nobles, distributed her goods to the poor, and entering a church to pray for her husband's soul, she died before the service was ended. William attempted to gain possession of Scotland by supporting Duncan, a pretender to the throne, and supplying him with money and men; but after a short usurpation he was killed [A.D. 1094]. The throne was then seized by Donald Bane, the brother of Malcolm, who in his turn was defeated by Edgar, his nephew, and died in prison.

§ 13. Donald Bane had driven out a great number of Norman and Saxon exiles who had been sheltered by his brother, and these desperate men, having then no refuge from the tyranny of William, engaged in an attempt to make at least the north of England independent of him, if they could not succeed in driving him from the throne. Robert Mowbray, the Earl of Northumberland, having been ordered to restore some Norwegian ships that he had seized, refused to do so, and gathering the outlaws about him he put himself at their head. William marched promptly against the insurgents, escaped an attempt to assassinate him, and captured Newcastle and other towns. At last he blocked up Mowbray in Bamborough Castle, and to prevent his escape built a tower, which, with a grim kind of wit, he styled *Mal Voisin* (or *Bad Neighbor*), near to his stronghold. He then departed on an expedition into Wales, and when he returned he found that Mowbray had been made a prisoner whilst foraging, though Bamborough still held out. Mowbray was now compelled, by the threat of having his eyes put out, to order his wife to surrender the castle, when he was sent to Windsor and kept for awhile in a dungeon, but was at last allowed to become a monk at St. Alban's. Many of his partisans were put to death, and several others were cruelly mutilated.

§ 14. This terrible example seems to have prevented any similar attempts during the rest of William's reign, and he was thus able to turn his whole attention to enlarging his dominions in Normandy. In this project he was very successful, though not entirely by war. He induced his brother Henry to join him against Robert, and



Robert of Normandy joins the Crusaders.      Aim and Character of the Crusades.

between their attacks and the treachery of Robert de Belesme, the whole country was soon brought under William's obedience. Robert, therefore, altogether wearied with and unfit for the cares of government, readily agreed to pledge his states for five years to William on the payment of 10,000 marks of silver, and with the money he equipped himself for the expedition which about this time was set on foot, and is known as the First Crusade. William raised the money by a general plunder of the monasteries, and not content with having thus acquired Normandy free of cost, he also set about adding to it the neighboring territory of Maine, which had been conquered and kept in subjection (though with difficulty) by his father, but had made itself independent of the careless and slothful Robert.

§ 15. The crusades were expeditions by the Christian nations of Western Europe for the recovery of the Holy Land from the Turks, who obstructed Christian pilgrimages to Jerusalem. This was the pretext of popes and princes. The fact was, that the throne and the dominions of the Christian emperor at Constantinople were threatened with seizure by the Turks, and he wished to weaken their power. The Pope, who claimed to be universal bishop, wished to bring the Greek, or Eastern Christian Church under his dominion. So pope and emperor declared that if the Christians did not go to the East the Mussulmen would come to the West; and measures were taken to fire the hearts of all Europe with a zeal for rescuing the holy sepulchre from the hands of the infidel—a motive more powerful than any political considerations.

§ 16. A native of Picardy, known as Peter the Hermit, who had been a witness of the sufferings of the Christian pilgrims, went from city to city, and from kingdom to kingdom, under the sanction of the Pope, telling the people in glowing language of the atrocities of the Turks. The sentiment was wide-spread—the holy sepulchre *must* be taken from the hands of the infidel. The Pope called a general council of princes and nobles, prelates, priests, and knights. War upon the Turks was declared to have been ordered by God. Every one who should engage in it was directed to wear upon his breast or shoulder a red cross, and he was called a *croisé* or Crusader.

§ 17. Among those who earliest bore the symbol of the atonement and joined in the armed pilgrimage toward Jerusalem, which



Fate of the first Crusaders. What the Crusaders accomplished. A bad Man in Office.

was led by Peter, was Robert of Normandy, his uncle Odo the bishop,<sup>a</sup> and Edgar Atheling.<sup>b</sup> That first crusading army perished without seeing Jerusalem: Odo died on the journey, and Robert returned. The next crusade was more successful; and finally Jerusalem was taken by the Christian warriors [July 15, 1099], when Godfrey of Bouillon was proclaimed king of the conquered domain.

§ 18. During a period of almost two hundred years these wars were carried on with the greatest atrocity. The Mussulmen soon drove the Christians from Jerusalem, and efforts for its recovery prolonged the struggle. They were cruel and unholy wars, promoted and fostered for the gratification of princes and nobles, pontiffs and prelates. When the Christian warriors found out by experience that Mussulmen were as true men as themselves, and not monsters, they would not consent to desolate their land, and murder the people without a cause; and the crusades ceased because men would no longer be duped with the dishonest cry, The holy sepulchre must be taken from the hands of the infidel!

§ 19. The crusades failed to accomplish the object for which they were ostensibly begun; but their effects were beneficent. They extended the area of commerce, and brought nations into closer and more friendly communion. They opened the way for the light of science and the arts to spread over and benefit Europe. From the more enlightened people of the East, the ignorant and bigoted warriors of the West learned the sciences of medicine, astronomy, and algebra, and the use of our Arabic numerals, so much more convenient than those of the Romans; also of sugar, linen, paper, chimneys, windmills, and many other things so common in our day. And so it was that the crusaders contributed important elements of our present civilization. They also foiled the intentions of the Mohammedans to seize Europe as a possession and force the religion of the Arabian Prophet upon the people.

§ 20. In the year 1096 William, bishop of Durham, died, and after an interval of three years the see was bestowed on *Le Flambard*, who had long been the justiciary and treasurer, and indeed chief minister of William. This man, who was of a handsome presence and a lively wit, was as rapacious and profuse as his master, and as he kept a noble household, he was always surrounded by dependents who were ready to execute any of his commands.

Grievous Oppressions. Operations of a bold Leader. Condition of Normandy.

whether lawful or unlawful. He was indefatigable in devising schemes to fill the royal treasury, and his exactions supplied the funds which William employed in corrupting the vassals of his brother Robert. When they were no longer wanted for this purpose, they were employed in building a new wall round the Tower of London, a bridge over the river Thames, and a great hall in the palace at Westminster; "and men were grievously oppressed," says a chronicler, "and many perished thereby."

§ 21. When Duke Robert had gone to the crusade, Robert de Belesme, as William's general in Normandy, labored incessantly to conquer the adjoining districts. He seized the Vexin, a small district on the Seine, from the king of France, and built in it the strong fortress of Gisors, which was afterwards a place of much importance. The Normans about this time recon-<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 2.  
quered Anglesey<sup>a</sup> from the Welsh, but in 1098 it was attacked by Magnus, king of Norway, when Hugh, Earl of Shrewsbury, the brother of Belesme, was killed in opposing him. Robert bought the earldom for £3,000, and coming again to England, built himself a strong castle on the Severn, at Bridgnorth, and from it carried on plundering expeditions against all his neighbors, whether Normans, Saxons, or Welsh, robbing the churches, murdering the people, and building forts on other men's lands, in each of which he placed bands of freebooters. No redress could be obtained for his depredations, as he was a favorite with the king, and was besides one of the best castle-builders and fiercest soldiers of his time.

§ 22. The people of Maine, when they threw off the yoke of the Normans,<sup>b</sup> sent into Italy and offered the sovereignty to Hugh of Tuscany, the grandson of their<sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 110.  
last count. He accepted the offer, but finding that he must maintain possession by the sword, he soon sold it to his cousin Elias, a brave knight, who successfully resisted all the force that Robert (or rather his general, de Belesme) could bring against him. But when the government came into the hands of William, the count repaired to him at Rouen, and very humbly asked for peace, as he wished to go on the crusade. "Go where you like," replied the king, "so long as you surrender my inheritance."—"It is my inheritance," said Elias, "and if you dispute it, I will plead my cause before the bishops and lords of the land."—"My pleadings shall be spears and arrows," cried the king; "return to your city,



## Affairs in Normandy.

summon your friends, and repair your broken-down walls, for I will never leave you in quiet possession."

§ 23. Elias retired to his states, and William, occupied with other affairs, left him for a while undisturbed; but at last the count fell into an ambuscade laid for him by de Belesme, and was carried off a prisoner to Rouen. Soon afterward Mans, his capital, was obliged to surrender, one condition being that he should be set at liberty. As Elias had now lost his dominions, and had nothing left but five castles of his patrimonial inheritance, he wished to enter William's service as a simple knight. The king, who admired his courage, would have granted the request, but some of his courtiers dissuaded him, and it was refused, when Elias exclaimed, "Bad luck has put me in your power, Sir King; but if I were free I know what I would do!"—"Do! you do!" cried William in a rage; "do what you can! begone, fly, and do your worst!" and then gave him a safe-conduct through his states.

§ 24. Elias passed some months in strengthening his castles and collecting his friends, while William returned to England. He

<sup>a</sup> § 27, p. 102. was engaged in his favorite pastime of hunting in the New Forest,<sup>a</sup> when a messenger met him, and informed him that Elias had surprised the city of Mans, and was then in possession of it, though the Norman garrison in the castle still held out. The king at once turned his horse about, crying out, "Let us support our friends!" and rode down to the coast. There he threw himself into the first vessel that he saw, which was little better than a fishing-boat, and put to sea, although a storm was raging, answering his courtiers, who wished to wait for better accommodation and fair weather, that he had never heard of a king who was drowned. His boldness was successful. As soon as Elias heard that William had landed in Normandy, he fled from Mans, which had in the mean time been burnt by the garrison of the castle, and shut himself up in one of his forts. Thither the king followed him, but the place being strong, he soon abandoned the siege, and, imitating his father's policy, revenged himself by ravaging the open country with fire and sword; the fruit-trees were cut down, the vines were rooted up, the houses were burnt, and the people were slaughtered. That was in the year 1099.

§ 25. This was the last visit that William paid to the continent, as his sudden death put an end to a project that he had formed of



William's Ambition frustrated. His death. Henry secures the Crown and Treasure, adding all the southern part of France to his dominions. William Count of Aquitaine, wishing to go to the crusade, entered into a bargain with the English king, and for a sum of money agreed to put his territories in William's hands. So nearly was the matter concluded that William announced his intention of spending his Christmas at Poitiers, and was near the sea-coast to superintend the fitting out of a fleet and army to take possession. As usual, all his spare time was devoted to hunting; but strange rumors of some evil to happen to him were spread far and wide, and at length reached his ears. He laughingly said they were the fancies of monks who dreamed for money, and ordered 100 pence as a reward to one of them; but they evidently made an impression on him, and on the day of his death [August 2, 1100] he did not go out to hunt until he had dined and drunk freely.

§ 26. William's brother Henry, one Walter Tyrrel, a favorite attendant, William de Breteuil, and many others accompanied the king, but the party was soon scattered in pursuit of the game. Suddenly a cry was raised that the king was killed, and his body was seen on the ground pierced by an arrow. The deed was said to have been done by accident by Walter Tyrrel, but he always denied it, and it is not improbable that William was assassinated by some one else, at the instigation of his ambitious brother. Prince Henry rode up, and after a glance at the body galloped off to Winchester, where he demanded the keys of the royal treasure. William de Breteuil, who had followed him, claimed the crown on behalf of Robert<sup>a</sup> (William having never married left no legitimate child); but Henry, drawing his sword, declared

<sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 106.

that no foreign-born prince should possess the crown of England, for that he, who was of English birth, was the true heir. This declaration was well pleasing to the English. Breteuil's protest was unnoticed, and, as soon as the treasure had been surrendered, Henry hastened to London to secure the crown, without troubling himself even to give orders for his brother's burial.

§ 27. The body of William had been picked up by some of his servants, and being wrapped in a coarse cloth, it was brought on a charcoal-burner's cart to Winchester, "like a wild boar pierced by the hunters." It was buried on the day after his death, in the cathedral; but though many of his nobles attended, we are told by a writer of the time there were few mourners. All classes were thankful because the country had been relieved of a cruel tyrant.

Character of William Rufus.

His Successor's Coronation and Marriage.

§ 28. Thus perished, in the fortieth year of his age, the second Norman king. He is described as having been short and stout, with yellow hair and red face. He was very strong and active, and though easily excited to terrible fits of passion, he was frank and familiar with his chosen associates, profuse in his gifts, and occasionally showed both forbearance and generosity, particularly to a

<sup>a</sup> § 22, p 113. resolute opponent like the Count of Maine.<sup>a</sup> He, however, led a most profligate life, was an open scoffer and contemner of religion, and suffered justice (or rather injustice) to be bought and sold. Thus he has gained a worse character than either his father or his brother Henry, who, though quite as bad men, were more orderly in their conduct, and allowed no other tyranny than their own.

## CHAPTER III.

REIGN OF HENRY THE FIRST. [A. D. 1100 TO 1135.]

§ 1. HENRY was the only son of William the Conqueror who was born in England, and, as we have seen,<sup>b</sup> he had the address to turn this accidental circumstance to his advantage. He, however, differed in many other and more important respects from his brothers. They were mere illiterate hunters and soldiers, without anything pleasing in their appearance or conciliatory in their manners, whilst he was tall and handsome, with dark hair and bright blue eyes. He was studiously courteous to all, and though really even more avaricious, cruel, and treacherous than they, he early gained wisdom by adversity, and acted so prudently whilst in an inferior condition that he was a general favorite, while Robert and William were detested. He had, too, under the care of his tutor, Archbishop Lanfranc,<sup>c</sup> acquired a taste for learning, so that he was known as Beau Clerc, or the Fine Scholar, and his natural talents enabled him to fulfil the saying of his father, who, when giving him money instead of land, declared that he would one day excel his brothers both in wealth and dominion. Henry was crowned in Westminster Abbey, on Sunday, the 5th of August, in the year 1100, by Maurice the bishop



## King Henry's antecedent History.

of London, when he was thirty-two years of age. The same year he married Maud, a Scottish princess, and descendant of the great Alfred.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 46.

§ 2. Before considering the history of Henry's reign, let us look at antecedent events connected with his public career.

§ 3. Henry well knew the value of the gift of his father, and when the careless spendthrift, Robert, desired to borrow of him, refused to part with a single coin. Robert then offered to sell him part of his inheritance, on which Henry listened to him at once, and for £3,000 purchased one-third of Normandy. This was an important district, called the Cotentin,<sup>b</sup> which included many cities, and strong castles, and sea-ports,

<sup>b</sup> § 6, p. 107.

as Avanches, Barfleur, Cherbourg, and Mont St. Michel. Henry at once established an orderly government, and showed so much activity in protecting his people from the ravages of de Belesme and other freebooters, that he became very popular all over the duchy, and the weak and jealous Robert feared to be deposed by him. Quarrels and reconciliations followed; but at last Robert and William joined their forces against Henry, stripped him of all his possessions, and in the year 1091 drove him into exile.

§ 4. The young prince found a refuge in the Vexin, a province adjoining Normandy, where he lived for some time with the humble suite of only one knight, one priest, and three squires, "and though a king's son," says a writer who knew him, "had to endure poverty, that when he became king himself he might have compassion for the poor and lowly." He had, however, still friends, for he was known to be brave and active, and at last the people of Domfront, a strong town in Normandy, invited him to rescue them from the tyranny of de Belesme.<sup>c</sup> He accepted their offer, drove the freebooters from the castle, and fixing his own residence there, commenced an active war for the recovery of the Cotentin.

<sup>c</sup> § 21, p. 113.

§ 5. William, who cared not what instruments he employed to work his own ends, now saw that Henry might be useful to him in his designs against Normandy; he therefore supplied him with men and money, and employed him [A.D. 1095] as his general. Robert was soon obliged to surrender his duchy, and the war being thus ended, William and Henry, now as firm friends as two bad men could be, returned to England together. Henry continued to reside in his brother's court, and this threw in his way the oppor-



Henry's Promises to the Saxons. Affairs in Normandy. The Normans in England.

tunity, which he did not neglect, of securing the throne of England the instant that it became vacant, while Robert,<sup>a</sup> who  
<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 111. had refused the crown of Jerusalem in favor of  
<sup>b</sup> § 17, p. 111. Godfrey of Bouillon,<sup>b</sup> was lingering among the Norman settlers in Italy, on his way back from the crusade.

§ 6. Henry, hastening to London, as we have seen, was crowned on the third day after his brother's death. He well knew that his hope of success in his usurpation must depend on his securing the support of the Saxons, and he was lavish in his promises to them of good government. He granted a charter re-establishing the

laws of Edward the Confessor,<sup>c</sup> directed the hateful  
<sup>c</sup> § 18, p. 78. curfew to be abolished, promised to soften the rigor  
<sup>d</sup> § 5, p. 106. of the forest laws, and knowing that *Le Flambard*<sup>d</sup>

was regarded as the chief instrument of the extortions of the late reign, he ordered him to be seized and confined in fetters in the Tower of London. The bishop, however, did not long remain a prisoner. As he was rich, he made dainty feasts for his keepers, and whilst they were carousing, he lowered himself from the window by means of a rope that his friends had sent him in a cask of wine, and escaped.

§ 7. Very soon after Henry's accession Robert returned to Normandy, bringing with him a wife, Sibylla of Conversana, from Italy, and money (her marriage portion) to redeem his duchy; but he found Henry's soldiers in his castles, fully prepared to hold them against him. Instead of attempting to recover them, he wasted his wife's fortune on base favorites, abandoned himself to indolence, and, as he had done before, suffered his barons to make war on each other, and rob and murder with impunity. The

disinherited Count of Maine<sup>e</sup> took advantage of the  
<sup>e</sup> § 23, p. 114. confusion to recover his territories. He gave his daughter in marriage to Fulk, Count of Anjou, and he took a  
<sup>f</sup> § 9, p. 119. conspicuous part in the subsequent war between Robert and Henry.<sup>f</sup>

§ 8. The Normans in England soon showed that they were dissatisfied with Henry's government, which was strict and orderly, and they began confederating together to place Robert on the throne, feeling secure of doing as they pleased under his indolent

rule. Henry, to defeat their schemes,<sup>g</sup> took the decided  
<sup>g</sup> § 14, p. 110. step of joining himself openly with the Saxons.

He therefore drew from a convent, and, as we have noticed,

Effect of Henry's Marriage.    England again Invaded.    The Invaders withdraw.

married a princess of Saxon descent, the daughter of Malcolm of Scotland, and niece of Edgar Atheling. Her name was Edith, but as Saxon appellations were discountenanced, she was commonly called Matilda or Maud. She had been educated by her aunt, the Abbess Christina, and was a woman of exemplary piety and charity. This marriage, while it delighted the Saxons, gave mortal offence to the proud Norman lords, who insultingly styled the king and queen Godric and Godiva. Henry, however, cared nothing for their taunts, though, as they afterwards found, he did not forget them. To meet the invasion with which he was threatened, he raised an army of Saxons, which he trained in warlike exercises himself, for his Normans absolutely refused to teach them, saying that it was not fit that the arms of nobles and knights should be placed in such hands.

§ 9. Whilst the king was thus employed, *Le Flambar*d, on his escape from the Tower, had repaired to Normandy, and become Robert's chief counsellor. By his activity troops were got ready and a fleet prepared, to which several of Henry's ships deserted. In July, 1101, Robert landed at Portsmouth, and was soon joined by the great body of the Normans. Henry faced them with his Saxons, but he was too prudent to expose his untried troops; he took the wiser course, and would not allow Robert to bring him to a battle. Robert then proposed to decide the quarrel by a single combat, but Henry declined this, as unsuitable to the dignity of a king; and at last a peace was concluded, by which Robert resigned his claim to the crown for a pension of 3,000 marks, and Henry, on his part, promised to pardon his brother's adherents.

§ 10. This was a promise that Henry had no intention of keeping. One of his courtiers had advised him to promise anything that might have the effect of getting Robert out of England, and when that was accomplished to keep as much or as little as he pleased. On this dishonest counsel he acted. Though *Le Flambar*d was no longer justiciary, other clerks or lawyers were found who easily discovered that every powerful Norman had broken many of the laws. One by one they were summoned before the king's court, and those who were the most favorably treated were heavily fined, while many were stripped of all their lands and banished. The chief among these was the famous Robert de Belesme.<sup>a</sup> He had taken up arms for Robert, and therefore by the treaty was entitled to

<sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 107.



Belesme in England and Normandy. His adherents suffer. The King in Normandy.

pardon, but means were nevertheless found to ruin him. He had now, as Earl of Shrewsbury, dwelt in England for some years, acting almost like a sovereign prince, and Henry saw that he could never be safe with such a subject.

§ 11. By the king's order, all his actions after Robert's departure were narrowly watched, and written evidence was soon collected of forty-five different offences against the laws. Robert was then summoned before the justiciaries, and ordered to give a distinct answer to each charge. Instead of attempting this, he fled from the court, strengthened his castles of Arundel, and Blythe, and Bridgnorth, and Shrewsbury, hired Welsh and other mercenaries, and stood on his defence. But he found that he had not a slothful prince like Robert to deal with. Arundel and Blythe were soon reduced, and Henry marched in person against Bridgnorth. This was taken after an obstinate siege, and Belesme was at last obliged to submit. He was banished, after being stripped of all his lands, part of which were given to Jorworth, a Welsh prince who had fought against him.

§ 12. But de Belesme's remarkable career was by no means over. He went to Normandy, and induced Robert to put him in possession of his estates there, whereon were thirty-four castles, and when once established in them he made war on his neighbors as before. Indeed he appeared to contemplate conquering the duchy, and Robert was obliged to pacify him by making him his general.

§ 13. Among other nobles who suffered as partisans of Robert was William Warren, Earl of Surrey, who, going over to Normandy, made such loud complaints of his losses that Robert came to England to remonstrate with his brother on this breach of their agreement. Henry, however, charged him with violating the treaty by receiving de Belesme, and kept him in a kind of custody until he consented to give up his pension, when he was allowed to return to Normandy, apparently only that he might fall into utter contempt.

§ 14. At length Henry passed over into Normandy, and, as had been before arranged, received from Serlo, the bishop of Seez, a formal complaint of Robert's misgovernment, and a request that he would redress the ills of the country. The interview took place at Carentan, in the church, which was found half filled with household goods and implements of husbandry. The bishop



An outspoken Bishop.

War in Normandy.

Henry Victorious.

pointed to this "vile lumber" stored there as a proof of the insecurity of the people, and said: "Your brother does not really govern this country; he abandons it to his favorites, and whilst he wastes its wealth in idle follies, he is often without bread. He passes the greatest part of his time in bed, and cannot go to church for want of clothes, as his idle associates often carry them off while he is asleep, and then make an open boast that they have robbed their duke. In the relief of your own land, Sir King, you may be angry and sin not." Then turning to another matter, the bishop inveighed against the fashion of wearing long hair, which the clergy regarded as a sin. Henry professed his grief, when Serlo, producing a pair of scissors, cropped the king's locks, and those of his courtiers.

§ 15. Many of the Norman nobles were present at this scene, and when it was over they agreed to assist to drive out Robert; but as he had still numerous supporters, particularly *Le Flambar* (who held the strong city of Lisieux), and the formidable Robert de Belesme, Henry judged it necessary to call the Count of Maine to his assistance. Bayeux was taken and burnt, and Caen was surrendered by four of the inhabitants, who received the town of Darlington, in England, as a reward; but Henry was repulsed at Falaise, and then returned to his own dominions.

§ 16. In the following year he resumed his operations. The Count of Maine, and also the Earl of Surrey, for whom Robert had lost his pension, were with him, and he laid siege to Tinchebrai, a town belonging to his cousin William, Earl of Mortain and Cornwall, who had forfeited his lands in Robert's cause. The earl made a vigorous defence. Robert and Edgar Atheling, and de Belesme came to his aid, and at last, on the 28th of September, 1106, a decisive battle was fought near the town. Robert and Edgar, who had with them many knights from the crusade, fought desperately, but were at last overpowered and made prisoners; the same fate befell the Earl of Mortain and many other nobles, but de Belesme contrived to escape. Falaise was soon after surrendered, in which was William, Robert's son, a child of five years old. *Le Flambar* made his peace by betraying Lisieux; and Henry, after a six years' struggle, then came into full possession of Normandy. Belesme endeavored to detach the Count of Maine from his alliance, and having still numerous castles in his hands, was

Fate of Belesme and his Associates.

New Nobility created.

eager to renew the war, hoping to gain the duchy for himself, but Elias <sup>a</sup> would not listen to him. On laying down his arms Belesme was pardoned, and had a few of his estates granted to him, but the strong castles that he had built were destroyed. He soon retired into France, but afterwards falling into Henry's hands, he ended his life in prison.

<sup>a</sup> § 22, p. 113.

§ 17. Such also was the fate of most of the prisoners of Tinchebrai. Robert was at first placed in easy custody, but attempting to escape, he was imprisoned for the long remainder of his life (twenty-eight years), and many writers say that he was even blinded by his unnatural brother. The Earl of Mortain, after a long confinement, was obliged to become a monk at Bermondsey; and imprisonment for life, often accompanied by blinding or maiming, was the fate of almost every considerable person who had espoused the cause of Robert. Henry, now that all serious opposition was crushed, indulged the savage cruelty of his nature, and only spared men like *Le Flambar*, who could purchase pardon by some act of treachery.

§ 18. The void made among the Norman nobles by so many confiscations was soon filled up by lands and titles being granted to a number of new men, many of them servants of the court. Ralph the butler, Geoffrey the chamberlain, Robert and Walter the stewards, were all made peers, as were Ralph Basset and Richard Lucy, the king's judges, and Ralph of Bayeux, Hamon of Wolverton, and Thomas St. John, who were men of the sword. Henry, however, by no means granted away all that fell into his hands, and he was especially careful that his new nobility should not be powerful enough to be beyond his control; whilst those who remained of the old found themselves entirely at his mercy. For the slightest offence their estates were seized and their castles pulled down, and the people thus enjoyed more protection from the violence of the "Castle men" than had been the case ever since the battle of Hastings.<sup>b</sup>

<sup>b</sup> § 12, p. 81.

§ 19. The king, however, was himself quite as tyrannical as his predecessors. He enlarged the forests, reserving all the game for himself, and only very sparingly granted permission to a few of his great men to hunt on their own lands, while he ordered all the dogs in the neighborhood of the woods to be maimed, so as to prevent their following the chase. Breaches of the forest laws were, of course, of daily occurrence, for which the offenders were



heavily fined; and as he made a market of honors and preferments, and laid enormous taxes on the people, he grew more wealthy and more odious every day.

§ 20. The conquest of Normandy, and the crushing of the power of his nobility, were the chief events of Henry's reign, though he labored to extend his dominion over Wales also. He made several inroads into the country, and received the submission of many of the chiefs, but others strove fiercely against him. Little progress was made, though many strong castles were built upon the borders, the owners of which, under the name of Lords Marchers, exercised unbearable oppression. The hatred of the Welsh to the Normans thus grew stronger daily, so that Jorworth, who had helped the king against de Belesme,<sup>a</sup> and received part of his lands, was in consequence murdered by his own son and nephew. But they soon found a champion to afford them help. This was Griffin, the son of Rhys ap Tudor, the Prince of South Wales, who had been killed by Jestyn and his auxiliaries. <sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 120.

§ 21. The young prince, who had been long an exile in Ireland, returned to Wales in 1111, captured Carmarthen, defeated those who by Norman help had seized parts of his father's dominions, and re-established the principality, which he held until his death, more than twenty years after. He is praised by his countrymen as generous and brave, and is said to have captured almost all the posts on the coast of Pembrokeshire which were held by the Flemish settlers<sup>b</sup> who had been driven into England by the misfortunes of their country. These men were as cruel as the Normans, but they had not their courage, and hence Griffin often ventured to attack them, though twenty to one, telling his men that, though thus numerous, they were only cowardly Flemings, and would not fight. <sup>b</sup> § 9, p. 108.

§ 22. Whilst these events were passing, Henry spent much of his time in Normandy, the people of which, though they had been dissatisfied with Robert, were by no means reconciled to his government. Fulk, the Count of Anjou, had succeeded to the earldom of Maine, and his intrigues with the Normans seriously alarmed Henry. He therefore made the Norman nobles swear to receive William, his only legitimate son, as their duke; and he remained three years in Normandy, until he had, as he supposed, secured his succession, by marrying that son <sup>c</sup> § 7, p. 118.



Henry's troubles about a Successor.

His Daughter Heir Apparent.

to Matilda, the daughter of the Count of Anjou. But his hopes were frustrated by his son being shipwrecked, with his half-sister, in the following year. So deeply did he feel this misfortune that it is said he was never seen to smile afterwards. This fatal event occurred on the 25th of November, 1120, on the coast of Normandy, and many young nobles perished with the prince.

§ 23. But Henry had fresh troubles, which arose from his own avarice and bad faith. He detained the property of the widow of his son, and this so offended her father that he gave her younger sister in marriage to William, the son of Robert, and powerfully supported him in his attempts to regain the duchy of Normandy. The war between the uncle and nephew lasted for five years, until the young prince was killed [A.D. 1128] in battle. The King of France had been his supporter, and thus a war was carried on for years between France and England, but with no important result.

§ 24. Henry had, several years before, married his daughter, Maud or Matilda, to Henry the Fifth, Emperor of Germany; but she became a widow in 1125, and returned to England. The king compelled his nobles to swear to receive her as their future queen. This was done at a general assembly of the notables of the kingdom, in Windsor Castle, on Christmas-day, 1126. He then induced the Count of Anjou to forsake the cause of William of Normandy by giving Maud as a wife to his son Geoffrey, who was much younger than Maud. The imperial widow laughed outright when the marriage was proposed. "He is so like a girl," said the masculine woman. She interposed many obstacles to the completion of the nuptial ceremonies; but they were finally solemnized at Rouen on the 26th of August, 1127.<sup>1</sup> From this marriage sprang Henry Plantagenet, afterwards King of England, and the first of the royal house of that name.

§ 25. The union was a very unhappy one. Geoffrey and Maud quarrelled and separated repeatedly, for the ex-empress was a virago. On the king taking part with his daughter, the irritated count seized on several of Henry's castles in Normandy, and made war on him. This obliged Henry to pass over again and again into Normandy, and at last he died there, after nearly two years

<sup>1</sup> On that occasion Geoffrey was created an English knight. In honor of the double dignity of husband and knight, he took a bath and put on a clean linen shirt. Henry, in commemoration of the cleanliness of his son-in-law (Europeans had been unwashed for centuries), then called him Knight of the Bath, and created the renowned Order of the Bath, the oldest order in England, and next in honor to that of the Blue Garter.

Death of Henry.

His Character.

Usurper Enthroned.

absence from England, on the night of Sunday, the 1st of December, 1135.

§ 26. Henry, as has been said, married a Saxon princess, who is known as the good Queen Maud. After a time she withdrew from the court, and retired to the monastery of Westminster, where she passed her time in works of charity and devotion until her death, in 1118. Soon after Henry married a second wife, Adelais or Alice of Louvain, who became a firm friend to his daughter Maud.

§ 27. The character of Henry is in many respects very odious. He was most profligate in his life, tyrannical, rapacious, and barbarously cruel, so that he even suffered the eyes of his own grandchildren to be destroyed <sup>1</sup> to gratify the hatred of one of his nobles. He quarrelled with Archbishop Anselm <sup>a</sup> and drove <sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 109. him into exile, as William Rufus had done before, and, as has been said, he carried the oppression of the forest laws to an almost unbearable extreme. Yet his death was a subject of regret, for, with all his tyranny, he kept the Norman chiefs within bounds, and the Saxon writer tells us that when the king's strong hand was removed, "there was tribulation in the land, for every man that could then robbed another."

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### REIGN OF STEPHEN. [A.D. 1135 TO 1154.]

§ 1. As Henry had supplanted his brother Robert, so his own daughter met with similar treatment from her cousin, Stephen of Blois, who was the first to take the required oath to receive her as Queen of England, <sup>b</sup> and was the first to violate it. <sup>b</sup> § 24, p. 124. This prince, who was a son of Adela, one of the daughters of William I., and about forty years of age, had been brought up in the court of his uncle. As soon as he heard of Henry's death he hastened over to England, and being assisted by his brother Henry, who was Bishop of Winchester, he prevailed on the Archbishop of Canterbury to crown him, on the pretence that the king had on his death-bed disinherited his daughter on

<sup>1</sup> This cruelty, borrowed from the Italians, was performed by holding the face of the victim over a red-hot basin until the eyes were seared and the sight destroyed.



King Stephen.

His troubles.

account of her undutiful conduct. Stephen had married, the year before, Maud or Matilda, daughter and heir of Eustace, Count of Boulogne, who owned immense estates in England.

§ 2. To gain the good-will of the people the new king granted a charter, by which he promised to respect the privileges of the church, to give up the forests that had been newly made, and to observe all good and ancient laws and just customs. Many of the nobles, however, refused to do homage to him; the bishops would promise to obey him only so long as he maintained the liberty of the church; and David, King of Scotland, took up arms to support Maud, who was his niece. Stephen was at first successful. David, who had invaded England, agreed to a truce, and Exeter, which Baldwin de Rivers had fortified for Maud, was taken. But a more formidable attack was soon made on the usurper. Robert, Earl of Gloucester, a natural son of the late king, a man of great ability and courage, sent a formal defiance to him, and prepared to invade England. Stephen seized on the earl's lands, but his castle of Bristol was held against him, and a war that lasted eight years commenced.

§ 3. The King of Scotland now again entered England, but after advancing as far as Northallerton, in Yorkshire, he was there defeated, and he and his son narrowly escaped with their lives. The English carried many banners, which were mounted on a wagon, and the fight is from this known as the Battle of the Standard. It was fought on the 22d of August, 1138.

§ 4. Though the Scots had been defeated, Stephen's affairs seemed desperate. Many of the nobles were in arms against him, and those who professed to be his friends extorted lands and honors as the price of their support, and built castles at their pleasure. The king hired soldiers from Flanders, who came under a renowned leader, named William of Ypres, and then he attempted to strengthen himself by seizing several castles that were in the hands of Roger, Bishop of Salisbury, and his nephews the Bishops of Ely and Lincoln, who were known partisans of Maud. This step, however, had very different consequences. His brother Henry, Bishop of Winchester, strongly condemned his proceedings, and while he was thus embarrassed, Maud and her half-brother and general, the Earl of Gloucester, landed at Portsmouth in September, 1139. The earl went to the west of England to raise forces, leaving his sister in Arundel Castle under the care of her



Maud fights for the Crown.

Her Troubles and Perils.

step-mother, Adélais of Louvain.<sup>a</sup> Stephen soon besieged her there, but at length allowed her to retire to Gloucester, where she dwelt in royal state, whilst the earl took the field. Upwards of a year passed in fierce war, in spite of the efforts of the bishops to bring about some agreement. At last Stephen, having placed the castle of Lincoln in the care of Ralph, Earl of Chester, was informed that he meant to give it up to the Earl of Gloucester, whose son-in-law he was. To prevent this he marched against him and besieged him, but was himself attacked [Feb. 2, 1141] by the Earl of Gloucester with ten thousand men, defeated, and carried off a prisoner to Bristol, where he was confined in chains by order of his cousin.

§ 5. Maud now moved forward toward London, but she took Winchester in her way, where the bishop, altogether abandoning the cause of his brother, received her, and by his influence she was formally acknowledged as Lady, or Queen, of the English. Many of Stephen's friends were excommunicated, and his cause seemed so hopeless that his wife petitioned for his release from prison on condition of his resigning the crown and retiring into a convent. Maud, who was of a haughty, imperious nature, refused to listen to her, and the war broke out afresh. But Maud caused her own ruin, for when she soon after held her court in London, she so offended the citizens by her harsh conduct that they rose tumultuously against her and drove her away.

§ 6. Maud now retired to Oxford, but soon after quarrelled with the Bishop of Winchester, who at once resolved to attempt to restore his brother to liberty. He retired to his castle at Winchester, where Maud followed him and besieged him. She was herself besieged in the palace there, and the city was burnt in the course of the struggle. At last a truce was agreed on for the purpose of observing Holy Cross day [Sept. 14], when Maud succeeded in escaping to Gloucester, but her brother was made prisoner in protecting her flight.

§ 7. After a short time the king and the earl were both set at liberty by being exchanged, and the war was then carried on more furiously than ever. Maud resided for a while in the castle of Oxford, where she was besieged by Stephen; but she made her escape on foot over the frozen river, reached Wallingford, and thence she again retired to Gloucester [A.D. 1143], when England became in reality divided into three states, Maud being acknow-

<sup>a</sup> § 26, p. 125.

Sufferings of the People. ~

Maud flees.

Her Son in England.

ledged in the west, Stephen in the east, and the King of Scotland in the north.

§ 8. The people, as might be expected, now suffered the most terrible calamities. The nobles of all parties sent forth bands of plunderers from their castles, who robbed and murdered at their will. A chronicler who lived at the time says: "Never yet was there such misery in the land; never did heathen men worse than they. They said openly that Christ slept, and all his saints; and though the bishops excommunicated them, they heeded it not; they spared neither church nor churchyard, but took all the goods that had been placed for safety there, and then burnt the church itself." At last, in the eighth year of the war, the Earl of Gloucester died, and Maud, knowing that she could accomplish nothing without him, very soon after abandoned the struggle and retired to Normandy. That was in the year 1145. She was in great peril on her voyage, and made a vow to found a church if she got safely to land. The abbey that she built in consequence existed until recent times, at Cherbourg.

§ 9. Stephen was thus at last left in undisturbed possession of the kingdom, but this quiet did not last long. His brother, the Bishop of Winchester, and the Pope's legate, acted unjustly by Theobald, the Archbishop of Canterbury, and caused him to be driven into exile. Theobald appealed to the Pope, by the means of one of his chaplains named Thomas à Becket, and got the extraordinary powers of the Bishop of Winchester taken from him. Stephen, however, refused to let the archbishop return, and the discontent that this occasioned induced Maud to send her young son Henry, then sixteen years of age, into Scotland, where he was knighted by the king. He then invaded the north of England, but the people were little inclined to see the war renewed, and late in 1149 he was obliged to retire.

§ 10. The king at last became reconciled to the archbishop, whom he recalled, and then endeavored to induce him to crown his son Eustace, a youth of bad character. Becket was again sent to the Pope, and he soon returned with the positive command that it should not be done. This induced young Henry to come again into England, where he was joined by many friends. The war commenced afresh; but Stephen was an able soldier, and Henry made small progress against him, when Eustace suddenly died, and then the nobles on both sides agreed to a peace. Stephen was



Death of Stephen.

The Welsh strike for Independence.

allowed to retain the crown as long as he lived ; but Henry, at a great council of the notables of the kingdom, held at Winchester on the 7th November, 1153, was adopted by him as his son, and oaths were taken to him as his successor. In less than a year after this Stephen died at Dover, and Henry, being at once summoned from Normandy, became the first of the famous Plantagenet kings.

§ 11. Whilst England was distracted by civil war, the Welsh were able to free themselves in many places from the yoke of the Normans. Their chief leader was Owen Gwynneth, who captured the strong fortresses of Aberteivi, Carmarthen, Mold, and Tenby, and gave a signal defeat to the Earl of Chester, at Consilt, in the year 1149.

§ 12. King Stephen was a man of handsome presence, of cheerful mind and courteous manners, trained in war from his youth, an able general, and lavish of gifts to his supporters. Though he was ungrateful to his uncle, and broke his oath to his cousin,<sup>a</sup> and afforded but little protection to his people against the tyranny of the nobles and his foreign soldiers, he yet seems to have been a better man than any of the preceding Norman kings. He never showed wanton cruelty ; and he readily forgave those who deserted him. He acted very leniently to any of his opponents when they fell into his power—a virtue which cannot be claimed by any of the Norman line.

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 125.

§ 13. Each of the Norman kings whose history we have just related had some personal appellation, as William the Bastard, or Henry the Fine Scholar, which served instead of a surname. But Geoffrey, the husband of Maud<sup>b</sup> and father of Henry, the founder of a new line of kings, had the honor of transmitting his personal appellation of “Plantagenet” to his descendants. The word is a corruption of *planta genista*, or the “broom plant,” a sprig of which Geoffrey is said to have usually worn in his cap. The reason for the habit was differently given by writers of his time. Some regarded it as only indicative of his love for nature and field-sports. Others said it was a token of humility, he being but the son of an earl, whilst his wife was the daughter of a king and widow of an emperor. If such was really its meaning, Geoffrey did not act according to the token, for he quarrelled with his spouse, as we have seen, and made war upon her father,<sup>c</sup> without any regard to their superior rank.

<sup>b</sup> § 24, p. 124.

<sup>c</sup> § 25, p. 124.



## BOOK V.

### THE PLANTAGENETS.

[FROM A. D. 1154 TO 1485.]

---

#### CHAPTER I.

REIGN OF HENRY THE SECOND. [A.D. 1154 TO 1189.]

§ 1. HENRY, surnamed Plantagenet, who was the eldest son of the Empress Maud and Geoffrey of Anjou,<sup>a</sup> was in his twenty-second year when he succeeded to the throne of England. He was crowned in Westminster Abbey on the 19th of December, 1154, about six weeks after the death of Stephen. He had inherited Normandy, Anjou, and Maine, and though so young he had, for the sake of her large possessions, married Eleanor of Guienne, a princess who had been divorced by her husband, the King of France. By this marriage he had acquired a large territory in the south of France, called Aquitaine, or Guienne, and now that he had obtained possession of England, he became the most powerful king of his time. But this extent of dominion did not satisfy him; he passed a great part of his reign in wars undertaken for the purpose of bringing other countries under his rule, and he even deprived his brother Geoffrey of a few cities that their father had left to him, and drove him into exile.

§ 2. When Henry came to England he was welcomed with much joy by the people, on account of his descent from their old Saxon kings; but he knew that he was not so favorably looked on by the Norman nobles, and, imitating the policy of his grandfather, Henry the First,<sup>b</sup> he at once took vigorous steps for lessening the dangerous power that they had acquired through the feebleness of Stephen. He pulled down more than a thousand castles that had been erected without the royal license, and were little better than strongholds of robbers.

The Normans restrained.

Thomas à Becket.

His Pride and Power.

He disbanded most of the foreign troops that Stephen had employed, and dismissed William of Ypres, his general; and as a check upon the Welsh, he sent a large number of Flemings to settle on the coast of Pembrokeshire (with their countrymen already there <sup>a</sup>), where their descendants still remain. <sup>a</sup> § 21, p. 123.

§ 3. To gratify the people the new king granted afresh the charters of his predecessors, and as a proof of his desire to establish an orderly government, he appointed justices to traverse the country and redress wrongs. In all these proceedings he had an able assistant in Thomas à Becket, a native of London, and the Archdeacon of Canterbury, who had already rendered him a great service by hindering the coronation of Eustace, and who soon after the accession of Henry was made chancellor. This was an office of much greater power than it is now, for its holder had, under the king, the control of the whole kingdom—was indeed the one minister who directed everything in the state, and he had very great influence over the church also. Becket applied himself without scruple to forward all his master's views, and thus he became so great a favorite that the king treated him almost as his equal, and he and Henry are described as playing together like two boys.

§ 4. Becket was then a man about thirty-six years of age, tall and handsome, skilful alike in letters, in war and hunting, and in all courtly arts; witty and eloquent, magnificent in his style of living, and profuse in his gifts. He received the profits of many church preferments, but he performed the duties of none, for he was not yet, strictly speaking, a priest, and he passed his time instead as a judge, a soldier, or an ambassador. He was on one occasion sent to France to demand the daughter of the king in marriage for the son of Henry, when he journeyed with at least as much state as his master; and soon afterward he took the field, and served at the head of 700 knights in the south of France, where he unhorsed in single combat a renowned French knight. Such a kind of life was a strange preparation for the dignity of archbishop; but this the king resolved to confer on him, expecting to find him ready to sacrifice the rights and possessions of the office out of gratitude for his promotion.

§ 5. Accordingly, when Theobald the Archbishop of Canterbury died [A.D. 1162], Becket was, by the royal command, and in an

*Becket's Quarrel with the King and the Aristocracy.*

irregular manner, advanced to the see, apparently much against his own will, for he knew that he could not gratify the king's expectations and be a faithful governor of the church at the same time. He was of an ardent, impetuous temper, and now that he had become a priest he was resolved to discharge his duties with zeal. For this purpose he at once resigned the office of chancellor, at which the king was greatly displeased, and Becket was a favorite no longer. Many estates had been wrested from his see during the confusions of the last reign, and these he now endeavored to regain. The king encouraged the nobles who held them to resist. At last Becket excommunicated some of them, and though he afterwards relieved them from the penalty, he had made enemies who were determined to ruin him.

§ 6. This was soon brought about under pretence of the king's love for justice. He summoned Becket and the other bishops to an assembly at Westminster, where he complained of the proceedings of their courts, which he said allowed priests who were guilty of great crimes to go unpunished, and for remedy of this he required that the clergy should, both in person and property, be subject, not to the rule of the bishops, but to the ordinary laws. The right of judging offenders among the clergy had, however, been expressly allowed to belong solely to the church by Henry the First, on his

<sup>a</sup> § 27, p. 125.

reconciliation with Anselm,<sup>a</sup> and as each succeeding king had sworn to preserve all their privileges, the bishops would only consent to what was proposed, "saving the rights of their order." As this was in reality not agreeing at all, they were next summoned to another assembly at Clarendon, a royal palace near Salisbury, where the king's demands were again laid before them, and were untruly described as established customs of the realm to which they were required to consent. Becket and the bishops denied this character to the Constitutions of Clarendon, as they were termed, and at first absolutely refused compliance; but being threatened with imprisonment or death, they at length gave way, and promised to observe them.

§ 7. Becket, however, soon bitterly repented of what he had done; he looked upon himself as the cause of the weakness of his brethren, and as a betrayer of the church, and he formally retracted his consent. In consequence, a third assembly was held at Northampton, to which he was summoned as a criminal, and where he was treated with extreme injustice. He had, some months



Becket called to Account.

He flees to France.

Favored by the Pope.

before, sent four knights to the king's court to answer in his name to a complaint from John the Marshal, one of the royal officers, about a suit that was pending in his own court, instead of attending himself, and this was now termed treason. He had, when he became archbishop, been formally released from all claims as to money that had passed through his hands, yet he was now called on to give an account for the whole term of his chancellorship; sums that the king had given to him, and others that he had received for, and laid out on, the royal castles of Eye and Berkhamstead, of which he had been keeper, were demanded from him. For his non-appearance at the court a fine of £500 was imposed, though the law allowed no more than forty shillings; all his goods were afterwards declared forfeited; and he was threatened by some of the nobles with death, while others informed him that the king intended to tear out his eyes and tongue and imprison him for the rest of his life.

§ 8. Becket formally appealed to the Pope from the judgment of the assembly, and retired to the monastery in the town in which he had lodged whilst the trial proceeded. He left at midnight, with only three companions, and travelling chiefly in darkness, and under the name of Brother Christian, he at length reached Eastry, in Kent, near the port of Sandwich, where he remained hid in the church for a week until an opportunity offered of crossing the sea to Flanders, which he did in an open boat in the summer of 1164. He found shelter for a while in the Abbey of St. Bertin, near St. Omer, where the Archbishops Anselm and Theodore had been sheltered before him, and was then formally taken under the protection of the King of France. He had several interviews with the king, and with the Pope, Alexander the Third, who was then dwelling in France, but who stood too much in need of the help of King Henry against a rival Pope<sup>1</sup> to venture to give him any real assistance, though he praised his constancy and courage. After resigning his bishopric into the hands of the Pope, and receiving it again from him, by which his scruples as to his former promotion were set aside, Becket, by order of the pontiff, retired to a

<sup>1</sup> At that time, as at several other periods in the Middle Ages, there were rival Popes, who denounced each other as "anti-Pope" and "anti-Christ." Victor the Fourth, supported by Frederic Barbarossa, Emperor of Germany, was now established at Rome, and Alexander the Third was in exile north of the Alps, to whose spiritual authority the kings of England and France then bowed.

Becket's Family banished.

The King's Quarrels, Outrages, and Perfidy.

Cistercian monastery in Burgundy, called Pontigny, where for two years he led a life more austere than any of the monks.

§ 9. Henry in the mean time sent ambassadors both to the Pope and to the King of France, to demand either that the archbishop should be given up to him or that he should be deprived of his see. Both demands were refused, when the king, who had already seized on Becket's property, revenged himself by banishing all his kindred and his friends, to the number of 400. Even women and children were thus driven from England in the depth of winter, and to increase the grief of the archbishop, they were obliged to take an oath to present themselves before him that he might see their misery. The exiles, however, were kindly received in France, and their cruel treatment excited so much indignation there, that when, soon afterward, a war broke out, many of the nobles of Brittany, Poitou, Guienne, and other provinces subject to Henry, joined the King of France against him.

§ 10. Whilst these affairs were proceeding, the king was involved in a variety of other quarrels, all arising from his unjust desire to increase his territories. Indeed he entered on this course even before he became king. His brother Geoffrey had had the county of Anjou bestowed on him by his father [A.D. 1151], and Henry had taken an oath to allow him to possess it undisturbed; but this did not secure him, for Henry was an habitual breaker of his word. He accordingly, in the third year of his reign, seized on Anjou and drove Geoffrey into exile, and when Geoffrey died, a few years later, he contrived also to obtain possession of the strong city of Nantes, in Brittany, where the young prince had been sheltered. He thus gained such ascendancy in the country that Conan, the duke, was obliged to purchase his forbearance by giving his daughter Constance in marriage to Henry's son Geoffrey.

§ 11. Henry next turned his attention to acquiring a very important part of the south of France, called the county of Toulouse, to which he pretended a claim in right of his wife. In the war that ensued [A.D. 1160] he was unsuccessful, although, as has been said, he was aided by the military talents of Becket; but at its close he, by a shameful stratagem, gained a district adjoining Normandy called the Vexin, by proposing a marriage between his eldest son, Henry, and Margaret, the daughter of the King of France. The Vexin was the princess's dower, and as the parties were mere children, it was to remain in the guardianship of the



Attempt to Conquer Wales.

A Bard's Satire royally Avenged.

Templars until they were of age. Henry, however, caused them to be married at once, and thus obtained the territory, and the King of France was unable to drive him from it. It was to bring about this marriage that Becket, when chancellor, undertook his magnificent embassy, which has been already mentioned.

§ 12. During the troubled times of Stephen the Welsh had regained much of their country from the Normans,<sup>a</sup> and as the Flemings and other foreign soldiers recently settled by Henry among them were cowardly as well as cruel, they seemed likely to be driven out. To prevent this Henry mixed in the quarrels of the Welsh princes Owen Gwynneth and Cadwalader his brother, and by supporting the latter, who was the younger, who swore fealty to him, tried to reduce the whole country to his subjection. He did not succeed, for although he led a large army of veteran soldiers against the mountaineers, his expedition ended disastrously. On one occasion [A.D. 1157] he was beset in a narrow pass called Consilt, when Henry of Essex, a great noble, who bore his banner, threw it down and fled; the Normans were completely routed, and the king only saved his life by flight. One of the Welsh bards celebrated the triumph of his people by composing an ode in which he recommended Henry to knight his horse, whose speed had preserved him. Henry, on hearing of this, gave way to a terrible fit of passion, and again invaded the country, but before he entered it he took many children as hostages from the families of Cadwalader and his friends. He was again foiled, and in his rage he had the barbarity to revenge himself by hanging the children. Cadwalader was for a time supported at his court; but he was treated with the scorn that his treachery merited, and was at last assassinated by some of the Marchers.

§ 13. Henry was more successful against the Scots and against the partisans of the late King Stephen. Mixing policy with force, he induced the King of Scotland to accept the earldom of Huntingdon instead of the country in the north of England which he had so long held. To break the power of the nobles he adopted the policy of his grandfather. He had them narrowly watched, and when William the son of Stephen, the Earl of Norfolk, Hugh Mortimer the Lord Marcher, or any other great lord was detected in any breach of the feudal laws, his castles were at once thrown down or taken into the king's hands, and often his estates were seized and the owner driven into exile. Even the Cardinal Henry

<sup>a</sup> § 24, p. 102.



A long Quarrel.

● Papal Interference, and a Reconciliation.

of Blois, the Bishop of Winchester and brother of King Stephen,<sup>a</sup> was stripped of his possessions for venturing to quit the kingdom without the royal permission; he was, however, after a time reinstated, and he was almost the only bishop who adhered to Becket in his long controversy with the king.

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 125.

§ 14. That controversy continued for more than six years. At first Becket remained quietly in the monastery of Pontigny; but after a time he obtained permission from the Pope to excommunicate some of his chief opponents. Henry, who could not reach him personally, persecuted the Cistercian monks in his own dominions for the offence of their French brethren in affording him a refuge. Becket then went to the King of France, who received him with great honor. Henry on this made war on France, when he was so successful that Louis soon agreed to a peace, and seemed inclined to abandon the cause of the archbishop; but Henry having treated with great barbarity some of his revolted subjects of Poitou, whose pardon he had promised in the treaty of peace, the French king gave his support to Becket more warmly than before, and prepared to take up arms in his cause.

§ 15. The Pope now tried to reconcile the king to the archbishop, and after long negotiations this was effected in outward appearance. The two parties met near Tours. The restoration of the archbishop's possessions was promised, and at last, after an absence of upwards of six years, he came back to Canterbury. He was received by the people and his clergy with transports of joy, but he had only returned to meet his death.

§ 16. Just before his reconciliation with the king, a new cause of quarrel had arisen, and this had been passed over without any formal agreement, so that the archbishop conceived himself entitled to take what steps he thought proper regarding it. It had always been regarded as the privilege of the Archbishop of Canterbury to crown the king, as it is now; but Henry, under the idea of securing his succession to the throne, had chosen to have his eldest son, a youth of fifteen, crowned during Becket's exile, and by his command the Archbishop of York, the bishops of London, Salisbury, Worcester, and other prelates performed the ceremony. Becket excommunicated them; and he laid a like penalty on two brothers, Ranulf and Robert de Broc, who had had charge of the estates of his see during his absence, and had grievously wasted

The King's Wrath against Becket.

Murder of the latter.

them. The Brocs were prompt to revenge themselves. They stopped his provisions, beat his servants, maimed his cattle, killed his deer, and even threatened his life, but he remained immovable, and would not take any measures of defence. The bishops in the mean time passed over to Normandy to the king, and piteously entreated his protection. Henry fell into a violent rage, and demanded what was to be done. The Archbishop of York, who had all through his life been a rival of Becket (they had been in the household of Archbishop Theobald together), replied, "As long as Thomas lives, my lord king, you will have no peace in your kingdom." The king then exclaimed, "How long am I to be insulted by an upstart priest, who owes all to me?—a fellow who came to court on a lame horse without a saddle now holds the throne, and the knights who eat my bread look on!"

§ 17. It was soon resolved that the justiciary of Normandy and two other nobles should be sent into England to seize the archbishop; but four of Henry's knights had secretly left the court while the debate was going on, without any direct authority from him, but thinking themselves well acquainted with his real wishes. They met at Saltwood Castle, in Kent, where Ranulf de Broc resided, and held a consultation with him, the result of which was, that on the next morning, which was the 29th of December, 1170, the whole party set forward for Canterbury. Their intention apparently was not to kill the archbishop, but to make him a prisoner. After an angry interview with him in his palace they followed him into the adjoining cathedral. They found him in a small chapel in the north transept, and fiercely required him to recall his sentences. He refused, and they then attempted to carry him out of the church. Becket applied violent language to them, shook himself free from one and threw another on the floor. They now attacked him with their swords, and laid him dead before the altar, after breaking the arm of a monk named Grim, who attempted to defend him. The murderers then plundered the palace of plate and money, seized on the best horses in the stable, and fled. The monks watched the body all night, and on the next day, as the Brocs threatened to drag it about the city and hang it on a gibbet, they hastily buried it in the crypt. There it remained for fifty years, until the grandson of Henry removed it to a splendid shrine behind the high altar of the cathedral.



The King suspected of Murder.

His Fears.

Condition of Ireland.

§ 18. The news of the archbishop's murder caused great alarm, if not grief, to King Henry. He knew that he was universally considered as having caused it, and he feared that the Pope would excommunicate him, and absolve his subjects from their allegiance. He therefore sent ambassadors to the Pope to protest his innocence, and whilst commissioners were inquiring into all the circumstances of the case, Henry, to turn away the attention of his people, engaged in an enterprise that had been meditated by the early Norman kings, and for which he had himself taken some steps several years before.

§ 19. That enterprise was the conquest of Ireland, which a former Pope (Adrian the Fourth, the only Englishman who ever attained to that dignity) had granted to him, on the shameless pretence that the people were ignorant of the Christian faith. The fact was altogether otherwise; for the country had received Christianity while the Saxons and Norsemen were still heathens, but it had always managed its own religious affairs without the interference of the popes of Rome, and was therefore regarded by them with jealous dislike. It had been a peaceful shelter for learned and pious men while Britain was overrun by the Saxons and the Norsemen, and abounded in churches and monasteries; but the

Norsemen<sup>a</sup> at length invaded it also, and in consequence of their ravages it lost much of its former civilization, and was in a manner cut off from intercourse with the rest of the world. The Norsemen (or Ostmen, as they were afterwards called), on the other hand, who settled principally upon the coast, and founded petty kingdoms in Dublin, Wexford, Cork, and other seaports, traded with England, and when they became Christians their bishops received consecration from the archbishops of Canterbury.

§ 20. Thus the English kings had always partisans in the country, and very soon after the Normans came to England some adventurers of that nation began to take part in the quarrels of its numerous princes. Beside minor chiefs, there were five who styled themselves kings, and one of them, termed the Ardriach, was recognized as the superior of the whole, and to him they looked for redress of grievances. It happened that whilst the quarrel

between the king and Becket was going on,<sup>b</sup> Dermot, King of Leinster, was driven from his dominions by the Ardriach, for his misconduct in carrying off the wife of

<sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 41.

<sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 136.



Troubles in Ireland.

Henry seizes it.

Acquitted of Becket's Murder.

Ruarc, King of Meath.<sup>a</sup> Dermot repaired to Henry in Normandy, and offered to become his vassal if he would reinstate him. Henry declined to interfere, but allowed <sup>a § 11, p. 42.</sup> him to address himself to his knights, and among them Dermot found one who listened to his promises of making him the heir of his kingdom, and agreed to undertake his cause.

§ 21. This was Richard of Chepstow (also called Strongbow), the son of a noble who had conquered a great part of West Wales (now Pembrokehire), but himself a man of small property. He was famed alike for courtly manners and military skill, and he had great influence among the Norman knights and their followers who dwelt on the borders of Wales. Hence he had little difficulty in inducing a number of them to assist him. He first sent forward two brothers named Fitzgerald and Fitzstephen, who landed near Wexford with a few soldiers, and he soon followed them with a larger body of well-armed Norman horse and Welsh foot. The native Irish, who were badly provided with weapons and had no armor, could not stand against them. Dermot was replaced, when, according to his agreement, he gave his daughter Eva in marriage to Richard, and declared him his heir; and dying in the course of a year, Strongbow became king. The news of this was displeasing to Henry, who hastily collected a large force, passed over to Ireland [A.D. 1171] and seized on Dermot's kingdom, which, however, he soon regranted to Richard, only keeping the seaports in his own hands, and appointing Hugh Lacy governor of Leinster. Henry now produced the grant from the Pope, and having many friends among the Irish bishops, his cause was espoused by them; in consequence he was received as king of all Ireland, even the Ardriach acknowledging himself as his vassal. After a stay of seven months in the island, Henry went back to Normandy, where the Pope's commissioners<sup>b</sup> soon <sup>b § 18, p. 138.</sup> after declared that he was innocent of the blood of the archbishop.

§ 22. This trouble was scarcely appeased when a new one broke out in the king's family, which was the direct result of that shameful marriage that he had made with the divorced Queen of France. He wished to divide his dominions among his sons, and forgetting how he had himself disregarded the will of his own father, he had his eldest son, Henry, crowned as his successor in England and Normandy, thinking thus to secure it to him. He

Royal Family Quarrel.

Civil War.

King of Scotland a Prisoner.

assigned Aquitaine to Richard, and Brittany to Geoffrey. He, however, had no intention of parting with the government of the provinces to them, but their mother persuaded them to demand it, and when this was refused, the three youths fled to the court of the King of France. The queen attempted to follow them, disguised as a page, but was taken, and was kept a prisoner for the rest of her husband's life.

§ 23. Both the King of France and the King of Scotland had many causes of quarrel against Henry, and they eagerly supported his rebellious children. In consequence civil war broke out in England as well as in Normandy. Carlisle was taken by the Scots, and Norwich by the Earl of Leicester, a friend of Prince Henry. But the king, though a bad man, was a skilful soldier. He defeated his sons' troops, and at last put an end to the rebellion. His sons, however, had learnt their strength, and during the whole remainder of his life they made war sometimes on one another, and sometimes on him, till at last he died defeated and broken-hearted.

§ 24. Whilst the war with his sons still continued, the king quietly abandoned the claims that he had made at Clarendon, and which had caused the death of Becket. He suffered a new archbishop (Richard of Dover) to be elected, and was satisfied with his oath, "saving his order;" he also made a pilgrimage to Canterbury, and did penance at the tomb of Becket [A.D. 1174], who was already esteemed a martyr and a saint, and to whom his former adversary, Richard de Lucy, the justiciary, soon after erected a church, the first of more than sixty dedicated to him, which still exist.

§ 25. On the same day that Henry did penance at Canterbury the King of Scotland was made prisoner at Alnwick, in Northumberland. He was carried over to Normandy, and was not released until he had promised to surrender several strong castles on the borders, and had done homage to Henry and his son for his kingdom.

§ 26. Henry had now a brief interval of peace, and he employed it in improving the administration of the laws in his states. Up to this time all persons who had causes in dispute were obliged to attend wherever the king happened to be, and by following him from England to Normandy, and from Normandy to Poitou, and from Poitou back to England, they were usually ruined, however



Courts of Justice established.

War in Ireland.

Henry's Power diminished.

their case might at last be decided. To remedy this, Henry, in the year 1176, divided England into six districts, and appointed judges to visit each, who had power to settle most causes. He, however, charged his new judges to lay heavy penalties on offenders, and thus he was at least as great a gainer by the change as any of his subjects.

§ 27. The Irish, who had been overawed by the large army that Henry brought with him, disowned their submission as soon as he was gone, and united with their former enemies, the Ostmen, in a desperate attempt to drive out the invaders. The king's scattered parties were cut off all over the country, and the rest were obliged to shelter themselves in the seaports; but here they were attacked by the Ostmen ships, and they would soon have been destroyed had not Henry induced large numbers of the fierce Normans and Welsh to proceed to their aid by offering grants of land to all adventurers who would undertake to complete the conquest. These well-armed new-comers drove back the natives, and firmly established themselves in every part. They, however, conquered the country for themselves, and not for the king; and in after-times these Anglo-Irish, as they were termed, were more hostile to the English government than the natives were. They intermarried with the Irish, adopted their manners and customs and language, and took new names. Their eminent men considered themselves as independent princes; and it was only in the seaports that Henry had taken into his own hands, and which were always garrisoned by the royal troops, that the English kings, for full 400 years, had any real authority in Ireland. Henry created his youngest son, John, Lord of Ireland, and the young prince paid a visit to the island in the year 1185; but he and his gay courtiers disgusted the Irish chiefs who came to them, by their insolent behavior. He was soon recalled, leaving the government to his deputy, Hugh Lacy, who had for his share of the spoil the former kingdom of Meath.

§ 28. The latter years of Henry's reign were not more peaceable or happy than the early ones had been. It is true that he was reconciled to Louis the King of France. He even agreed to undertake a crusade for the relief of the Holy Land in his company; and the French king visited England as a pilgrim to the tomb of Becket. But the proposed crusade was not carried out by Henry, and his refusal to embark in it was afterwards the cause of a



## The King's Sons at War.

## The Kingdom of Jerusalem.

quarrel between him and his son Richard. In the mean time the King of France died, and his son and successor, the eminent Philip Augustus, was too jealous of Henry's vast possessions in France to be friendly with him. Wars, too, broke out between his sons. Henry and Geoffrey united in making war on their brother Richard, who ruled in Aquitaine like a sovereign prince. The king commanded them to desist, but to no purpose. At last the young Henry died suddenly [June 11, A.D. 1183], and peace was restored for a while. Then the ambitious Geoffrey again made war on Richard; and though they were at last formally reconciled in a great council held at London in the presence of their father, it was only the death of Geoffrey, soon afterward, that prevented another war.

§ 29. The kingdom that had been founded by the Crusaders in Palestine, in the time of William Rufus, was now [A.D. 1186] in a state of extreme danger. King Baldwin the Fourth was a leper, and being thus incapable of reigning, the power of governing the state was contested for by his sister Sibylla and a powerful noble, Raymond of Toulouse. Raymond leagued himself with the Saracens, who were now led by a renowned military commander named Saladin, a man who had risen to power by the sword, and who was resolutely bent on the reconquest of Jerusalem.

§ 30. Baldwin the Fourth was succeeded by his nephew, Baldwin the Fifth, a child, and on his death, soon afterward, Heraclius, the Patriarch of Jerusalem, was sent to England to offer the crown

to King Henry, whose grandfather, Fulk of Anjou,<sup>a</sup> was also grandfather of Baldwin the Fourth. Henry

declined the crown, which was at last bestowed on Guy of Lusignan, the husband of Sibylla. Soon after this, Saladin defeated the Christians at Tiberias through the treachery of Raymond of Toulouse, made Guy a prisoner, and at last captured Jerusalem. The

news of this calamity induced Henry to assume the cross,<sup>b</sup> and to promise to proceed to the relief of the

Holy Land, where one brave prince, Conrad of Montferrat, the brother-in-law of Sibylla, held possession of Tyre, the last fragment of the Christian kingdom.

§ 31. But before King Henry could proceed on the crusade, if he ever intended it, which is very doubtful, he was involved in a quarrel with the young King of France and his own son Richard, which ended in his death. This quarrel arose, however, quite as

<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 118.

<sup>b</sup> § 16, p. 111.

England and France at War.

Henry's Troubles and Death.

much in consequence of his own bad conduct as anything else. He had, twenty years before, contracted a marriage for his son Richard with Adelais, the sister of the King of France, then a mere child, and had got possession of a large district as her dower. The princess conducted herself in such a manner that Richard, when she grew up, refused to take her for his wife, but Henry, in spite of this, kept possession of her lands. Her brother claimed them from him; Richard joined in the demand, and as he was a vassal of the King of France, was called on to take up arms in his cause. Henry was at length attacked by the King of France and his own son, was driven from Touraine by them, and was soon after obliged to sue for peace, which he only obtained upon paying a large sum of money and giving up the princess's lands.

§ 32. Thus foiled in his projects, Henry retired to the castle of Chinon, where a new grief awaited him. He had agreed to pardon all who had combined against him, and he was struck to the heart to find the name of his youngest and favorite child, John, among them. His wife was in prison, and his eldest son had just made war on him, but this discovery seemed worse than all, and he fell ill and died very soon afterward [July 6, 1189], his only attendant, out of his numerous family, being one of his natural children, named Geoffrey, who afterwards became Archbishop of York. The king's body was carried to Fontevraud, in Anjou. Richard, his eldest surviving son, and now heir to the throne, who heard of his father's illness too late to see him alive, followed the corpse in much real sorrow.

§ 33. Such was the melancholy end of the first king of the House of Plantagenet. His life affords a very striking lesson. His whole object appears to have been to enlarge his dominions, and though at first he had great apparent success, the end was that he died almost a fugitive. He led a very immoral life, and he married a princess of similar character, who taught his own children to rebel against him. He acted on many occasions with great treachery, and at other times he showed extreme cruelty; and he was notorious for his bad faith, which he attempted to justify by saying that it was better to have to repent of words than of deeds.



## CHAPTER II.

## REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST. [A. D. 1189 TO 1199.]

§ 1. RICHARD, who was surnamed Cœur de Lion, was crowned in Westminster Abbey, by the Archbishop of Canterbury, on the 3d of September, 1189. The ceremony on that occasion was unusually magnificent. The crown was borne before Richard, in the procession to the abbey, by the Earl of Albemarle. The royal candidate walked under a rich canopy of silk borne on four lances, each of which was held by a great baron. On each side of him walked a prelate—the Bishops of Durham and Bath—and his path up to the high altar of the abbey was spread with cloth of the Tyrian dye. On the steps of the altar he was received by Baldwin, the archbishop, who administered to him the usual oath that he would (1) through life bear peace, honor, and reverence to God, the church and its ordinances; (2) that he would exercise right, justice, and law toward his subjects; and (3) that he would abrogate unrighteous laws and customs, enact good ones, and keep the same in good faith, without any mental reservation.

§ 2. The king then cast off his upper garment, put sandals or buskins of gold on his feet, and was anointed from the ampulla of holy oil on the head, breast, and shoulders. He then received the cap, tunic, dalmatica, sword, spurs, and mantle, each being presented by the proper officer in due order of succession. The unction over, and the king thus royally arrayed, he was led up to the altar, where the archbishop adjured him in the name of Almighty God not to assume the royal dignity unless he fully proposed to keep the oaths he had sworn. Richard repeated his solemn promises, and with his own hands took the ponderous crown from off the altar, “in signification that he held it only from God.” He then delivered it to the archbishop, who instantly put it on his head, and so completed all the ceremonies of coronation.

§ 3. A massacre and plunder of the Jews in London, as well as elsewhere, immediately followed. These people were then numerous in England. Many of them were learned men, while all were reputed to be wealthy. The superstitious English fancied that they practised magic, and they were forbidden to appear at the

Massacre and Plunder of the Jews.

Richard's Pretensions.

coronation. A few ventured to come, believing that the costly presents which they laid at the king's feet would insure their safety. Richard spurned them from his presence. His attendants chased them from the royal hall, and the people fell upon and butchered them. All the other Jews in the city were attacked. Their houses were fired, and men, women, and children were burned to death in them, while the king could not be induced to leave the banquet hall to stop the flow of blood. He permitted the butchery to go on for twenty-four hours, until the malice of the Christians was satiated. Like cruelty was practised upon the Jews elsewhere. In York the work of blood was fearful. Several hundreds of the Jews, with their families, fled to the castle, and attempted to defend themselves in one of the towers. It was impossible; so the men destroyed their treasures, killed their wives and children, and then themselves, rather than fall into the hands of the barbarians.

§ 4. So the reign of the royal assassin and robber began. He was an ambitious crusader. He was more of a knight-errant than a king, and gratified his vanity and love of plunder by engaging most heartily in the unholy wars already mentioned.<sup>a</sup> History, romance, and song, uttered by princes, priests, and bards, have lauded him as a model of a Christian gentleman and worthy defender of the religion of Christ, because he fought so gallantly in the wars upon the Turks. He had entered upon his crusading career even before he came to the throne. He had been the first prince in France to assume the red cross;<sup>b</sup> and he tried to palliate his late revolt<sup>c</sup> by pretending that it had been caused, in part at least, by his indignation at seeing his father so much less earnest than himself. His first step had been to release his mother from prison; and in the hope of attaching his brother John to his interests, he acted most generously toward him, bestowing upon him large estates.

§ 5. Richard, whilst he governed Aquitaine, had for his chancellor a Norman priest of low birth, named William de Longchamp. This man he now made Chancellor of England, and soon afterwards Bishop of Ely. Longchamp was skilful in all means, whether good or bad, of raising money, and by his advice the king sold honors and offices, and granted charters of privilege, as lavishly, says a writer who lived in his time, as if he never intended



## Extortion of the Chief Minister.

## Departure for a Crusade.

to return to his kingdom. The fortresses on the border, which King Henry had extorted from the king of Scotland as the price of his freedom,<sup>a</sup> were surrendered for a sum of money, and he was released from the oath of fealty that he had taken. The Bishop of Durham bought the earldom of Northumberland; charters and grants were ordered to be brought in, and their holders had to pay heavily for having them sealed afresh. Geoffrey, the king's natural brother,<sup>b</sup> had been named Archbishop of York by the Pope, and even he was heavily fined for having accepted the title before he had obtained the king's permission. Longchamp was sent to York, and he raised a great sum of money from some of the rioters there (for many of them were rich men), who had incited the attack on the Jews<sup>c</sup> because they were their creditors. The chancellor, however, found out what they owed the Jews, and made them pay it to the king.

<sup>a</sup> § 25, p. 140.

<sup>b</sup> § 28, p. 141.

<sup>c</sup> § 3, p. 144.

§ 6. By these and other means, which were readily submitted to, as it was for an object that all men then approved, a vast treasure was soon got together, and in April, 1190, only nine months after Richard's accession to the throne, a very large fleet was ready, and sailed from Dartmouth. In this crusade Philip Augustus, the ablest king of France since Charlemagne, was his colleague. The English fleet consisted of more than 100 large vessels fit to carry a great host, but having then few soldiers on board. Many others were laden with horses and arms. The nominal commanders were Gerard, Archbishop of Aix, and Bernard, Bishop of Bayonne, but the real rulers were Richard de Camville and Robert de Sabloil, who were styled sea-justices, and were assisted by a skilful mariner named William de Fortz, of Oleron. The fleet was dispersed by a storm soon after leaving England, but it was gathered together again at Lisbon, where it assisted the people against the Mohammedans, who were ravaging that region. Then it sailed to Marseilles, where the troops that had marched through France were taken on board, and were safely carried to Messina, in the island of Sicily, where they waited for the arrival of Richard.

§ 7. The king solemnly assumed the scrip and staff of a pilgrim, in the cathedral of Canterbury, even before the fleet sailed, and then he hastened to France, having first appointed Longchamp guardian of the realm. That act greatly offended his brothers John and Geoffrey, but particularly Geoffrey, in whose service

Richard Tarries on the Way.

His abuses of Wealth and Power.

Longchamp had once been. Richard compelled his brothers to take an oath that they would not come into England for three years without the chancellor's permission; and he gave Longchamp for his colleagues the Bishop of Durham and two nobles, who were to be a check on him in his management of the royal treasure.

§ 8. The English and French armies assembled at Vezelai in July, and marched together to the sea-coast, where they embarked on board the English fleet and some Genoese vessels for Sicily. The King of France, fearing the sea, travelled by land; but Richard sailed in a light galley with a few attendants, touched at the most remarkable places in Italy on his way, and so did not reach Messina until near the end of September.

§ 9. Here the king found his troops engaged in constant contests with the inhabitants, who were as treacherous and cruel as their visitors, many of them descended from the Saracens, and willing to do all that they dared to insult and injure the crusaders. Richard acted summarily with them. He erected gibbets and hung many of the offenders, for, as a chronicler who was in his army assures us, he considered all who were within his power as his subjects, and he held it to be his duty as a king not to let any transgression go unpunished. His conduct everywhere was governed by the spirit of the sentiment that "might makes right." He had, beside, a family quarrel to settle, as he found on his arrival that his sister Joanna, who was the widow of William the Good of Sicily, had been despoiled of her dower and imprisoned by Tancred, a usurper. He at once released his sister, and seized on a castle which he gave her as a residence. He next occupied a monastery as a stronghold for himself, and fed his men with provisions from his ships, as the people refused them all supplies. The King of France arrived during these quarrels, and sided with the Messinese; and thus disputes broke out between him and Richard, which eventually ruined their enterprise.

§ 10. At last, angry because of the just hostility of the people, Richard attacked and easily captured Messina, when Tancred was obliged to agree to pay a large compensation to Joanna. Richard, in return, promised to support Tancred on the throne. By this he made an enemy of Henry, King of the Romans, a German prince who claimed it in right of his wife.

§ 11. Whilst the nations of Europe were gathering their forces



Perjury of the King of Jerusalem.

Siege of Acre.

Richard goes there.

for the relief of the Holy Land, Guy, the nominal king of Jerusalem, had been released by Saladin on taking an oath to leave the country. He, however, was released from his oath by the clergy, and showing more courage and conduct than he had heretofore done, he assembled some troops, and being refused admission to Tyre, where Conrad of Montferrat ruled, he laid siege to Acre, a strong town on the sea-coast that had been not long before captured by the Mohammedans. Saladin marched against him, but was not able to drive him off, neither was Guy able to take the city, for the force of the Christians was divided between him and Conrad, and there were two kings but no kingdom. The Emperor of Germany, Frederic Barbarossa, was the first prince to march to his assistance; but he was drowned in crossing a stream, and his troops nearly all perished from sickness.

§ 12. The King of Sicily sent Guy some aid, and numerous knights joined him from different countries, which enabled him to hold his ground. His spirits were kept up by the expectation of the arrival of the English and French kings, and thus he continued the siege, though sickness and famine made great havoc among his men, and as he had no fleet he could not prevent the people in the town from receiving abundant succors from Egypt. At last, before the second winter set in, Henry, Count of Champagne, who was Richard's nephew, was sent to his aid with a body of soldiers, but the kings and their armies remained in Sicily. Richard kept his Christmas there in magnificent style, indulging in idleness and debauchery. He gave bountifully from his treasures for the relief of a great number of French knights and nobles who had spent all their substance in the expedition, which greatly offended their king; and he bestowed liberal sums on many ladies and other exiles who had lost their inheritances in Palestine.

§ 13. Before the time for the sailing of the fleet arrived, Queen Eleanor reached Sicily, bringing with her as a wife for Richard, Berengaria of Navarre, a princess with whom he had become acquainted while he ruled in Aquitaine. It being the season of Lent, they could not then be married, and Queen Eleanor returned to England, leaving Berengaria in the care of Joanna, the sister of Richard. The French fleet sailed first, and reached Acre without difficulty; but the English, which left Sicily some days later, was scattered by a storm. After tossing about for many days, a part of the fleet reached Cyprus, where some of the vessels were seized

Richard seizes Cyprus.

Loss of Life at Acre.

The French King.

and plundered by Isaac Comnenus, a Greek, who reigned there and styled himself emperor; and Richard's sister and his intended queen only escaped capture by refusing a treacherous invitation to land. The king had almost reached Palestine when he heard of this; he repaired to Cyprus, defeated Isaac, dethroned him, and sent him a prisoner to Margath, a fortress in Syria that belonged to the Knights of St. John. He then appointed one of his sea-justices to rule the island, restored to the people their ancient laws, which Isaac had abolished, and married Berengaria. That was in the autumn of 1191, when Richard was thirty-four years of age. He sailed very shortly afterward, and reached Acre, having captured a large Saracen vessel on his way.

§ 14. Richard was received there with great joy, as his military skill and courage, and his liberality to all who served him, were so well known; and the speedy capture of the city that had now resisted the whole Christian host for nearly two years was considered certain. The loss of life among the crusaders had been fearful. The sword and the plague had swept away six archbishops, twelve bishops, forty earls, five hundred barons, and one hundred and fifty men of "the meaner sort."

§ 15. Richard found the King of France <sup>a</sup> in ill-health, and meditating a return home. He fell ill himself also from the heat of the climate, but in spite of that he pushed forward the siege with vigor. His fleet blocked up the harbor, and thus prevented further succor to the garrison. He had powerful machines built, called petraria, for battering down the walls, and others called mangonels, for casting stones, and he employed his men incessantly in undermining the towers. The French king endeavored to imitate him, but he had neither his skill nor his wealth. He was more of a statesman than a soldier. The French engines were soon burnt by the enemy, for they were not protected with hides as those of Richard were, and the French knights showed so great a desire to enter Richard's service that constant quarrels ensued between the two kings. Philip Augustus was looked upon contemptuously, and Richard was hailed as the head of the whole army.

§ 16. Though he was so weak that he was obliged to be carried about on a litter, he directed all the operations, and exposed himself to every danger; and he sometimes showed his skill as an archer by discharging his cross-bow as he lay on his couch, parti-

<sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 146.



Surrender of Acre.    The French King returns home.    Cruelty to Prisoners.

cularly on one occasion when he saw a Saracen parading on the ramparts in the armor of a knight who had been slain. At last, when the walls began to give way before his terrible engines, he offered four pieces of gold for every stone torn from them, and such havoc was soon made that the Saracens were obliged to surrender before Richard had been a month in Palestine. He, however, acted unjustly in claiming all the glory, and in ordering the banner of the Duke of Austria, who had very bravely captured one of the towers, to be thrown into the ditch. He had to pay afterwards for this insolent act by a long captivity.

§ 17. The two kings took possession of Acre, which they divided between them. Richard set diligently to work to restore the fortifications, after which he wished to march at once to Jerusalem, but the king of France, pleading ill-health, suddenly abandoned the crusade and returned home. To make the passage he begged two of his best galleys from Richard, and then he departed, after taking an oath not to do anything to injure him in Europe. But he did not keep his word.

§ 18. Richard had now the whole burden of the war cast upon him, and he prosecuted it vigorously, though he had much trouble from the hostility of Conrad of Montferrat, who claimed the kingdom, and was supported by the Duke of Burgundy, under whose command were the French forces. Richard favored Guy; in consequence the French refused to serve, and many of them remained idly at Acre, while the English king fought in the field against Saladin.

§ 19. When Acre was surrendered, the garrison, to save their lives, promised that Saladin should pay a large sum of money and should also release many Christian prisoners; but he refused to abide by this agreement, on which Richard put to death the Saracen hostages, and Saladin in return murdered his prisoners. After these acts of mutual barbarity, Richard marched out of Acre and encamped in the fields, though many of his men followed him unwillingly. The Saracens attacked him, but were always beaten off, and when all was ready he marched along the sea-coast towards Ascalon, his ships keeping near and supplying his men with provisions. The march of twenty days was one continued battle; but at Arsoof the Saracens were so completely overthrown that they destroyed Ascalon and other fortresses and retired to Jerusalem. Richard wished to restore Ascalon, but the French opposed it;

Richard and Saladin.

Affairs in Ireland.

Richard prepares to return.

many of them retired to Acre, and he was obliged to halt for nearly two months at Joppa before he could collect his army again. He had employed the time also in restoring some of the abandoned fortresses, and at last, in the month of November, 1191, he encamped at Ramla, the Arimathea of Scripture, within twenty miles of the Holy City.

§ 20. Saladin now made some proposals for peace, and presents and courtesies were exchanged between him and Richard. The negotiations were carried on by the brother of Saladin, who was named Saphadin, and who professed to be desirous of marrying Richard's sister, Joanna; the princess, however, refused to listen to the project, and the plan was abandoned. The enemy continued to harass the Christians, cutting off their convoys of provisions and murdering the stragglers; the weather was very severe, and at last, after a two months' stay, Richard was obliged to retire to Ascalon, which he now fortified, and there he remained until the spring, when he received such an account of the proceedings of his enemies in Europe that he resolved to return to his dominions as soon as he honorably could.

§ 21. Richard had hardly left England before Long-  
 champ<sup>a</sup> began to conduct himself tyrannically, and <sup>a § 5, p. 145.</sup>  
 he soon drove away the Bishop of Durham and his other col-  
 leagues. Prince John, on this, broke the oath that he had  
 taken,<sup>b</sup> came to England, and seized on several castles  
 beside those that Richard had intrusted to him. The <sup>b § 7, p. 146.</sup>  
 Archbishop Geoffrey<sup>c</sup> also came, but was seized at <sup>c § 5, p. 145.</sup>  
 Dover and thrown into prison. Prince John espoused  
 his cause, and marched to London, when Longchamp fled in the  
 disguise of a woman to Flanders, and his post of governor of the  
 kingdom was given to the Archbishop of Rouen. Soon after this  
 the King of France returned, and John, by promising to give up  
 Normandy, secured his concurrence in an attempt to seize on the  
 kingdom. Longchamp sent intelligence of these events to Richard,  
 who at once saw the necessity of returning to Europe if he would  
 preserve his kingdom. By way of a final effort, he, in June, 1192,  
 marched to Betenoble, within four miles of Jerusalem, and remain-  
 ed there for a month, when, finding the city too strong to be taken,  
 and his men and horses dying from thirst among the mountains,  
 he quitted the spot and marched back to Acre, after strengthening  
 Ascalon and Joppa in his way.



Richard leaves Palestine.

Is a Prisoner in Germany.

Tried as a Murderer.

§ 22. Scarcely had he reached Acre when he learned that Joppa was besieged by Saladin, and could scarcely hold out a day. He at once hastened to its relief, and performed acts of almost incredible bravery in driving off the enemy; but his exertions brought on an illness, so that his life was despaired of, when Saladin again made proposals for peace, and by the mediation of Saphadin a truce for three years was agreed on, Richard expressly stating that he desired it only that he might preserve his kingdom, and that he would again visit Palestine and renew the war.

§ 23. The terms agreed to were that the sea-coast should remain in the hands of the Christians, and Jerusalem in the hands of Saladin, but that Christian pilgrims should be allowed freely to visit it. Many of the army did so, and they were protected by Saladin as far as he could from the fury of his followers; but Richard himself declined to go, for he said he would not owe to the favor of an infidel what he had not been able to obtain from the gift of God.

§ 24. Richard now sent his queen and his sister and the main body of his fleet away, and they all reached England in safety. He remained behind a few days longer, and when he sailed [October 9, 1195] his ship was driven by a storm into the Adriatic. Being desirous of reaching Normandy as early as possible, he endeavored to travel through Germany, with few attendants, in disguise, and calling himself Hugh the Merchant. His liberal presents, however, aroused suspicion, and though two or three knights who had served under him in Palestine, from admiration for his character, suffered him to pass, he was at last [Dec. 20] seized at Erperg, near Vienna, by order of that Duke of Austria

whose banner he had cast down.<sup>a</sup> He had a still more powerful enemy in the emperor (Henry the

Sixth), as he was that king of the Romans whom he had offended in Sicily.<sup>b</sup> The emperor, hearing of Richard's cap-

ture, demanded him from the Duke of Austria, and

shut him up in a castle in the Tyrol. Longchamp discovered the place of his confinement, and on the application of Queen Eleanor, the Pope (who was esteemed the general protector of all crusaders) ordered him to be set at liberty, and excommunicated the Duke of Austria for seizing him. The emperor paid no regard to the order of the Pope, and instead of releasing him, he produced Richard before a meeting of the German princes, where he

<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 149.

<sup>b</sup> § 10, p. 147.

Richard's Ransom and Release. Returns to England. War with France. His Death. charged him with the murder of Conrad of Montferrat, and many other crimes.

§ 25. These charges were entirely untrue, and Richard, in an eloquent speech, cleared himself of them all, to the satisfaction of the princes; but he could not obtain his liberty without promising to pay a heavy ransom, in return for which the emperor bestowed on him the empty title of King of Provence. The money was raised in England, even the church plate being sold for the purpose; but the emperor, after he had received a large part of it, was bribed by the King of France and Prince John<sup>a</sup> still to keep Richard in prison. The German princes, however, compelled him to release him, and Richard was then set at liberty, after a confinement of more than a year, on giving hostages for the payment of the remainder of his ransom.

<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 146.

§ 26. Thus at last, after an absence of nearly four years, the lion-hearted king again landed in England [March 13, 1194]. He disembarked at Sandwich, and walked thence barefoot to Canterbury to return thanks to God, in the cathedral there, for his deliverance. This duty accomplished, he speedily captured the castles that his brother John had seized; was crowned a second time at Winchester, and then hastening into Normandy, he, at the intercession of their mother, freely forgave his brother John, although, owing to his treachery, the King of France was then in possession of nearly the whole of the province, as well as of Anjou, Touraine, and Maine.

§ 27. From this time until his death, though with some short intervals of truce, Richard carried on a fierce war with the treacherous King of France. Philip Augustus was twice defeated, at Fretteval and at Gisors. In the first battle he lost all the records of his kingdom (which kings then usually carried about with them), and in the second he fell into the river Eure in his flight, and nearly lost his life. At last, early in the year 1199, some disturbances broke out in Poitou which Richard marched to suppress. He led the attack on a castle called Chalus Chabrol, and had forced his way to the inner court, when he received his death-wound from an arrow discharged from the only tower that was still defended by Bertrand de Gurdun, whose father and two brothers Richard had slain with his own hand. Richard lay twelve days in pain, and then, on the 6th of April, 1199, he died, at the age of forty-two years. He had been persuaded by his



## King Richard's Burial.

## His Character.

## His Successor.

mother to pass over Arthur, the son of his brother Geoffrey, and name John as his successor. By his own desire his body was buried at the foot of his father's tomb at Fontevraud, and his heart was sent to Rouen, a town for which he had always professed a great affection.

§ 28. "King Richard," says one of his fellow-crusaders, "was tall of stature, and graceful in figure; his hair between red and auburn; his limbs were straight and flexible; his appearance was commanding, and his manners and habit suitable. He was liberal, eloquent, prudent; and though impatient of an injury, and impelled irresistibly to vindicate his rights, all that he did was characterized by innate nobleness of mind." It was in this sense that the well-known appellation of *Cœur de Lion* was bestowed on him; not merely to style him an undaunted soldier, but to ascribe to him the perfection of all kingly qualities as then understood, as the lion was then esteemed the most noble of beasts.

§ 29. But the claim for the courageous knight of "innate nobleness of mind" was indefensible, for he did not possess it. If valor was synonymous with virtue, then he was possessed of great moral qualities. But, as in his case, valor may be linked with absolute baseness. Richard was, indeed, valorous in war, but he knew little and cared less for the great qualities of the true ideal of chivalry. He was faithless in love; false with his promises; cruel, extravagant, and dishonest. He was not always even brave when away from the excitements of war. He was a bad son; a bad husband; a bad father; anything but a Christian gentleman. He had more of intellectual culture than was then usual. He was a persuasive orator and a fair poet; and sometimes assumed the functions of the troubadour. As a military leader and castle-builder, he was among the foremost men of his time.

---

## CHAPTER III.

### REIGN OF JOHN. [A.D. 1199 TO 1216.]

§ 1. RICHARD left no legitimate children, and his brother John, the youngest son of Henry the Second, became his successor. When John was only eleven years old his father proclaimed him

Coronation of King John.

His Troubles in Normandy.

His Cruelties.

Lord of Ireland; and it was when he was at the eighteenth year of his age that he was sent to that island, as we have seen,<sup>a</sup> to take upon himself the duties of his office. <sup>a</sup> § 27, p. 141.

His conduct there showed his unfitness for administrative duties, and no great province was bestowed on him, as had been done by his elder brothers, and he was hence contemptuously styled John Lackland. He bore this position uneasily, and was constantly plotting against his father or his brothers; but, though often detected, he always managed to regain their favor. Hence Richard named him as his successor, as being his nearest of kin, and by a lavish use of the royal treasure he secured the support of his brother's large bands of mercenary troops. Accordingly he was at once received as Duke of Normandy, whilst his nephew Arthur, a boy of thirteen, was acknowledged in Anjou, and was taken under the protection of Richard's old rival, the King of France.

§ 2. Earl John was in Normandy when the king died. He sent Hubert Walter, the Archbishop of Canterbury, into England, who, by threats and bribery, procured his reception as king by a council held at Northampton, and soon afterward crowned him [May 29, 1199] at Westminster Abbey, on Ascension-day, scarcely two months after Richard's death. John was at that time thirty-four years of age. At twenty-four he married Isabel of Gloucester. He divorced her, and at about the time of his accession to the throne he married Isabel of Angoulême. After his coronation John passed frequently backwards and forwards between England and Normandy, and put his fortresses in the latter country into so good a state of defence that Philip of France soon agreed to acknowledge him as king, and seemed more inclined to strip Arthur of his possessions than to assist him in his claims.

§ 3. That young prince met with an unexpected ally in Hugh le Brun, the Count of La Marche, whose intended wife, Isabel of Angoulême, John had carried off and married himself. Hugh, burning for revenge, found means to interest Philip in the matter, and the war broke out afresh. Arthur, with Hugh for his general, besieged his grandmother, Queen Eleanor, in the castle of Mirabeau; but John hastened to her assistance, defeated the assailants, and captured Arthur, his sister Eleanor, and Hugh. Their fate was a melancholy one. Hugh was kept a prisoner in chains for many years at Caen; Eleanor was confined for the rest of her life, a



Death of Prince Arthur.      France Now, and Then.      English Dominions there.

period of more than forty years; and Arthur, after being for some time shut up in the dungeon of a castle, where the king ordered him to be murdered, was saved by the pity of the keeper. He was then sent to Rouen, and was no more heard of. It being presumed that he had been put to death, John was summoned by the King of France to answer to the charge. As he did not reply, he was formally adjudged to have forfeited his French lands as a felon and a traitor. Normandy was overrun by the French king, the Bretons (the native subjects of Arthur) took up arms, and John, abandoning both provinces without a blow, fled to England.

§ 4. At this point it seems proper to say that the France under the dominion of the French king, at the time we are considering, was a small territory as compared with France now, which has the English Channel and Belgium on the north; the Bay of Biscay on the west; the Pyrenees and Mediterranean Sea on the south; and Switzerland and Germany on the east.

§ 5. For a long time, as we have seen, the influence of the Anglo-Normans in France was powerful. Many of the provinces were almost continually under the control of the King of England. Henry the Second, at one time, possessed a much larger part of France than the French king himself. All the west of France was held by the English, excepting Brittany; and even there their influence was very great. The Duke of Brittany in the west, the Earl of Flanders in the north, the Duke of Burgundy and the Count of Dauphiny in the east, and the Count of Toulouse in the south, were all independent princes, and the kings of England frequently took part in their wars against the prince who, as possessing the capital city, Paris, was styled King of France. But he did not rule over one-sixth of the country now known by that name. We shall notice, as we proceed in our narrative, how the English tried to hold dominion over France, and the wars that were the consequence.

§ 6. The breaking up of the English dominion in France, just mentioned, occurred in the year 1204. It was two years before John could muster an army to attempt its recovery, and when he did so he was, after a short campaign in Poitou, glad to obtain peace by surrendering all the country north of the Loire, which comprised Normandy, Brittany, Anjou, and Maine, the provinces that had so long been the scene of fierce strife, and in which his warlike father and brother were buried.

John's Tyranny.

Contentions with his People.

The Pope Interferes.

§ 7. But a greater trouble than the loss of these provinces soon after came upon John. The Archbishop of Canterbury died, and the king and the monks each chose a successor, whom, as was then the practice, they offered to the Pope for his confirmation. Neither of these men appeared suited to the post, and at last, after a two years' delay, the Pope gave the office to Stephen Langton, a learned Englishman, who was then in France. John declared that he would never allow him to land in England, and as the monks were willing to accept him, he not only drove them out and seized their possessions, but laid a very heavy tax on all the rest of the clergy as their abettors. His brother, Geoffrey,<sup>a</sup> was one of the first to remonstrate on this injustice, and not being heeded, he excommunicated the king's advisers, when he was driven from his see and died in exile.

<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 145.

§ 8. The Pope now took part in the quarrel, and laid the kingdom under an interdict, in consequence of which no public service was held in the churches, absolution for sins was granted only to persons at the point of death, and their bodies were laid in ditches and waste places without any funeral ceremony. Many bishops left the country, but the king only proceeded more tyrannically than before. He knew that he had entirely lost the good-will of his subjects; but he endeavored to secure himself by ordering them to take a fresh oath of allegiance. He also demanded bonds and hostages from his barons, which many were obliged to give him; but some began strengthening their castles, to prepare for war, and others fled to Scotland or Ireland.

§ 9. Among these last was William de Braose, a nobleman of Sussex, whose wife, when ordered to give up her youngest boy to the king, replied that she would not trust her child to a man who was the murderer of his nephew. The taunt was terribly avenged. The plunder of the church had given the king vast sums of money, which he chiefly employed in hiring bands of fierce foreign soldiers, and with them he made pitiless inroads in Scotland, Wales, and Ireland, for three years in succession. Wherever he went he devastated the country, and he returned many times to England, bringing with him troops of miserable captives, many of whom were imprisoned at Windsor, or Corfe Castle, or other royal seats, and starved to death in dungeons whilst John and his associates rioted in the banquet-hall above.

§ 10. Lady Braose and her family were among the number who



John excommunicated by the Pope.      His Tyranny.      Operations in Wales.

suffered, but her husband escaped to France, where he died of grief soon afterward. Some of the fugitives took to piracy, but they were hunted down by a fleet of galleys furnished by the Cinque Ports,<sup>1</sup> with whose inhabitants John was a favorite, as he scrupulously regarded their privileges, and passed a portion of every year among them, when he associated freely with their mariners. In return, they, under their warden, William of Wrotham, firmly supported him under all circumstances.

§ 11. After the interdict had been in force for nearly two years, the Pope, finding John still unmoved, excommunicated him; but this produced no effect beyond rendering the royal exactions from the clergy more heavy than before. As soon as it became difficult to gain enough from the church, another supply was found in plundering the Jews, who were imprisoned and most mercilessly tortured until they gave up their wealth.<sup>a</sup> They had  
<sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 144. hitherto been less oppressed in England than on the Continent; but now that the case was so entirely altered they began to leave the country.

§ 12. There was still another measure that the Pope could take, which was absolving John's subjects from their oaths of allegiance; but before resorting to this extreme measure he sent Cardinal Pandulph as his legate, to endeavor to bring about a peace between the king and his various opponents. This also failed, and the people were accordingly absolved in 1212, which was the fifth year of the quarrel. John disregarded this also, and set about a fresh expedition against Wales, when he suddenly found out the real danger of his position. His troops, as usual, were mainly mercenaries; but with them were Robert Fitz-Walter and some other barons, who resolved to avail themselves of the papal absolution and to betray him into the hands of the enemy. He had already hung some thirty young Welsh hostages, boys and girls, and was arranging the plan of his campaign, when a messenger from his daughter Joan (who was the wife of the Welsh Prince) informed him of the plot. Fitz-Walter and the rest at once fled to France, when John seized their estates and hired more mercenaries with the money.

<sup>1</sup> These five ports, nearest to France, were Dover, Hastings, Hythe, Romney, and Sandwich. Their jurisdiction was vested in barons, called wardens, for the better security of the English coast from invaders from France. They were established by William the Conqueror, and were considered the keys of the kingdom of England. They are yet under a Lord Warden.

Invasion of England prevented.

The King's Submission to the Pope.

§ 13. Philip, the French king, now prepared to invade England in the interest of his son Louis, who had married John's niece, Blanche of Castile, and who had been invited by some of the barons to come over and be their sovereign. But John and his men of the Cinque Ports were quite ready to meet him. His brother, the Earl of Salisbury, put himself at the head of their fleet, ravaged the Norman coast, and brought home many prizes. The King of France then invaded Flanders, which was in alliance with John, and captured Bruges; but Salisbury sailed again in quest of the French fleet, which he found in the harbor of Damme [A.D. 1213], captured 300 sail, and burnt 100 more. Thus the threatened invasion of England was postponed for three years, and time was gained for John to make his peace with the Pope, which he at last thought it wise to do.

§ 14. In about a month after the great victory at Damme, Cardinal Pandulph again went to England, when John was formally reconciled, and did homage for his dominions [May 15, A.D. 1213], for which he also engaged to pay an annual tribute to the See of Rome. In this transaction the power of the Pope was manifested. At an early hour the superstitious monarch repaired to the church of the Templars, at Dover, and there, surrounded by the dignitaries of Church and State, he fell upon his knees before Pandulph, the pontiff's representative, took an oath of fealty to the Pope, placed in the legate's hands a writing, in which he surrendered to Innocent, the reigning Bishop of Rome, for himself and successors, for ever, the kingdom of England and the lordship of Ireland;<sup>a</sup> and agreed to pay an annual tribute of <sup>a § 27, p. 141.</sup> seven hundred marks of silver for the former, and three hundred marks for the latter. He then offered Pandulph some money in token of his sincerity, when the haughty cardinal trampled it under his feet, to signify that the Holy Father had no desire for filthy lucre. And so it was that England and Ireland became a part of that immense "patrimony of St. Peter," which in our time had shrunk to the insignificant proportions of the Papal States in Italy, and in September, 1870, disappeared in the close of the Pope's temporal power, after a possession of it of full eleven hundred years.

§ 15. After his degradation, John recalled the Archbishop of Canterbury and the other banished clergy, and determined on an invasion of France, whose monarch the Pope had ordered not to



Rights demanded.

The King and Barons.

Magna Charta and its Powers.

interfere with "the pious penitent of England and beloved son of the church." But John found his barons, in general, in league with Philip, and therefore he had to trust to his mercenaries alone. With these he landed in Poitou, and gained some successes; but about the same time his brother, the Earl of Salisbury, was captured in Flanders, and John returned to England.

§ 16. The Archbishop of Canterbury was that Stephen Langton

<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 157. who had been appointed by the Pope in 1207,<sup>a</sup> and his seven years' banishment induced him to join with

the barons in demanding a redress of the many grievances they all had sustained at the king's hands. These demands were presented to John in the beginning of the year 1215, but it was not until the middle of June that he could be induced to concede them. The king tried to divide the confederates by granting the demands of the churchmen, and assuming the cross, as if he intended to go to the Holy Land, and the Pope, now become his protector, ordered the barons to desist from their demands. Instead of this, they took possession of London. At length the king met them at Runnymede, near Windsor, when he unreservedly agreed to all that they asked, intending all along to keep faith with them no longer than he was obliged to do so. That agreement formed the basis of the celebrated Magna Charta, or fundamental constitution of England, which guarantees rights and privileges.

§ 17. The barons perfectly well knew that the base monarch intended to violate his word, so, beside imposing an oath on him not to appeal to the Pope to set the charter aside, they appointed twenty-four of their number to enforce its observance, and took and held possession of the Tower and the city of London. This charter promised peace and freedom of election to the church; a legal course of government, in which right and justice should not be sold, denied, or delayed; the trial of every man openly by his peers; moderation in punishments; just weights and measures, and protection to merchants. These things are of interest for all time, and that charter, so extorted from a vile king, is the solid base of all the liberties of Great Britain and our Republic at the present day. It also provided for the redress of more temporary grievances, as the restoration of the barons' bonds and hostages, and the dismissal of the foreign mercenaries; but with this last stipulation the king did not even pretend to comply. On the contrary, he sent abroad to hire more, and when charged with the

Perfidy of John upheld by the Pope.

Civil War.

French Invasion.

fact by the keepers of the charter, he cried, "Why do you not ask for my kingdom?"

§ 18. In about two months after the grant of the charter, John withdrew himself into Kent, where his new troops were beginning to arrive on board the Cinque Ports' <sup>a</sup> ships, with Fulk de Breauté, a man of particularly desperate character, <sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 157. for their leader. The king now formally applied to the Pope to be absolved from his oath, began ravaging the barons' estates, and after a two months' siege, in the autumn of 1215, he took the strong castle of Rochester.

§ 19. Just as this fortress fell, a communication came from the Pope, which annulled the charter, suspended the archbishop, and excommunicated the barons. Rendered desperate by this, some of the barons surrendered Northumberland to the King of Scots. John marched towards them in the depth of winter, and ravaged the country, and in his absence the barons near London plundered the surrounding districts. The king now marched southward. De Breauté sacked the churches, and the barons, when he had reached Enfield, shut themselves up in London and despatched messengers and hostages to offer the crown to the King of France, who, exasperated by the perfidy and avarice of the Pope, did not heed the thunder of the curses of "his holiness," which rolled over Philip's head. When John drew near, the Londoners threw their gates open, challenging him to venture in; but he turned aside into Kent, where he remained until he learned that Louis, the French King's son, was about to embark for England. Then, as many of his mercenaries were Frenchmen, he became distrustful of them, and marched first along the coast to Corfe Castle, then into Shropshire, and afterwards across the country to Lincoln.

§ 20. The Pope's legate <sup>b</sup> had forbidden Philip to accept the crown of England offered by the barons, but the prohibition <sup>b</sup> § 12, p. 158. was disregarded, and as the prince was fortunate enough to escape the Cinque Ports fleet, he landed at Sandwich, captured Rochester, was received into London, and began the siege of Dover Castle, all in the course of a month, in the early summer of 1216. But he soon found that "the lock and key of England," as Dover Castle was then commonly termed, was too strong for him; he therefore left it behind him, and marched to Winchester, which was surrendered to him, but in an attack on Windsor Castle he was repulsed. This ill success, added to his policy of giving



The French defeated.

Death of John.

His Person and Character.

every castle that was taken into the hands of his Frenchmen, disgusted many of the English barons, and they went over to the side of John, who was then at Lincoln. Thus strengthened, the king marched to Lynn, where he was most cordially received by the seafaring people, and gave to the town its name of King's Lynn, which it still bears. After resting here a few days he crossed an inlet of the sea, called Cross Key Wash, on his return to Lincoln, but the rising tide carried away much of his baggage and his treasure. Vexation at this loss, some say, brought on a fever; while others declare that he was made ill by eating gluttonously of fruit. Others say he was poisoned by one of his attendants. His illness obliged him to halt at Swineshead Abbey. When somewhat recovered he started on horseback for Sleaford, but speedily growing worse, his attendants put him in a litter and carried him to the Castle of Newark, on the Trent, where he died on the 19th of October, 1216, three days after his arrival. By his own desire, his body was buried in Worcester Cathedral, although he had several years before founded the Abbey of Beaulieu, in the New Forest, avowedly for his last resting-place.

§ 21. John was a man of small stature and severe aspect. His licentious life, and his treachery and cruelty, made him very odious to the great body of his subjects; but many notable men adhered to him in spite of all the censures of the church. Among them were the Earls of Salisbury and Pembroke, the Bishop of Winchester, and Hubert de Burgh, the justiciary. These men, then the most powerful in the realm, also became the great supporters of John's young successor.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### SOCIETY DURING THE NORMAN AND EARLY PLANTAGENET PERIOD.

§ 1. FROM the time of the conquest of England by William of Normandy, in the year 1066, to the close of the reign of King John, in 1216, a period of one hundred and fifty years, the social and political structure of modern England was in a crude formative state. It was a period when the power of the Roman hierarchy was at its height, both temporal and spiritual, and the Bishop of

Christianity in England.

Its Ministers.

Government and Laws.

Rome was the grand arbiter in the affairs of men and nations, and irresponsible to any human authority. How that mighty autocracy, which was felt in every fibre of social life in Europe, was exercised, our brief narrative of events in England and elsewhere reveals.

§ 2. Christianity, as then recognized in the public worship of God, was a system of ceremonies; and superstition ruled men through their fears, rather than religion through their love. Greed was everywhere visible among the ecclesiastics, and they were the most potent instruments of oppression. The strife for earthly possessions in connection with monasteries, churches, and cathedrals, appears to have been far more zealous than struggles for the treasures which "neither moth nor rust doth corrupt." The quarrels, and often bloody contentions, among the higher clergy aspiring for honors and emoluments, and their utter worldliness of thought and action evinced in their lives as courtiers, politicians, and warriors, make unseemly pictures in the records of religion in those times. Indeed, to the apprehension of impartial minds in our day, of whatever creed, the professed ministers of the Gospel in England then, as a body, were hinderers rather than helpers of the people struggling up from the darkness and slavery of paganism into the light and freedom of the pure religion of Jesus of Nazareth.

§ 3. It was so also with government and laws. The feudal system,<sup>a</sup> introduced by the Normans, was an awful oppressor of the people, crushing them to earth under the weight of serfdom and absolute slavery, which forbade improvement and elevation. It seemed as if government and law had combined to enrich and aggrandize the few at the expense of the many. Class was absolute in segregations and antagonisms. The feudal lords themselves suffered by a system created for their special benefit, for they were isolated, demoralized, and made cruel. Each castle and its landed appendage was an empire liable to be seized by whomsoever might covet it. The sword was continually out of the scabbard, and no man's life and property, from the king to the *villani*,<sup>b</sup> was free from jeopardy one hour. Desolations were common; and thousands perished annually by want or violence. On so feeble a tenure was all property held, that society, above the laborers, presented a band of marauders, suspicious of each other and of the monarch, and each watching for an opportunity for despoiling his neighbor.

<sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 96.<sup>b</sup> § 26, p. 92.



## Guarantees of Magna Charta.

## Royal Possessions and Revenue.

§ 4. It was this state of things which caused some of the better sort of barons to wring from King John, at Runnymede,<sup>a</sup> the Magna Charta which defined (1) the rights of the clergy; (2) the rights of the barons or fief-holders; and (3) the rights of the people at large. It guaranteed to the latter (1) that the court of common pleas, or common resort for justice, should not follow the king's court, but should be held in a certain fixed place in each county. Before that time suitors for justice, through law, were compelled to follow the king from England to France, and from France to England, often to their utter impoverishment, as we have already remarked.

§ 5. It guaranteed (2) that justice should not be sold, refused, or delayed; (3) that two judges should be sent four times a year into each county, who, with four knights chosen by each county, should hold an assize at an appointed place; (4) that no freeman should be arrested or anywise be maltreated in person or property unless by the legal judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land; (5) that no *freeman*, or *merchant*, or *villain* (villani)<sup>b</sup> should be unreasonably fined for a small offence; nor the first be deprived of his tenement, the second of his goods, nor the third of his husbandry. This last was the only clause which related to the *villani*, who were then the most numerous class of the people. The king was made to promise several other benefits for the people; and so it was that the movement toward a better state of government was commenced, with a result which proves the truth of the couplet, that

“Freedom's battle, once begun,  
Though baffled oft, is ever won.”

§ 6. The legitimate income of the monarch was derived from what were called “crown lands,” and various taxations. It appears from the record of a general survey of all the lands of the kingdom, made by direction of the Conqueror, in two volumes known as the “Domesday Book,”<sup>c</sup> that the crown acquired the entire property of more than fourteen hundred manors, the rents of which must have been large. In addition to these, the king possessed sixty-eight royal forests, thirteen chases, and seven hundred and eighty-one parks or hunting grounds, in different parts of his dominions. He also had annual dues from his knighted vassals; and he often doubled the amount of his lawful income by exactions and violent seizures of property.

<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 160.

<sup>b</sup> § 26, p. 92.

<sup>c</sup> § 28, p. 103.

Sources of the Royal Income.

National Industry.

Extension of Commerce.

Besides, every tenant of the crown was obliged to furnish the king one armed soldier, when called for, and to maintain him in the field. The crown also drew large profits from wardship and marriage, it having the disposition of all heiresses, and also of all widows of its tenants, in marriage; and the transaction was always accompanied by a fee to the sovereign. It also received the profits of the estates of all idiots; also personal effects unclaimed, stolen goods cast away by thieves, estrays, treasure found buried, wrecked goods long unclaimed, sturgeon and whales cast on the shore, and scores of other kinds of property. The crown was made a reservoir into which every conceivable stream of wealth gathered for the gratification of the lust of the wearer.

§ 7. The condition of society in England after the conquest was unfavorable to individual enterprise; and the growth of national industry, so promising toward the close of the Saxon era, was checked, with the exception of commerce which the foreign connections of the monarch fostered. The Conqueror's seven hundred ships-of-war, and numerous smaller vessels, with which he approached the English coast,<sup>a</sup> made a respectable navy; and many of these were used for purposes of traffic. The maritime power of England was extended, while its productive industries were diminished. <sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 80.

§ 8. Some new branches of industry were introduced from the East by the returning crusaders and by the Flemish refugees;<sup>b</sup> but little advancement was made in the useful arts until the reign of Henry the Second [1154 to 1189], when manufactures and commerce attained a prosperity unknown since the Conquest. <sup>b</sup> § 21, p. 123.

§ 9. The subjection of Ireland to English rule greatly extended trade; and Dublin, in a degree, rivalled London as a mart of traffic. The latter, with a population of about fifty thousand in the reign of John, was the principal seat of trade within the British realm. In return for the products of England which it exported, such as wool, flesh, cattle and horses, hides and skins, oysters, herring, iron, lead, tin and copper, it received silver coin from Germany; gold, spices, and frankincense from Arabia; precious stones from Egypt; purple cloth from India; palm-oil from Bagdad; furs and ermine from Norway and Russia; arms from Scythia; silks from Sicily; and wines from France. Down to the close of the period we have been considering, the Flemings were



## Agriculture and Arts.

## Ignorance of the Clergy.

the chief foreign traders who resorted to England, where they obtained a large portion of the wool for making cloth. The only coinage in England during that period was a silver penny, then, as now, the twelfth part of a shilling, which is the twentieth part of a pound, the latter being an actual pound, or 5,400 grains, of silver.

§ 10. Agriculture felt the depressing influence of the turbulence of the times; yet it was, as in the Saxon era, the chief productive industry of the nation. The population to be fed did not exceed two millions, and yet so imperfect and limited was the tillage that an unfavorable season caused much distress. The agriculture of the same England now sustains, on an average, sixteen millions. There were some improvements over the Saxons in implements of husbandry. The plough was more efficient, and the sickle and flail were of precisely the same form and construction as those now in use. Hand-mills were used in almost every family, and water-mills, belonging to the owners of manors, everywhere abounded.

§ 11. The architecture of this period, especially in the art of sacred and palatial structures, made rapid progress toward a higher and purer style; but the chief business of the builder was the rearing of heavy-walled castles. The textile arts were somewhat improved under the culture of the Flemish weavers.

§ 12. Toward the close of this period guilds were formed. In 1180, the saddlers were an incorporated body, while goldsmiths and other artisans had formed independent associations. Embroidery was the chief occupation of the women of rank and wealth, who were much employed in so ornamenting the vestments of the higher orders of the clergy. The Abbess of Markgate embroidered three mitres and a pair of sandals, which she sent to Pope Adrian. Gold and silver workers were eminently expert. A pair of candlesticks, sent to the same Pope by the Abbot of St. Alban's, wrought of gold and silver, were admired as superior to anything the Roman Pontiff had ever seen.

§ 13. The common clergy of England were notoriously illiterate at the time of the Conquest. A great number of them could hardly read the church service. The barons, and all below them, even of the Norman stamp, were profoundly so. In this fact may be found the secret of the power of superstition, which the more enlightened priesthood used for securing and perpetuating the

Libraries, Schools, and Universities.

Historians.

Churches.

absolute dominion of the church. The Conquest making England a part of Continental Europe, where the revival of learning begun by Charlemagne was progressing, gave a new impulse to knowledge in the island. The Crusades and the Irish connection furnished additional intellectual wealth. Arabic literature found its way into monasteries; and the sciences of the East had many devotees therein.

§ 14. The Conqueror loved and patronized learning and the fine arts; and with him dawned a new intellectual era in England. Libraries were formed; schools were established; the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge flourished, and learning began to be diffused among the minor clergy, who, according to the notion of the age were the only legitimate possessors of it. Schools were connected with all religious houses, of which more than five hundred were established between the Conquest and the death of King John. But these cathedral and conventual schools were for the instruction of those only who were preparing for the priesthood, and many youths went to the colleges of the continent for their education. There were, however, a few schools in cities and villages open to the children of all freemen. In the higher schools, such as at Oxford, and in seminaries in London and one or two other places, law, medicine, divinity, metaphysics, Greek, Latin, and mathematics were taught.

§ 15. Historians were numerous during the age we are considering, and its most precious literary remains are the many historical works which it has bequeathed to us. No other nation, probably, possesses so large a body of early cotemporary history as that formed by the writings of the English chroniclers of the eleventh and twelfth centuries. Among the more prominent names of historians are: William of Poitiers, the chaplain of the Conqueror; Eadmer, the monk of Canterbury; William of Malmesbury; Simeon of Durham; and William of Newbridge. The annals of Roger de Hoveden, from 737, where Bede's<sup>a</sup> Ecclesiastical History ends, is a most valuable production of that period. <sup>a</sup> § 28, p. 93.

§ 16. The Normans, more than any other modern people, had a taste for magnificent buildings, and during this period England was beautified with them. "You might see," wrote an old chronicler, "churches rise in every village, and monasteries in the towns and cities, built in a style unknown before." Castle-building was



Castle and House building.

Sculpture.

Furniture.

a necessity and a passion. Every one built a castle who was able; and eighty years after the conquest, they numbered more than eleven hundred. The cathedrals, churches, abbeys, monasteries, palaces, and castles, were all marked with much taste in their style and finish. Some of the ecclesiastical buildings were rich and magnificent. The remains of many that have survived the ravages of men and time, now, in their desolation, excite our wonder and admiration. The style of architecture in all was generally the Romanesque—a combination of the Greek column with the Etruscan arch. The florid and airy Gothic was not yet developed.

§ 17. Domestic architecture in that age was very simple. Country dwellings of the best sort, such as manor-houses, were built of timber and inlaying plaster, and were usually in the form of a parallelogram, with a gable at each end. The lower story was vaulted, and not connected with the apartments above, which contained two rooms, in only one of which was a chimney. These upper chambers were reached by a movable stair outside of the building. In the roof was a loft that was reached by a ladder. As in the Saxon era, the dwellings of the laborers were thatched hovels, little better than the comfortable pigsty of our day.

§ 18. Sculpture was but little practised in this period, and chiefly for monumental purposes. Its efforts seldom extended beyond relief figures and ornaments on stone coffins. Painting was in an equally low state, and seems to have been confined to an alliance with gilding in the decoration of the ceilings of ecclesiastical buildings. The illumination of manuscripts was skilfully done, but with a profusion of ornament indicative of uncultivated taste. Music was mostly cultivated for use in public worship. The invention of an improved scale of musical notation by Guido de Arezzo, and the introduction of a correct method of marking time, had not yet invested the music of England with the dignity of a science, and the organ yet pealed out its monotonous in the cathedrals and churches. Secular music among the English was very grave; among the Scotch, Welsh, and Irish it was more lively and varied, accompanied by the harp, pibcorn, and bagpipe.

§ 19. In household furniture and table customs the Normans seemed to have varied very little from their Saxon predecessors, excepting in delicacy of choice and better cookery, the latter having, before the Conquest, learned much of Norman customs and cos-

tume. In the latter the Normans introduced a richer and more extravagant style, and the *fop*, unknown in the earlier period, appeared. Some of the fashions became very ridiculous: for example, the sharp-pointed boot or shoe, which sometimes terminated like the tail of a scorpion and at others was curled up like a ram's horn. The sleeves of the tunic, of both sexes, were sometimes made so long that they were knotted up to prevent their trailing on the ground. The stuffs were more costly than formerly; and the mantles of the rich were often lined with expensive furs. The men wore both hair and beard long; and fops, whose ringlets were not sufficiently profuse, added purchased hair, and appeared very effeminate. These follies were condemned from the pulpit, and sometimes razors and scissors were produced at the end of a sermon against the sinfulness of long locks and curling mustaches.

§ 20. The dress of the women was often preposterous, until Henry the Second's time, when it assumed a severe simplicity that gave a conventual appearance to the ladies. In a satirical picture of an earlier date, both sleeves and skirts are knotted up. Their garments were embroidered with indented edges; and they wore their hair in long braided pendants, sometimes encased in a sort of silken tube, and at others tied with ribbons like a Chinaman's pigtail. In Henry the Second's time the dresses, though plain, were more costly. He introduced the short cloak of Anjou for men, and was in consequence surnamed Court-Manteau. The hair of both sexes was curled with crissing-irons, and the beaux went bareheaded so as to show the beauty of their hair.

§ 21. At that period the magnificent palaces were carpeted with nothing better than straw and rushes; and the best beds were merely rugs laid upon the floor or broad benches. Forks were unknown, the fingers performing their service. Several English estates were held upon the condition of supplying fresh straw for the royal beds, and litter of rushes for the apartments of the palace. The splendid hospitality of Earl Fitz-Stephen was marked by the fact that his dining-room was supplied with fresh straw every morning, so that his guests who might not be furnished with a bench, might sit upon the floor without soiling their fine clothes. The office of "rush-strewer" was continued until the close of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, at which time Turkey carpets were used more for covering tables than floors.



Time of Meals.

Sports.

Condition of the People.

§ 22. The Normans were more delicate in their habits than the Anglo-Saxons, at table and elsewhere, but their entertainments were far more costly. Rich spices were plentifully used. The most esteemed dainties were the peacock and crane. A boar's head was a royal dish. But these viands were only for stated occasions. In general the Normans were abstemious. They were contented with brown bread made of rye, oats, or barley flour. The drinks of the opulent were spiced wines and several kinds of fermented liquors. The poor were satisfied with cider, ale, and perry, or the juice of the pear. Their habits were generally regular. A proverb in verse gives us the number of their meals in a day, and the time of partaking of them, thus:—

“To rise at five, to dine at nine;  
To sup at five, and bed at nine,  
Makes a man live to ninety-nine.”

§ 23. Hunting, hawking, gambling, and horse-racing were the common sports of the king, nobles, and ecclesiastics. But the tournament or sham fight of full-armed knights was the great pastime at courts and castles in the Middle Ages. It was imitated, in England, with modifications, by the common people and children, who, in winter, would skate upon ice on sheep-shanks tied to their feet, and tilt against each other with long staves. They also amused themselves with archery, throwing large stones, darting spears, wrestling, running, leaping, and sometimes boar-hunting, and bull and horse baiting. Cock-fighting was confined to children. On Tuesday of Shrovetide, each school-boy was allowed to bring a fighting-cock to the school.

§ 24. Jugglers entertained all classes. The buffoon, with his coarse jests, and the mime, with his antics at rude feats, were favorites. Coarse dramatic entertainments, gross like the morals of the age, drew crowds of delighted spectators; and various games of chance or expertness made up the sum of the diversions of the people.

§ 25. They had a hard life at the best. Injustice and cruelty bore awful sway in England at that time. An old chronicler sums up their condition in the few words:—“God knows how unjustly this miserable people is dealt with. First they are deprived of their property, and then they are put to death. If a man possesses anything, it is taken from him; if he has nothing, he is left to perish by famine.”

## CHAPTER V.

## REIGN OF HENRY THE THIRD. [A.D. 1216 TO 1272.]

§ 1. WHILST King John lay on his death-bed, messengers arrived offering the submission of many of his barons, who were growing every day more distrustful of young Louis of France. The king was too near his end to give audience to them, but his faithful adherents were greatly encouraged by their arrival, and all took an oath to receive his eldest son, Henry, as their king. The youth, known as Henry of Winchester, from the place of his birth, on the 1st of October, 1207, was then only in his tenth year; but he had able guardians in Gualo, the papal legate, and William, Earl of Pembroke, then Marshal of England. The latter marched with the royal army and Prince Henry to the city of Gloucester, where, a few days after his father's death, the youth was crowned [October 28th, 1216] as Henry the Third. A great council was held at Bristol on the 11th of November following, where the Earl of Pembroke was chosen Protector, with the title of *Rector Regis et Regni*. At that council Magna Charta<sup>a</sup> was revised and published in a form which made it more dear to the people. <sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 160.

§ 2. The effect of these measures was soon seen in the crowds that flocked to the royal standard. Prince Louis' party was defeated at Lincoln, where Robert Fitz-Walter and many of his chief English adherents were taken. His fleet, bringing succors from France, was destroyed in the straits of Dover by Hubert de Burgh, the warden of the castle, and the prince himself was at last besieged in London. The legate had already excommunicated him, and he was soon obliged to agree to leave the country [1221], when the London citizens lent him a sum of money for the expenses of his journey. Though Louis had stipulated that his adherents should go unpunished, the leaders did not think it wise to trust to this; therefore Fitz-Walter and many of the other barons went to Egypt on a crusade, to avoid punishment, where most of them died not long afterwards. But a French party remained, particularly in London, who, on every occasion of a tumult, raised Louis' war-cry of "Montjoie," and thus kept alive a feeling of distrust between the citizens and the king.



The Government.

Civil War.

Insolence of Foreigners.

§ 3. Before peace could be properly re-established, the papal legate <sup>a</sup> was withdrawn, and the Earl of Pembroke <sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 171. died. The government of the kingdom rested for the next dozen years in the hands of Hubert de Burgh and the Bishop of Winchester.<sup>b</sup> These men, though rivals <sup>b</sup> § 21, p. 162. in everything else, concurred in restraining the violence of Fulk de Breauté<sup>c</sup> and other mercenary <sup>c</sup> § 18, p. 162. leaders, who were with difficulty made to give up the castles and lands that they had seized, and who tried to create a new war for the sake of plunder. At length the bishop, Peter des Roches, who had been a soldier before he became a priest, was driven into exile, and De Burgh ruled alone. After a lapse of five years Des Roches came back, regained the king's favor, and induced him to commit the keeping of the royal castles to his countrymen, the Poitevins. De Burgh resisted this, and was imprisoned. He escaped, joined Walter the Earl Marshal, the marchers, and other nobles, and, after a two years' war, drove out the bishop and his adherents in the year 1234. The king professed to pardon De Burgh, but soon after stripped him of many of his possessions, on the charge of attempting to marry his daughter Margaret to the Earl of Gloucester without obtaining the royal consent.

§ 4. Shortly after the quarrel about the Poitevins, just mentioned, the king married Eleanor, the daughter of the Count of Provence, and, unwarned by what had occurred, he at once sent for several of his wife's relatives, on whom he bestowed titles and offices and rich possessions, to the disgust of his people, which was increased by the haughty conduct of these foreigners. Not content with the lavish gifts of their patron, they obtained the rich goods of the London merchants, and when asked for payment in the name of the law, scornfully cried, "What are the laws of these English boors to us?"

§ 5. One of these men was Boniface of Savoy. He was the young queen's uncle, and was made Archbishop of Canterbury, though, as a writer of the time says, "he was destitute of learning, and altogether ignorant of the language and customs of his flock." He was really little else than a fierce soldier, who passed the greater part of his time in foreign wars. The Pope, knowing his unfitness, long deferred his consecration, but at length yielded to the entreaties of the king, who, from his profuse liberality, was a favorite at Rome. When the soldier-prelate obtained possession

## A ferocious Archbishop.

## Influence of Court Favorites.

of the see he gave great offence by his disorderly life, and by treating every one with most overbearing roughness. Though the monasteries of London were not subject to him, he forced his way, attended by a guard, into St. Bartholomew's, and when the prior mildly declined his jurisdiction, the fiery archbishop struck him in the face, tore his cope, threw him on the ground, and trampled on him. The monks tried to rescue their prior, and in the struggle the archbishop, also, was thrown down, when it was seen that he wore armor under his robes. His guards then fell on the monks, and nearly killed several of them. Others then rang the alarm bell, when the citizens rushed in, and the aggressors had some difficulty in escaping with their lives. Some of the monks went all bruised and bleeding to the palace to complain to the king, but he would not even see them, and so the outrage remained without redress, though by no means forgotten by the Londoners.

§ 6. In a few years a fresh band of favorites appeared at court [A.D. 1247], who did the king even more mischief than the former, as, beside obtaining vast gifts from him, they engaged him in a number of idle efforts to recover his French provinces, on which he laid out more money than would have bought them all, had they been for sale. These were the children of his mother by her second husband, Hugh le Brun,<sup>a</sup> to whom she had been engaged before her marriage to King John. Hugh was <sup>a § 3, p. 155.</sup> of a treacherous, designing character, and he entertained a deadly hatred to the King of France, whose subject he was. He found in Henry an instrument ready to his hand. As to his children, nothing that their half-brother could do for them seemed enough. He created one of them (William de Valence) Earl of Pembroke, besides giving him a rich wife. He made another (Aymer de Lusignan) Bishop of Winchester, going himself to the monks and compelling them to elect him; and their sister he provided for by obliging the young Earl of Surrey to marry her against his will.

§ 7. Hugh le Brun was continually inciting the king to invade France, and received from him vast sums of money under the pretence of keeping the partisans of England together. Every now and then persons sent by him arrived at the court, and made the simple king believe that they represented the Normans, the Bretons, or the Poitevins, who were anxious to be delivered from the French. But when the trial was made, no one joined the English forces, and they had difficulty enough in getting back to Gascony, a pro-



Expeditions against the French.

Extortions.

A brutal Cardinal.

vince that was preserved only by the courage and conduct of Richard, Earl of Cornwall, Henry's younger brother, who was a skilful soldier.<sup>1</sup> Yet the king was foolish enough to embark again and again in the enterprise, and even to pass some years in the country himself, where he narrowly escaped being taken prisoner.

<sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 155. The king's mother, Isabel,<sup>a</sup> had a great share in inducing him to undertake these fruitless expeditions,

and so much mischief did she do by her intrigues that the French people, by common accord, changed her name to Jezebel. At last her husband was conquered by the King of France, and obliged to accompany him to the Crusade, where, being purposely exposed to imminent danger, he was soon killed. Isabel then retired to a nunnery, and Henry reluctantly gave up any further attempts to recover Normandy, Brittany, or Poitou.

§ 8. But beside the enormous expenses of the king's foreign favorites and foreign wars, there was another cause that served greatly to alienate his people from him. King John had agreed to pay a yearly tribute of 3,000 marks to the Pope; but the very idea of tribute was so repugnant to the feeling of the nation, that neither Pembroke nor De Burgh attempted to levy it. After the king had taken the government into his own hands, he determined to fulfil the obligation, though under another name, and at his request the Pope sent a legate, Cardinal Otho, professedly to "reform the state of the church." But it was seen, from the vast sums of money that he exacted under various pretences, that he was really engaged in levying the tribute with heavy interest. He paid a visit to the University of Oxford in the year 1238, but was obliged to flee for his life, as a quarrel arose between his servants and the scholars, in consequence of the brutality of his master cook, who threw boiling water in the face of a poor priest when asking for food! "in the name of God," a request that it was then considered no Christian would refuse. The cook was killed in the tumult, and the legate laid an interdict on the University, but its only effect was to make the foreigners more hated than ever.

§ 9. Though the proceedings of the legate were loudly complained of by both the clergy and the people, the king supported

<sup>1</sup> Richard afterwards became the most wealthy prince of his time, and thus induced some of the German princes to elect him King of the Romans. He was crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle, but never gained any real power, and when his funds were exhausted his supporters forsook him.

## A Royal Perjurer.

## The Pope's avaricious Demands.

him in everything, and unwisely showed his fears by strengthening the fortifications of the Tower of London. These new walls soon after were thrown down by an earthquake, and when the citizens rejoiced at it the king laid a heavy fine on them, which "they treasured up in their memories," says their historian, "as contrary to their known customs and liberties." But customs and liberties were things that the king cared nothing about when he had the strength to break through them, though always ready to take the most solemn oaths to observe them, if he could thereby gain a present supply of money. Thus he confirmed Magna Charta " no less than ten times, saying, with his hand on his breast, "So help me God, these things will I faithfully observe, as I am a man, a Christian, a knight, and a crowned and anointed king." At length the legate departed, laden with gold, but made additionally odious by the folly of the king, who placed him in his own royal seat at the Christmas feast in the year 1240.

§ 10. The Popes, having found how easy it was to draw large sums from the credulous king, never after ceased importuning him, and, to meet their wishes, his exactions became greater than ever. Sometimes he applied to his parliament in person: at one time told them a moving tale of his having vowed a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, and at another, of Pope Alexander having offered him the kingdom of Sicily for his younger son. For each purpose a large grant of money was necessary. But the parliament could not trust to his word, and told him plainly to his face that these were mere pretences. Henry, however, was not ashamed to hear this, and continued to importune them, alleging that the Pope had threatened to excommunicate him if he did not attempt the conquest of the Sicilian kingdom. At last, when they were induced to grant a sum for the pilgrimage, they ordered that it should not be paid to the king himself, but be expended for him by some trusty nobles. However, by smooth speeches, he eventually got it into his hands, and wasted it all in Gascony. As a means of conciliating the parliament, he afterwards introduced the young prince, his son, dressed in the Sicilian costume, and thus, in the year 1257, he procured 52,000 marks. This not being sufficient, he sent one of his clerks, Simon Passelew,—“a lying and crafty man,” says one of the chroniclers,—to extort money from the various religious houses; but very little could he



Impending Rebellion.

Cruel treatment of the Jews and the Londoners.

obtain, and the Sicilian expedition was never attempted, the money being paid over to the Pope instead.

§ 11. The king had now pursued his course of misgovernment for many years, and it was abundantly evident that it could no longer be borne. Though he had frequently put himself at the head of an army, he had never shown even personal courage, which was quite unbearable in so warlike an age, and he had never gained a single battle, even against the half-armed Welsh. On the contrary, they, on more than one occasion, had put him disgracefully to flight. On the other hand, he had pushed his exactions upon his subjects to such an extreme that they only required a leader to rise in open rebellion against him. This leader now appeared in the person of Simon de Montfort, the king's brother-in-law.

§ 12. Here, though a subject of small political importance, Henry's treatment of the Jews must be mentioned, for in his time they were more mercilessly plundered than even in the days of

**King John.<sup>a</sup>** They were charged with every imaginable crime, from clipping the coin to crucifying Christian children, and were hanged by a hundred at a time. At last, wearied out, they humbly petitioned, in the year 1255, to be allowed to quit England, promising never to return; but even this was considered too great a favor. Instead, they were handed over to Richard, Earl of Cornwall, "to torture and extract money from them," which he felt so sure of doing, that he at once advanced a large sum of gold to the king, and no doubt repaid himself with interest. The citizens of London had been treated almost as badly, excepting only as to their lives. Their mayor and aldermen had many times been sent for to the court, and thrown into dungeons, where they remained until they paid heavily for their release, and this whether they were accused of having cried

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 158. "Montjoie," <sup>b</sup> or let a prisoner escape, or connived at <sup>b</sup> § 2, p. 171. bakers selling bread of short weight. The clergy, too, were as dissatisfied as all the other classes, for the Bishop of Lincoln, the famous Robert Grosteste, showed to them that the Pope had intruded foreigners into their benefices, who drew from England a yearly revenue three times as great as that of the king.

§ 13. In the year 1238, Simon de Montfort, youngest son of the cruel Count de Montfort, in France, came over to England and married Eleanor, the Countess Dowager of Pembroke, and sister of

Simon de Montfort.

His Popularity.

A Revolution.

King Henry. He had succeeded to the earldom of Leicester in right of his mother, Amicia. He was very popular with all classes in England, and incurred the jealousy of the weak king, who banished him from the court. He afterwards made him governor of Gascony. He gallantly defended that province from both the French and the people of the country, who despised Henry.

§ 14. The king having been reconciled to Montfort, the gallant knight returned to England. Seeing the evil consequences of the king's extravagant favor for his half-brothers,<sup>a</sup> he quarrelled with the new Earl of Pembroke in the royal presence, and hastily quitting the court, sought at once for means to drive them from the country. That was in the year 1257. He had been greatly valued by the Bishop of Lincoln, then lately dead, who was said to have prophesied on his death-bed that De Montfort and his sons should be the champions and martyrs of the church and nation. He was therefore joined by multitudes, both peasant and peer; and among the last was that Earl of Gloucester whose marriage with Margaret de Burgh had been hindered by the king,<sup>b</sup> and who, though this had happened many years before, was still anxious to revenge himself. The Welsh prince, Llewelyn, also joined De Montfort, whilst Mortimer and his fellow-marchers took up arms for the king.

§ 15. Early in the next year [A.D. 1258] a parliament met at London, which positively refused to grant anything further for the Sicilian expedition. The king thought that this refusal was occasioned by the advice of the citizens, and therefore, after a while, removed the assembly to Oxford, where was then a royal palace; but there De Montfort and his friends came fully armed, and what was in reality a revolution was effected without bloodshed. Rules were drawn up, called the Provisions of Oxford, which in fact, though not in name, deposed the king, and placed all power in the hands of De Montfort and a few associates. The king, and also Prince Edward, the heir to the throne, and now in the nineteenth year of his age, swore to observe this new constitution; but Pembroke and his Poitevin friends refused, and fled to France.

§ 16. As had often occurred before, the king at once, by consent of a papal dispensation, disregarded his oath, and got money from the King of France to hire mercenary troops by formally resigning his claim to Normandy. Prince Edward did the same by borrowing from his rich uncle the Earl of Cornwall. Mean-



Contest between the King and People.

Civil War.

while De Montfort offended his friends by a too open assumption of superiority, and in the course of a few months the king formally refused to abide by the Provisions, attempted to resume his authority, and got possession of the Tower. So great was his need of support, that he even called on the hated Londoners to serve him for pay, but not one would join him. The unpopular queen was pelted with mud and stones by the populace as she passed under London bridge in a boat, amid the cries of "Down with the witch! drown her!"

§ 17. The king was in great peril, for the barons had pronounced him a tyrant, and so pleased the people. And on the approach of the barons, whom the king had denounced as rebels, the monarch was forced to flee to Dover. Unlike his father, however, he was

not a favorite in the Cinque Ports,<sup>a</sup> and he had to seek refuge in France. He soon returned, but

though he had introduced French mercenaries into Windsor, Gloucester, Bridgnorth, and other strong fortresses, he could not prevent the expulsion of the Bishop of Hereford, who was one of the hated foreign favorites. All the royal castles were taken, and Henry was again obliged to swear to observe the Provisions of Oxford. That was in the year 1262.

§ 18. After a time it was agreed at a great council held in London that all the questions between the king and his people should be referred to the decision of Louis, King of France. That wise and good monarch declared that the Provisions ought to be set aside as limiting too much the royal authority; but that their upholders should be pardoned, and the people should preserve all their ancient liberties. This reasonable award pleased neither party, and the war broke out afresh, and was carried on for some time with varying fortune.

§ 19. Prince Edward, who acted as his father's general, seized Oxford and Northampton, devastated the country as far as Kent, and ravaged the Cinque Ports, whose inhabitants had been changed by neglect and extortion into warm partisans of De Montfort. Many of them took to their ships, and passing over to the Flemish coast, they prevented any assistance reaching the prince from abroad. On the other hand, the Londoners plundered the king's palace, imprisoned his judges, and sent a strong body of their best men to assist De Montfort, who coming up with the king at Lewes, in Sussex [May 13, 1264], totally defeated him, taking him,

## An important Battle.

## Invasion threatened.

his brother the Earl of Cornwall, and his son Prince Edward, prisoners. This was the first important battle ever fought in England between purely English parties. The battle would probably have ended differently but for the conduct of Prince Edward, for the king had many foreign cross-bow men and other veteran soldiers, while the barons' army was mainly composed of men who then first took the field. Irritated by some affronts that his mother had lately received from the Londoners, the prince fell on those in the army with such fury that he totally routed them. He then pursued them so far that the rest of the royal army was defeated in his absence. The unfortunate citizens in their flight passed near the castle of Tunbridge, when the royal garrison sallied out, despoiled them, and slew so many that but a remnant reached London.

§ 20. The immediate result of the battle was a treaty, by which the king was set at liberty as being incapable of doing anything without his son and brother Richard,<sup>a</sup> who were closely imprisoned in the Tower and at Dover. The queen then raised forces in Flanders for an invasion, and Simon de Montfort encamped on Barham Downs, in Kent, to resist it; but as the Cinque Ports fleet kept the sea, the mercenary army dared not leave the opposite shore, and soon melted away for want of pay.

§ 21. After Prince Edward had been a prisoner nearly a year, he was released on taking an oath to observe the provisions of Oxford,<sup>b</sup> and was sent to reside at Hereford in "free custody," as it was termed, or on parole. Shortly before this a very remarkable event occurred, which was the meeting of an assembly, the very counterpart of the present British Houses of Parliament. Though what were called parliaments existed in earlier days,<sup>c</sup> they at first consisted only of nobles and bishops, who, as holding lands direct from the king, were summoned by him to give both money and counsel. But it was De Montfort's evident interest to obtain these things from all classes of the community, and accordingly there met at his summons, on the 28th of January, 1265, beside twenty-three peers and eleven bishops, one hundred of the inferior clergy, two knights from each county, and two representatives from each city, cinque-port, and large town. The whole met together in one chamber, but it was long before what we now style the Commons

<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 173.<sup>b</sup> § 15, p. 177.<sup>c</sup> § 10, p. 87.



Civil War renewed.

Death of Montfort.

Fresh Extortions.

were treated as the equals of the rest of the assembly. This was a great innovation in the direction of popular freedom; but when the king was restored to power he found it quite impossible to set it aside. From that day, therefore, dates the present constitution of the British government, of Monarch, Lords, and Commons.

§ 22. Though the Earl of Gloucester had been one of the earliest adherents of De Montfort, quarrels frequently arose between them, and shortly after Prince Edward had been removed to Hereford, the Earl suddenly went over to the royal party. He joined Mortimer and the other Marchers who had escaped from Lewes. Pembroke opportunely landed in South Wales with a body of foreign cross-bowmen, and the war was rekindled. Edward escaped by stratagem from his guards, and put himself at the head of the new army. De Montfort, carrying the helpless king with him, marched against him, but, strangely for so experienced a general, was surprised and utterly defeated at Evesham, on the 4th of August, 1265. Montfort and one of his sons were killed, and their bodies were barbarously mutilated and denied Christian burial; but they were long regarded as martyrs, and miracles, it was asserted, were wrought by their remains.

§ 23. In less than a month after this battle a parliament was assembled at Winchester, which decreed that the defeated barons and the Londoners should lie at the king's mercy. This was carried out as to the citizens, but the barons held out, some in the island of Axholme, and some in Kenilworth, which had been De Montfort's seat, until they obtained better terms. The king seized the mayor and aldermen, and gave them, as captives taken in war, to Prince Edward, who made them pay very heavy ransoms. All the best houses in the city were seized and given to soldiers of the royal army. Part of the city walls were thrown down, and the materials used to strengthen the Tower; and before the city was admitted to the king's peace—that is, considered as entitled to the benefit of the law—it had to pay 20,000 marks (£36,000, or about \$180,000). To avoid contributing to this fund, many of the inhabitants fled to other places and disclaimed their citizenship. The city charters were not restored until five years afterward.

§ 24. The rigor with which the Londoners were treated only made the barons in Kenilworth more desperate, and after besieging them in vain for six months, it was agreed that all except the De Montforts should be pardoned on the payment of ransoms of

Montfort's Party.

Death of Henry.

His Character.

from six months' to seven years' rent of their estates. All the surviving De Montforts were to be banished, although their mother was the king's sister.<sup>a</sup> These terms were accepted by most of the barons, but some refused them. These malcontents retired to the Isle of Ely, and were not subdued until two years after the battle of Evesham. Another parliament was held at Marlborough, in November, 1267, which granted better terms to the vanquished party, Llewelyn included, and the civil war was brought to an end, after a continuance of nine years, with some few intervals of an ill-observed truce.

§ 25. In the year 1270, Prince Edward, with his cousin Henry, son of the King of Rome,<sup>b</sup> went to the Holy Land, taking with him his wife, and also the Earl of Gloucester and several other lords and brave knights, from whom a renewal of the war was feared, as he was the deadly enemy of the Mortimers. From this time forward the reign of Henry was peaceful. Its most memorable event was the solemn removal, in the year 1269, of the bones of Edward the Confessor<sup>c</sup> to a rich golden shrine that the king had prepared for them in Westminster Abbey.

§ 26. At last the feeble king died, on the 16th of November, 1272, in the fifty-seventh year of his reign, and the sixty-fifth of his age, and was buried in the abbey, which, as it now stands, is mainly of his building. This fact should be borne in mind, as accounting for some part of the money for which he was so ceaselessly craving that one of the monkish writers of his time describes him as "the beggar king." He seems, indeed, to have deserved the appellation from his abject spirit. It is related of him, that when he extorted money from the Jews, though he left the silver to be gathered by his officers, he received the gold in his own hand; and when his eldest son was born, he wrung such heavy sums from those to whom he sent the news, that one of them remarked, "God gave this child, but the king sells him." The whole course of his reign exhibits him as weak, cowardly, and insincere; and not one kind or generous act is ascribed to him by any historian.

§ 27. Henry's brother, Richard, the King of the Romans,<sup>d</sup> who for fifteen years had deluded himself with dreams of possessing the imperial crown of Germany, had died the year before the demise of Henry, while rejoicing in the pos-



Accession of Edward the First.

He goes on a Crusade.

session of a young German bride; and there was no one to dispute the accession of Edward, the king's son.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST. [A.D. 1272 TO 1307.]

§ 1. FROM Westminster Abbey the barons who had attended the funeral of Henry the Third went to the New Temple and proclaimed the absent Edward by the style of "King of England, Lord of Ireland, and Duke of Aquitaine." This was on Sunday, the 20th of November, 1272.<sup>1</sup> He was then thirty-three years of age. Though he was far away, his accession to the throne was more tranquil than that of any monarch since the Conquest. The government was arranged for him before his arrival, and he had only to enter peacefully upon its duties. He was tall and slender, and had acquired the surname of Longshanks.

§ 2. Few sons have differed more from their fathers than the stern and able Edward Longshanks did from the feeble Henry of Winchester. When his skill and courage had brought the civil war to a close, he avoided the risk of its renewal, as we have observed, by half inducing, half compelling several of the disaffected nobles to go with him on a crusade.<sup>a</sup> Louis, the King of France (known as Saint Louis), who was at its head, died at Tunis, on the coast of Africa, and the enterprise was then abandoned by the French; but Edward declared that he would visit the Holy Land, though only his horse-boy should go with him. He accordingly sailed for Acre, where he was joyfully received by the Christians, whose territory was reduced to a mere strip of land along the coast. Though his force was small, he captured Nazareth, and defeated the Saracens in several battles, when they endeavored to assassinate him, and his life was only saved, according to the statement of some of the old writers, by the devotion of his wife, a Spanish princess (Eleanor of Castile),

<sup>1</sup> His reign was reckoned to commence on this day, four days after his father's death, although he was not crowned until a year and nine months afterward, on his return from the crusade. Henceforth the practice of dating a king's reign from the day of his coronation fell into disuse.

Edward's Coronation.

His energy.

The Welsh Princes.

who sucked the poison from the wound. This is a fable. A surgeon of Acre scarified the wound, and the Grand-Master of the Templars sent a drug that was an antidote to the poison.

§ 3. Soon after this Edward left Palestine, but he journeyed slowly through Italy and France, and visited Gascony, where he suppressed a rebellion. He arrived in England on the 12th of August, 1274. On his landing at Dover he was received by his council, which had governed the realm since the death of his father, and he was shortly afterward crowned [Aug. 19, 1274], with his queen, at Westminster Abbey. The rejoicings were great. He had sent orders for preparing 380 head of cattle; 430 sheep; 450 pigs; 18 wild boars; 278 fitches of bacon; and 19,660 capons and fowls for the occasion; and, as one mode of amusing the populace, we are told that 500 great horses, fit for war, were turned loose, to be the prize of all who could catch them.

§ 4. The king at once set himself to work to make his authority felt by all his subjects, as some slight attempts at insurrection had occurred in his absence. His next care was to replenish his treasury; but instead of acting, as his predecessors had done, on his own will, he thought it necessary to have also the sanction of Parliament, so popular had that institution already become. Accordingly, from this time forward we have a constant succession of demands for money made by kings, and of privileges asked in return by their subjects, which in the end effected a total change in the system of government introduced by the Normans, and brought it nearer to what it had been in Saxon times.<sup>a</sup> <sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 87. The English statute-book in reality commences with the reign of Edward the First, and so much was done in giving an orderly form to the administration of the law, that the king is sometimes styled the English Justinian.

§ 5. Ever since the time of Edward the Confessor<sup>b</sup> the Welsh princes had been considered as the vassals of the King of England; but they had rendered neither <sup>b</sup> § 17, p. 78. obedience nor tribute except to kings of firm and warlike character. Llewelyn, Prince of Wales, who was betrothed to the beautiful Elinor de Montfort, daughter of the Earl of Leicester,<sup>c</sup> <sup>c</sup> § 13, p. 176. had taken part with De Montfort in the late war, and at its close he had been obliged to make a formal submission by charter. This satisfied the feeble Henry, but the new king was resolved to have his authority as the feudal Lord of Wales



Invasion of Wales.

The Country Conquered.

Measures to Secure it.

more publicly acknowledged. He therefore summoned Llewelyn to do him homage at his first parliament at Westminster [A.D. 1275]; but this Llewelyn declined to do, unless he had hostages for his safety, saying that he remembered the fate of his father Griffith, who had been unjustly imprisoned in the Tower of London, and was killed in trying to make his escape.

§ 6. The king dissembled his anger until he had collected a large army, when he marched into Wales, took Llewelyn prisoner, and brought him to London. After having been stripped of all

<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 2. his land except the isle of Anglesey <sup>a</sup> and the mountainous region of Snowdon, he was released [1277]

upon promising to pay a heavy tribute. His affianced was captured in the English Channel, while on her way, with her brother, to join the Welsh king, and a ransom for her was refused. Many of Llewelyn's castles were given to the Marchers, and these new masters so harassed the Welsh that they soon began to take up arms to recover their freedom.

§ 7. In the fifth year of their subjection, by sudden attacks, the Welsh captured Hawarden Castle, and destroyed those of Flint and Rhuddlan. Roger de Clifford, one of the Lords Marchers, fell into their hands and was put to death, and the English garrisons generally fell back across the Severn and the Dee. The king at once repaired to Shrewsbury, and whilst a body of hired soldiers was collected from Gascony, he sent the Cinque Ports fleet to ravage the Welsh coasts, as the rising against his rule extended from one end of the country to the other. At length, in the winter of 1282, all was ready, and though the English troops lost many men in crossing the river Conway, the country was speedily subdued. Llewelyn was surprised and killed by the Marchers, and his brother David, who continued the war for a short time after, being taken prisoner, was condemned by the Parliament and executed as a traitor.

§ 8. To render any fresh rising hopeless, many new castles were erected under the king's own direction, which differ so much from any former ones that they are still known as Edwardian. Sheriffs and other royal officers were appointed in a few districts, and some towns had English settlers placed in them, on whom

<sup>b</sup> § 10, p. 109. great privileges were conferred; but the rest of the country was given up to the Marchers,<sup>b</sup> who abused

their authority in a most tyrannical manner. The king had promised

English Oppressors.

The Gavestons.

Extortions.

that the people should retain their old laws in civil matters, but the Marchers disregarded this, and acted as oppressively as the Normans had done in England two hundred years before. They filled their castles with the foreign soldiers brought in by the king, whom the people regarded with even greater hatred than the rest of their conquerors; a feeling that was fostered by the songs of the bards. Hence the castle-men hunted down the minstrels with such eager cruelty as to give rise to the popular story of a general massacre of the whole body by the order of the king.

§ 9. Having offered some rich spoils from Wales to the church of Westminster, Edward next repaired to Gascony, where a rebellion had again broken out, and he found it necessary to remain in that country for more than three years [A.D. 1286–1289]. One very important consequence of this long residence abroad was the introduction of Piers Gaveston to the English court. His father was Sir Arnold Gaveston, a Gascon knight who was very active against the rebels, but, as he had once served the King of France, he was, when taken prisoner, executed as a traitor, whilst his wife was burnt as a witch. They left, beside other children, a boy, who, in compassion for his parents' fate, was chosen by the queen as an attendant on her only son, Edward. The handsome person and engaging manners of the youth made him a general favorite in the royal household, whilst over the young prince himself he gained an extraordinary influence, which had most unhappy consequences, as we shall observe.

§ 10. Whilst the king thus remained abroad, affairs fell into confusion in England, and on his return he levied enormous fines on many of his judges and other officers. As a warning to their successors, he built a clock-tower opposite his palace at Westminster, where the courts were held, with a part of the money; the rest, which was reckoned at more than 100,000 marks, went into the royal treasury, as no compensation was given to those who had suffered from the unjust judges. At a later period of his reign [A. D. 1305] the king sent a body of judges and armed men all over the country, with the avowed intent of summarily redressing numerous evils that had arisen during his wars in the north.<sup>a</sup> These were called the "trail-baton justices," <sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 184.

and their establishment was something more akin to setting up martial law than to the issuing of special commissions for the trial of rioters in modern times, only that their proceedings were



Cruelty toward the Jews.

The Scotch claimed as Vassals.

directed rather to levying heavy fines for the king's benefit than to their professed object.

§ 11. Edward next employed himself in banishing the Jews, a race for whom he seems to have had such a personal hatred, that his usage of them was even more severe than that of his father had been. At the very first parliament that he summoned, he had caused their usury to be restrained. Next he obliged them to wear a mark on their garments, which distinguished them from Christians, and exposed them to every kind of insult and danger; and when they were accused of clipping the coin, he hanged them by the hundred, though he let the Christians who were charged with the same offence, and were, the chroniclers tell us, "mainly the rich citizens of London," redeem their lives by a heavy fine. His mother obtained from him a charter forbidding any Jews to live on her estates, and the Bishop of London pulled down their synagogue. Now [A.D. 1290] the king determined to drive them from the land, and they had but two months allowed them to seek other homes, after which they were forbidden to remain under pain of death. Their houses were seized by the king, which, says the chronicler, "yielded him an incredible store of riches;" but, with a forbearance that was then not often shown to the objects of royal displeasure, they were allowed to keep their movable property, and passes were granted to them for their personal safety. In defiance of this, a number of them were drowned at the mouth of the Thames for the sake of their riches, but the king executed their murderers.

§ 12. The Scottish kings, like the Welsh princes, had been occasionally forced to acknowledge themselves the vassals of the King of England; but the acknowledgment was very differently understood in the two countries. In England it was taken to mean that the kingdom of Scotland was only an English dependency, and that the homage done was for its crown; on the other hand, the Scots maintained that it was only for Cumberland, or Huntingdon, the earldoms of which the Scottish kings held under the kings of England, as these held Normandy, or Brittany, or Gascony, under the kings of France. This, indeed, seems to have been the true state of the case, but it did not satisfy Edward, and circumstances put it in his power to decide the question in his own favor, although that decision was afterwards overruled by the sword. This struggle occupied the last seventeen years of

Plan of Union with Scotland.      Decision of Commissioners.      Homage to Edward.

Edward's reign, and it was not finally decided until long after his death.

§ 13. Alexander the Third of Scotland had married Edward's sister, Margaret, by whom he had a daughter of the same name, who married Eric the Second of Norway, and died before her father, leaving, as the heiress of the Scottish crown, another Margaret, of the age of two years. On the death of Alexander, a year after, this child, who was styled the "Maid of Norway," was acknowledged as queen, and Edward endeavored to provide for the future union of England and Scotland by proposing a marriage between her and his son Edward, who was a year younger than she was. But this plan failed, as Margaret died while on her way to Scotland [A.D. 1290], before she had attained her seventh year. There was thus no direct heir to the crown left, but no less than thirteen claimants appeared, and though these were soon reduced to two (John Baliol, lord of Galloway, and Robert Bruce, Earl of Annandale), their claims appeared so equally balanced that the Scottish estates would not venture to decide between them; and as a civil war seemed approaching, they referred the case to the decision of Edward, a step which they soon had reason to regret.

§ 14. The king speedily repaired with a large army to Norham, a castle on the English bank of the Tweed, and though, when arranging the marriage treaty, he had solemnly acknowledged that Scotland was an independent kingdom, he now insisted that he should be accepted as its "sovereign lord," and that the royal castles should be put into his keeping, to enable him to carry out any award that he should make. The two competitors then submitted their claims to a body of English and Scottish commissioners, and at last, after a delay of a year and a half, their decision was given in favor of Baliol, on the ground that he was descended from Margaret, the eldest daughter of David, Earl of Huntingdon, the brother of two former kings of Scotland, whilst Bruce was the son of Isabel, the second daughter.

§ 15. The king accepted the judgment of the commissioners as his own, and, to avoid future disputes, as he thought, compelled Baliol to do homage twice; once before the commissioners at Berwick, and then before himself at Newcastle. The new king had to style himself the liegeman of Edward, the sovereign lord of Scotland, and to state in express words that he did this homage,



## The King of Scotland's Troubles.

## England's Allegiance to France.

on behalf of himself and his heirs, "for the whole kingdom of Scotland." Orders were given to deliver up the royal castles to him, and then [A.D. 1292] he was suffered to depart. His subjects received him with loud reproaches, as having betrayed the liberties of their country. Nor was this his only mortification. According to the feudal law, any one who professed that he had been denied justice, either in the Scottish courts or by the Scottish king, could now appeal to the King of England for redress. The consequence was, that Baliol was repeatedly summoned to attend at Westminster to meet complaints, some of which would seem to have been old debts revived for the very purpose of provoking a quarrel. He was not allowed to make answer by a deputy, though meaner men were permitted to do so, and when he appeared in person he was treated only as a private individual. John le Mason, a Gascon, claimed a debt for wine which he asserted he had supplied many years before to King Alexander; but that prince's executors alleged that it had been discharged. Baliol, however, was ordered to pay it forthwith, on pain of having a part of his private estate seized. He returned to Scotland full of indignation, and was at once reconciled to his subjects by their common desire to shake off the English yoke. That was in the year 1293.

§ 16. Soon after Edward had forced his feudal supremacy on the Scots, he found a demand on his own allegiance made by the King of France, in the year 1294. He had, in his return from Palestine, done homage at Paris, saying to King Philip, "My lord and king, I do you homage for all the territories which I ought to hold of you," a cautious form of words, by which he was understood to keep alive his claim to Normandy and Poitou, which had been lost to England in the time of John. But it also included Gascony, which he held, and thus he was unquestionably bound, according to the feudal law, to answer in the French courts for any injuries sustained by Frenchmen from his subjects. A case of this kind occurred, when Edward at once refused to abide by the rules that he had forced at the point of the sword on the Welsh and the Scots.

§ 17. Some English sailors were murdered on the coast of France, in a casual quarrel, and some Frenchmen were hanged in return by the Cinque Ports men. This was a matter that had happened many times before, and had it gone no further neither Philip nor Edward would probably have noticed it. But the

A fierce Naval Warfare.

Money for Crusading.

Extortions.

French sailors, instead of bearing patiently the retaliation, put to sea, and when they had succeeded in taking an English vessel, hanged all the men at the yard-arm, and ventured to come in sight of the English coast with the bodies thus displayed. A fierce war followed, without the consent of their sovereigns being asked, between the lawless sailors of both nations. The Cinque Ports men had for allies some ships from Ireland, and others from Denmark and Norway, whilst the Scots and the Spaniards helped the French. Much damage was done, and at last, by mutual consent, a pitched battle was fought off St. Mahé, in Brittany [April 14, 1293], when the French were defeated with great slaughter. King Philip then took up the cause of his people, and summoned Edward to appear at Paris. As Edward took no notice of this, after a lapse of three months his fief of Gascony was declared forfeited, and French troops marched in to take possession.

§ 18. Edward now publicly renounced his fealty to the King of France, and set to work to raise an army to reconquer Gascony. He also made an alliance with the Count of Flanders, who, like himself, had broken his feudal allegiance. In violation of the Great Charter,<sup>a</sup> he resorted to the most violent means for raising money. Shortly before this, the Moham-<sup>a § 16, p. 160.</sup> medans had driven the Christians from Acre, their last fortress in the Holy Land, but large sums were still collected yearly for its recovery, and these were laid up in the monasteries. The king now took possession of all this treasure, declaring that he was far more in want of money than his dear brothers the Hospitallers and the Templars. He also seized on the goods of merchants, and sold them in Flanders for half their value, and he forced the clergy to give him one-half of their revenues. As he found them at first unwilling to do so, he sent John Havering, one of his knights, to their assembly at Westminster, who called on any one who objected to come forward, "so that he might be taken notice of, as unworthy of the king's peace," which meant that he would be an outlaw, and neither his goods nor his life be safe. The demand, of course, was then granted, and an army collected; but this was detained so long at Portsmouth, by bad weather, that the French had completely conquered Gascony.

§ 19. The enterprise was now abandoned, for news came that the Welsh had taken up arms, under Madoc and Morgan, the kins-



## Rebellious Wales Subdued.

## Troubles in Scotland and Gascony.

men of their late prince, Llewelyn.<sup>a</sup> The royal army was now recruited by pardoned malefactors, and a part of it sent, under the king's brother, the Earl of Lancaster, against them; but the Welsh defeated the earl, and burnt several of the new castles. The king followed in haste, and passed the winter in Wales. He rebuilt the castles and founded another at Beaumaris, and having at length captured Madoc, brought him to London, where he died a prisoner in the Tower.

§ 20. Soon after Edward's return from Wales, the Scots, in a parliament at Scone [A.D. 1295], deposed Baliol, and appointed a council of regency of twelve peers, which sought aid from France. Edward learnt this, and at once marched into Scotland, gained a victory at Dunbar, and captured the Maidens' Castle, near Edinburgh, where the chief ladies of the kingdom had taken refuge. Baliol soon after surrendered himself, and formally resigned the royal dignity, when he was sent a prisoner to the Tower. Edward then appointed Warren, Earl of Surrey, guardian of the kingdom, and Hugh Cressingham, treasurer, and marched back to England, carrying with him the Stone of Destiny, as it was called, on which the Scottish kings were crowned,<sup>1</sup> and the regalia, as also many Scottish nobles as hostages, on several of whom he bestowed lands in the south of England in forced exchange for their own.

§ 21. Whilst Edward was engaged in this campaign in Scotland, his affairs had gone badly in Gascony. His brother, the Earl of Lancaster, had ravaged the French coast, and taken Bordeaux, but died soon afterward, and his successor, Lord St. John, was defeated and taken prisoner. To remedy this, the king tried to raise a new army: but the Earls of Norfolk and Essex positively refused to go with him, though they held the high offices of earl marshal and high constable. They also forbade the sheriffs to levy any taxes until Magna Charta<sup>b</sup> was again confirmed. The king was then carrying on the war with but small success in Flanders, for his seamen fought among themselves.<sup>2</sup> His soldiers

<sup>1</sup> This stone, which was, according to the legend, Jacob's pillow at Bethel (Genesis xxxviii.), is imbedded in the seat of the coronation chair now in Westminster Abbey; but the regalia were restored to the Scots by Edward the Third.

<sup>2</sup> The Cinque Ports men, as being especially "king's men," and bearing the cross of St. George, assumed a superiority over the rest of the mariners, from such towns as Yarmouth, Southampton, and Fowey, who were by them regarded as mere merchant seamen. This arrogant feeling, which often led to furious combats, continued as long as the Ports had a fleet of their own.

The Career of Wallace.      Wars against Scotland.      Strange Claim to Sovereignty.

were also unmanageable, for they were mutinous for want of pay. He was therefore obliged to give way, and soon afterwards he made a truce with the King of France [A.D. 1297], as fresh troubles had broken out in Scotland.

§ 22. Warren had induced most of the Scottish nobles to swear allegiance to Edward; but William Wallace, a knight of the west country, refused to do so, and gathered a band of courageous men, with whom he captured the royal treasure at Seone, and thus procured many more adherents. Warren advanced against him, but received a complete overthrow at Cambuskenneth, near Stirling, and was driven out of the kingdom. Cressingham, the treasurer, who had been guilty of much wanton oppression, was among the slain, and the victors, it is said, flayed his body and made bridles of his skin. Not content with this triumph, Wallace marched into England as far as the Tyne, and ravaged the country in the English manner.

§ 23. Edward now again overran Scotland, defeating the Scots at Falkirk, and again returning triumphant to England. He indeed seems to have thought the war was ended, as he set at liberty John Baliol in exchange for Lord St. John; but the Scots at once elected a regency, at the head of which they placed Robert Bruce (the son of the one who had competed for the crown<sup>a</sup>), and John Comyn, Earl of Badenoch, who was also of royal descent. By surprise they captured the strong castle of Stirling. This brought Edward and his army among them for the third time, and the usual ravage followed; but the spirited resistance of the Scots procured them the intercession of the Pope, who, claiming a kind of guardianship over all kingdoms, addressed a letter to the king, enumerating many instances in which both he and his father had acknowledged that Scotland was not subject to England, and entreated him to set at liberty his prisoners and withdraw his troops. In a letter that is still extant, Edward and his barons indignantly denied that any person had a right to interfere between him and his "rebel subjects the Scots," who, they asserted, had been dependent on England since the days of Brutus, who had subdued the giants of Albion, and given his own name to Britain. This legend, among others concerning the origin of the ancient Britons<sup>b</sup> was long received as truth. It relates that in the time of the Hebrew judges, Albion, as the island was called, was inhabited by giants. These

<sup>a</sup> § 13, p. 187.

<sup>b</sup> § 1, p. 1.



## Other Invasions of Scotland.

## Siege of Stirling.

were subdued by Brutus, a descendant of Æneas the Trojan, renowned as the founder of Rome. Brutus, who gave the island his name, since changed into Britain, is said to have founded a great city on the River Thames, and called it Troynovant, or New Troy, but it was afterwards embellished by King Lud, the brother

of Cassivellaunus,<sup>a</sup> who styled it after himself, Caer  
<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 10. Lud, or Lud's town, and which is now London.

Brutus was said to have had three sons, Locrin, Albanact, and Camber, to whom he gave England, Scotland, and Wales. Locrin was the eldest born and the superior of the three, and from this it followed that Scotland and Wales were of right subject to England.

§ 24. As soon as this answer had been despatched from the Parliament at Lincoln, Edward again marched into Scotland, and wintered there; but the resistance of the Scots was beginning to tell on his resources. He could not venture again to seize on his people's goods as he had done before, and early in the next year he agreed to a ten months' truce. This interval was employed in treating for a peace with the French king; but as that monarch refused to abandon his Scottish allies, it came to nothing. When

the war again broke out, they retook Stirling,<sup>b</sup> and  
<sup>b</sup> § 23, p. 191. also gained a victory at Roslin. Enraged at this, Edward offered such tempting terms to the French that they made a peace, which left the Scots exposed to his fury,

§ 25. Edward now lost no time in making his fifth inroad, which was more merciless than any of the former ones. It was in the year 1303. He burnt the churches and monasteries, which had hitherto been spared. The royal abbey of Dunfermline was demolished, and he penetrated as far as the Moray Frith. He passed the winter in the country, during which both Bruce and Comyn submitted to him, and at a parliament held at St. Andrew's, the garrison of Stirling, the last remaining Scottish stronghold, were declared outlaws. As their submission seemed all that was wanting to the complete subjugation of the land, Edward marched against them in person.

§ 26. The siege lasted for four months, and during its progress the king, to encourage his men, rode round the walls daily on his war-horse, but without armor, as if defying all the efforts of the garrison; but this show of contempt had nearly cost him dear. At one time an arrow passed between his horse's reins; at another,

Humble Submission of the Scotch. Edward's Tyranny. Life and Fate of Wallace.

a bolt from a cross-bow pierced his robe; and at another, a huge stone from the walls brought his steed to the ground. Still the siege went on, until William Oliphant, the governor, found that he had but three days' provision left. He then offered to surrender, if he and his garrison might obtain mercy. So much were the English nobles impressed with their gallant defence, that they promised to intercede for them; but it was necessary for them to humble themselves greatly before the king, in order to soothe his pride and anger. Accordingly, by the advice of their new friends, the Scots came out of the castle barefoot, and with ashes on their heads, and with ropes round their necks, which, according to the custom of the time, was the same as owning themselves traitors and thieves, and bending before the king, asked his grace. He answered, "I will not receive you to my grace, for you deserve it not, but only to my will." They replied, as they had been directed, that they submitted to his will. Edward answered, "My will is to tear you limb from limb, and hang you; but if you have hope to defend yourselves, I will allow you to go back to the castle."

§ 27. Knowing that this would only be to defer certain death for a few days, the Scots now threw themselves on the ground, saying, "Take us, O lord king! subject to thy will!" After contemplating them at his feet for awhile, Edward suffered himself to be persuaded to spare their lives, and sent them to various prisons in England. He then appointed John de Segrave, a famous warrior, governor of Scotland, and taking the chief nobles with him, he returned to England. That year [1304] he kept his Christmas at Lincoln, "with such state as became the monarch and lord of two kingdoms," says the chronicler, the Scots being obliged to be present, and to witness the rewards bestowed on the conquerors of their country. A solemn thanksgiving at Westminster followed. Wallace was soon afterwards captured near Glasgow, brought to London, and on the 23d of August, 1305, he was executed at Smithfield.

§ 28. Sir William Wallace was about thirty-five years of age at the time of his death. He was of Anglo-Norman descent, of fiery blood, and while yet a pupil in school, killed an insolent young son of an Englishman. He fled, and for five years he was an outlaw among the border Highlands. He was accomplished and brave, and the idol of his followers. He was a bold and skilful soldier;



## Affairs in Scotland.

## Robert Bruce King.

and for years he was the most formidable opponent the English had in Scotland, as a regular leader or guerilla warrior. His capture and death was a heavy blow to the Scotch, and a great relief to King Edward, who, with his counsellors, completed, at his leisure, a code of laws for his new subjects. They were regarded as a completely subdued people. We shall see, presently, how mistaken were the English in their estimate of Scottish character.

§ 29. Robert Bruce, the regent, died shortly after his submission to Edward, and was succeeded in his earldom of Annandale by his son of the same name. The young noble had adhered to the English party, and had served on their side at Falkirk. He had long resided in Edward's court; but the death of Wallace, who had appealed to him in vain to join his countrymen, made a deep impression on him. Some remarks that he uttered on the subject were carried to the king, and it was determined to imprison him. But he had a friend in the Earl of Gloucester, who was Edward's son-in-law, and from him he received a purse of gold and a pair of spurs. Such symbolic messages were then not uncommon, and Bruce readily understood that he was advised to flee for his life. He did so; and baffling pursuit by having his horse's shoes reversed, he got safe into Scotland about four months after Wallace's death. An assembly of nobles was soon afterward held in the abbey of Dumfries, when Bruce was received as their leader, Comyn, who had been regent, alone objecting, on the ground that he had become the liegeman of the king of England. Most of the others had also done this, but he, only, considered his oath binding. A fierce quarrel ensued at the high altar in the convent of the Minorites at Dumfries, when Bruce stabbed Comyn. His brother also was murdered by one of Bruce's attendants. This tragedy rendered any agreement with Edward impossible. The people of the whole country at once flew to arms, chased the English justiciaries and garrisons to Berwick, and crowned their leader at Scone, by the name of Robert the First, on the 27th of March, 1306.

§ 30. When the news of this coronation was brought to Edward he saw that his work was to be begun again, and though now old and feeble, he resolved to die in the field rather than abandon his design of making Scotland a part of his realm. He bestowed knighthood upon his son and three hundred other young nobles. Piers Gaveston and Hugh De Spenser, afterwards so unhappily

Edward's Vow of Vengeance.

Invasions of Scotland.

Edward's Death.

known, were among them; and at the feast that concluded the ceremony, the king took a solemn oath that he would avenge the death of Comyn and reconquer the Scots. He also exacted an oath from his son and the nobles, that if he should die before this was accomplished, they should carry his corpse with them, and not give it Christian burial until they had fulfilled his design. On the following day [May 22, 1306], the young knights and their followers commenced their march for Scotland, under Aymer de Valence, son of William de Valence, who was made Earl of Pembroke by Henry the Third,<sup>a</sup> and who was a  
cousin of the king. After a short time they gave  
battle to Bruce, at Methven, in Perthshire, where he received so great an overthrow that for months he had to lead the life of a fugitive in the remote isles of Scotland.

§ 31. Edward soon left England for the last time, and took with him a strong reinforcement for his army. Wherever he appeared the Scots again submitted, and almost all of Bruce's family fell into his hands. The men were executed, and the women were closely imprisoned. But these misfortunes did not break the spirit of the new Scottish king. Every now and then he issued suddenly from his hiding-places, and so kept the English garrisons in a state of alarm, obliging Edward himself to march to their relief, though in the depth of winter.

§ 32. When the next summer came a fresh English army was assembled at Carlisle, and the king put himself at its head, though scarcely able to sit on his horse, with the avowed intention of ravaging the whole of Scotland with fire and sword. But his power was unequal to his will. On the second day of his march he became unable to journey any farther, and two days afterward he died, at Burgh-on-the-Sands, only five miles from Carlisle, but in sight of Scotland. This was on the 7th of July, 1307. His son had been hastily summoned to him, and Froissart, the chronicler, says that his last charge to the prince, delivered with his dying breath and under pain of his curse, was, neither to be crowned himself, nor to bury his father's bones, until Scotland had been utterly subdued. But this cannot be true, for the crown prince was not present when his father died. Such directions, if given, were disregarded.

§ 33. Edward, whose well-known name of Longshanks brings him at once before the eye, was a tall, stately, austere personage.



Edward and his Reign.

Accession of Edward the Second.

He was well versed in war and government, and these accomplishments made him really a great king, though very far indeed from a just and good man. He showed no more regard for his word or oath, or repeated confirmations of Magna Charta, than his father had done;<sup>a</sup> but he was merciless in punishing any breach of engagements to himself which by his sword he had obliged others to contract. Llewelyn of Wales fell in battle,<sup>b</sup> but the deaths of his brother David and of Wallace were nothing else than murders committed in the name of laws to which they were not properly amenable.<sup>c</sup> The improvements of the laws, by which his reign is usually said to be distinguished, were really only commenced in his day, and, as has been seen, did not protect his subjects from his own exactions. These showed him to be utterly unscrupulous; but as he was wise enough to see how far he could safely go, and when it was necessary to give way, he, on the whole, retained the good-will of his own people, though distrusted or feared by his neighbors.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

REIGN OF EDWARD THE SECOND. [A.D. 1307 TO 1327.]

§ 1. THE death of Edward the First was concealed from the people in the English capital until the 25th of July, or for the space of eighteen days, during which time the Bishop of London and Chancellor of the kingdom continued to affix the great seal of the realm to official documents. But the new king, then only in the twenty-third year of his age, was received as monarch by the peers at Carlisle on Saturday, the 8th, or the day after his father died. From that time his reign is dated. In the autumn he buried his father's remains<sup>d</sup> in Westminster Abbey, and the following year [1308] he married Isabella of France, and so formed a powerful political connection.

§ 2. The young king had already served in two campaigns against the Scots, and had acquitted himself creditably. Walter of Exeter, a poet of his father's time, when describing the siege of Caerlaverock, in the year 1300, says of him, that "he was then

Person and Character of the new King.

He and his Favorite disgraced.

bearing arms for the first time. He was of a well-proportioned and handsome person, of a courteous disposition, and intelligent, and desirous of finding an occasion to display his prowess; he managed his steed wonderfully well." He seems indeed to have behaved himself so as to give satisfaction to his stern father, who, in consequence, bestowed the principality of Wales upon him at the close of the campaign. He had now a household of his own, in which both Gaveston and De Spenser,<sup>a</sup> afterwards so well known, held office; the former, however, being the chief favorite, as nearer to the prince's age, and like him in his light, gay disposition. <sup>a</sup> § 30, p. 194.

§ 3. After a while both the prince and Gaveston fell into disgrace with the king, who at first punished them too severely, and afterwards went to the contrary extreme. Walter Langton, the Bishop of Lichfield, complained that they had broken into his park and killed his deer, when the king, without listening to anything that the prince could say, broke up his household, seized his revenues, and refused to see him, though the youth followed the court for many days from place to place, offering the most humble apologies. In this strait he found friends, not only in his sisters, who sent him money, and placed their property at his disposal, but in the queen, who, though only his stepmother, so warmly interceded for him that the king relented, restored his lands, and, as the mark of his perfect forgiveness, included Gaveston and De Spenser among the youths who were made knights along with the prince.<sup>b</sup> <sup>b</sup> § 30, p. 194. But Gaveston soon gave some fresh offence, was again banished, and the king made it one of his last requests that he should never be allowed to return.

§ 4. Unfortunately, the new king acted in opposition to this as well as the rest of his father's directions, and as this was offensive to many of his nobles, they also having sworn to see these directions observed, his reign, from its very commencement, was a scene of trouble and confusion. Though personally courageous, he was indolent, and but too well inclined to cast the cares of government on whoever would undertake them. His favorites were in reality what would now be styled his prime ministers; but the nobility had been used to the personal rule of their king, and would not have obeyed any deputy, even had he been far more able than the gay young Gascon whom they had known as a page.

§ 5. One of Edward's first steps was to recall Gaveston, whom,



## The Insolence of Gaveston.

## The Parliament and Gaveston.

even before his arrival, he created Earl of Cornwall. His next was to leave Scotland to the care of Aymer de Valence,<sup>a</sup> and to hasten back to England to meet him. The favorite at once showed that he had not forgotten any injuries that he thought he had received. The Bishop of Lichfield, who was also lord treasurer, was imprisoned, and the chancellor and several of the judges were deprived of office. The nobles remonstrated, but met only with light jests from the king, whilst Gaveston had the imprudence to give them nicknames, styling the Earl of Lancaster "the Old Hog" and "the Stage-player;" Aymer de Valence "Joseph the Jew," from his tall gaunt figure and sallow visage, and the swarthy Earl of Warwick "the Black Dog,"—insults which were never forgiven. The king, however, seemed to delight in provoking them by bestowing estates and honors on Gaveston. He gave him his own niece in marriage, with vast riches; granted him lands in every part of England, as well as in Gascony; styled him brother; and at last made him regent of the kingdom, when he went to France, in the year 1308, to marry Isabella, the daughter of Philip the Fourth. So extravagant, indeed, did the king's fondness for him appear, that it was ascribed to sorcery; and the favorite, whilst no one would accept his entertainments, or style him Earl of Cornwall, received instead the nickname of "the Witch's Son."

§ 6. The parliament assembled soon after the king's return from France, in March, 1310, when the banishment of Gaveston was insisted on. This the king agreed to, but immediately after appointed him the governor of Ireland. Here Gaveston showed both skill and courage, especially in dealing with the great Anglo-Irish lords, who were far more hostile to the royal authority than the native Irish. The independence that they had long enjoyed had made them the envy of the English nobles, and their chastisement caused Gaveston's offences to be for the time forgotten, so that he was allowed to return to England in about a year, on his offering to meet any accuser, either in the parliament or on the lists, as he was skilled in the use of arms. Neither trial was demanded, when the king, to testify his joy, granted the whole county of Cornwall to him in absolute property, and even bestowed on him a vast treasure that King Edward had bequeathed for the service of the Holy Land,<sup>b</sup> in repayment of the sums that he had seized for his French wars.

<sup>a</sup> § 20, p. 194.<sup>b</sup> § 18, p. 189.

## Strife between the King and Barons.

## Gaveston's Fate.

§ 7. This extraordinary favoritism revived all the old dislike. The barons refused to attend the king at York for a campaign against the Scots, and Gaveston had to flee for his life [August, 1310]. The parliament soon afterward met at Westminster, and, under the direction of Thomas Earl of Lancaster, the king's cousin, drew up "ordinances" for the royal household, which were especially directed against Gaveston, he having been the lord chamberlain. These the king refused to assent to. He then marched into Scotland, and wintered at Berwick, where Gaveston joined him, bringing with him some foreign mercenary troops. In the spring Gaveston penetrated beyond the Forth.

§ 8. When the king returned to London, in the summer of 1311, he left Gaveston, for safety, in Bamborough Castle. The monarch was soon forced to accept the "ordinances" of the parliament, which not only again decreed the banishment of Gaveston, but placed all the power of the State in the hands of Lancaster<sup>a</sup> and his associates. The king endured this for only a few months; and early in the next year he recalled Gaveston, who again brought some foreign soldiers with him. The hiring of these men, indeed, seems to have been his purpose on each occasion when he withdrew from England, and in it he expended much of the treasure that had been bestowed on him. It must also be remembered that he was in each case condemned without a hearing, and that he always professed his readiness to stand a legal trial.

§ 9. Both the king and the barons now took up arms, but the royal troops showed no inclination to fight for the monarch. Gaveston therefore fled, with a few of his mercenaries, to Scarborough Castle, where he was besieged, and was soon obliged to surrender. His life was promised to him, but this promise his captors did not mean to keep. They were Aymer de Valence<sup>b</sup> and Lord Percy; and though, "for their oath's sake," they would not kill him themselves, they guarded him so negligently that the Earl of Warwick was allowed to carry him off. The latter had made no promise, and saying that "The witch's son should feel the black dog's<sup>c</sup> teeth," he beheaded him in their presence, without even the form of a trial. The king, deserted by his troops, was obliged to grant a pardon to all concerned. The parliament declared that what had been done, had been done "for the king's honor," and he and his

<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 198.<sup>b</sup> § 20, p. 194.<sup>c</sup> § 5, p. 198.



## The Scots and Welsh in Arms.

## Affairs in Ireland.

cousins, Lancaster and De Valence, his brother-in-law Hereford, Percy, Warwick, and the rest, were formally reconciled [A.D. 1312], though all alike were insincere.

§ 10. Whilst the strength of the nation was wasted in these quarrels, the Scots had driven out almost every English garrison, and Stirling, the last remnant of Edward's conquests, was now besieged by them. To relieve it, all the royal tenants were summoned; but Lancaster, Warren, Warwick, and others refused to attend. Nevertheless a large army was gathered, which the king led in person to Bannockburn; but Aymer de Valence and other nobles, fearing that the king, if victorious, would prove strong enough to revenge himself on them, treacherously fled at the first onset, and in consequence the English army received a terrible defeat [June 23, 1314] from a body of Scots of not half their number.

§ 11. This ill success made Edward more unpopular than ever, though he had behaved gallantly in the battle, and Lancaster now openly took the direction of the government. In this distress the king chose another favorite, as he was termed, but more properly a minister, on whose attachment he could rely. This was Hugh de Spenser, who had been in his household along with Gaveston, and was a man well versed in war. He was also of noble family, and had many friends and relatives among the barons. He thus formed a strong party that was ready to oppose the designs of Lancaster and his associates, who manifestly aimed at reducing the king to a mere state of tutelage, if not deposing him.

§ 12. Encouraged by the success of the Scots at Bannockburn, the Welsh again took up arms and formed an alliance with them, whilst Edward Bruce (the brother of King Robert) passed into Ireland [A.D. 1315], where he was received with joy by the natives, who knew that any change of masters could not be for the worse, so tyrannically did the Anglo-Irish lords behave. The Welsh were soon put down, but Lancaster and his friends absolutely refused to march against the Scots, and it appeared afterwards that they had entered into a traitorous agreement with them. The Scots, thus unopposed, next took Berwick, and then marching into Yorkshire, they ravaged the country, when the king narrowly escaped capture.

§ 13. The next year [A.D. 1319], through the activity of De Spenser, he gathered an army, at the head of which he marched

A General Reconciliation.

The De Spensers.

Civil War.

into Scotland and besieged Berwick, but was unable to retake it. In the mean time the Scots had been defeated in Ireland, and their leader killed [A.D. 1318]; and a parliament had been held in England, when the different parties were formally reconciled, neither being strong enough to put down the other. So a compromise was agreed to. De Spenser retained his office as lord chamberlain, but Lancaster was placed at the head of a council of sixteen appointed to "assist the king." This was followed by a two years' truce with the Scots, and before that had expired a total change had taken place, which gave, for a while, the government into the hands of De Spenser.

§ 14. The Lord Chamberlain had received in marriage Eleanor de Clare, a niece of the king, between whom and her sister (the widow of Gaveston) the great estates of the Earl of Gloucester, who was killed at Bannockburn,<sup>a</sup> had been divided.

<sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 200.

De Spenser's share included a large part of South Wales, and a quarrel arose about their boundaries between him and the Earl of Hereford. Though the earl was the king's brother-in-law, he was an adherent of the Earl of Lancaster, and without ever attempting to settle the matter peaceably, the two earls ravaged De Spenser's lands, and then, marching to London, held a parliament on their own authority. Then the favorite and his father were banished [A.D. 1321], the king having no power to assist them, though the bishops solemnly protested against their being condemned unheard, and in their absence; for the elder lord was then at his post as Governor of Bristol, and his son was at sea, guarding the coasts. Their banishment was attended by the seizure of their property, but young De Spenser repaid himself for his forfeited lands by making many rich captures. He soon returned, bringing with him foreign cross-bowmen, to whom the king joined himself [A.D. 1322], when the estates of the barons were ravaged in turn.

§ 15. The two earls now applied to the Scots for assistance, and marched to the north to meet their allies. They were followed by the king, after pardon had been offered, and being overtaken at Boroughbridge, were there totally defeated. The Earl of Hereford was killed in the battle, and Lancaster, being taken prisoner, was tried by a court-martial and beheaded at Pontefract. Several other noble prisoners were also executed; but Roger Mortimer, one of the most considerable of them, had his sentence commuted to



Fate of the King's Steward.

A Traitor.

The Queen's Perfidy.

perpetual imprisonment. Many of the forfeited estates were given to the De Spensers, the elder being also created Earl of Winchester.

§ 16. Among those executed was "the rich Lord Badlesmere," a Kentish noble, who was treated with peculiar ignominy. He had been the king's steward, and greatly trusted, but had betrayed his counsels to the earls; and his wife had refused to admit the queen, when on a journey, into Leeds Castle, near Maidstone, of which her husband was the keeper. He was taken whilst endeavoring to escape, and, instead of beheading him at once, like a noble, the sentence, as it still stands recorded, was, that "the said Bartholomew should be drawn on a sledge to the gallows for his treasons, be hanged for his robberies and murders, and have his head cut off with a knife for his flight from the field." He was accordingly taken into Kent and hanged on his own land, and his head was set over the gate of Canterbury, "as a warning to others." His wife and family were also imprisoned in the Tower. This extreme severity was probably due to the angry queen, as Edward himself never showed such revengeful feelings.

§ 17. The Lancastrian party being thus crushed, the king led an army into Scotland, but he could effect nothing of moment, one of his trusted servants, Andrew Harcla, the warden of the west marches, being in league with the Scots, for which he was shortly after executed. His treachery showed that it was not advisable to attempt to carry on the war, and a truce followed in 1323. This had hardly been concluded when Roger Mortimer escaped from the Tower, after a year's imprisonment, and fled to France, and others of the party began again to ravage the De Spensers' lands. Soon after this the King of France died, and Edward was summoned to do homage to his successor. Fearing the overthrow of his authority if he left England, he delayed compliance, on which the French at once invaded Gascony. At length he was so

ill-advised as to send his queen (a French princess<sup>a</sup>)  
<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 196.

as a mediator, a step which speedily brought about his ruin. She soon came to an understanding with her brother, Charles IV., in virtue of which she sent for her eldest son, Edward, to do the required homage. Then she refused to return until the De Spensers were banished. Roger Mortimer became her avowed counsellor and favorite; the chiefs of the Lancastrian party flocked to her, and even the Earl of Kent, the king's half-brother, joined the train, in the year 1325.

The Queen a Rebel and Traitor in arms.

A Revolution.

§ 18. Acting quite like an independent queen, Isabella contracted her son in marriage (though only in his fourteenth year) to Philippa, the daughter of the Count of Holland, and obtained from him a body of Flemish troops, commanded by his brother, for the invasion of England. On landing in Suffolk [A.D. 1326] she was joined by the great body of the people, and the king found himself obliged to flee without striking a blow. The Bishop of Exeter, his treasurer, was seized in London, and beheaded without form of trial, and Robert Baldock, the chancellor, was thrown into Newgate, where he died soon after.

§ 19. The queen and her partisans had pursued the king towards Wales, but halted at Bristol, where the elder De Spenser was delivered up by his garrison, and was hanged. The younger De Spenser escaped with the king, intending to take refuge in Lundy Island, which was his property, and which he, in anticipation of trouble, had strongly fortified, and provided with all necessary stores to stand a siege. But the weather was tempestuous (it was in November), the fugitives were unable to land on the rocky islet, and, after beating about for some days, were driven on the coast of Glamorgan. They took refuge in Neath Abbey, but though the town was De Spenser's own, and had, at his instance, received many privileges from the king, not an arm was raised in their defence, and they were in a few days obliged to surrender at discretion. The king was hurried off to Kenilworth, where he was placed in the custody of Henry Earl of Lancaster, the brother of him who was beheaded at Pontefract; De Spenser was taken to the queen at Hereford, and by her order at once hanged, his head being sent to London, as his father's had been to Winchester. The Earl of Arundel, who almost alone of the nobles had adhered to the king, was also seized and executed. As a matter of course the vast properties of the sufferers were seized, but much of it was restored in the next reign.

§ 20. With these executions the revolution was in reality completed, but as the actors chose to have legal sanction for what they had done, a parliament was assembled on the 7th of January, 1327, which declared the king deposed, and ordered his eldest son to be proclaimed in his stead. Young Edward, however, refused to accept the royal dignity without his father's consent, and accordingly two bishops and several barons were sent to Kenilworth to require the royal prisoner to resign his throne. He simply replied



Accession of Edward the Third.

Murder of Edward the Second.

that he was in their power, and must submit to whatever they chose. This answer was taken as sufficient to remove the new king's scruples, and Edward the Second was nominally succeeded by his son, though for some years the real power remained in the hands of the shameless queen—the “She-Wolf of France”—and her paramour Mortimer,<sup>a</sup> who forsook his wife and family to reside with her.

<sup>a</sup> § 15, p. 201.

§ 21. So after a troubled reign of somewhat less than twenty years, Edward of Carnarvon, as he was surnamed, was deprived of his throne. After a short time he was removed from Kenilworth, where the Earl of Lancaster treated him with kindness, and was taken to Corfe Castle. Thence he was removed to Bristol, and finally to Berkeley by ruffians, who appear to have desired to kill him with hardships and ill-usage, without actually dipping their hands in his blood. But he showed a strength both of body and mind that made this seem too slow a process, and therefore, on the 21st of September, 1327, whilst the young king was engaged in an inglorious campaign against the Scots, they put his father to death by horrible means that left no outward marks of violence. The murdered king was buried at Gloucester, where his very beautiful tomb still remains.

§ 22. Both the reign and the character of Edward are commonly misunderstood. Unlike his father, he readily pardoned offenders, such as Edward the First would not have suffered to live; and he seems never to have been guilty of the extortions and oppressions that marked the preceding reign. All the charges that his disaffected nobles brought against him only amount to this—that he did not keep over them the stern control to which they had been accustomed, and that he was profuse in rewarding the few whom he felt he could trust. The idea that Lancaster and his associates had any other view than personal aggrandizement and revenge, is contradicted by all their acts, which were as clearly unlawful when they banished his ministers with-

out a hearing,<sup>b</sup> as when they murdered them without a trial.

<sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 201.

§ 23. A remarkable event in the reign of Edward was the suppression of the Order of Knights Templars, a piece of cruel injustice in which the Pope and most of the sovereigns of Europe joined. These knights had a very humble beginning, in the year 1118, when nine poor crusaders took upon themselves the obliga-

## The Order of the Knights Templars Suppressed.

tion of protecting the faithful at Jerusalem. They had now obtained immense wealth and power. Their association included men of the noblest birth—natives of every Christian country. Their valor in battle, their wisdom in council, had long been the admiration of the world.

§ 24. After the loss of the Holy Land the Templars forfeited much of their consideration, for they did not, like the Hospitalers or Knights of St. John, secure an establishment in the East—a real or fanciful bulwark to Christendom against the Moham-medans. The most odious charges were brought against them ; but the real cause of their persecution was the covetousness of the monarchs who wanted their great wealth, and seized it. In France many of these knights were burnt alive. In England, where Almene, the master of the English Templars, stood side by side with the barons at Runnymede,<sup>a</sup> an advocate of the nation's liberties, they were only imprisoned, and after a time they were placed in different monasteries. The Pope, in the year 1312, ordered their suppression, saying that he did not do this as pronouncing a judgment on their guilt, but merely as a matter of expediency. Their property he directed to be given over to the rival order of the Hospitallers, but this was only partially done, much of it being retained by the kings or their courtiers, who had enjoyed it for several years whilst the matter was being investigated, and would not part with it when it was decided.

---

CHAPTER VIII.

## REIGN OF EDWARD THE THIRD. [A.D. 1327 TO 1377.]

§ 1. EDWARD the Third, surnamed “of Windsor,” as we have observed, was only a little more than fourteen years of age when, on the 7th of January, 1327, he was proclaimed king on the deposition of his father.<sup>b</sup> Parliament appointed a regency composed of noblemen, lay and ecclesiastical ; and the Earl of Lancaster was chosen to be the guardian and protector of the king's person. A year later Edward was



Conduct of the Queen Mother and her Paramour.

Their Fall.

married [January 24, 1328] to Philippa of Hainault, who proved to be an excellent and loving wife.

§ 2. The first three years of the reign of Edward of Windsor were crowded with cruel and disgraceful events, for which he was not responsible. Although a regency was formed, it was merely a pretence, as Queen Isabella and Mortimer<sup>a</sup> guided everything at their will. First, the deposed king was put to death; next a peace was made with the Scots, when the English claims were abandoned for a sum of money, and a marriage was contracted between King Robert's son, David, and Joan of the Tower, Isabella's youngest daughter, both children of tender years; and lastly the Earl of Kent was induced to believe that his brother was still alive. He had before this shown his discontent with the revolution that he had helped to bring about, and he was now condemned and executed.

§ 3. Meanwhile Mortimer was growing daily more and more unpopular. He had divided with the queen the forfeited estates of his opponents and the money he obtained from the Scots. He also received the title of Earl of March, and he appeared in public with kingly state. He even treated the young king with haughtiness, and became unbearably insolent to the nobles. In consequence a confederacy was at last formed against him. He was seized in Nottingham Castle and hurried to London, where he was imprisoned in the Tower. Soon afterward he was brought before the parliament, condemned unheard, as the De Spencers had been four years before, on the plea that his offences were too notorious to need proof, and was hanged at "The Elms," on the 29th of November, 1330. The queen mother was at least equally guilty, but her life was spared. She was sent to reside at Castle Rising, in Norfolk, as a prisoner; but as years wore on (she survived until 1357), the restrictions were relaxed, and she was only kept in what was termed "free custody," which allowed her to move about from one royal manor to another. The king, her son, paid her a visit of ceremony every year.

§ 4. Whilst Edward was still under tutelage, his uncle, Charles the Fourth of France, died, and, unfortunately for both England and France, a claim on the crown was made for him in right of his mother, although, according to French law, no such claim could exist, the succession, by the Salic law, being limited to males. The States of the kingdom therefore passed it over, and

War against France.

War in Scotland.

A weak King.

bestowed the crown on Philip of Valois, the cousin of their late king. Edward gave way for the time, but afterwards urged his claim by force of arms, and thus gave rise to a period of misery and bloodshed which the French historians justly speak of as the Hundred Years' War. There were several instances of truce, but these were ill observed, and the contest was not really closed until the time of Henry the Sixth.

§ 5. King Robert of Scotland died soon after the treaty already mentioned,<sup>a</sup> and the crown devolved on his son David, a child of only seven years of age. The Earl of Douglas acted as regent. One condition of the treaty was, that knights and nobles whose Scottish lands had been forfeited in consequence of their adherence to the English cause should have them restored. This, however, the regent neglected to do, and in consequence Edward Baliol, the son of King John, applied to King Edward for redress. Several English nobles who were similarly placed joined with him; and when the king declined to engage in a new war for their sakes, they took the matter into their own hands. Collecting a body of about 2,000 men, the "querellours," as they were termed, sailed from the Humber, in the summer of 1332, and a few days afterward landed at Kinghorn, in Fifeshire. They marched at once to Perth, surprising and defeating a much larger body of Scots, whilst their ships gave an equally decisive overthrow to the Scottish fleet. In another month Baliol was crowned king at Scone, when he executed a charter declaring his feudal dependence on England. But before the year closed, he, in turn, was surprised and defeated, and had to flee for his life. He had won and lost a kingdom in the course of five months.

§ 6. The Scots followed up their triumph by an inroad upon England, and the king was thus forced into war. He marched into Scotland [A.D. 1333], besieged Berwick, and defeated and killed Douglas, the regent, who attempted to relieve it, at Hali-don Hill. The town then surrendered, when Baliol was again acknowledged as king, and Edward retired. But Baliol's royalty was as fleeting as before. To repay Edward's services, he granted to him all Scotland south of the Forth. This step united the whole nation against him, and he was speedily obliged to flee for safety to Berwick. Here he was soon joined by Edward, and for the three following years [A.D. 1335–1337] they overran the country,

<sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 206.



## Contemplated War with France.

## German and Flemish Allies.

penetrating even as far as Inverness; but they could never again procure even a nominal submission to the vassal king, who had tried to dismember his country.

§ 7. Edward at last got tired of this profitless war, and determined to carry his arms against the King of France, who had not only assisted the Scots with men and money, but maintained their young king and queen at his court. In furtherance of this object, his first step was to gain the support of the Flemings, who were then bitter enemies of France, their count, whom they had expelled, having been lately restored by his sovereign lord, the French king. He bought the aid of Jacob van Arteveldt, a brewer of Ghent, one of the popular leaders, and who exercised almost unbounded sway over his countrymen. He was in possession of more than sovereign authority, which he exercised with great wisdom. Edward hoped by his means to obtain Flanders for his eldest son, if he could not gain the crown of France for himself. To meet some pretended scruples of the Flemings, he took the title of King of France in 1337, but he did not assume the arms of that kingdom until three years after, when, also, he took the motto, "Dieu et mon Droit"—God and my Right—which the British sovereigns retain at the present day, though the claim to which it refers has long been abandoned. Being plentifully furnished with money he made an alliance with Louis, Emperor of Germany, who in return named him Vicar of the Empire. He also took into his pay some of the minor German princes, but none of them were of any real service to him. On the other hand, the King of France called on his vassals, the dukes of Brittany and Burgundy, and hired Scottish spearmen and Genoese cross-bowmen and Spanish mariners. The latter were the people of Biscay and Catalonia, hardy seamen, who hired out themselves and their ships, and were formidable opponents to the English navy. He also obtained the services of John of Luxembourg, who was also King of Bohemia, and a renowned military commander.

§ 8. When all was ready, Edward passed over to Flanders [A.D. 1338], taking his queen and her court with him. The French opened the war by attacking Southampton, and Edward retaliated by ravaging the north of France; but his Flemish allies refused to leave their own cities, and the Germans quitted his army as soon as his treasure was exhausted. He went back to England to collect a fresh army, and in the mean time a powerful French fleet

Great Naval Battle.

France ravaged.

Truce and War.

put to sea, captured several large English ships, and then stationed themselves in the harbor of Sluys. Edward, when about to return to Flanders, heard of the loss of his ships, among which was one called the *Christopher*, in which he had before crossed the sea, and he considered it a point of honor to retake it. Accordingly, though his fleet was much the smallest, he sailed from Ipswich, and on the 24th of June, 1340, he came up with the enemy. In the very front of their line he found the *Christopher*, filled with Genoese cross-bowmen, as were several other English prizes, the sight of which excited him, his nobles, and his men almost to madness, and all vowed to recapture them or perish.

§ 9. The French ships were chained together, but, by standing a short distance out to sea, the English induced them to separate, and then turning on them, a desperate hand-to-hand fight ensued, which lasted all through the night, and ended in the total defeat of the French, with terrible slaughter. This was the greatest overthrow that the French navy had received since the time of King John,<sup>a</sup> and so decisive was it, that it took no further part in the war for full thirty years, and then only because the French had succeeded in obtaining aid from Spain. After this victory Edward again ravaged the French border, and also defied the king to single combat, styling him only Philip of Valois; but Philip declined to notice the challenge, and a truce for a year followed, which was afterwards prolonged for another year.

§ 10. But before this second period had expired, the Duke of Brittany died [A.D. 1341], and two claimants for the duchy appeared. One was Charles of Blois, the nephew of the King of France, and the other was John de Montfort, the late duke's half-brother. The King of France supported Charles, and Edward took part with John. At first Charles was successful, and Jane, the wife of his rival, was besieged by him in the castle of Hennebon. She was almost reduced to despair, when she was relieved by a body of English troops led by Sir Walter Manny. Edward followed soon after, but another truce was agreed on. This was badly kept by the French, and the war soon broke out again. That was in the year 1344.

§ 11. The Earl of Derby (afterwards Duke of Lancaster, whose daughter the king's son, John of Ghent, or Gaunt, married, and received the duke's title) marched into France from Guienne, and,

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 154.



Battle of Crecy.

The Scotch and their King.

Surrender of Calais.

some time after, Edward landed in Normandy, and ravaged the country almost to the gates of Paris. As the natural result, provisions failed him, and he found himself obliged to retreat. He wished to reach the north of France, but he was on the south side of the Seine, and wherever he marched he found the bridges broken down. At length he succeeded in repairing the bridge at Poissy, and passed over, but a greatly superior French army followed his steps, when he halted at Crecy, near Abbeville, and determined to risk a battle. One soon followed [August 26, 1346], when the French again received as great a defeat as at

Sluys.<sup>a</sup> Edward, however, was too weak to follow up his advantage. Instead, he continued his retreat;

but on arriving on the sea-coast he laid siege to Calais, which he determined, if possible, to capture, as affording, from its position opposite to Dover, a convenient post for the invasion of France at any future time.

§ 12. Whilst Edward was engaged at this siege, the Scots had invaded England; but an army got together by Queen Philippa totally defeated them at Neville's Cross, near Durham, when David the Second (who was Edward's brother-in-law) was taken prisoner. He had not long before returned from a ten years' exile in France, and he now endured even a longer imprisonment in England. His captivity, however, was light, and having no children of his own, he endeavored to secure the crown of Scotland for his nephew, Lionel of Antwerp, but the Scots absolutely refused to listen to the proposal. Lionel and John of Gaunt, or Ghent, were sons of Edward and Philippa, and were born in the respective cities which formed their surnames.

§ 13. After a siege of eleven months Calais surrendered, when the inhabitants were removed, and the place was peopled by English. Froissart's story that Eustace de St. Pierre and six other burgesses offered their lives for the pardon of the rest, but were set free on the intercession of Queen Philippa, seems to be a fable; but it is valuable as a proof of the kindness of heart that she possessed. The French attempted to regain Calais by treachery in 1349, but being foiled by the sudden arrival of the king, they gave up the contest as hopeless, and, though sometimes threatened, it was never seriously assailed by them until the Duke de Guise captured it in the reign of Queen Mary, more than 200 years afterwards. It was, indeed, regarded as "the key of France," and was quite as

Naval Battle.

War in France.

A bad Son-in-law.

jealously guarded as "the Lock and Key of England," Dover.<sup>a</sup> Not even the confusions of the War of the Roses could occasion any neglect of Calais; and the heavy charge that it brought on the royal treasury was always cheerfully borne.

§ 14. For several years after the capture of Calais the war was mainly confined to Brittany; but in 1350 a great naval battle was fought with the Spaniards off Winchelsea, where the king commanded in person, and gained a complete victory. The Spanish fleet, which consisted of forty large vessels, had entered the Straits of Dover, and the king lay at Winchelsea, with his wife and his court, to await their return. Becoming impatient, he hurried on board, taking with him his sons Edward and John (the latter a lad of only ten years), and 400 of his bravest knights; and to amuse the sailors, he made his minstrels and his nobles sing and dance with them. At last, after three days' watching, the Spaniards appeared. The king at once assailed them; and though his ship received so much damage that it soon sunk, he boarded his opponent and captured it. Prince Edward's ship also was sunk, but he and his men were saved by his cousin, the Earl of Derby.<sup>b</sup> The fight lasted until night, when twenty-six of the Spanish ships being captured, and most of the rest destroyed, the English returned to land, and Edward, justly proud of his navy, took the title of "King of the Sea."

§ 15. The war continued in Brittany, but with such rapid changes of fortune that at length, in 1353, Edward offered to resign all claim to the French crown on having Guienne and Calais secured to him; but to this the King of France would not consent. Charles, King of Navarre, who is justly known as "Charles the Bad," now mixed in the quarrel, and the war broke out more fiercely than before. Charles was son-in-law of King John the Good, of France; but this did not hinder his aiming, at least, at partitioning his father-in-law's kingdom. Among his subjects were the renowned Biscayans, and by means of their ships he gained possession of several of the French seaports. One of these, Cherbourg, he strongly fortified, and then sold it to the English, as he also did his support to the rival claimants, betraying them all in turn. The king made an inroad in the north of France at the same time that his son, Edward the Black Prince, marched unopposed across the south, from Bordeaux to Narbonne.

<sup>a</sup> § 20, p. 161.<sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 209.



Battle of Poitiers.

English Victories.

Ravages by Peasants.

§ 16. The following year [1356] saw a worse calamity befall the French. Entertaining apparently too great contempt for his enemies, the Black Prince (as Edward's son, Edward, was called from the color of his armor) marched northward, with the intent

of joining his cousin Derby, now Duke of Lancaster,<sup>a</sup>  
<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 209. who was to advance from Normandy. But the

country was so desolated already, that Lancaster was obliged to give up his part of the scheme. At last the Black Prince found himself at Poitiers, a full hundred miles from his own States, absolutely without provisions, and hemmed in by an army of five times his own number. In these circumstances he offered to give up an immense booty that he had gained, and to engage not to serve against the French for seven years. But they, reckoning the English at their mercy, insisted that the prince himself and one hundred of his knights should become their prisoners, intending to propose to exchange them for Calais. The prince and his men preferred to try the chance of a battle, and the event justified them. They placed themselves behind intrenchments which they had hastily thrown up in the night, and the French, attacking them with headlong valor, but with no regard to the rules of war, were in a short time utterly defeated [Sept. 19th, 1356], and that

too with even greater loss than at Crecy.<sup>b</sup> King John  
<sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 209. of France and his young son Philip were taken

prisoners after nearly losing their lives in the fight. They met with the most courteous treatment both from the Black Prince and King Edward, but very hard terms were demanded for their release; and King John, not being able to fulfil them, died a captive in London.

§ 17. Though the battle of Poitiers was followed by a truce, this brought no relief to France. Almost every noble was now dead or a captive, and the peasantry took the opportunity to revenge many wrongs that had been inflicted by their lords. Leaguings together in bands under leaders who all bore the assumed name of "Goodman James" (*Jacques Bonhomme*), they committed the most hideous atrocities, burning castles and towns, and murdering women, children, and priests. Nor was the commotion suppressed until the English took arms against them. Then Charles the Bad claimed the crown of France, and Edward, after besieging Rheims in vain, made use of him to impose most humiliating terms of peace. By this, which is known as the

Edward the Black Prince.

Du Guesclin.

War renewed.

peace of Bretigny [A.D. 1360], Edward, after all his victories, abandoned his claim to the crown of France, but, for a time, effected a partition of the kingdom; Guienne, Poitou, Ponthieu, and a district around Calais being ceded to him, free from all feudal subjection. A vast sum—3,000,000 of golden crowns—was also to be paid for the ransom of the French king; but the impoverished land could not supply it, and, as before stated, he died a prisoner. Guienne and Poitou were erected into a State, called the Duchy of Aquitaine, which was bestowed on the Black Prince. He kept his court as a sovereign at Bordeaux, and there his son Richard was born.

§ 18. Thus the war with France, which, including some intervals of truce that were but badly observed, had now lasted more than twenty years, was brought to a close. But France itself was not to know peace, neither were the English conquests secure. Thousands of soldiers, who now found their old occupation gone, and cared not to turn to any other, formed themselves into what they termed “free companies,” and filled France with robbery and murder from one end to the other. At last a famous Breton knight, named Bertrand du Guésclin (who became Constable of France), led them away into Spain, where they drove Peter the Cruel from his throne in 1365. Peter found a champion in Edward the Black Prince, who restored him, and also captured Du Guesclin; but his expedition brought about the loss of the greater part of the English conquests. Peter refused to pay the expenses of his restorer, and the prince, who had incurred heavy debts on his account, called upon his subjects for their aid. This they absolutely refused, saying that the war had not been undertaken either for their benefit or with their consent; and when the prince threatened them with his anger, they appealed to their former lord, the king of France. He (Charles the Fifth), though all feudal supremacy had been formally renounced, summoned the prince to Paris to answer for his conduct. The prince replied that he would come, but it should be at the head of an army; and accordingly the war once more broke out, in the year 1369.

§ 19. By the advice of his parliament, Edward now resumed the title of King of France, which he had laid aside since the peace of Bretigny.<sup>a</sup> But he was no longer fit to take the field, and everything was in favor of the French.

<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 212.

The latter entered the English provinces, where the inhabitants re-



Cruelty of the English.

Affairs in France.

King Edward's Death.

ceived them joyfully; and the Black Prince, who had lost his health in his Spanish expedition, was no more able successfully to oppose them. Unfortunately for his fame, he recaptured Limoges, which had welcomed a French garrison, and barbarously put all the inhabitants to the sword. But this did not avail. The English lost ground day by day. De Montfort was driven out of Brittany, and the Earl of Pembroke, the king's son-in-law, was defeated and made prisoner at sea.

§ 20. The aged king attempted a new invasion of France, but was forced back by bad weather, and Edward his son, the victor of Poitiers,<sup>a</sup> came to England to die. He lingered  
<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 212. for nearly four years, and during that time almost every place that he had conquered was retaken, Du Guesclin being a chief actor therein. The good Queen Philippa died some years before her son, and his father survived him only a single year. But the interval between his queen's death and his own saw the king fall into the hands of unworthy favorites, who oppressed his people. His sons quarrelled with each other as to who should conduct the government, and almost his last hours were embittered by a fierce dispute in his presence between John Duke of Lancaster<sup>b</sup> and some London citizens, which promised  
<sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 209. ill for the reign of his grandson, Richard of Bordeaux,<sup>c</sup> a child of eleven years of age. At last, Alice Perrers, a worthless woman who had brought discredit on the king's latter years, seeing the hand of death upon him, plucked the rings from his fingers, and left him to die without a single attendant. A priest, unsent for, found him, prayed with him, and closed his eyes. His death occurred at Shene (now called Richmond), on the 21st of June, 1377.

§ 21. King Edward is described as having enjoyed the regard of his people all through his long reign. He was remarkable for his skill in all knightly exercises, and delighted in tournaments, in which he often bore a part, though usually in disguise; and, unlike his predecessors, he took great pains to gain and keep the goodwill of the Londoners. On one occasion he invited them to a tournament, when he appeared as Lord Mayor, his sons Edward and Lionel as the sheriffs, and John and Thomas and several young nobles as aldermen. To a prince who thus flattered them, they never refused a loan or a subsidy. Although so much of his time was passed in war, he was a comparatively learned man, who

Edward's Character and Power.

A Revolution.

Ravages of Plagues.

spoke and wrote Latin and German, which proved very serviceable to him in his foreign wars and negotiations. Like his ancestors, he had often to confirm Magna Charta<sup>a</sup> as the price of a grant; but the law in his time began to be administered in English, the disuse of the Anglo-Norman French enabling the people to understand the language of the courts of law. That in itself was a considerable guarantee against oppression.

<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 160.

§ 22. The war with France, which occupied so large a part of Edward's reign, left him little beyond the empty title of king; but the result to his subjects was very different. In return for the money that they granted, he was obliged to concede so many valuable privileges that a revolution in government was effected, which was not the less real for being conducted without violence. In earlier times the burgesses had only to make grants, and humbly to petition for the redress of some very flagrant grievance; but before the close of Edward's reign their position as one of the constituent parts of the State as represented by parliament, whose consent was necessary to every enactment, was almost as fully recognized as at present. His connection with the Flemings, then the great commercial and manufacturing people of Europe, led him to bring the clothing trade to England, and from this, and the commerce to which it gave rise, soon sprang an opulent middle class that eventually became powerful enough to modify the purely warlike policy of former ages, and to cause peaceful pursuits to be preferred to mere aggressive wars like his, which sought to bring under one rule two nations that had really little in common, and whose union could not be other than disastrous to both.

§ 23. The calamities of war were terribly aggravated, on three several occasions during Edward's reign, by plagues which ravaged most parts of Europe, but were especially fatal in England in the years 1349, 1361, 1362, and 1369. The first took its rise in the heart of China, swept across the great desert of Cobi and the wilds of Tartary, and made its way to Europe through the Levant, Egypt, and Greece. It appeared in London in November, 1348. These plagues are recorded by chroniclers as the First, the Second, and the Third Great Pestilences; and such a deep impression did they leave on the minds of the people that charters and other documents were long after dated from them. So great was the number of dead that the churchyards could not contain them,



Dislike of the Papal Power.

Wickliffe.

Lollards.

Edward's Sons.

and fresh burial-grounds had to be provided. To these a monastery was often added, and two of the most famous religious houses in London thus originated. These were the Charter-House, founded

<sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 209. just beyond the city walls by Sir Walter Manny,<sup>a</sup> a renowned soldier, and the Abbey of St. Mary Grace, near the Tower, which the king built in a cemetery provided by John Corey, a London citizen. It is said that one-half of the population of London was swept away. On the Continent, cities and villages were depopulated.

§ 24. One remarkable feature of Edward's reign was the growing dislike to the abuses of the papal power, and several statutes were passed to repress them. This was incident to the great intellectual awakening then in progress. The power that had been long exercised of placing foreigners in English benefices had been loudly complained of before, but it was now considered dangerous, as the Popes no longer resided in independence at Rome, but held their court at Avignon, under the control of the Kings of France. Therefore in 1351 and 1353 these "provisions" (as they were termed) were forbidden, and any one who appealed to the Pope's courts was subjected to heavy punishment.

§ 25. At about the same time John Wickliffe, a preacher at Oxford, published a book called "The Last Age of the Church," in which he inveighed loudly against the avarice of the papal court, denounced the clergy as too often scandalous in their lives, and asserted that the civil magistrate, and not the Pope, ought to be the supreme ruler in all matters. He was denounced as a heretic, but he gained many followers, who, under the name of Lollards, caused much confusion in after days. They went beyond their master, for they disclaimed the power of the magistrate altogether, and held other doctrines which were regarded as incompatible with the safety of the State. They were often severely punished, but they continued to exist until the Reformation, when their name was lost. Wickliffe has been called the "Morning-star of the Reformation." He translated the Bible into the English tongue, and in various ways administered to the spiritual wants of the people.

§ 26. Of the king's sons all (except Edmund of Langley) who lived to manhood were marked by energy and talent.  
<sup>b</sup> § 16, p. 212. Edward, the eldest, better known as the Black Prince,<sup>b</sup> has been handed down by the chroniclers as the "mir-

Chivalry.

Prominent Characters.

King Richard and John of Gaunt.

ror of chivalry," and no doubt he was so, when kings, or nobles, or ladies were concerned; but his "gentle pity," which they praise, went no lower, as his unwilling subjects of Guienne experienced. In fact chivalry never stooped to do good to the "common people"—the "low-born." It was thoroughly aristocratic in practice, and looked with contempt upon all below the nobility. Lionel of Antwerp,<sup>a</sup> the ancestor of the House of York, was twice lieutenant of Ireland, and the Statutes of Kilkenny, which were intended to reduce the Anglo-English lords to obedience, were enacted in his time. John, whose son Henry became king, succeeded his brother Edward in the government of Aquitaine,<sup>b</sup> marching unopposed through France to reach it. Through his marriage with the daughter of Peter the Cruel of Spain, he laid claim to the crown of Castile, but was defeated in his efforts to obtain it. Thomas, as Earl of Buckingham and Duke of Gloucester, was a very prominent character in the reign of his nephew, Richard II. Edmund of Langley, who was created Duke of York, was only remarkable for having been left regent of the kingdom on Richard's last visit to Ireland, and the readiness with which he abandoned his trust to join the party of Henry of Lancaster.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### REIGN OF RICHARD THE SECOND. [A.D. 1377 TO 1399.]

§ 1. THE reign of Richard of Bordeaux<sup>c</sup> was begun on the 23d of June, 1377, the day after his grandfather's death; and on the 16th of July he was crowned at Westminster Abbey. He was then a little more than eleven years of age. The coronation ceremony was unusually splendid, and the poor boy was so exhausted by it that he had to be carried on a litter to his apartment. The most abject adulation followed, from bishops and barons.

§ 2. During the latter years of the reign of Edward III. the government was in the hands of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster,<sup>d</sup> a man of great talent, but very unpopular. In right of his wife, Constance, the daughter of



Lancaster's Assumptions.

Quarrels.

The English Navy.

Peter the Cruel, he styled himself "John King of Castile and Leon," and he was, beside, suspected of aiming at the English crown, to the prejudice of his young nephew, Richard of Bordeaux. His proceedings were strongly opposed by the chancellor, William of Wykeham, Bishop of Winchester, and by Sir Peter de la Mare, a Herefordshire knight, who possessed so much influence in the parliament that he is usually regarded as the first Speaker of the House of Commons. The duke, however, proved too strong for them, deprived the bishop of both office and goods, and imprisoned the knight in one of the royal castles. But these steps were deeply resented by many, and by none more than by the citizens of London, who had now grown so wealthy by their commerce that they formed, in reality, an independent power, whose support was eagerly sought by all parties. Hence, when they waited on the young prince to acknowledge him as king, the haughty Lancaster consented to seek a reconciliation with them, hoping through this to be appointed regent.

§ 3. But the distrust of the wily duke by the people was universal and deep, and in this feeling the parliament fully shared; therefore the government was committed to a council of nine persons, at the head of which was Courtenay, Bishop of London, who had been personally insulted by the duke in his own cathedral when examining Wickliffe on a charge of heresy. Lancaster loudly complained of the slight, and challenged an inquiry into his past conduct; but as this was disregarded, he professed to withdraw from all concern in public affairs. He, however, gained over some members of the council to his views, and their contentions with their colleagues led to a shameful neglect of the defence of the kingdom. In this extremity one of the citizens of London took the bold step of fitting out a fleet of his own to cruise against pirates, a certain proof of the weakness of the government.

§ 4. As the conquests of Edward the Third and his son were almost all lost before their deaths, so the naval power of England now gave way to that of France. In 1372 an English fleet, whilst attempting to relieve Rochelle, was totally defeated, and its commander, the Earl of Pembroke,<sup>a</sup> taken prisoner.

<sup>a</sup> § 19, p. 213. Though he was the king's son-in-law, he was allowed to die a captive in the hands of the French. At length, just after the accession of Richard, England in turn was exposed to invasion.

A Patriotic Citizen.

The French Army.

The English in France.

§ 5. The French had now fully recovered their power at sea, and having the Spaniards and Scots in league with them, they not only captured many English ships, but ravaged the Isle of Wight and burnt almost every seaport town between Plymouth and Rye. Then it was that John Philpot, an alderman of London,<sup>a</sup> fitted out several ships at his own cost, and captured Mercer, a Scottish pirate; but he was called before the council, and severely censured for having acted thus before he had obtained lawful authority. He replied, with spirit, that he had not sent his ships and men to the danger of the seas to win for himself the praise of chivalry, but to do what he might to save his country from the ruin which their neglect of the navy threatened to bring about. "To this reproach," says the chronicler, "they had nothing to answer, for they knew that they were more intent on quarrelling among themselves than on the public good;" and so much were they distrusted by the parliament that the funds granted to fit out a fleet were placed, not in their hands, but under the management of Philpot and another citizen, William Walworth.

<sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 218.

§ 6. The fleet thus equipped captured Brest; and Cherbourg was delivered to them by Charles the Bad. The French navy, however, was still far the most powerful, and in revenge they ravaged the southern coast of England, and, sailing up the Thames, burnt Gravesend. On the other hand, the Earl of Buckingham (the king's uncle) marched through France from Calais to Brittany, but he was very coldly received by the Duke, who soon afterward made his submission to the King of France. On this the English troops returned greatly dissatisfied, and clamorous for their pay. To raise the necessary sum a most unjust scheme was resorted to, and the consequence was the formidable rising of the common people which bears the name of Wat Tyler's rebellion.

§ 7. This scheme was the imposition of a poll-tax of three groats (equal to at least fifteen shillings at the present day) on rich and poor alike, if above the age of fifteen. Quite as heavy taxes had been paid in the preceding reign without a murmur, as they were only imposed on the comparatively wealthy landlords and merchants. The latter usually gained some valuable privilege in exchange, and the former class could and did, under the feudal system, repay themselves by exactions from their tenants. These,



A Poll-tax resisted.

An Outrage.

Wat Tyler's Rebellion.

the "poor commons," as they styled themselves—the villeins or villani<sup>a</sup>—unless they fled from their holdings and gained the shelter of some borough town, were little better than slaves.<sup>1</sup>

§ 8. Long before the breaking out of the insurrection here alluded to, these "poor commons" had begun to form associations for making a united stand against too grievous oppression. Though these associations were prohibited by the parliament they were not suppressed, and many of the landowners found it to their advantage to sell certain privileges to their villeins, in the same way as the kings sold privileges to the towns. And so it came about that there were now found men, banded together all over the country, who at once resolved to oppose so iniquitous a scheme as this poll-tax, which they regarded as expressly devised to spare the wealthy.

§ 9. The effect was soon seen. Though the rich paid the small sum asked of them, the poor refused; and as the money was urgently wanted for the soldiers, the council unwisely took a loan from some foreign merchants, and intrusted them with the collection. These men and their agents behaved with great brutality and insolence, and even tried to extort the tax for girls under the prescribed age. One fellow acting thus, in the most insulting manner, with the daughter of Walter, a tiler at Dartford, was killed on the spot by her father. His neighbors flew to arms to protect him, and all over the country bands were formed, the leaders of which, as an earnest of their intentions, took the name of Walter the Tiler, or Wat Tyler. Walter himself became a principal leader in the movement.

§ 10. Even before this rising the collectors had been opposed in Essex; and when Sir Robert Belknap, a judge, was sent as a commissioner of *trailbaton*,<sup>2</sup> to enforce obedience, he was obliged to flee for his life, whilst some of his "jurors"<sup>3</sup> were seized and beheaded. The commons now demanded the abandonment of

<sup>1</sup> A villein who had dwelt for a year and a day in a town, unclaimed by his lord, became free so far: but he was not admitted to the privileges of the town, and could not rise above the grade of a mere laborer, or carry on a trade on his own account.

<sup>2</sup> The issuing of such a commission was, in reality, much the same as the proclamation of martial law, the parties intrusted with it being empowered to try and punish offenders at discretion: and the power was usually exercised with great rigor.

<sup>3</sup> These jurors must not be regarded as the same as the jurors of the present day. They were witnesses for the crown, or informers, and hence their unpopularity.

A Popular Insurrection.

Bad Advice followed.

The King in danger.

the tax, and the grant of charters from the king freeing them from the absolute dependence on their lords, to which they had been reduced. If their demands had been granted, they still would not have been half so free as Englishmen at the present day; but all concession was haughtily refused, and a terrible scene followed.

§ 11. Just at this time Sir Simon Burley, one of the royal household, heard that one of the *villeins* of his estate was dwelling in the town of Gravesend, and he was unwise enough to go there himself, seize him as his bondsman, and imprison him in Rochester Castle. The commons at once rose, taking a "Wat Tyler" as their chief, and being joined by a party from Essex, whose leader was called Jack Straw, they stormed the castle and set the man at liberty. Many other jails were emptied of their prisoners. Among the actors in these scenes was a friar named John Ball, who is accused of inciting them to murder the nobles and gentry, by preaching sermons which began and ended with a rude couplet—

"When Adam delved and Evé span,  
Who was then the gentleman?"

The poor people unhappily acted up to the advice, and so they converted what was at first a righteous protest against flagrant injustice into a scene of plunder and murder, which compelled all above their own degree to take arms against them in self-defence. Thus Bishop Spenser, of Norwich, who was a far better soldier than bishop, put down and severely punished a rising in his own diocese, at the head of which was an artisan called John the Litster (or Dyer), who murdered many knights and gentlemen, and compelled others to wait on him with kingly state as the price of their lives.

§ 12. The commotions began in April, 1381, and by the middle of June vast bodies of rustics from Kent and Surrey forced their way over the bridge into London, where great numbers of the poorer citizens joined them. Others, from Essex, encamped at Mile-end. The young king and his great officers had, in the mean time, taken refuge in the Tower, which was soon beset by the multitude, who clamored alike for charters of freedom and for the heads of the Duke of Lancaster, the chancellor, the treasurer, and many others. Whilst some watched the Tower, so that none could escape, the rest divided into parties, who murdered tax-collectors and foreigners, and burnt the duke's stately palace of the Savoy, the Priory of St. John of Jerusalem, and the Temple, as well as



The Insurgents in London.

Death of Wat Tyler.

Concessions.

all the bonds and records that they could lay hold of, considering them as the instruments of their servitude. But whilst they acted thus barbarously they forbore to plunder. Instead, they beat to dust Lancaster's costly gold and silver plate; and one man, who was seen to hide a silver vessel in his bosom, was hurled into the fire with his prize, his fellows crying, "We be zealous for truth and justice, and are not thieves or robbers."

§ 13. On the second day of their tumultuous possession of London, the young king went out to Mile-end, and granted all the demands (including pardon) of the Essex insurgents, who thereupon began their return to the country. But in the mean time the Kentish men had entered the Tower, where they seized the chancellor and treasurer, and beheaded them on Tower-Hill. The sufferers were Simon of Sudbury, Archbishop of Canterbury, and Sir Robert Hales, the Lord Prior of the Knights of St. John. On the following day the insurgents assembled in Smithfield, and the king went thither to meet them, being prepared to grant the same franchises and pardons to them as he had done to the Essex men. But their leader, who was styled "Wat Tyler of Maid-

<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 220.

stone" (the original Walter whose daughter was insulted<sup>a</sup>), rose in his demands, and behaved in so threatening a manner that the king's attendants were alarmed for the sovereign's life. A quarrel at once ensued, when Wat was brought to the ground by a fatal blow from William Walworth, the Mayor of London. The young king was in imminent danger of death from the insurgents, but he had the address to ride in among them, and persuade them to follow him into the fields at Islington, where he granted their charters; and on the appearance of a large body of well-armed men from the city they dispersed without further mischief.

§ 14. But though the charters had been granted, it was by no means the intention of the king's councillors to adhere to them. On the contrary, all the military tenants of the crown were ordered to assemble, as if against a foreign enemy, when the charters were revoked as extorted by force, and special commissioners visited every county from Somersetshire to Yorkshire, who, under the protection of strong bodies of troops, tried and executed above 1,500 persons.

§ 15. The skill and courage shown by the young king in dealing with the insurgents led to the expectation that he would prove a

Richard and his Ministers. He declares his Successor. Claims to the Crown.

wise and vigorous ruler, but such did not prove to be the case. In the following year [A.D. 1382] he married a German princess, who, from her constant striving to reconcile the jealous nobles who formed her husband's court, received, deservedly, the name of "the Good Queen Anne." Richard resembled his predecessor Edward the Second in his light, careless disposition, and, like him, he left the affairs of the kingdom to his ministers, of whom two especially enjoyed his confidence, and were as fatal to him as

Gaveston and De Spenser<sup>a</sup> had been to his ancestor. <sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 196.

These were Michael de la Pole, the son of a wealthy merchant of Hull, who became chancellor, and was created Earl of Suffolk; and Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford, who received the dukedom of Ireland. The king's uncles were strongly opposed to the proceedings of these men, who wasted on court pageants the sums that they wished to see devoted to the war, and thus John of Gaunt<sup>b</sup> gained a strong party in London, where John

<sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 209.

of Northampton, the mayor, was his friend. When his year of office was out, however, John was seized and imprisoned, and various charges were brought against the duke; but he retired to his castle of Pontefract, and a civil war was only averted by the intercession of the queen mother, in the year 1384.

§ 16. The king next declared Roger Mortimer, Earl of March, heir presumptive to the throne. Then Lancaster made a claim to it in favor of his own son, who afterwards became king as Henry the Fourth. This was disregarded, and the duke then undertook an expedition to Spain to assert his right to the crown. He was unsuccessful, losing the greater part of his army from sickness. The matter was eventually settled by his giving his daughter Catherine in marriage to Henry the son of his rival. During his absence the Earl of Buckingham had driven out the Earl of Suffolk and the Duke of Ireland, who both died in exile, and he himself, receiving the title of Duke of Gloucester, became the head of a new council of regency [A.D. 1386], which exercised all the powers of government, although the king was no longer a minor, being then twenty years of age.

§ 17. Richard bore this tutelage for a while, but having privately obtained the opinion of some of the judges that the commission of regency was illegal, he prepared to shake it off. He was, however, anticipated by Gloucester, who seized the Tower, and then, in what was called "the Wonder-working Parliament" [A.D. 1388],



Gloucester's Tyranny.

End of his Power.

War with Scotland.

he procured the condemnation of many of his opponents as traitors, when several of them were executed, and others banished. Among those executed was that Sir Simon Burley already mentioned,<sup>a</sup> for whom "the Good Queen Anne" made supplication on her knees to Gloucester, but in vain. The regent behaved so insolently that he alienated many of his supporters, of which the king took advantage, and, by what would now be termed a *coup d'état*, drove him from power.

§ 18. This was the end of Gloucester's power. Richard entered the council on the 3d of May, 1389, and smilingly inquired if any record existed to show the time of his birth. This was soon produced, and when read aloud gave the date as April 3, 1366. "Then am I twenty-three years of age," cried Richard; and turning to Gloucester, he added, "and surely I am old enough, fair uncle, to govern without your help." Gloucester was too much surprised to make any reply, and he and all his friends were at once driven from the court, when William of Wykeham again became chancellor. The Duke of Lancaster returned to England soon afterward, and by his means the king and his uncle Gloucester were formally reconciled, though, as was afterwards seen, each hated and distrusted the other.

§ 19. Whilst these contentions were carried on but too actively in England, the war was allowed to languish both in Scotland and in France, consisting of little more than desultory inroads that did great damage to each country, and brought on fierce reprisals, but had no effect in achieving a conquest or producing an honorable peace. Almost at the beginning of Richard's reign the Scots burnt Roxburgh (then an English fortress) and captured Berwick; but this was soon retaken by Percy, then newly created Earl of Northumberland. In 1381 Lancaster invaded Scotland, and thereby probably saved his life, as it was during this absence that his palace of the Savoy was burnt by the rioters;<sup>b</sup> and in 1385 the king himself led an army thither, and burnt Edinburgh. With these exceptions the war seems to have been mainly conducted by the northern nobles, foremost among whom were the Earl of Northumberland and his son, whose activity has gained him the well-known name of Harry Hotspur. The most memorable of the various battles fought in that war was that of Otterburn, in Northumberland [A.D. 1388], where Douglas, the Scottish leader, was killed, and Hotspur taken

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 221.<sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 209.

prisoner. The ancient ballad of Chevy Chase is founded on this remarkable encounter, which is made to appear as a foray of hunters on Douglas's domain, and opposed by him and his retainers.

§ 20. The war with France, after the Duke of Brittany had abandoned the cause, was far less eventful. The French, in 1385, and again in 1386, threatened an invasion; but in each instance bad weather prevented their leaving their ports. In 1387 the Earl of Arundel gave them a great defeat near Sluys, which almost ruined their navy, and thenceforward they only showed their hostility by sending succors to the Scots. At length truces were made from year to year, which, in 1396, were followed by the king (whose queen had died two years before) marrying Isabella, the daughter of the French king, though she was only in her ninth year. As the price of this alliance Brest and Cherbourg were given up, and a report was spread that the Channel Islands and Calais would also be surrendered. This rendered the king very unpopular, and the Duke of Gloucester resumed his treasonable designs, which speedily resulted in his own death.

§ 21. When the Duke of Lancaster came home, he found his brother, the Duke of Gloucester, had in reality possessed himself of the government. Jealousy arose between them, and in consequence Lancaster now gave his support to the king. As a reward the duchy of Aquitaine<sup>a</sup> was bestowed on him, and his natural children were legitimated. One of them, <sup>a § 17, p. 212.</sup> called John Beaufort, was the ancestor of the dukes of Somerset, who fought so strenuously on the Lancastrian side in the War of the Roses. This favor to one who was now his avowed opponent induced Gloucester to plan a rising against the king, in which the Archbishop of Canterbury and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick pledged themselves to take part. But their scheme became known, and the king, acting with unwonted vigor, at the instigation of his half-brother, the Earl of Huntingdon, went himself by night to Pleshey, near Chelmsford, which was the duke's seat, and there seized Gloucester, who was hurried off to Calais and thrown into prison. The others were also seized, and a parliament assembled for their trial. When it met, it was announced that Gloucester had died in prison after making a full confession of his offences, and urgently praying for the mercy that he had never shown himself. The matter was then no further inquired into. Arundel and Warwick were condemned to death [A.D. 1397]; but Arundel



Royal Favors.

Dangers removed.

Unfortunate Visit to Ireland.

only was executed. The archbishop (who was brother to Arundel) was banished, and taking up his residence in France, he became the mainspring of the revolution that soon after deprived Richard of his throne.

§ 22. At first everything proceeded as the king wished. He gave higher titles to several nobles who had assisted him against Gloucester. The Earl of Derby (John of Gaunt's eldest son) was made Duke of Hereford; and the Earl of Huntingdon, Duke of Exeter. The Earl of Nottingham, who was also earl marshal, and had been Gloucester's keeper, received the title of Duke of Norfolk. Then removing the parliament to Shrewsbury, the king procured from it a reversal of the acts of the "Wonder-working

Parliament."<sup>a</sup> Many of the actors in that assembly

<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 223.

were condemned to heavy fines and forfeitures, and the royal treasury was thus greatly enriched. But scarcely had the parliament separated when a quarrel broke out between the Dukes of Hereford and Norfolk, and, according to the custom of the time, a combat was ordered between them, as each charged the other with falsehood and treason.<sup>1</sup> The combat was stopped at the moment that the dukes were mounted, lance in hand, and both were banished in the year 1398. Norfolk died about a year afterward, but Hereford lived to become king.

§ 23. His enemies thus dispersed, Richard went to Ireland with a large army, his cousin, the Earl of March, who was the next heir

to the throne,<sup>b</sup> having been killed there in the pre-

<sup>b</sup> § 16, p. 223.

ceding year. He had visited Ireland five years before, and had found the people in general very willing to submit to his authority. Such was also the case now, but his going lost him his crown. When the Duke of Hereford was banished, the king promised him that he should succeed to the duchy of Lancaster in case of his father's death; but hearing that the duke consorted in France with the banished archbishop, the sons of the late Duke of Gloucester and Earl of Arundel, and other malcontents, he recalled his promise. Hereford on this repaired to Brittany, and equipping a small fleet sailed for England, the archbishop and the young Earl of Arundel accompanying him. He landed at

<sup>1</sup> Norfolk was believed to have put Gloucester to death on his own authority as earl marshal; but Hereford charged him with saying that he had acted by the order of the king, who designed thus to get rid of others of the nobility. Norfolk denied the speech, and challenged his accuser to justify himself in knightly fashion.

A Revolution in England. The King dethroned. His mysterious Disappearance.

Ravenspur, in Yorkshire, in July, 1399, professing that he came merely to claim his inheritance. But this pretext was soon dropped. The great Earls of Northumberland and Westmoreland joined him, as did his uncle the Duke of York soon after, though he was regent of the kingdom. Then he marched to Bristol, where he seized and executed the Earl of Wiltshire, who had been an actor in the condemnation of Gloucester and his friends, and soon afterward he openly claimed the throne.

§ 24. Bad weather for a while prevented Richard's return from Ireland, and almost immediately on his landing he was deserted by the greater part of his troops, his steward, the Earl of Worcester (Northumberland's brother), setting the example by breaking his wand of office and declaring the royal household dismissed. Soon afterward he was betrayed into the hands of the new Duke of Lancaster, who brought him to London, where, in a parliament that was immediately assembled, a renunciation of the throne by him was read, and he was deposed, one man alone, Bishop Merks of Carlisle, having the courage to protest against his being condemned unheard. But this protest was disregarded, <sup>a</sup> § 22, p. 226. and Henry of Lancaster, the Duke of Hereford,<sup>a</sup> was placed on the throne by the Archbishops of Canterbury and York, and declared king.

§ 25. And so Richard was dethroned. Of his after life very little is known. The parliament shortly afterward ordered him to be "kept secretly in safe ward," and he was removed from the Tower to Leeds Castle, in Kent. Thence he was taken to Pontefract Castle, and there he is usually said to have died, either murdered by his keeper, Sir Piers Exton, or starved to death. A body that was said to be his was shown at St. Paul's shortly after his deposition, and was afterwards buried at Langley, but no account of how he came by his death was given. There is reason for believing that he escaped from Pontefract, and lived nearly twenty years afterwards in Scotland, in a state of mental imbecility.

§ 26. But whatever was the date or the mode of Richard's death, his fate was a most unhappy one. All through his reign his ambitious uncles struggled for power, and, though affecting a kind of guardianship, not one of them endeavored to fit him for the high position to which he came so young. Though he occasionally showed gleams of spirit and courage worthy of his father and grandfather, he was evidently luxurious and indolent, and but too



Character of Richard the Second.

The Papal Power in England.

willing to leave the cares of government to any who would undertake them.

§ 27. In his personal character Richard the Second was mild and gracious, and though, at the instigation of others, he proceeded with severity against his uncle the Duke of Gloucester, he was placable to the other conspirators, and showed himself far more merciful than they were when their circumstances were reversed. By his immediate attendants he was evidently much beloved, but by his want of warlike activity he offended alike his martial nobles, who longed for fresh conquests in France and Scotland, and the rich merchants, who looked for fresh concessions from the crown in return for their loans. But Richard's advisers saw how much the royal power had been limited through his grandfather's ceaseless wars and consequent want of money, and therefore they strove for peace, a course that suited his own inclination, but which cost him both his throne and his life.

---

## CHAPTER X.

SOCIETY FROM THE YEAR 1200 TO THE YEAR 1400.

§ 1. THERE was very little change in the aspects of Christianity in England during the reigns of the kings from John to Henry of Lancaster, a period of about two hundred years. We have seen how strong was the papal authority during all that time. The Roman pontiffs asserted their supremacy over all potentates and powers with imperious will and imperial strength. In no country were their exactions and encroachments in the thirteenth century more frequent than in England. The natural good-nature and superstition of the people made them quietly submit, while their insular separation from the rest of Europe, and their wealth, concurred with political circumstances in making England the great field of Papal imposition and plunder. It was not until the reign of Edward the Third that the people of England openly expressed

their dislike of the growing abuses of that power.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 24, p. 216. From the time of Boniface VIII. [1294], who proclaimed that "God had set him over kings and kingdoms," and laid France and Denmark under interdict, a general feeling of

The Papal Revenue from England.

The Church there.

Wickliffe.

resentment existed; and, as has been said, "slowly, like the retreat of waters, or the stealthy pace of old age, that extraordinary power over human opinion has been subsiding for five centuries."

§ 2. In the year 1376 the Commons,<sup>a</sup> in a remonstrance to the king against the extortions of the court of Rome, affirmed that the taxes yearly paid to the Pope by the people of England amounted to five times as much as all the taxes paid to the crown. Gregory the Ninth alone, in the course of a few years, drew from England, in various ways, a sum equal to £15,000,000, or \$75,000,000. The ecclesiastics were the creatures of the pontiffs, and the church in England was the conduit through which these treasures flowed into the coffers of the Pope. Nearly one-half of the soil of England was in the possession of the church; and all of the richest benefices were in the hands of Italian and other foreign priests. The Pope also claimed and exercised the power of making and abrogating laws, and releasing men from their most solemn oaths. The priest was everywhere omnipotent, and all England swarmed with monks of various orders. All the high civil offices were filled with ecclesiastics, and military leaders were frequently bishops. Public worship was ceremonial, and religion as a sentiment of the heart was little known.

§ 3. It was during this period that the English reformer, John Wickliffe,<sup>b</sup> appeared. His name was derived from the Yorkshire parish in which he was born, about the year 1324. He was an eminent student at Oxford; and at the age of thirty-one he issued a treatise entitled, "Of the Last Age of the Church," in which he trenchantly assailed the prevailing notions concerning the authority of the Pope. He then attacked some of the monastic orders, and even the doctrines of the church. He denounced twelve classes of religious orders, beginning with the Pope and ending with the mendicant friars, as antichrists and "proctors of Satan;" he traced the corruptions of the church to the profusion of wealth with which it had been endowed; and he drew a parallel between the poverty and humility of the apostles and the wealth and arrogance of their pretended successors in his day. Though he received the countenance and support of the most powerful of the nobility, he suffered persecution. His stormy life ended on the 31st of October, 1384.

§ 4. Wickliffe's fundamental position was, like that of Luther a long time afterward, that the knowledge of the revealed will of



Wickliffe's Doctrine. Representative Government established. The Statutes.

God was to be found in the Holy Scriptures only, not by the church alone, or its authorized heads, but by every earnest-seeking individual. Before his time portions of the Scriptures had been translated into the English tongue, but they were almost wholly unknown to the people. Wickliffe translated the whole of the Old and New Testaments, and so made his name dear and immortal as a real benefactor of his countrymen.

§ 5. During the period we are considering great changes were made in the constitution of government, Magna Charta<sup>a</sup> (which was frequently confirmed) being the basis. During the first century or more after the Conquest, the great council of the realm<sup>b</sup> was composed only of the tenants-in-chief, or vassals of the king. Of these, one portion consisted of the bishops and abbots, or heads of religious houses holding immediately of the crown. The lay portion consisted of the earls and barons, meaning by the latter those holding of the king. These, in turn, were entitled to a summons which gave them a right to sit in the council.

§ 6. The earliest indication that we have of popular representation is found in a summons, in the year 1255, for "two good and discreet knights from each county, whom the men of the county should have chosen for the purpose, instead of all and each of them, to consider, along with the knights of other counties, what aid they would grant the king in such an emergency." That emergency was the sending of an expedition into Gascony. Ten years later, two citizens or burgesses of every city and borough in the kingdom, chosen by the people, were summoned to sit in a representative council with the knights.

§ 7. Such was the origin of the House of Commons. At first they held a very humble position, scarcely daring to lift their eyes in the presence of the great lords and bishops; and their chief business was to prefer petitions and grant subsidies to the monarch. The two houses met together in Westminster Hall, the Commons occupying the lower end; and it was not until in the reign of Edward the Third that they met in different chambers.

§ 8. For two centuries after the Conquest the statutes were written in Latin, when the relations of England with France became so intimate that they were written in French. In the promulgation of the statutes they were always translated from both the Latin and French.

Courts of Justice.

First Lawyers.

Commercial Regulations.

§ 9. In the earlier stages of the history of the courts of justice, the parliaments appear to have partaken considerably more of the character of a supreme court of judicature than it afterward did. And for the trial of great offences, like treason, parliament continued to be a high court until toward the close of the reign of Edward the Third, when the Commons first appeared as prosecutors, and the king and lords were considered the judges. So in our government, the House of Representatives, in the case of the impeachment of the president, appears as the accuser and prosecutor, and the Senate becomes a high court for trial.

§ 10. The tribunal next in authority to the parliament was the council, consisting of the king and all the lords and peers of the realm. It corresponded somewhat to the present British Privy Council. Below these were the inferior county courts, already mentioned.<sup>a</sup> And it was at about this time, when the law became complicated and voluminous, that professional lawyers appeared, and had special residences provided, like that by the Earl of Lincoln, known as Lincoln's Inn, in London.

§ 11. It seems as if, during much of the period under consideration, the rulers of England, by unwise regulations of commerce, tried to suppress it altogether by attempting to annul the laws of nature. The articles of English produce upon which customs were paid were called "staples of the kingdom," and these all had to be carried to stipulated ports to be weighed or measured, and the customs collected before they could be sold. All mercantile dealings were also, for a time, restricted to certain places. Then the great increase in the foreign commerce of the country perplexed legislators; and the most ruinous efforts were made to secure the entire benefits of that trade to England. Had these been successful—for example, an order issued by Edward the First, directing all foreign merchants to sell their goods within forty days after their arrival; also, not allowing foreign merchants to reside in England, excepting by special license and subjection to heavy burdens—commerce would have been extinguished. But necessity made men wise, and many absurd regulations were abandoned, and the law of trade involved in demand and supply was allowed freer action.

§ 12. The vessels, both for war and commerce, in those days were very small, and most uncouth in appearance. The vessel



Ships of the Thirteenth Century.

Coinage.

Husbandry of England.

lent by the republic of Venice, in 1270. to Louis of France, when he set out on his second crusade, was one hundred and twenty-five feet in length, and carried one hundred and ten men. That was considered a ship of extraordinary size. The English ships were much smaller. In 1360, Edward the Third, in an order for the arrest of all the vessels in the kingdom for an expedition against France, directed that the largest ships should carry forty mariners, forty armed men, and sixty archers. The merchant vessels were generally much smaller, but they often carried valuable cargoes, some estimated as high as five and six thousand pounds sterling.

§ 13. The earliest record of the exports and imports of England is an account of the foreign trade given in the year 1354. The total value of exports that year was £212,338, paying customs to the amount of £81,846. Wool then constituted thirteen-fourteenths of the entire exports of England, on which was paid an export duty of forty per cent. of its value. The imports that year [1354] amounted in value to £38,383. It is proper to say that there were some exports and imports of commodities on which no customs were paid.

§ 14. The coinage of England, in denominational value, was the same during this as in the preceding period.<sup>a</sup> It, however, became corrupted by clipping (a crime charged upon the Jews at the time of the massacre when Richard the First was crowned<sup>b</sup>), and by the issue of counterfeits. Scotch coins were greatly deteriorated at this period; so also were those of Ireland. Silver was the only metal used until Robert the Second, of Scotland (nephew of Robert the First<sup>c</sup>) [1371-1390], coined some gold money. The coins were generally rude in workmanship, and not always of uniform weight. By a statute passed in the thirteenth century, it was declared that the sterling English penny should "weigh thirty-two grains of wheat, dry, in the midst of the ear." This was the origin of the weight still called "pennyweight," though it now contains only twenty-four grains. The stamping of the coins was done by a hammer, and this method continued until 1663, when the milled money was made.

§ 15. The husbandry of England was much the same as in the preceding period. Each manor-house had three gardens, a fish-pond, and a rabbit-warren. The flesh of the rabbits was used for food, and their fur for articles of dress; and the fish-ponds were

<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 165.

<sup>b</sup> § 3, p. 144.

<sup>c</sup> § 29, p. 194.

Manorial Estates.

Diet.

Wages.

Internal Commerce.

Trades.

a convenience on fast-days. Around these manor-houses were the mean cottages of the laborers or tenants, each of whom occupied only three acres. Some of the manorial estates were wealthy in domestic animals. There were carried away from that of the elder De Spenser, when it was ravaged,<sup>a</sup> 28,000 sheep, 1,000 oxen and heifers, 1,200 cows, with their calves, 500 cart-horses, <sup>a</sup> § 14, p. 201. and 2,000 hogs.

§ 16. The diet of the laborers usually consisted, in harvest, of herrings, a loaf of bread, and beer. They ate but two meals—dinner at nine and supper at five.<sup>b</sup> The most liberal-<sup>b</sup> § 22, p. 169. allowance was two herrings a day, milk from the manor dairy to make cheese, and a loaf of bread, of which fifteen were made from a bushel of wheat.

§ 17. The head harvestman of the manor was chosen by the tenants each year. During his term of service he enjoyed certain privileges. He slept at the manor-house, and had a horse kept for him in the lord's stable. Women performed field labor of the lighter kind. Their wages were lower than those of men, which were usually twopence a day; and in harvest time young and old, of both sexes, were afield. When the crops were gathered each tenant received his share of the product, and this was expected to last him until the next harvest; but improvident consumption immediately after harvest often produced famines.

§ 18. A large portion of the internal trade of the country was carried on at fairs and appointed markets, at which London tradesmen appeared with toys, drugs, spices, and small wares. The trades were more numerous than in the preceding period, a number, under different names, being only portions of what were carried on by single persons. In London there were no less than forty-eight in the year 1376. Among them were skimmers, girdlers, tapestry-weavers, spurriers, cloth-measurers, salters, pouch-makers, and horners—occupations now unknown as distinct pursuits. Some of these trades were carried on by women as well as men.

§ 19. Literature, science, and art in England felt the impulse of the great intellectual awakening on the Continent in the thirteenth century, where there was a universal revolt from the study of words and of æsthetics incident to a revival of classical learning, to that of thoughts and of things. The enthusiasm of the crusades seems to have been succeeded by the enthusiasm of study in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. In the beginning of the



## Literature and Science.

## History and Poetry.

## Architecture.

latter there were thirty thousand students in the University of Oxford, and as many in the University of Paris. The study of elegant literature was now nearly abandoned, and everywhere was seen a passion for metaphysical disputation which gratified men's vanity. The study of the logic of Aristotle, which former Popes had forbidden, was now pursued with a zeal that amounted to enthusiasm. Mathematical studies and investigations were extensively engaged in, as well as astrology and alchemy—parents, respectively, of modern astronomy and chemistry.

§ 20. In the mathematical and physical sciences Roger Bacon is the great name in the thirteenth century. The range of his investigations included theology, grammar, the ancient languages, geometry, astronomy, chronology, geography, music, optics, mechanics, chemistry, and other branches of experimental philosophy, in which he created a new era.

§ 21. There were several prominent historical writers during this period, the most eminent of whom was Mathew Paris, a monk of the monastery of St. Albans. But their works are defiled with legends and romances which stain their character as histories. Indeed, Dr. Lingard has pronounced the History of England from the Conquest, written by Paris, as “a romance rather than a history.”

§ 22. Of poets, the most renowned of this period were Chaucer and Gower. That wonderful minstrel of the fourteenth century, Chaucer, has never been surpassed in the entire assemblage of his various poetic qualities, excepting by Shakespeare. That, too, was the period of the birth of Scottish poetry, of which Barbour and Wynton are the early representatives. Then, too, while the language of the learned was Latin, and of the nobility French, the first important steps were taken in the passage of the speech of the common people from the Anglo-Saxon into modern English.

§ 23. In sacred architecture, the Gothic had now become the prevailing type, but was somewhat modified in England from its French original. The finest remaining specimen of the early English Gothic style is Salisbury Cathedral, founded in the year 1220. In the reign of Edward the Second [1284–1327], the decorated English style was introduced, more florid and meretricious than the earlier. Castle-building had received a check in the reign of Henry the Second [1154–1189]. In that of Edward the First [1272–1307], the castles assumed the character of a fortress and palace combined, and they presented an elegance before unknown.

Dwellings.

Sculpture.

Living.

Furniture and Costume.

§ 24. The mere domestic style of building of that period was very simple, and in form the dwellings, with plain gabled outlines, presented the appearance of the common farm-house of our day—a great improvement upon the houses of the preceding period.

§ 25. Sculpture was chiefly employed in monumental architecture, of which many rich specimens are preserved. Painting was so inferior that it hardly claimed the character of a fine art at that period, and music had not yet attained to the dignity of a science. The musical instruments then in use were the oboe, trumpet, clarion, dulcimer, tabret, violin, flute, and harp.

§ 26. During this period the style of living had become more comfortable and elegant. Even among the laborers a display of taste was often seen. In the houses of the rich the furniture was costly. The wood-work was elegantly carved, and the coverings of chairs and hangings of bedsteads were often of silk and other rich stuffs. The bedsteads, in form, resembled the child's crib of our day. On the bed-clothes the nobility had their arms embroidered; and in the will of the Earl of March<sup>a</sup> [1330] beds of black satin, of blue, red, and white silk, and of black velvet, more or less embroidered with gold, silver, and colors, are mentioned. <sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 223.

§ 27. Cupboards were well filled with plate, and a fork of crystal, brought from Italy, is mentioned in Edward the First's wardrobe account. But forks were not introduced into England, at table, until the seventeenth century.

§ 28. The civil costume in England did not differ very essentially at this period from that of the preceding era, which we have described.<sup>b</sup> The men wore a greater variety of head-coverings, and the mantles of the rich were distinguished for their costliness. The principal change in feminine attire was in the fashion of wearing the hair, and in the extravagant length of the trails of their dresses, for which they were attacked by the satirists of their day. The hair, instead of being plaited in long tails as formerly,<sup>c</sup> was turned up behind, and entirely enclosed in a network composed of gold, silver, or silk thread, over which was worn a veil; and sometimes, in addition, a round cap. Garlands and chaplets of goldsmiths' work were also worn by the nobility; and in summer wreaths of flowers were worn by all classes. <sup>b</sup> § 19, p. 168. <sup>c</sup> § 20, p. 169.



Fashions.

Chivalry.

Cookery.

Sports.

§ 29. Toward the close of the reign of Henry the Third, a most unbecoming neckcloth, called a gorget, was introduced. In the reign of the first Edward it was wrapped two or three times around the neck, and then fastened with a great number of pins. "Par Dieu!" exclaims Jean de Meun, when describing this portion of feminine attire, "I have often thought in my heart, when I have seen a lady so closely tied up, that her neckcloth was nailed to her chin, or that she had the pins hooked in her flesh." Tight lacing was now in vogue, and also tight buttoning of the sleeves from the wrists to the elbows. The kirtles of the ladies were of light blue silk; their mantles of green velvet, embroidered with gold and richly furred. The wits, because of the length of their skirts, spoke of them as peacocks and pies, "having long tails that trail in the dirt." The whimsical fashion of indenting, escolloping, and otherwise cutting the edges of garments, against which there had been legislative enactments, was now carried out with

<sup>a</sup> § 20, p. 169.

the greatest extravagance.<sup>a</sup> Sometimes the richer ladies wore girdles of beaten gold set with precious stones, and coronets with costly gems. The men in Edward the Third's reign adopted close-fitting garments, and from the elbows depended long white tippets or streamers. And now began the habit of changing fashions often, in imitation of the custom on the Continent; and Paris became, what it ever since has been, the fountain of fashions and the arbiter of taste in dress. Foppery became common in England; and in the reign of Richard the Second the masculine attire assumed the most whimsical forms, while the feminine attire was graceful and elegant.

§ 30. Chivalry at this period was in its noontide splendor, and gave tone to society. There was a recklessness and brilliance in entertainments before unknown, while the common people adhered to their old simple modes of living. Cookery had become a sort of science—a most vicious science—and was most complicated and artificial. But for the continual out-of-door exercises of all classes of the aristocracy, the cooks with their spices and pastry would have made England a land of dyspeptics.

§ 31. Hunting and horse-racing were favorite sports in the field, and chess was the popular game of the nobles within doors. The ladies hunted with the gentlemen, and engaged with them in many other amusements. It was a mark of great gallantry and friendship for a knight to ask a lady to eat off the same plate with him.

Jesters.

Feast of Fools and Boy Bishop.

New King.

We have an account of a feast in Perce Forest where eight hundred knights sat table, each with a lady sharing his plate, while not a husband of one of them dared show his face there.

§ 32. At the feasts the jester was now a regular appendage. Mummers, masqueraders, rope-dancers, and jugglers were favorites with the common people, and late in this period the Feast of Fools was kept by the populace. It was celebrated at Christmas time, and resembled the old Roman Saturnalia. It was a season of universal license among the commonalty, in which all orders and authorities were reversed. The most ignorant boor became a pope; the buffoon, a cardinal; and the lowest of the mob became priests and abbots. The mob took possession of the churches and parodied every part of the sacred service, singing masses composed of obscene songs, and preaching sermons filled with all manner of lewdness and buffoonery. This riotous feast was not so extravagantly commemorated in England as on the Continent, and the good sense of the people soon caused it to fall into disuse. But for a long time, even until the middle of the sixteenth century, another parody was kept up, known as the institution of the Boy Bishop. This was a practice of the boys of the church choirs, at a certain festival, dressing up in full canonicals, and making one of their number bishop, investing him with mitre and crosier, and then taking possession of the church, mimicking the whole of the devotional exercises.

## CHAPTER XI.

REIGN OF HENRY THE FOURTH. [A.D. 1399 TO 1413.]

§ 1. It was on the last day of September, 1399, when Henry, surnamed Bolingbroke, son of the Duke of Lancaster, was crowned in Westminster Abbey by the Archbishop of Canterbury, with the title of Henry the Fourth. He was the first of the royal House of Lancaster, and was thirty-three years of age when he ascended the throne.

§ 2. The new king was totally unlike his yet living predecessor.<sup>a</sup> Whilst still a youth, and known only as Sir Henry of Lancaster, he acquired great skill in all martial

<sup>a</sup> § 25, p. 227.



Henry's Career and Accession.

His First Parliament.

False Nobles.

exercises, and accompanied his father, John of Gaunt,<sup>a</sup> in his

<sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 217. Spanish wars. Then he assumed the cross, fought in

Barbary against the Moors, next in the east of Europe with the Teutonic knights against the pagans of Lithuania, and wound up his career by a pilgrimage to Jerusalem.

§ 3. On the return of Henry to England he became at once a popular favorite, whilst his fame rendered him an object of jealous dislike to the king. The plots of the Duke of Gloucester, however, caused a reconciliation between the royal cousins, as Gloucester

<sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 209. had evidently designs on the crown, and the Earl of Derby,<sup>b</sup> as he was now called, had, through his

mother, what he was pleased to consider a "claim by right line of the blood" to it also, which Richard, who had no family, was more likely to recognize than Gloucester would be, should he "win his way through slaughter to the throne." Hence Derby joined

<sup>c</sup> § 22, p. 226. in the condemnation of his uncle, and was rewarded with the title of Duke of Hereford.<sup>c</sup> His quarrel

with Norfolk, his banishment, his return, his being made king, followed in a brief space of time, as already related.<sup>d</sup>

§ 4. The parliament that had deposed Richard proceeded much in the style of the "Wonder-working Parliament"<sup>e</sup> of

<sup>e</sup> § 17, p. 223. 1386. Almost every act of the late king or his min-

isters since that time was set aside, and pardons, of course, granted to their opponents. The murder of the Duke of Gloucester was inquired into, and the titles given in consequence disallowed. The ex-king was doomed to perpetual imprisonment, and special thanks were voted to the people of London for the great share that they had taken in the late revolution. But the assembly was a most tumultuous one, charges of treachery and falsehood being freely (and truly) made on all sides, and not less than forty gauntlets thrown upon the floor as gages of combat between nobles and knights. The new king, however, who was of a stern temper, and fitted to hold rule among such men, peremptorily forbade this, and the deadly quarrel was delayed until after the coronation.

§ 5. Among the nobles who swore allegiance to Henry on this occasion were several who had no intention of ad-

<sup>f</sup> § 22, p. 226. hering to him. Such were the Earls of Huntingdon<sup>f</sup>

and Kent (who were Richard's half-brother and nephew, and had

Plots frustrated.

England's Troubles.

Discontents.

been deprived of their higher titles of Dukes of Exeter and Surrey, the Earl of Salisbury, and Lord De Spenser (the great-grandson of the lord of Edward the Second's time, who had lost his title of Earl of Gloucester).<sup>a</sup> They plotted the murder of the king at a tournament, but being foiled in this they took up arms.

That was in the year 1400. Henry pursued them <sup>a § 13, p. 200.</sup>

with an army of Londoners, but ere he could reach them they had been defeated at Cirencester, and many of them put to death by the people of that town. Lord De Spenser was captured while trying to escape to Wales, and was executed at Bristol, and the Earl of Huntingdon, falling into the power of the Countess of Hereford (the mother-in-law of Henry and sister of the late Earl of Arundel), was beheaded by her on her own authority, and in her presence. Numerous executions followed, particularly of Richard's personal attendants, and their heads, being sent to London, were received with barbarous rejoicings, the Archbishop of Canterbury going out to meet them chanting a *Te Deum*.

§ 6. But though this attempt had failed, and had consequently rendered the throne of Henry more secure, he and the people who had chosen him were only at the beginning of their troubles. The kings both of France and of Scotland declared the truces at an end, as having been concluded with Richard, and to the end of Henry's reign they refused the royal title to him. Waleran, Count of St. Pol, who had married Richard's half-sister, fitted out a fleet in his name, and, in company with the Spanish galleys, ravaged the coast from Cornwall to Suffolk. The French threatened invasion; the Scots burst into the north of England; and the Welsh, headed by Owen Glyndwr, the great-grandson of their last native prince,<sup>b</sup> made a desperate attempt to regain their in-

<sup>b § 5, p. 183.</sup>

dependence. In addition to these troubles, some at least of those who had placed Henry on the throne had now become anxious to drive him from it. Vast estates had been seized from Richard's friends, but instead of bestowing them freely among his supporters, Henry unwisely granted the greater part to his own sons, which, as the eldest of them was only twelve years of age, was considered much the same as keeping them in his own hands. This unfair division of the spoil reminded some of the nobles that, however unworthy to reign Richard might have been, Henry was not his heir, and they accordingly prepared to take arms against him.

§ 7. According to the ordinary rules of succession, the crown of



Aspirations for the Crown.      War against the Scots.      Enemies coalesce.

England should have passed to Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March, then a boy of seven years of age, and the son of that Roger Mortimer

who had been declared heir to the throne in 1385.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 223.

The parliament, it is true, had set this aside; but the youth's relatives were not inclined to recognize this if they could avoid it, and accordingly his uncle, Sir Edmund Mortimer, repaired to the border of Wales, when Henry, suspecting that war was intended, seized the young earl and his sisters and imprisoned them in Windsor Castle. Shortly after this, Sir Edmund was taken prisoner by Glyndwr, who regarded all the Marchers as his enemies, when Henry refused to suffer his friends to ransom him.

§ 8. Among these friends were the potent Earl of Northumberland and his son Hotspur,<sup>b</sup> who were already dis-

<sup>b</sup> § 19, p. 224.

contented on their own account with the king that they had so greatly helped to make. To them had chiefly been left the defence of the border against the Scots, and they complained that large sums of money which had been voted for that purpose had been kept back and wasted on court favorites. They, however, carried on the war, and Hotspur gave a great defeat to the Scots at Homildon Hill [September 14, 1402], where a large number of knights and nobles were made prisoners. The ransom of prisoners was then a most important matter, the sums to be paid being well regulated according to rank, and forming a fund which captors looked to to repay a part, at least, of their expenses; but for some reason Henry now chose to forbid them to ransom any of their captives without his special permission. The result was soon seen. The Percys formed an alliance with the Earl of Douglas, their chief prisoner; then communicated with Sir Edmund Mortimer, and through him made a formal treaty with Glyndwr, their professed object being to restore Richard, if alive (which the Scots asserted him to be), or if not, to place the Earl of March on the throne. There were other plots for displacing

Henry, such as that of the widow of Earl de Spencer,<sup>c</sup> who had powerful partisans.

<sup>c</sup> § 5, p. 238.

§ 9. Whilst the Earl of Northumberland stayed behind in the north, strengthening his castles and gathering further forces, his gallant son, Hotspur, and his brother, the Earl of Worcester, hurried forward with 14,000 men to the borders of Wales, expecting to be met there by Glyndwr. But the latter was engaged in besieging the strong town of Caermarthen, and before he could

Death of Northumberland.

The Lollards and the Church.

Confiscations.

got near them they had been attacked and totally defeated, near Shrewsbury, by Henry, on the 21st of July, 1403. Hotspur fell in the battle, and the Earl of Worcester was captured and executed. Henry then marched to York, where the Earl of Northumberland came and made his submission. His life was spared, but many of his possessions were taken from him, and he sought refuge in Scotland. A few years later, fearing to be delivered up by the Scots, he repaired to Glyndwr, in Wales, after which he again appeared in arms in Yorkshire, when he was killed in a conflict with the sheriff [A.D. 1408], and the Percys remained under attainder until the next reign.

§ 10. But they were not the only parties who, having served Henry's turn, were cast off by him. His father had declared himself a patron of John Wickliffe, and the Lollards, as Wickliffe's disciples, were commonly called,<sup>a</sup> had strenuously supported Henry's claim to the crown. They <sup>a § 25, p. 216.</sup> professed to look on the possession of property by the church as an abuse, and very early in his reign they proposed its confiscation for the benefit of the State. Henry was ready to listen to them; but his friend Archbishop Arundel convinced him that more was to be got by protecting the church than by plundering it. The king at once abandoned his allies, and allowed a statute to be passed which condemned them to be burnt as heretics. William Sawtre, a London priest, was the first sufferer under it, in the year 1401. Notwithstanding the change in Henry's policy, the scheme was brought forward at what was called "the Unlearned Parliament," held in 1404, and so named because "men learned in the law" (then usually clergymen) had no place in it. It is probable that this was the work of Henry's dishonest ministers, as a means of obtaining a large grant from the fears of the clergy, and this end was answered. It was again brought forward in 1411, with the like result.

§ 11. When Henry took possession of the throne, he loudly promised to head an army against France, and to lead it further than even his grandfather, Edward the Third, had done; but he never took any steps to carry out this boast. Unlike what was expected from his early career, he had little success in war. Three times he marched into Wales, but he was never able to bring Glyndwr to action, and his troops suffered so much from bad weather that the chroniclers gravely attributed their disasters to the magic arts of



Glyndwr Sovereign of Wales.

He liberates his country.

their skilful opponent. The bards declared that he made battle from the clouds, and used the elements as his allies and vassals.

§ 12. Glyndwr, or Glendower, had been brought up in the English court, and was knighted by Richard the Second, on whom he attended until his deposition. He then repaired to his estates in Wales, when he found that a part of his lands had been seized by Lord Grey of Ruthyn, one of the Marchers, and a supporter of Henry. Despairing of redress from the law, which the other Marchers were not likely to administer impartially, he at once took up arms, captured Lord Grey, and threw him into prison. It was the first time for a century that a native Welshman had dared to withstand the tyranny of the Marchers, and the news produced a wonderful effect. Large numbers of the Welsh had settled in England, some as priests or monks, some as students at Oxford, but many more as minstrels, or huntsmen, or "valets,"<sup>1</sup> in the establishments of the nobles, but they now quitted their posts in thousands and flocked to join Glyndwr. He was learned, valiant, skilled in arms, and quite able to avail himself of the opportunity given of endeavoring to free his country. He at once assumed the title of "Owen, Prince of Wales," was crowned at the old seat of Welsh royalty, Machynlleth, and was formally acknowledged as a sovereign by the King of France, who also sent him aid in men, money, and ships.

§ 13. Thus strengthened he gained and held possession of by far the greater part of Wales, ravaged the border, and with his French allies marched into England as far as Worcester, but found that city too strong to be attacked. But in Wales scarcely a single place held out successfully against him. He captured all the strong castles that Edward the First had erected, and most of the "English towns,"<sup>2</sup> as they were called, submitted to him. He drove out the Bishop of Bangor, and appointed another in his

<sup>1</sup> This was the name then given to the confidential attendants and humble friends of kings and great men, to whom important private affairs, that it might not be safe to write about, were often intrusted by word of mouth. The Welsh were much valued for their faithfulness in such matters.

<sup>2</sup> Among these were Brecknock, Caermarthen, Montgomery, and Radnor. Edward the First peopled these entirely with English, on whom he conferred very important privileges. No Welshman was to reside in them above the rank of a servant, and any burgess who married a Welshwoman thereby forfeited his freedom, and was to be expelled. Glyndwr's capture of these towns broke up the system. A feeble attempt was made to restore it in the reign of Henry the Seventh, and the Marchers retained something of their old oppressive power for a century longer.

Scotland and France.

The latter distracted by Quarrels.

stead, and he remained unconquered during the whole of Henry's reign. At last he died, at the age of fifty [A.D. 1415], at the time that Henry the Fifth had begun a treaty with him, not deeming it advisable to leave so formidable an adversary behind him when he entered on his French wars. The Welsh then laid down their arms, but the Marchers<sup>a</sup> never afterward fully re-

<sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 109.

§ 14. Glyndwr abandoned the cause of the Earl of March after the death of Hotspur,<sup>b</sup> but it was then taken up by the Archbishop of York. The only result, however, was the execution of the archbishop and several of his associates [A.D. 1405], and the young earl remained a prisoner, in spite of several efforts to release him, during the whole of Henry's reign.

<sup>b</sup> § 9, p. 240.

§ 15. At this time Scotland and France were alike disturbed by civil commotions, their kings being both weak men who were tyrannized over by their ambitious relatives. Robert, Duke of Albany, the brother of the King of Scotland, plotted against and destroyed one of his nephews, and when the father endeavored to secure his only remaining son by sending him to France, the youth was captured on his passage by an English ship, and brought to Henry, who, though a truce existed, kept him a prisoner. When urged to let him depart, so that his education might be carried on, he replied: "My fair cousin need travel no further for that; for I can speak French." Charles the Sixth of France was even more helpless than Robert of Scotland,<sup>c</sup> and the contention of his kinsmen, the Dukes of Orleans and Burgundy, paved the way for the partial conquest of France, which was achieved by Henry's successor. In his day matters were not sufficiently advanced for the invasion that he had threatened; but he interfered in the quarrel, and gave his support first to one side and then to the other, according to his views of temporary advantage. But towards the close of his reign the rival dukes for a while forgot their differences and united against their dangerous allies, who, in revenge, ravaged Normandy before they withdrew, in the year 1412.

<sup>c</sup> § 29, p. 194.

§ 16. During the latter years of his life Henry suffered much from illness, and he had the mortification to learn that his eldest son seemed little inclined to wait for his death ere he should possess himself of the crown that he had so unjustly acquired. At length he fell into a fit whilst at his devotions before the shrine of



Death of the King.

His Family and Character.

Power of the People.

St. Edward,<sup>a</sup> in Westminster Abbey, and died a few days afterward. That event occurred on the 20th of March, 1413, when the king was in the forty-seventh year of his age and the fourteenth of his reign. His body was taken to Canterbury Cathedral, where it was laid by the side of his best beloved wife and the mother of his four sons and two daughters.

§ 17. Henry in his youth acquired vast estates by his marriage with Mary de Bohun, the heiress of the Earl of Hereford, but was left a widower at an early age. After he became king he married Joanna of Navarre [A.D. 1403], the widow of John, Duke of Brittany. She had no children by the king. She was an object of dislike to her stepson, Henry the Fifth, and was imprisoned by him. Henry had trained his sons to take an active part in public affairs, and the younger ones became valuable assistants to his successor in his wars. Thomas, Duke of Clarence, was the lieutenant in Ireland; John, Duke of Bedford, upheld the English rule in France; and Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, fought at Agincourt.

§ 18. Unquiet as it was, Henry's reign is remarkable for the rapid growth of popular privileges and the consequent decline of the royal prerogative. His parliament showed little confidence in him. They remonstrated freely on any subject that displeased them, forced him to dismiss favorite officers of his household who happened to be obnoxious to them, and obliged him to allow that to the Commons belonged exclusively the right of imposing taxes and controlling the public expenditure, and setting aside illegal grants. This was an important step toward the attainment of

popular freedom. As before noticed,<sup>b</sup> the Commons sometimes showed an extravagant jealousy of the church, and a desire to confiscate its possessions, but Archbishop Arundel defeated the project.

§ 19. The character of Henry may be clearly traced in his actions. Enterprising, and a seeker of popularity in his youth, he let no scruples of honor or conscience stand in his way when he had an end to attain, and he was equally unscrupulous and cruel in getting rid of even his most devoted adherents when once they had ceased to be useful to him. No ties of kindred could mitigate his cruelty. Several of the nobles put to death by him were very near connections. Not to mention King Richard, who was his first cousin, the Percys were his kinsmen, and the Earl of Huntingdon was his sister's husband. His usurpation was the

<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 77.

<sup>b</sup> § 10, p. 211.

Accession of Henry the Fifth.      His Antecedents.      Public expectations.

direct cause of the disastrous struggle known as the War of the Roses, by which the ancient English nobility were almost annihilated.

## CHAPTER XII.

REIGN OF HENRY THE FIFTH. [A.D. 1413 to 1422.]

§ 1. THE death of Henry of Bolingbroke was not regretted; but the accession of his son, Henry of Monmouth, was hailed with joy. No word was whispered concerning the claim of the young Earl of March,<sup>a</sup> now grown to manhood; and Henry was crowned in Westminster Abbey, on the 9th of April, 1413, with great pomp, and the noise of popular rejoicings, as Henry the Fifth. He was then only in the twenty-fifth year of his age, but showed great vigor of mind and body. He had said at the death-bed of his father, when that monarch expressed some remorse for his usurpation,<sup>b</sup> “By your sword you won your crown, and by my sword will I keep it.” But he magnanimously ordered the body of the dead Richard the Second to be brought from its obscure tomb at Langley,<sup>c</sup> with funeral pomp, and buried in Westminster Abbey with those of the other monarchs of England. They were laid by the side of those of his “Good Queen Anne.”<sup>d</sup> He also released his rival, the Earl of March, from his captivity.<sup>e</sup>

§ 2. Henry had been employed in public life before he ascended the throne. He fought against Glyndwr, and was wounded in the battle of Shrewsbury.<sup>f</sup> He was lieutenant of Wales, and also warden of the Cinque Ports,<sup>g</sup> and though much of his work was no doubt done by his deputies, he must have been too fully employed to have much time to give to the riotous and dissipated conduct in which he is said to have indulged. He and his brother the Duke of Clarence were not friends, and the king their father is said to have considered this as a fortunate circumstance, as it prevented their uniting against him.

§ 3. During the first year of Henry's reign there was a significant



Persecution of the Lollards.    The King Conciliatory.    His claim to France.

popular commotion in London, in the interest of religious reform. While his first parliament was in session, placards appeared in London stating that there were one hundred thousand men ready to assert their freedom by force of arms if needful. The covert threat was attributed to the Lollards;<sup>a</sup> and the Archbishop of Canterbury accused Sir John Oldcastle (Lord Cobham), their leader, to the king. Oldcastle and Henry had been associates when the monarch was Prince of Wales, and instead of punishing his old friend he sent for him that he might try to bring him to different theological conclusions. But Oldcastle was as stout a theologian as he was a knight and soldier, and Henry failed. The king threatened. The knight retired to his estate. The Archbishop was allowed to issue a severe proclamation against the whole body of so-called heretics. Sir John laid a plan for securing the safety of his co-religionists by force of arms, but failed. Many arrests were made, and heads cut off, and bodies burned; and the prisons were filled with the poor Lollards, who were falsely accused of attempting to overthrow the Christian religion. Oldcastle escaped the terrible persecutions inflicted upon his friends through the power of the Archbishops of Canterbury, Arundel and Chicheley.

§ 4. When once in possession of the throne, Henry acted in a conciliatory manner to many whom his father's conduct had alienated. The son of Harry Hotspur<sup>b</sup> was recalled from Scotland and again made Earl of Northumberland, and the Earl of March was treated with such cordiality that he gave up all idea of the crown, and humbly served the Lancastrian princes in their French wars and as their lieutenant in Ireland. But though March was willing to forego his right, his friends were not, and Henry hastened to find full occupation for them by plunging into a war with France. This is said to have been the advice of Henry Chicheley, the famous Archbishop of Canterbury, and it was acted up to with success.

§ 5. At this time [A.D. 1414] the factions that had so long afflicted France were more infuriated against each other than they had been in his father's time, and their country was proportionably weakened. Henry resolved to claim his "inheritance," as he called the crown of France, and first sent an embassy demanding the restoration of the former English provinces, and asking a French princess in marriage. As he did not expect compliance,

Invasion of France.

English Fleet dispersed.

March toward Calais.

he set at once about collecting a large army, and he formed many alliances on the Continent. He also began a treaty with Glyndwr, but this was broken off in consequence of that chieftain's death.<sup>a</sup> At length there came a positive refusal from France, and Henry repaired to Southampton, where his fleet and army were assembled. Here occurred a tragedy which has never been fully explained. Richard, Earl of Cambridge, who had married the Earl of March's sister,<sup>1</sup> was accused of conspiring with Lord Scrope of Masham and Sir Thomas Grey against Henry's life, and, after a brief trial, they were all beheaded.

<sup>a</sup> § 13, p. 242.

§ 6. The fleet, numbering from 1,200 to 1,400 sailing vessels, hired from Holland and other seaboard countries, set sail a few days afterward, passed over to Harfleur, at the mouth of the Seine, and landed the troops [Aug. 13, 1414], who numbered about 30,000. The place was obstinately defended for more than a month, but was then obliged to surrender, as Henry had with him several cannons of very large size, called bombards, which, says his historian, "vomited from their fiery mouths vast quantities of stones, with a vehement explosion and a terrific and intolerable noise." Such large pieces, which the king had procured from Germany, with German gunners to work them, seem to have been novelties to the French, and almost every town that was attacked by them was taken. But though the siege lasted so short a time, sickness made great havoc in the English army, and reduced it to one-third of its original number.

§ 7. Henry very soon saw his fleet driven from before Harfleur by bad weather, and he therefore offered to resign his conquest if allowed to retire unmolested to Calais.<sup>b</sup> The French, however, had by this time assembled a force at least six times as large as his, and they would hear of nothing but unconditional surrender. Henry determined to die first; and leaving his cousin, the Earl of Dorset, to garrison Harfleur, he set off on his march for Calais. This was a desperate attempt, but the French at first contented themselves with harassing his march and guarding the fords of the rivers, and breaking down the bridges. So passed twelve days, when by a skilful night march he evaded their vigilance and crossed the river Somme, which was his greatest difficulty. The French then cut up the ordinary road

<sup>b</sup> § 13, p. 210.

<sup>1</sup> Their only son was Richard, Duke of York, the father of Edward VI.



The English at Agincourt.

Battle expected.

The English confident.

to Calais, and took up a position at Agincourt, where the two armies came in sight of each other on the night of the 24th of October, 1415. This was not very far from the famous field of

Crecy,<sup>a</sup> and the battle that followed greatly resembled  
<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 209.

that, except in being still more destructive to the French, who were so superior in number that they thought they could afford to neglect all the ordinary rules of warfare. But they were terribly undeceived.

§ 8. Henry sent out David Gam, a Welshman, who was Owen

Glyndwr's<sup>b</sup> brother-in-law, and belonged to the Eng-  
<sup>b</sup> § 12, p. 242.

lish party in Wales, to espy the force of the enemy, and he returned with the report that there were "enough to be killed, enough to be taken, and enough to run away." The king took this confident view, and to keep up the spirits of his followers he ordered his trumpets and drums to sound throughout the night. Their harmony was hardly interrupted by an attack, during a storm of wind and rain, from a body of French, led by Arthur of Brittany, the son of Joanna of Navarre, Henry's step-

mother,<sup>c</sup> who were speedily beaten off. Before the  
<sup>c</sup> § 17, p. 244.

morning dawned a strong party of archers was placed in ambush in advance of the English, who occupied a well-chosen position, and the king rode through their ranks, exhorting all to fight courageously, and telling them that England should never have to pay a ransom for him—he would conquer or die.

§ 9. The French, who had passed the night in idle mirth and boasting, and settling what ransoms they should exact from their expected prisoners, appear to have waited awhile in the morning, thinking that the English would send to treat for a surrender; but as this was not the case, their advanced guard set out about noon, on the 25th of October [A.D. 1415], and moved in a careless manner towards the king's camp. Here they found a strong *chevaux-de-frise*, and whilst preparing to remove it, they were assailed by tremendous flights of arrows not only from the archers in their front, but from those in ambush, who were now first perceived. A panic soon took the place of their former rash confidence, and they hastened back, throwing the rest of their army into dire confusion.

§ 10. It was now the turn of the English to become the assailants. Whilst the archers steadily pressed on in the centre of the line, the king with his knights and men-at-arms dashed at the squadrons where the banners of the French princes were displayed,

The Battle of Agincourt.

The English victorious.

and a furious hand-to-hand contest ensued. Henry was conspicuous from the crown on his helmet, and wherever he moved the fight was the fiercest. His young brother, the Duke of Gloucester, was wounded; and Henry, whilst standing over him to protect him, was brought on his knees by a sword-cut that split one of the jewels in his crown. His cousin, the Duke of York, was killed near him, his armor was battered and hacked, and at last twenty French knights, led by the Lord of Croy, charged in a compact body, having sworn on their swords<sup>1</sup> to capture or kill him. They were all killed instead. Whilst this was going on the Duke of Alençon, one of the French princes, joined in the fray; but he, after exchanging a blow or two with the king, was hurled from his horse and killed, though Henry cried out to spare his life.

§ 11. The battle had now lasted three hours. Seven French princes and 100 great nobles lay dead on the field, as well as 8,000 knights and gentlemen, but the loss among the common men was comparatively small, as the knights and nobles hurried forward, and thus sheltered them by becoming themselves mere targets for the English archers. The fall of the Duke of Alençon disheartened his knights, and they now fled from the field, followed by the rear guard, although it had not been engaged, and was, alone, more numerous than the English army. The prisoners taken were the Dukes of Bourbon and Orleans, Arthur of Brittany,<sup>a</sup> and more than 1,500 knights and nobles. Many of these were put to death after the battle had ceased, in consequence of an attack made on the baggage guard of the English by a party of French fugitives, led by Robinet de Borneville. This was at first thought to be a renewal of the action, and every man was ordered to kill his prisoners; but the order was reluctantly obeyed, and when Henry learnt the truth he commanded the slaughter to cease. He then rode along the field, thanking his men, and perceiving David Gam<sup>b</sup> lying dead, he dubbed him knight. The loss of the English, unlike that of the French, fell principally on the common men, 1,600 of whom were slain; but only a very few knights and nobles fell, among whom were the Duke of York and the Earl of Suffolk.

§ 12. Though Henry had inflicted this terrible blow on France,

<sup>1</sup> The hilt and guard formed a cross, which commonly served the purpose of a crucifix when such was not at hand.



Rejoicings in London.

Desires of the Emperor of Germany.

he was not able to follow it up; on the contrary, on the very next day he resumed his march to Calais, where he arrived in three days. After a brief halt there he passed over to Dover, carrying the chief captives in his own vessel. The day was stormy, and, says the chronicler, seemed to them not less terrible than the day of the battle; nor could they marvel enough at seeing that the king was as much at his ease in the tossing ship as if he had been on land. A triumphal entry into London followed, but Henry forbade any praises of his victory to be sung, neither would he allow, as his council wished, his helmet and armor, which bore many marks of battle on them, to be shown to the people. He acted ungenerously, however, in compelling his stepmother to be present at the rejoicings, although her son was a prisoner. She complained of this, and the result was that she was soon after accused of witchcraft, deprived of her dower lands, and imprisoned, and Henry only released her when on his own death-bed.

§ 13. The Emperor of Germany at this time [A.D. 1400–1419] was Sigismund, a bold and warlike prince, who had fought against the Turks, but had been defeated by them. His great desire was to unite the Christian princes against the common enemy, and he therefore visited England soon after Henry's return, hoping to bring about a peace between England and France, but he did not succeed. Henry accompanied him on his return as far as Calais, where he entered into an understanding with the Duke of Burgundy which greatly assisted his further operations. This French prince, who was known as John the Fearless, had murdered his rival, the Duke of Orleans, and now that the inheritor of that title was a prisoner, and the heir to the French throne was a youth of only twelve years of age, he had the hope of sharing the kingdom with his English ally. He, however, delayed openly declaring himself until Henry was again at the head of a fresh invading army.

§ 14. Whilst the new army was in preparation, the garrison of Harfleur made a destructive march into Normandy, but had some difficulty in regaining the town, where they were speedily besieged. They were relieved by the Duke of Bedford, and the Earl of Huntingdon also captured several large French and Genoese vessels; but this did not prevent the French landing in Portland, which was laid waste by fire. At length, in July, 1417, Henry passed over with a large force, and landing on the opposite bank to Harfleur, in the course of a few months he overran the greater part of Nor-

Henry's Kindness Rewarded.

France Submissive.

"Heir of France."

mandy, so that at the beginning of 1418 he held his royal court at Caen, and, as Duke of Normandy, confiscated the estates of all who refused to acknowledge him. Many of these he granted to his brothers and other leaders in his army, and by the close of the year his authority was fully established by the capture of Rouen, after a desperate siege of six months. To make their provisions hold out the longer, the French had, when winter came on, expelled the old men, the women, and children, and they would have perished of hunger had not Henry charitably fed them, particularly on Christmas-day, when he declared no Christian should starve, if he had the power to prevent it. This politic kindness being reported in the city, the populace rose upon the governor and compelled him to surrender, saying that the English king was the more merciful lord.

§ 15. Henry was now in the full tide of success. The Duke of Burgundy had got possession of Paris, as well as of many other places, and the Queen of France, Isabella of Bavaria, was base enough to support his projects against her own son Charles, who was styled the dauphin. But the youth, or his advisers, sought a conference with the duke at Montereau, and there <sup>a § 13, p. 250.</sup> John the Fearless<sup>a</sup> was in his turn treacherously murdered. His son, the young Duke of Burgundy, known as Philip the Good (less for his own virtues than as being less bad than his father), at once joined the English, and Paris and many other towns put themselves under the government of Henry, who soon after attained his end by means of a treaty with the queen and the duke; and on the 21st of May, 1420, the French parliament, bishops, barons, and people seemed to vie with each other in eagerness to acknowledge Henry as regent of France. Then he married [June 2, 1420] the French Princess Catherine, and was declared heir to the crown of France, the king's son, Charles, it was declared, having forfeited his right by his treachery to John the Fearless, Duke of Burgundy.

§ 16. In the beginning of the year 1421 Henry held his parliament at Rouen, when he ordered coins to be struck bearing his title as "Heir of France," and received the homage of his English lords for the Norman lands that he had bestowed on them. He then passed over to England, and had his queen crowned; but ere the rejoicings for this event were over he received news that showed that his conquest was not complete. The dauphin or crown prince



Revolt in France.

War renewed.

Death of the King.

of France, not caring to be disinherited through the intrigues of his mother, not only kept in arms, but procured the assistance of a body of knights and spearmen from Scotland. Their number, however, was small, and no danger was apprehended from them. The Duke of Clarence<sup>a</sup> had been left in command of the English forces during the king's absence, and he fell into the error of too much undervaluing his opponents. The consequence was, that hearing that they were in some force in Anjou, he hastened after them with his knights and horsemen only, attacked them without waiting for his archers, and was defeated and killed [March 22, 1421], with 2,000 of his followers, at Beaugé, by the united forces of the natives under the patriotic Lafayette.

§ 17. Henry, on hearing of this, again passed over to France, taking with him the young King of Scotland and several Scottish nobles. He hoped that their countrymen would forsake the cause of the dauphin when they saw their own king in the English camp. But they justly regarded him as a prisoner, and fought as stoutly as before, and Henry was guilty of the inexcusable cruelty of treating any who fell into his hands as traitors. Henry captured Dreux, but failed to take Orleans. He passed his Christmas in royal state at Paris; and early in the spring he besieged Meaux, which he captured after a desperate siege of three months. This was his last triumph. He was taken ill shortly afterward with some mysterious malady, and after languishing for a month at the royal palace of Vincennes, he died there on the last day of August, 1422, having possessed his title of "Heir of France" little more than two years. His body was brought to England with extraordinary pomp. The journey through France occupied many days, his funeral car being guarded by 500 knights in black armor, and 300 lighted torches being borne before it, with banners and pennons innumerable. The churchmen chanted the funeral service as the body was borne over London bridge; and his burial in Westminster Abbey was solemnized with a magnificence scarcely to be credited. His remains were interred near the shrine of Edward the Confessor,<sup>b</sup> and for years reverence and honor were paid at his tomb, "as if it were certain that he was a saint in heaven."

§ 18. Though boundless ambition was the great feature of Henry's character, and he was gifted with such skill and courage as made his reign one series of triumphs, he was something more

<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 244.<sup>b</sup> § 17, p. 78.

The dying King's Injunctions.

Duke of Bedford Regent of France.

than a mere conqueror. His character is stained by his execution of his Scottish prisoners;<sup>a</sup> but at other times he showed both clemency and liberality, and was thus able to conciliate many of his father's opponents. A proof of his wisdom remains in the instructions that he issued to his army invading France, for the prevention of all wanton havoc; and in the directions that he gave for the protection of the unarmed population he showed as much humanity as would be expected in modern times.

---

## CHAPTER XIII.

REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH. [A.D. 1422 TO 1461.]

§ 1. THE death-bed of Henry the Fifth was attended by his brothers the Dukes of Bedford and Gloucester, as well as by two of his most famous captains, the Earls of Salisbury and Warwick. He directed that the Duke of Bedford should be regent of France, and the Duke of Gloucester protector of England, and that his infant son, Henry of Windsor, should be placed in the personal charge of his great-uncle, Thomas, Duke of Exeter. He also exhorted them to study above all things to keep the friendship of the Duke of Burgundy, never to make peace with the dauphin, and not to set at liberty any of the noble French prisoners taken at Agincourt<sup>b</sup> until his son had reached man's estate. Only the first of his injunctions was carried into effect. Bedford, as long as he lived, kept a firm hold on his brother's conquests in France, though he was not able to extend them; but the Duke of Gloucester ran counter to all the instructions that he had received, and occupied himself far more in struggles to make himself independent of his council than in furnishing the needful supplies for the war in which Bedford, Salisbury, and Warwick were engaged with the adherents of the dauphin. This neglect of his duties was strongly opposed by Cardinal Beaufort, Gloucester's uncle, and a hostile feeling sprang up between them which lasted as long as they both lived.

§ 2. King Charles of France died in a couple of months after his royal son-in-law, when the dauphin at once took the title of Charles the Seventh, and was crowned at Poitiers; but the territory then



## New King of France.

## Infamous Conduct of a Duke.

in his possession was so small that the English party styled him, in scorn, not king of France, but king of Bourges, which was his chief town. The French were so divided in opinion that his main strength consisted in his Scottish auxiliaries, but these were almost entirely destroyed when his armies were defeated by the Duke of Bedford, with much loss, at Crevant and at Verneuil, in the summer of 1424. His little court being also disturbed by factions, his cause was by the year 1425 reduced to its lowest condition. But then the imprudence of the Duke of Gloucester gave quite another turn to affairs, by causing a quarrel with the powerful Duke of Burgundy, though it was not until several years afterward that that prince formally renounced his alliance with the English.

§ 3. Humphrey, who strangely has received the title of “the good Duke of Gloucester,” seems as little entitled to such a name as can well be imagined, for his actions all show an utter want of principle. Jaqueline, Countess of Holland, a girl of sixteen, married her cousin the Duke of Brabant, but soon afterward, on the persuasion of Gloucester, she left him and came to England. Here Gloucester, who coveted her estates, persuaded her that her marriage was unlawful, and could be set aside on account of relationship. He soon married her himself, in spite of the urgent remonstrances of his uncle the Cardinal and the rest of the clergy; and then, instead of sending some troops that had been raised to

assist his brother Bedford<sup>a</sup> to France, he led them into Holland, with the view of conquering the country. The Duke of Burgundy,<sup>b</sup> who was the cousin of

Jaqueline, in vain exhorted her to return to her husband; and when Gloucester appeared he sent troops against him, and forced him to retreat with disgrace. He left his pretended wife behind him, who was imprisoned by Burgundy, her feudal superior. Her second marriage was pronounced illegal, her estates were forfeited, and she at length died in poverty, the victim of “the good duke.” He afterwards married Eleanor Cobham, a woman of bad character, who also died in prison, being charged with endeavoring to kill the king by magic; a thing that no one thought impossible to be accomplished in those days, and therefore as wicked in intent as any ordinary murder.

§ 4. By the interposition of the Duke of Bedford, the Duke of Burgundy was induced to overlook the shameful conduct of Gloucester; but it was seen that he was no longer a cordial ally of

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 253.

<sup>b</sup> § 1, p. 253.

Siege of Orleans.

Jeanne Darc or "Maid of Orleans."

Her Conquests.

England, and the hopes of the French rose in proportion. They also occasionally gained a slight success over small parties of the English, and they held such towns as remained to them very resolutely. One of these was Orleans, which Henry himself had failed to take.<sup>a</sup> The city was besieged in the autumn of the year 1428, by the Earl of Salisbury, but he was killed by a cannon-ball. The siege was continued by the Earl of Suffolk. The French, meanwhile, in endeavoring to cut off a convoy of provisions for the besiegers, were totally defeated at Roveroy. As it was in the time of Lent, these provisions were principally fish, whence the fight is known as the Battle of the Herrings. At last, at the end of April, 1429, the city was on the point of surrendering through famine, when a deliverer little expected by either party appeared, and the English cause became hopeless, though the war lingered on for twenty years more.

§ 5. That deliverer was a young peasant girl of eighteen, named Jeanne Darc (not D'Arc, as it is commonly written), a native of the eastern part of France called Lorraine. She had always delighted in listening to legends of the Virgin, in one of which was a prophecy that a maiden would be the savior of her country from great perils. Jeanne now believed herself to be that destined deliverer. Voices from invisible beings commanded her to enter at once upon the work. Making her way to the young king's court at Chinon, she entreated him to place her in command of an army. She was first treated as a lunatic, and was then tried as a sorceress. She was acquitted, and was clad in armor. With a consecrated banner in one hand, and a consecrated sword in the other, she rode at the head of ten thousand men, under Dunois, and dispersed the English besieging Orleans [May 8, 1429], whose leader, Suffolk, on retiring, said: "It is useless to fight against a witch;" for the English verily believed her to be a sorceress.

§ 6. The French followed up their advantage. They soon defeated and made prisoners of the Earls of Suffolk and Talbot, two of their most formidable adversaries, and carried their king in triumph to Rheims, which at once surrendered to them, though strongly garrisoned by Burgundians. Here Charles was again crowned, Jeanne, now known as the Maid of Orleans, assisting at the ceremony. Considering her task accomplished, she now wished to return to her home, but she was too useful to be spared. Many of the strong towns now drove out their English or Burgun-



Fate of Jeanne Darc.

English Bitterness.

France Ravaged.

dian garrisons, but they were soon besieged by either Bedford or Burgundy. Among these was Compiègne, and Jeanne repaired to it to assist in its defence.

§ 7. The Maid's good fortune, however, now forsook her. She was captured whilst heading a sortie, and the Duke of Burgundy sold her to the English for a stipulated sum of money. They cruelly resolved on revenge, and handed the poor trembling girl to a court of ignorant and superstitious French ecclesiastics, with a bishop at their head, who condemned her to be burnt alive as a witch and a woman who had worn men's clothes—meaning armor. Surrounded by human wolves, in the form of English knights and French priests, that spotless girl was consumed in the market-place at Rouen on the 30th of May, 1431. Her ashes were cast into the Seine and borne to the sea. No voice, not even that of her king, whose crown she had won for him, was lifted in her favor until ten years afterward, when Charles ventured to call her a martyr.<sup>1</sup> Long years afterwards a statue was erected to her memory on the spot where she perished; and only a few years ago Pope Pius the Ninth canonized her as a saint.

§ 8. To try to stem the rising feeling in favor of Charles, Bedford carried his young nephew over to Paris, and had him crowned king of that realm in November, 1431, though he was only in the eleventh year of his age. But the solemn farce was ineffectual. It was soon seen that to hope to really subdue and hold the whole of France was a mere delusion. Conferences therefore were held, but they did not procure peace, as neither party would make any considerable concession to the other. Bedford's death, which occurred in 1435, soon after a quarrel with the Duke of Burgundy, was followed by the capture of Paris by the French, and the siege of Calais by Philip the Good, and a rising in Normandy. The Duke of York, who had succeeded Bedford as governor, and desired the English crown for his own family, ravaged the country up to the gates of Paris, and Gloucester drove his former rival from Calais. The Duke of Burgundy's territories were, in turn, invaded, and he was soon obliged to agree to a truce, when conferences for a peace with the French were again opened, but again without success.

<sup>1</sup> So bitter was the feeling of the English against Jeanne Darc that they caused a poor woman to be burnt to death in Paris for merely saying that the heroine acted under the inspiration of God.

France freed from Invaders.

The English lose Normandy.

§ 9. For the next ten years [1439–1449] affairs took a course that steadily tended to free France from its invaders. The governors of the English possessions were repeatedly changed; but in spite of the valor of the Duke of York, the Earl of Warwick, and Lord Talbot, those possessions grew less and less every year. At last a truce was concluded with France [April, 1444], which was renewed from time to time, being meant to be used as a means for securing Normandy, if nothing more, when war should again break out. The truce was negotiated by the Earl of Suffolk, and so distasteful had war now become that it would seem he was empowered to take any step that he thought necessary to preserve peace. Accordingly, during its continuance he arranged a marriage for the king with a French princess, and to obtain the consent of King Charles he promised to give up the provinces of Anjou and Maine, which he thought of much less consequence than Normandy. The lady was Margaret of Anjou, the daughter of René, who was nominally king of Naples, Sicily, and Jerusalem, but possessed none of them, and was in reality a mere dependent on his kinsman the King of France, to whom he made over all that Suffolk abandoned. The garrisons of these provinces, being dismissed without pay, ravaged the adjoining country, on which the French king, declaring the truce broken, invaded Normandy, and very speedily completed its conquest, in the year 1449.

§ 10. Henry the Fifth had captured almost every town that he attacked with his great bombards, which threw heavy stones; but since his time Master Jean, a countryman of Jeanne Darc, had discovered that guns of far less size would do much more mischief if loaded with iron balls; and his discovery did quite as much to liberate France as all her courage and patriotism. The French had with them many of these cannons, which were so small that they could easily be removed from place to place, and the shot from them forced towns to surrender in a few days that had formerly held out for months against the victor of Agincourt. The Duke of Somerset was the governor when Normandy was lost, and he was accused of defending Caen too feebly, being alarmed for the safety of his wife and children, who were within its walls.

§ 11. With the king's marriage with Margaret of Anjou, in the year 1445, an entire change in his reign took place. He had never as yet interfered in any way in public affairs (for which his



Queen Margaret and her Influence.

Government in England and Ireland.

youth was a sufficient reason), and nothing had occurred beyond the ceaseless quarrels of his uncles, and the gradual loss of his father's conquests. Indeed he did not, even at the age of twenty-four years, possess the spirit of a man, or show sufficient ability to take care of his own affairs. It was hoped that his spirited queen might in some degree supply his deficiencies. And so she did, but not happily for the realm.

§ 12. Margaret was a woman of beauty and spirit, and she at once took the part in politics that her husband should have assumed. She chose for her adviser the Earl of Suffolk (to whom her marriage was owing), and being received with great favor by

the Cardinal,<sup>a</sup> she was of course hated by the Duke  
 § 1. p. 253. of Gloucester, who set himself to work to render her

and her minister (who was invidiously styled her favorite) unpopular. This he failed to do. Suffolk was publicly thanked in parliament for bringing about the truce with France; and soon afterward Gloucester was seized at a parliament at Bury St. Edmund's on a charge of treason. Whether he was guilty or not was never proved, as he was found dead in his bed before he could be brought to trial. Cardinal Beaufort died in less than two months afterward. Suffolk was then made a duke; but all his popularity came to a sudden close when the loss of Normandy was known. He was impeached by the House of Commons, and sentenced to banishment, but was seized at sea [A.D. 1450] and beheaded, without any form of trial, by order of the constable of the Tower. That constable was John Holland, Duke of Exeter, a man of violent character, who is said to have devised the rack to torture his prisoners; whence that fearful instrument was popularly known as "The Duke of Exeter's daughter."

§ 13. The Duke of York, who had been one of the most successful of the English governors of Normandy, expressed great anger at the loss of the province, and he was therefore sent, in a kind of honorable banishment, to Ireland, as lord lieutenant [A.D. 1449], where he gained the favor of all parties by his wise and firm government. He was the grandson of that Roger Mortimer, Earl of March, who had been declared heir to the crown in the

time of Richard the Second,<sup>b</sup> but up to this time he  
<sup>b</sup> § 16, p. 223. had served the Lancastrian king, and seemed to have

forgotten his own unquestionable right to the throne. He had friends, however, who were not likely to undervalue the advan-

An Aspirant for the British Crown. The Nevilles. Jack Cade's Insurrection.

tage of having a king of their own choosing on the throne, and they took their measures accordingly, though at first they felt obliged to proceed very cautiously. They knew that it would be useless to bring his claims directly forward, as King Henry was a great favorite with the people, from his merciful character and his pious, blameless life. They therefore, instead, confined themselves to loud complaints of the "evil government" of the queen and her ministers (first Suffolk, then Somerset), and everywhere pointed to the duke's rule in Ireland as showing that he alone was the suitable man to assist their dear lord the king, and preserve his realm from the traitors who had caused  
the loss of France.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 257.

§ 14. Foremost among these friends were Richard Neville the father, and Richard Neville the son, both men of great ability. The father was a grandson of John of Gaunt, and had become Earl of Salisbury by marrying the daughter of the earl who was killed at Orleans.<sup>b</sup> The Duke of York was his brother-in-law. The son had married the heiress of  
the Earl of Warwick, and received that title about the same time when his uncle York was sent to Ireland. Warwick, afterwards so well known as "the Kingmaker," though quite a young man, was even more active and energetic than his father. His wife's great riches enabled him to keep a larger train of dependants than most other nobles of his time, whilst his courtesy and cheerful manner to the poor, aided by lavish hospitality, made him a kind of King of the Commons.

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 254.

§ 15. York remained in Ireland whilst his friends labored in his cause and their own, and Suffolk became more and more unpopular. He was banished and put to death; but even this did not allay the discontent, for in less than a month afterward there occurred a formidable rising of the people in Kent, who assembled on Blackheath, under the command of one Jack Cade, an Irishman "of goodly stature and pregnant wit," who pretended to be a kinsman of the Duke of York, and demanded the redress of many grievances. They met with a haughty refusal, and an order to disperse. They retired to Seven Oaks, where they defeated and killed Sir Humphrey Stafford, who was sent against them. They next repaired to London, where they beheaded Lord Say and Sele, the treasurer, who had been a devoted adherent of the Duke of Suffolk. Then their leader



Preparations for Civil War.

The last English possession in France.

repaired to the London stone, and striking it with his sword, exclaimed, "Now is Mortimer lord of this city!" This name, Mortimer, alluded to the Duke of York, and the insurrection had the desired effect of preparing the way for his claiming the crown at the first favorable opportunity. The rebels were at length got out of London, after a fierce fight on the bridge, and they then dispersed on promise of pardon; but their leader was killed a few days afterward in Sussex.

§ 16. Scarcely had this commotion subsided when the Duke of Somerset succeeded to Suffolk's place in the direction of affairs, and soon became quite as unpopular. He already bore the blame of the loss of Normandy, and now, whilst he ruled at home, Gascony, the sole remaining province, which had been held by England for more than 400 years, was overrun by the French. Enraged at this, the Duke of York left his government in Ireland, summoned his friends, and took up arms, insisting that Somerset should be brought to trial. This was promised; but when, in consequence, York had dismissed his forces, he was treacherously thrown into prison. A public clamor caused his speedy release. He then retired to his strong castle of Wigmore, in the Welsh marches, where he remained quietly collecting his strength for another struggle.

§ 17. In the mean time the famous Lord Talbot was sent to reconquer Gascony; but after capturing Bordeaux he was abandoned by the Gascons, who had asked for his help, and was defeated and killed by the French. Of all the English conquests, Calais<sup>a</sup> only remained in the year 1453.

<sup>a</sup> § 13, p. 210. Scarcely had this evil news arrived when the king fell ill, and it was found absolutely necessary to appoint a "Protector." This post, by common accord, was given to the Duke of York. Somerset was at once deprived of his various offices, and sent to the Tower on a charge of treason; but the king soon recovered, when he revoked York's commission and recalled Somerset. An attempt was made to reconcile the two potent nobles, but it was in vain, and the first battle of the War of the Roses, as it is known in history, speedily followed.

§ 18. The captainship of Calais, which was a very important post, was one of the offices that had been taken from Somerset and bestowed on York, who, according to his patent, was to hold it for seven years; but on the king's recovery he was deprived of

## Civil War in England.

it. York now took up arms and marched towards London; Somerset set forward to meet him, taking the king with him. The armies, which were of nearly equal strength, met at St. Alban's [May 22, 1455], when, after a desperate fight in the streets, the Yorkists prevailed. The Duke of Somerset, the Earl of Northumberland, Lord Stafford, Lord Clifford, and about 5,000 more were killed, including several of the king's household, and he himself was wounded in the throat by an arrow. The loss of the Yorkists was very much less. A parliament soon followed, when a general pardon was granted. The captainship of Calais was given to Warwick, and on the king again falling ill, the Duke of York was a second time named Protector. This, however, endured a shorter time than before. The king on his recovery again revoked the duke's commission, and the Yorkist party repaired to their estates, where they remained for a while, taking no part in public affairs. The young Duke of Somerset succeeded to his father's place in the confidence of the queen, and she had an able general in the Duke of Buckingham (grandson of the Duke of Gloucester in the time of Richard the Second,<sup>a</sup> and the cousin of Sir Humphrey Stafford, who was killed at Seven Oaks), who had long served in the French wars.

§ 19. Whilst the country was thus distracted by civil dissension the French availed themselves of its weakness. They landed on several parts of the English coast [A.D. 1457], and plundered and burnt Sandwich, then one of the principal ports of the realm. The murmurs at this public disgrace at last compelled the hostile parties to profess a reconciliation, and accordingly on Lady-day (March 25), in the year 1458, the chiefs repaired to St. Paul's, and were there publicly "made friends." The Duke of York led the queen by the hand, and the rest followed in order, a Yorkist and a Lancastrian walking together; "but though their bodies were joined hand in hand," says the old chronicler, "their hearts were far asunder." The citizens of London kept an armed watch to prevent the retainers of the different nobles from falling to blows; but this could not extend to the court, where the life of the Earl of Warwick was endangered in a sudden quarrel which the queen was thought to have provoked.

§ 20. Whilst Warwick was one day at the palace, a servant of his was attacked and wounded by one of the royal cooks, and called loudly for help. Warwick, who always declared that his



## War of the White and Red Roses.

## The Yorkists Dispersed.

meanest retainer was as dear to him as a brother, hastened to the rescue, when he was assailed by the whole body of cooks and scullions, and had some difficulty in cutting his way through them, carrying his wounded comrade with him. An attempt was made to represent the affray as a mere accident, common enough in those times, but the Yorkists believed that it was part of a plot against their lives, and left the court in haste.

§ 21. A renewal of the war was now seen to be inevitable, and the whole country became divided into the two factions of the White and the Red Rose. The first was the badge of the Yorkists, who were most powerful in the North (though the Percys were there their opponents), in the Welsh marches, in Kent, and in London; they also had possession of Calais, with a navy in its port. The Lancastrian badge was the Red Rose, and they were the strongest party in the centre and west of England. These badges

<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 260. gave the name of "War of the Roses" <sup>a</sup> to the conflicts in England at that period.

§ 22. A year passed in these preparations, by which time the Duke of York had gathered a large army around him at Ludlow, many of them being veteran soldiers brought from Calais by Warwick. The Earl of Salisbury, on his way to join them, defeated and killed [Sept. 1459] the Lancastrian leader, Lord Audley, at Blore-heath, in Staffordshire; but the queen raised a new army, under the Dukes of Somerset and Buckingham, and marched with them herself to Ludlow. Sir Andrew Trollope, one of the knights from Calais, went over to the royal army, when the duke's forces were seized with a panic, and dispersed upon a promise of pardon. The leaders fled, some to Ireland, some to Calais, and in a parliament that was held shortly after, at Coventry [Nov. 20, 1459], they were all attainted.

§ 23. But, though thus suddenly dispersed, the Yorkists had no intention of giving up the contest. Those in Calais not only repulsed an attack by the Duke of Somerset, but, having ships at their command, came over to Sandwich and seized Lord Rivers, who was there fitting out a fleet against them. They in fact became pirates, captured any ships that they met with, and extorted ransoms from Lancastrians who dwelt near the coast; and in the summer of 1460 they landed at Sandwich by the invitation of the people, who joined them in crowds. They entered London in triumph, the queen and her friends fleeing before them. At

Duke of York claims the Crown.

His Fall.

Perils of the Queen.

Northampton the fugitives were overtaken and totally defeated. The Duke of Buckingham, the queen's general, was killed, the king was taken prisoner, and the queen fled with her young son, a child of five years old, to Scotland.

§ 24. The Duke of York now returned from Ireland and formally laid claim to the crown. His right could not be denied; but no one wished to deal harshly with the meek king, who, in his simplicity, pleaded that as his father and grandfather had been kings, it would be unreasonable to take the royal title from him. The parliament acted in this spirit, agreeing that he should retain the crown for his life, but that the Duke of York should succeed him, and should administer the government in the mean time. Henry, whose soul shrank from war and bloodshed, willingly accepted this arrangement, but his queen would not hear of the disherison of her son. She raised a fresh army in the north by the help of the Percys, and when the Duke of York marched to oppose her, he was defeated and killed at Wakefield. The spiteful queen caused his head to be raised over a gate at York, with a paper crown upon it; and with real blood-thirstiness she pursued his family. His youngest son, the Earl of Rutland, a youth of seventeen, was murdered in cold blood by Lord Clifford, whose father had been killed at St. Alban's; and the Earl of Salisbury and several other noble prisoners were beheaded the next day at Pontefract.

§ 25. The queen now marched towards London, with an army of fierce northern men; but ere she reached it another battle had taken place at Mortimer's Cross [Feb. 1, 1461], near the Yorkist castle of Wigmore, where Edward, Earl of March, and the young Duke of York defeated the Earl of Pembroke (who was the half-brother of King Henry), and revenged the death of his father and uncle by beheading many of his prisoners on the field. The queen, undaunted by this mishap, pushed on, defeated the Earl of Warwick at St. Alban's, and rescued King Henry from his custody. The citizens of London, however, partly from favor to the House of York and partly from fear of plunder, refused to admit her within their walls, and she was obliged to retire to Yorkshire, taking her husband with her.

§ 26. The young Duke of York, who had marched for London immediately after his victory, was joyfully received. His title was explained to the citizens assembled in St. John's Fields by Lord Falconbridge [March 1, 1461], a Neville and one of his



The young Duke of York made King.

Henry's Restoration and Death.

uncles, and accepted by them. On the following day he went to Westminster, where he was acknowledged as king by such peers, prelates, and chief citizens as could be hastily assembled, and who, of course, belonged to the Yorkist party. His solemn installation, on the 4th of March, in Westminster Abbey, when he took the title of Edward the Fourth, brought the reign of the feeble Henry to a close, though he lived many years afterward; and the new king had several fierce battles to fight before he could feel himself safely established on the throne.

§ 27. Henry was restored by the Earl of Warwick in 1470, but his seven months' reign was merely nominal. He died in the Tower, about the end of May, 1471, very shortly after the death of his son at Tewkesbury. His piety and charity endeared him to his subjects, and his sufferings caused him to be popularly regarded as a saint; but he was quite unfit for the position of a ruler, and his long reign was one continued scene of factious quarrels at home, and loss and humiliation abroad. Unlike his father and grandfather, he was of a weak and feeble body and a timorous nature, which exposed him to the ill-concealed contempt of his warlike nobles, who required a strong hand to keep them in order.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

REIGN OF EDWARD THE FOURTH. [A.D. 1461 to 1483.]

§ 1. THE new king, the eldest surviving son of Richard Duke of York,<sup>a</sup> was only in his twentieth year when he came to the throne, on the 4th of March, 1461; but in decision of character and celerity of action he was equal to any veteran soldier. He was not allowed to stay in his capital to enjoy the pageant and festivity of a coronation; but in a week after he had been received into London he was on his march against the Lancastrians, and before the end of a month he gave them a terrible overthrow at Towton, in Yorkshire, when many of his chief opponents were left dead on the field, others were taken and executed, and Henry and his queen, with their son, were compelled to seek refuge in Scotland, surrendering the town of Ber-

<sup>a</sup> § 24, p. 263.

Civil War.

Warwick and his Kinsmen.

Lord of the Isles.

wick as the price of their entertainment. Edward followed them as far as Newcastle, and then returning to London he was crowned, on the 28th June, 1461, less than a year having elapsed since he had landed at Sandwich. But in the interval, short as it was, no less than five desperate battles had been fought, at such widely different places as Northampton, Wakefield, Mortimer's Cross, St. Alban's, and Towton.

§ 2. The Lancastrians were now crushed in the field, and attainder and confiscation followed. The parliament declared the Lancastrian princes to have been usurpers, and that the late Duke of York had been "in his life very king in right of the realm of England." And they also declared that all whom the new king "held or reputed for his rebels or enemies" should lie at his mercy. He took full advantage of this, and transferred lands and privileges and offices to such an extent to his active supporters, that hundreds of rich men who were only suspected of favoring the Lancastrian cause were reduced to poverty, whilst the knights and nobles that fell into his hands were executed without mercy. The Earl of Warwick<sup>a</sup> and his kin reaped the full benefit of all these changes. Warwick himself had<sup>a</sup> § 14, p. 259. succeeded to his father's earldom of Salisbury, and desired no higher title; he was therefore rewarded with numerous estates taken from the Percys and others, the grants to him amounting to as much as £200,000, or \$1,000,000 a year of our present money, in gold. Of Warwick's brothers, one was made Earl of Kent; another, Archbishop of York and Lord Chancellor; and a third, Lord Montagu, whose success in the field soon won for him the earldom of Northumberland.

§ 3. At this time the King of Scotland (James the Third) was a child, and the regents professed themselves unable to give any effectual support to King Henry, although they were quite able to keep Berwick. Edward, in return, intrigued with the Lord of the Isles (the Hebrides<sup>b</sup>) and other Scottish nobles, with the view of partitioning the country between himself and them. Queen Margaret<sup>c</sup> passed over to France, and by the promise of delivering up Calais if it should<sup>c</sup> § 11, p. 25. ever be in her power, procured a small body of French troops. They were, however, shipwrecked on the coast of Northumberland. She with difficulty escaped into Scotland, and the Lancastrian cause then appeared so utterly hopeless that even the Duke of



Queen Margaret invades England.

End of the War of the Roses.

Somerset abandoned it, and earned his pardon by surrendering the strong castle of Bamborough in 1463.

§ 4. Margaret, however, was not daunted. In the course of a year she had gained fresh troops from France, and when, in the spring of 1464, she again appeared in England, Bamborough, Alnwick, and other castles were surrendered to her, and Somerset, the Percys, and most of her northern adherents again joined her. The Scots and French who accompanied her plundered the country most mercilessly, and the rising appeared so serious that Edward sent

Warwick<sup>a</sup> and his brother Montagu against them by land, whilst he prepared a fleet at Lynn which was

meant to retaliate on Scotland. But before he could sail he received the news that Montagu had defeated the Lancastrians, first at Hedgley Moor and then at Hexham, killing or capturing the principal leaders. The queen fled with her son to Flanders, and King Henry repaired to Lancashire, where he lived for more than two years hidden among his friends, but was then betrayed, and brought to London a prisoner. Somerset and Sir Ralph Grey, who had surrendered Bamborough, were executed. Warwick recovered Berwick, and ravaged the Scottish border as far as Galloway; whilst the terror of Edward's fleet obliged the Scots to bind themselves to give no further countenance to the Lancastrians.

§ 5. The king was now apparently firmly settled on the throne; but a marriage that he entered into gave deep offence not only to his brothers Clarence and Gloucester, who were youths of a spirit as aspiring as his own, but to his especial champion, Warwick. The earl had been sent abroad to treat for marriage with Bona of Savoy, the sister of the French queen, and the proffer had been accepted, when he learnt that the king had, in his absence, secretly married Elizabeth Grey (whose maiden name was Woodville), the widow of a knight who had been killed at St. Alban's fighting on the Lancastrian side, to which party all her family belonged. Her

mother was Jaqueline of Flanders, the widow of the Duke of Bedford,<sup>b</sup> and her father was that Richard

Woodville, Lord Rivers, who had been captured at Sandwich by the Yorkists from Calais when fitting out a fleet against them.<sup>c</sup>

§ 6. The new queen had five brothers and five sisters, all of whom she brought to court with her, as well as her father, her mother, and her two sons; and the king was so lavish of his favors

The New Queen's Family.    Warwick's Generosity.    His defence of the King.

to them that those who had placed him on the throne regarded themselves both injured and insulted. Lord Rivers was made an earl, and his eldest grandson a marquis; but still more offence was given by the means taken to enrich the new-comers, by forcing wealthy heirs and heiresses into marriage with them. Thomas, the queen's son, though only thirteen, was married to the infant daughter of the Duke of Exeter, who was the king's niece; John, one of her brothers, a youth of eighteen, was forced as a husband on the rich dowager duchess of Norfolk, who had been a widow for thirty years. Wealthy marriages were made for all her sisters (one became Duchess of Buckingham); but, worst of all, the daughter of Lord Scales, who was esteemed the richest heiress in the kingdom, was given to Anthony, another brother, though she was attached to the young Duke of Clarence, and was his promised bride. Gloucester, who was of a far more vehement and decided character than Clarence, warmly supported his brother's cause. Warwick and his kinsmen joined the youths, and in a short time the court was rent by the factions of the Nevilles<sup>a</sup> and the Woodvilles. <sup>a</sup> § 14, p. 259.

§ 7. Warwick was an especial object of dislike to the queen and her kinsmen, who were all poor, and bent only on making money, whilst he was the richest subject in the kingdom, and of a liberal disposition, so that wherever he had an estate there he fed the poor. And when he came to London, the chronicler says that any one who chose might repair daily to his kitchen, and not only refresh himself, but carry away as much boiled or roast meat for his family as he could bear off upon his long dagger. No wonder, then, that we hear of six oxen being consumed at a meal.

§ 8. Edward endeavored to destroy this influence by attempting to depress the Nevilles. He threatened to resume the vast grants that he had made to them,<sup>b</sup> took the chancellor's seal from the archbishop, and began to give <sup>b</sup> § 2, p. 265. hopes to the Percys that Lord Montagu should be made to surrender their earldom. But he did not know the energetic men that he had to deal with, until those who had made him king had unmade him.

§ 9. Warwick's first step was to take his eldest daughter, Isabel, over to Calais, where they were joined by Clarence, when the young people were married [A.D. 1460] by the displaced archbishop. They then returned to England, assembled an army in the north,



Warwick and Queen Margaret.

Restoration of King Henry.

and having defeated the royal troops at Edgecote, captured and beheaded the queen's father and his son John, as well as William Herbert, who had been recently made Earl of Pembroke by the influence of the Woodvilles. Another rising, however, having been suppressed by the king, Warwick and Clarence went to

France, and were reconciled to Margaret of Anjou<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 265.

by promising to restore King Henry to his throne. As a proof of his good faith, Warwick married his daughter Anne to the young Prince Edward, in the year 1470.

§ 10. But now Clarence became dissatisfied, as he wished to become king himself, and therefore he secretly sent to his brother Edward, assuring him of his intention to rejoin him at the first opportunity. This was unknown to Warwick, and they landed together at Dartmouth in the autumn of 1470. Margaret and her son Edward were to follow with more troops, but bad weather detained them until the next spring, and they arrived too late to be of any service. The Duke of Exeter, who was Edward's brother-in-law, Edmund Duke of Somerset, and John Earl of Oxford, who had each lost a father and a brother in the war, joined them, with the people of the west country, who were generally favorers of the Lancastrian cause.

§ 11. Edward prepared to march against them, but found himself suddenly deserted by Lord Montagu,<sup>b</sup> and was

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 266.

obliged to seek refuge in Flanders, with the Duke of Burgundy, who was his brother-in-law. His brother the Duke of Gloucester, his brother-in-law Lord Scales, and his favorite, Lord Hastings, accompanied him, but he had very few others with him, and they narrowly escaped capture by pirates on their passage. His queen took sanctuary at Westminster, and there, very soon afterward, her eldest son was born, who became the unhappy Edward the Fifth. Warwick and Clarence marched to London

<sup>c</sup> § 27, p. 264.

without an hour's delay, released King Henry from the Tower,<sup>c</sup> and conducted him in solemn procession to St. Paul's, where he returned thanks for his restoration; but Warwick took care to keep all real power in his own hands.

§ 12. A parliament was held early in the year 1471, when of course the Yorkists were attainted and the Lancastrians restored. The crown was settled anew on King Henry and his son, with only a distant chance of succession to Clarence, who grew more and more dissatisfied daily, and ceased not to urge his brother to re-

## Edward of York's triumphant Entrance into London.

turn. This Edward soon did, the Duke of Burgundy having supplied him with money and ships, and 2,000 soldiers, among whom were some who were armed with hand-guns (then a new invention), which proved as serviceable against the archers as rifles when opposed to flint-lock muskets at the present day. He landed at Ravenspur, at the mouth of the Humber, the same spot as Henry of Bolingbroke had arrived at;<sup>a</sup> and, like him, he scrupled not to take an oath that he had no design <sup>a § 23, p. 266.</sup> to claim the crown, but only sought the restoration of his family estates. He marched forward, his force increasing daily, and when he reached Nottingham he thought himself strong enough to drop the mask; but, from pretended regard for his oath, he descended to a paltry stratagem. Sir John Stanley and a strong body of Lancashire men came to meet him, and inquired his purpose. He replied, only to obtain grace of his good lord King Henry and his fair son, whose ostrich plume he wore in his cap. Stanley answered, "We serve none less than a king; therefore we bid you adieu, unless you pluck out that feather and claim your own."—"I may not say you nay, fair friends," was the reply, and the Yorkist badge of the "sun in splendor" was quickly substituted. Clarence joined him a few days after, decamping in the night from Warwick's army, and thus defeating the "King-maker's" plan of fighting his opponent before he could reach the capital. London opened its gates to Edward in spite of the efforts of Archbishop Neville, who had been left in charge of the king, and vainly paraded him through the streets, seeking for supporters. The Londoners had always been favorers of the House of York. Not a sword was lifted in favor of "the lord Henry of Lancaster;" and he was again sent to the Tower.

§ 13. Warwick had still with him his brother Montagu, who had been deprived of the earldom of Northumberland and considered his higher title of marquis no compensation. He said that Edward had given him a grand name, with only a pie's nest to keep it, and, though he had been wavering before, he would now fight stoutly to mend his fortune with his sword. Warwick scarcely believed him, but could not venture to part with him, as his forces were mainly Lancastrians, and not so strong as the army that Edward had. Still he was resolved to put everything on the issue of a battle, and he moved on to the neighborhood of London. Edward, only three days after he had sent Henry to the



Battle of Barnet.

Death of Warwick.

Henry again deposed.

Tower, marched out to meet him, taking "the gray, discrowned king" with him.

§ 14. The hosts met at Barnet, about twelve miles from London, on the eve of Easter Sunday [A.D. 1471]. Edward drew a trench round his camp, and annoyed his enemies during the night by keeping up a fire from his hand-guns, which they could not return. Bodies of Londoners also kept joining him, whilst no one came to Warwick, whose troops grew dispirited, and having long been opponents, had little confidence in each other. The battle began at dawn of day, and, owing to Warwick's example, was fiercely maintained for many hours. Edward also exposed his life as freely, his brother Gloucester leading the van, but Clarence, for very shame, doing little. At last what appeared a mere accident gave the victory to Edward. The day was dark and stormy, and the badge of the Earl of Oxford's men was mistaken for that of the king, which it greatly resembled. They were in consequence attacked by Warwick's men, and fearing some treachery, they fled from the field. Edward saw his advantage, and by a desperate charge gained the day. Warwick, contrary to his usual plan, fought on foot, to encourage his troops, saying, "I will stand with him that will stand with me." It was his last battle, for he was left dead on the field. His brother Montagu died also, though not so honorably, as he was killed by one of Warwick's men, who saw him throw away the badge of their party and put on that of the king, whom he was about to join.

§ 15. Full 10,000 men fell in this battle, but most of the Lancastrian leaders escaped with their lives. The Duke of Exeter was left wounded on the field, but was conveyed to the sanctuary at Westminster, where his wounds were healed. His wife barbarously opposed the pardon that Edward was ready to grant,<sup>1</sup> and having left his asylum he was found dead soon afterwards. The bodies of Warwick and his brother were exposed to public view at St. Paul's, to convince every one that the famous "King-maker" was indeed dead; but there was still another battle to be fought before peace could be restored. King Henry was again

<sup>1</sup> He had been attainted in 1461, and had long wandered on the Continent in a state of extreme poverty. His wife wished to procure a divorce, but this her uncle, the Archbishop of Canterbury, would not grant, saying that it was no reason because a man had lost his estates that his wife should forsake him. She married immediately after his death, but did not long survive him.

Queen Margaret and her Adherents. They make War. The Lancastrians Destroyed. sent to the Tower, and never quitted it alive, for he died, probably of grief, a few months afterwards.

§ 16. Queen Margaret landed at Weymouth on the very day that the battle of Barnet was fought, and on hearing of its result her fortitude gave way. She took refuge with her son in the sanctuary of Cerne Abbey, and was apparently resolved to give up the unequal contest. Unhappily, the Duke of Somerset and some of the other nobles who had escaped when Warwick fell found out her retreat, and persuaded her that if they could once reach South Wales they might renew the contest, as her husband's half-brothers, the Tudors, had powerful friends there. The Earl of Pembroke (Jasper Tudor) accordingly began raising forces in Wales, and Margaret and her army set out to join him. They endeavored in vain to cross the Severn at Gloucester, for the citizens guarded the bridge; on which they ascended the river to Tewkesbury, where Edward overtook them. Somerset, contrary to the advice of the rest, determined to make a stand here, and drew a trench round his camp. This was vigorously assaulted by the Yorkists [May, 1471], led by Gloucester, who, finding it desperately defended, purposely withdrew his men in apparent confusion. Somerset followed him, but not being properly supported, was driven back, the foe entering with him, and soon gaining a complete victory. Somerset, believing that he had been treacherously deserted by Lord Wenlock, a man who had changed sides more than once, and was now in command of troops that he had kept idle in camp, flew on him and dashed out his brains with his battle-axe. But though he thus avenged himself, he could not restore the battle, which gave the final blow to the Lancastrian cause. Queen Margaret was taken prisoner and sent to the Tower, where she remained for four years, until ransomed by her father, who obtained the money from the King of France (Louis the Eleventh) by surrendering to him his county of Anjou. Her husband and son being then both dead, she had no motive for attempting to renew the contest. Margaret lived in extreme poverty for the rest of her days, and died in 1481.

§ 17. Edward showed his usual mercilessness after victory. Young Prince Edward met his death, but whether he was murdered in the royal tent, as most authors say, or was killed in attempting to escape from the field, is uncertain. But there is no such doubt as to the fate of the Duke of Somerset, the Prior of St. John's, Sir



## Edward's Cruelty and Avarice.

## Confiscations and Extortions.

Humphrey Audley, and about a dozen more knights, who, having taken refuge in a church, were dragged from it two days afterward and beheaded, although the king had promised to spare their lives, and had thus prevented their taking sanctuary.<sup>1</sup> Pembroke fled to Brittany, taking his young nephew, the Earl of Richmond, with him. The death of Lord Falcon-

bridge,<sup>a</sup> who was Warwick's admiral, and the surrender of the Earl of Oxford,<sup>2</sup> which followed soon after, relieved Edward from any further apprehension of war, and left him free to indulge his thirst for gold, which was almost as strong as his love of bloodshed and his taste for vicious pleasures.

§ 18. An almost absolute confiscation of all that remained of wealth to the Lancastrians was decreed by the parliament, and Edward of his own accord plundered and imprisoned Archbishop Neville, breaking up his rich mitre to place the jewels in his own crown. But he wasted his riches quite as fast as he acquired them, and when, in the third year after the close of the civil war [A.D. 1473], he announced his design of attempting the conquest of France, he raised funds in a novel manner. He called all the wealthy people before him, told them of his project, and, with the gracious manner that he could assume when he pleased, though a mere savage at heart, he begged them to give him some sum that he named, as a proof of their "benevolence" or good-will towards him. Few were found hardy enough to refuse, particularly if they had ever been Lancastrians, and thus a large sum was raised, which was termed a Benevolence; but those who dared to speak their minds called it a Malevolence, as being a mere extortion, submitted to unwillingly for fear of worse consequences.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In earlier times every church, or even churchyard, was regarded as a sanctuary or sacred asylum, but the privilege was now limited to a comparatively few great abbeys.

<sup>2</sup> After the battle of Barnet<sup>a</sup> he obtained some ships, with which he seized on St.

Michael's Mount, in Cornwall, where he defended himself for four months.  
<sup>a</sup> § 14, p. 270.

He at last surrendered on promise of life, and was sent to the castle of Hammes, in Picardy, where he remained for twelve years. His wife, who was Warwick's sister, it is said supported herself by her needle, until at last the king granted her a pension of £100 (equal to £1,000 now), and this Richard the Third continued to her.

<sup>3</sup> The pretence for the "benevolence" was, that it fell only on rich people, and thus spared the poor; but Henry the Seventh and Henry the Eighth, who also frequently levied it, used it as a test of men's liking for or fear of them; hence, if any one refused he was accounted disaffected, and his ruin was certain. At length the very name became odious, and "a loving contribution made by the subject's free-will" took its place.

Edward's failure in France.

An inglorious Reign.

Plots and Murders.

§ 19. At last, in July, 1475, Edward left England, landed at Calais with a large army, and formally demanded the crown of France. The expedition, however, came to nothing. The French king, by bribes to many of the English councillors, induced them to advocate a truce. A treaty followed, by which a large pension was promised to Edward, and he returned to England, having gained a sum of money for his extravagant expenses. But his brothers and his warlike nobles were deeply dissatisfied at being denied the opportunity of winning French lordships with their swords.

§ 20. The remainder of Edward's reign was alike inglorious and unhappy. The potent Nevilles<sup>a</sup> were destroyed, but their property remained, and the dispute for it was fierce between the Dukes of Clarence and Gloucester. Warwick left two daughters, one of whom was married to Clarence, and the other to the Lancastrian prince, Edward.<sup>b</sup> Clarence desired to acquire the whole of the property, and therefore wished to keep his sister-in-law from marrying again. By pretended sympathy he got her into his power, and then forced her to disguise herself as a kitchen-maid; but Gloucester, who was resolved to share the rich inheritance, found out the cheat, and persuaded her to marry him. Henceforth the brothers were enemies for life.

§ 21. But this was not the extent of Clarence's misfortune; he had a deadly enemy in Earl Rivers, the queen's brother,<sup>c</sup> and being a man equally weak and passionate, he put himself completely in his power. Two of his dependants, named Burdett and Stacy, were condemned and executed on a charge of inquiring, by magic arts, how long the king and his eldest son would live. Clarence, who had some time before retired from the court, now returned, and in commenting on their fate used words that were construed as treasonable. He was committed to the Tower, when Edward appeared personally as his accuser [A.D. 1478], and he was condemned to death. A few days later he was found dead, but how that came about is unknown. It was asserted that he was drowned in a butt of Malmesbury wine. A strong light is thrown on his condemnation by the fact that many of his estates were granted to Anthony Woodville.<sup>d</sup> Edward, it is said, was privy to the murder, and afterward felt the pangs of remorse. Clarence left a son and a daughter, who both perished on the scaffold under the Tudors.



War with Scotland. France threatened. Old English Nobility Destroyed.

§ 22. The King of France, after a few payments, refused to continue the pension that Edward had bargained for as the price of his withdrawal.<sup>a</sup> Although Edward was terribly enraged at this, he was not able at once to take any revenge, as he was then engaged in a war with Scotland, having chosen to support the claim of the Duke of Albany, a pretender to the throne, who promised in return to cede a large part of the south of the kingdom, and to hold the rest as the vassal of England. The English army, under the Duke of Gloucester, captured Edinburgh, and Berwick was taken after a long siege, when the war was allowed to drop, and Edward bestowed many privileges on his new subjects. That was in the year 1482. Being thus free, he prepared for war with France; but in the midst of his projects he died [April 9, 1483], after a brief illness, at the age of forty-one years. His habitual excesses and dissolute life for twenty years destroyed his vitality and made old age impossible. Edward left the crown to his son Edward, a youth of thirteen, who was proclaimed king, as Edward the Fifth, on the day of his father's death. Edward the Fourth was remarkable alike for his military skill and courage, and his corrupt luxurious life. He was exceedingly handsome, and, when he had a purpose to gain, fascinating in manner. He was, however, both rapacious and extravagant; licentious and unscrupulous; and he was so innately cruel that he seemed to enjoy personally witnessing the execution of his prisoners; whilst in battle his cry was, "Kill the nobles and spare the commons." So thoroughly was this acted on that the ancient English nobility was almost annihilated in his reign, and the few new peers that he made did not long survive him.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

### REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIFTH. [A.D. 1483.]

§ 1. YOUNG Edward, son of Elizabeth Woodville,<sup>b</sup> and a beautiful boy of thirteen years, was residing at Ludlow Castle, in the marches of Wales,<sup>c</sup> at the time of his father's death. There he had a mimic court as Prince of Wales, of which his uncle Earl Rivers,<sup>d</sup>

<sup>b</sup> § 5, p. 266.

<sup>c</sup> § 10, p. 109.

<sup>d</sup> § 21, p. 273.

A struggle for Power.    A Protector for England.    Fate of a Royal Favorite.

his half-brother Sir Richard Grey, Sir Thomas Vaughan, and others of the Woodville faction,<sup>a</sup> had the direction.

A struggle for power at once commenced, in which <sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 266. the unfortunate youth was sacrificed. The queen mother endeavored to obtain his guardianship for herself, and when this failed she retired to the sanctuary at Westminster, taking her second son the Duke of York and her five daughters with her. The powerful Duke of Gloucester, who had been suspected of aspirations for the crown, arrived in haste from the north, and the nobles in general joined with him, their first object being at all events to get rid of the Woodvilles. The young king was sent for to London, but at Stony Stratford he was met by the Dukes of Gloucester and Buckingham, who were both his uncles, who took charge of him, and sent his Woodville attendants as prisoners to Pontefract Castle, in Yorkshire.

§ 2. The news of this event greatly distressed the queen mother, for she saw in it nothing but evil for her family. Edward was brought to London, and Gloucester was forthwith appointed Protector of both king and kingdom, whilst Buckingham was named chief justice of Wales, with a grant of such extraordinary powers as made him in reality a sovereign prince—all the royal castles being put into his hands, and authority to call out the whole population in arms being also conferred on him.

§ 3. Hitherto all had gone smoothly, and a day was appointed for the coronation of the young king; but when it drew near a quarrel arose, of the real origin of which nothing is known. Lord Hastings, who was the brother-in-law of "Kingmaking Warwick,"<sup>b</sup> had been a favorite of Edward the <sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 259. Fourth, the late king, but was, perhaps on that account, hated by the Woodvilles, and he had joined in taking the young king out of their hands. He was a man of very bad character, and lived openly with Jane Shore, who had been the late king's mistress. Suddenly he was accused of conspiring with her against the Protector. He was seized at the council-table in the Tower, and being hurried on to the green [June 13, 1483], was there beheaded on the instant, Gloucester, it is said, having vowed that he would not dine until he had seen his head. The Archbishop of York and the Bishop of Ely were seized at the same time; but whilst the latter was given into the keeping of the Duke of Buckingham, the former was almost immediately released.



Murder of two Princes.

A significant Sermon.

Gloucester made King.

§ 4. The Archbishop of Canterbury, Cardinal Bourchier, who was the great-uncle of the king and the Duke of York, was now sent to the queen mother in the sanctuary. He quieted her fears, and prevailed with her to part with her young son, the Duke of York, saying that his brother the king desired his company. The Tower was then the customary residence of the English monarchs in the interval between their accession and coronation; and the execution of Hastings seemed to the queen mother as the removal of an enemy. The youth was accordingly conducted to the royal fortress, but what afterwards befell either the young king or himself is not certainly known. The received story is, that both were murdered by the order of their uncle Richard, Duke of Gloucester; but their mother seems not to have believed it, as she, after his accession to the throne, left the sanctuary on his promise to provide for her, and even listened to a proposal of marriage between him and her eldest daughter.

§ 5. The day named for the coronation of Edward the Fifth was June 22, 1485, and, as was then customary, it was a Sunday. But no coronation took place. On the contrary, on that very day Ralph Shaw, a preacher of great celebrity, who was the brother of the lord mayor, delivered a sermon at Paul's Cross, in which he took for his text the declaration of the Book of Wisdom (chapter iv., verse 3), that "The multiplying brood of the ungodly shall not thrive, nor take deep rooting from bastard slips." He asserted that the late king had already a wife (Lady Eleanor Butler) when he

\* § 5, p. 266.

married "Dame Elizabeth Grey,"<sup>a</sup> whose children, consequently, could have no claim to the crown. The

Duke of Clarence had been attainted, and the inference of course was, that the Duke of Gloucester ought to be received as king. Two days afterward, Buckingham urged Gloucester's claims at the Guildhall, and in two days more [June 26] the matter was accomplished, the parliament waiting on the duke in Bayard's castle, and desiring him to take on him "the office and title of king." This, after much display of hypocrisy, he consented to do, and then rode in state to St. Paul's, where he was received as Richard the Third with loud acclamation,—his well-known abilities in war and government seeming a sufficient justification for the step that relieved the people from the fear of having the rapacious Woodvilles at the head of affairs. It was also claimed that Richard was really the only true issue of the Duke of York, and that the late

Coronation of Richard the Third in England and Scotland.

king was a bastard, his mother having been unfaithful to her husband. This slander, for such it seems to have been, was propagated by the Dukes of Clarence and Burgundy.

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

REIGN OF RICHARD THE THIRD. [A.D. 1483 TO 1485.]

§ 1. IN choosing the Duke of Gloucester for their ruler the parliament only acted as their Saxon forefathers had done, who frequently preferred personal fitness to strict hereditary succession. If they had not done so, they would never have had an Alfred the Great<sup>a</sup> to illustrate their era; for that famous prince was a supplanter of his nephews<sup>b</sup> equally with Richard the Third, although he had no ground to dispute their legitimacy. That the new king was not personally unpopular was shown not only at his coronation, on the 6th of July, 1483, which was attended by almost all the existing nobility, and where his mother appeared, sanctioning the setting aside of her grandchild (Edward the Fifth), and where the Countess of Richmond, the mother of his successor, bore his queen's train, but even more so in the cordial reception that greeted him in his progress through the country, as at Oxford, Gloucester, and Coventry.

§ 2. Richard's coronation at Westminster Abbey was a magnificent ceremonial. His wife, Anne, daughter of Warwick the "King-maker," was crowned queen at the same time. In a few days he began a royal progress northward, and when he reached York he gratified the people of the north, among whom he had long lived as warden of the Scottish marches, by being crowned a second time, in the minster, with great pomp, two months after he had received the kingly dignity at Westminster. They knew that shortly before, the Woodville prisoners had been beheaded at Pontefract, but that made no difference in the warmth of their reception of the monarch and his wife, for he was regarded as their countryman, and the queen's kin came from far distant Kent. The king was then thirty-three years of age.

§ 3. But kings who have succeeded to the throne by irregular means usually find it quite impossible to satisfy the demands of



Buckingham's Treason and Fate.

The King supported by Parliament.

their supporters. Thus it had been with Henry the Fourth,<sup>a</sup> and

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 237. it was now the case with Richard. His grants were

very liberal to the Duke of Norfolk, the Earl of Northumberland, Lord Stanley, but more particularly to the Duke of Buckingham, yet only the first named of these great men remained true to him. Buckingham was the first to set the example of drawing the sword against him. He laid claim to some lands that had been forfeited by his great-grandfather, and joined to the crown in the time of Richard the Second, and his request being denied, he re-

<sup>b</sup> § 3, p. 275. tired in anger to his castle of Brecknock, where Morten, Bishop of Ely,<sup>b</sup> was then a prisoner. The duke

was a proud, foolish man, and the crafty bishop easily persuaded him that he would advance his fortunes by joining the Lancastrians in an attempt to drive Richard from the throne; his ruin was the consequence. Risings took place in various parts, many of

<sup>c</sup> § 1, p. 274. the Woodville party<sup>c</sup> also appearing in arms, but Buckingham's incapacity prevented their success.

§ 4. In virtue of his office of chief justice of Wales,<sup>d</sup> Buck-

<sup>d</sup> § 2, p. 275. ingham compelled the country people to join him, but took no thought of providing money to pay them.

Hence, when a flood in the Severn prevented their crossing and paying themselves by plunder in England, they deserted him. He sought refuge with one of his tenants near Shrewsbury; but a price being set on his head, he was betrayed to the sheriff, hurried off to Salisbury, where the king then was, and beheaded, without form of trial, by martial law, as had long been the practice with both parties in the civil war. The other insurgents speedily dispersed. Some sought shelter in sanctuaries, others fled to Brittany, where

<sup>e</sup> § 16, p. 271. Henry (of the Tudor family), Earl of Richmond, was

gradually drawing together all the English malcontents of whatever party; and Richard, after making a progress through the west of England, where the Lancastrian cause was in favor, punishing some of the insurgents, but pardoning a far greater number, returned in triumph to London to keep his Christmas.

§ 5. Early in the following year [A.D. 1484] the parliament which had met in November passed an act which annulled all the late

king's grants to "Elizabeth, late wife of Sir John

<sup>f</sup> § 5, p. 266. Grey,"<sup>f</sup> thus showing that, in their view, her marriage

to Edward the Fourth was invalid, as Richard always asserted;

Richard's Successor.

Proceedings of Parliament.

A Satirist punished.

while at the same time he was designing to marry his son, the young Prince of Wales, to her daughter, the Princess Elizabeth, whom he had called a bastard, for fear she would marry Henry, Earl of Richmond,<sup>a</sup> whose house was the rival of that

<sup>a</sup> § 4, p. 278.

of York for the throne. Next, as a necessary consequence, the parliament took an oath to support the succession of Richard's son, Edward, to the throne, who was then a boy eleven years of age. But this, and Richard's designs concerning his son's marriage, were rendered of no avail by the death of the young prince very shortly afterward, when one of Richard's nephews, John, Earl of Lincoln, was declared the heir in his stead.

§ 6. In this, the only parliament of Richard's reign, several wise and equitable laws were passed, particularly with the view of remedying evils that had sprung up in the administration of justice. The latter years of Edward's reign had been notorious in this respect, and men's goods were often granted to their accusers or to court favorites before they had been convicted, whilst in other cases menial servants sat as jurors in cases where their masters were concerned, and usually brought in whatever verdict was required. Such abuses were now forbidden, as were "the exactions, called Benevolences,"<sup>b</sup> by which, as the statute says, "many persons had been obliged to pay great sums of money, to their almost utter destruction."

<sup>b</sup> § 18, p. 272.

§ 7. Richard was now apparently firmly seated on the throne, and his enemies, ceasing for the time from armed opposition, occupied themselves with making verses in his dispraise. One of these is curious, as giving the names of the men who were supposed to be his chief counsellors. It runs thus:—

"The Cat, the Rat, and Lovel that dog,  
Rule all England under the Hog."

The Hog is Richard himself, alluding to the white boar which he employed as one of the supporters of the royal arms. The Cat is Catesby, a lawyer and chancellor of the exchequer, who was very naturally odious, as the fines and forfeitures were levied by him. The Rat is either Richard or Robert Ratcliffe, both thoroughgoing Yorkists; and Lovel is named "that dog," as he was the son of a Lancastrian, and so was regarded as a deserter of the Red Rose.<sup>c</sup> That age could not afford to despise such attacks, and William Collingbourne, who had been sheriff of Wiltshire, was hanged as the author of the rhyme.

<sup>c</sup> § 21, p. 262.



The King's Marriage Projects. The Queen Poisoned. Intrigues for the Throne.

§ 8. The parliament having confiscated the property of Queen Elizabeth, Richard prevailed on her to leave the sanctuary, with her daughters, under a solemn oath that he would provide for them. The death of the king's son having frustrated his marriage scheme, he resolved to marry the Princess Elizabeth himself, and the girl was kept continually about the person of Queen Anne. That lady suddenly fell sick early in 1485, when it was announced that she could not live long. The mother of the princess, impatient to have her daughter marry the reputed murderer of her two sons, expressed her surprise at the length of time Queen Anne took in dying, and late in February the impatient princess expressed her fears that she would never die. But Anne departed in March, and Richard was about to proceed to marry his niece, when

<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 279. his chief advisers, Ratcliffe and Catesby,<sup>a</sup> represented that such a marriage would be considered incestuous

by the clergy and people, and that the suspicions that he had caused Queen Anne to be poisoned would be confirmed. Richard expected to get a dispensation for the marriage from the Pope; but he felt that such permission would not satisfy his subjects; and then he publicly proclaimed that he had never thought of such a marriage, and ordered the arrest of all persons who had propagated such a malicious report.

§ 9. Richard now tried to induce the Duke of Brittany to sur-

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 278. render to him the Tudor, Henry Earl of Richmond,<sup>b</sup>

but did not succeed, and from that time his downfall may be dated. Richmond had really not a shadow of right to the crown—he was, in fact, a mere adventurer—but he was able and active, and the discontented of all parties flocked to him. His mother was then the wife of Lord Stanley, her third husband, who was much trusted by Richard, and to whom her forfeited estates had been generously granted by the king. But this leniency did not prevent her carrying on a secret correspondence with the ex-queen, Elizabeth, in which the two intriguing women discussed and matured a plan for placing the kingdom in the hands of the Earl of Richmond. It was agreed that if Richmond should be successful, he should marry the Princess Elizabeth, who at that very time, as we have seen, had accepted the suit of Richard, and was anxious for the death of Anne that she might mount the throne. The ambitious girl, already an adept at intrigue, endeavored to hold in her hand two chances for the prize of

Earl of Richmond in England. He fights for the Crown. Death of the King.

the queenship of England. She won, as we shall observe presently.

§ 10. Shortly before this the Earl of Oxford escaped from the castle of Hammes, where he had been confined for twelve years, and induced some of the garrison to join the Earl of Richmond with him. This was an important accession of strength to the Lancastrian party,<sup>a</sup> as Oxford was an able soldier, and matters began to grow serious. Richard fitted out a fleet under Sir George Neville (a nephew of the “King-maker”)<sup>b</sup> to prevent the landing of Richmond. To do this, he was forced to resort to the plan of “benevolences,”<sup>c</sup> which he had so censured in his brother, and, worse still, the Lancastrians evaded Neville, and landed at Milford Haven, on the 7th of August, 1485, after seven days’ passage from France.

§ 11. As the place where the landing would be attempted was altogether uncertain, Richard had repaired to Nottingham, as a central point, and summoned his supporters to meet him; but many on whom he had reckoned were now in league with the enemy. Richmond moved slowly through Wales into Staffordshire, some openly joining him, but others, like Lord Stanley<sup>d</sup> and the Earl of Northumberland, remained with Richard for the express purpose of deserting him in battle. The opportunity soon occurred. The armies met at Bosworth, in Leicestershire, on the 22d of August, and there Richard, abandoned when he had almost gained the victory, was defeated and killed, desperately fighting. Then the treacherous Lord Stanley picked up the crown, battered and blood-stained, and placed it on the head of Richmond. Richard’s body was carried into Leicester and buried with scant ceremony in the Greyfriars monastery. It did not rest there very long, for at the dissolution of religious houses, in the reign of Henry the Eighth, it was cast out, and his stone coffin long after served as a horse-trough at an inn in the town.

§ 12. Such was the end of the last king of the house of York, who died at the age of about thirty-three years, after a reign of only two years and two months; but his character has suffered more than his remains or his monument, by being drawn only by writers who lived under the Tudors. He is accused by them of more crimes than could well be crowded into his short life, but not one of them has been fully proved, and probably not one would have

<sup>a</sup> § 21, p. 262.

<sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 259.

<sup>c</sup> § 6, p. 279.

<sup>d</sup> § 9, p. 280.



## Character and Administration of King Richard.

## A Vindication.

been heard of had he, instead of Richmond, been the victor at Bosworth. On the other hand, what we know from the indisputable evidence of the public records is much in his favor. These prove that he was far more lenient in his treatment of his opponents than was then usual; for though he, as a matter of course, seized their estates when they were attainted, he in many instances regranted them to members of their families. He also gave pensions to the wives or the widows of several of them, as to the Countesses of Warwick and Oxford, and the Duchess of Buckingham; and the Earl of Northumberland, Lord Stanley, and others, who became the adherents of Richmond, had received liberal grants from him for their services against the Lancastrians.

§ 13. Short and troubled as was the reign of Richard the Third, he seems to have found a pleasure in rewarding both towns and individuals who had suffered in the cause of his house. He was a benefactor to both universities; encouraged the newly invented art of printing, and appointed consuls to protect the interests of the English merchants abroad. He also established regular couriers for the speedy transmission of news, and may thus be regarded as having taken the first step in the establishment of the post-office. It is evident from all this, that whatever might have been his faults, the cold-blooded policy and the avarice of Henry the Seventh, his successor, could not be justly ascribed to Richard. He, on the contrary, was clearly a man of generous spirit and enlightened views, and therefore quite undeserving of being handed down to posterity as a monster of iniquity, whose deformed person was the fit index of a depraved mind. It is by no means certain that he was deformed, and his activity and dauntless courage in the field are hardly reconcilable with the statement, to say nothing of the fact that all the rest of his family were remarkable for their personal beauty. His right shoulder was a trifle higher than his left; but there is no proof that he was a hunchback, as the Tudor writers represented him. He appears not to have been the ugly, bold, bad man of Shakespeare's dramas,—so ugly that he said of himself:—

"I that am curtailed of this fair proportion,  
Cheated of feature by dissembling nature,  
Deform'd, unfinish'd, sent before my time  
Into this breathing world, scarce half made up,  
And that so lamely and unfashionable  
That dogs bark at me as I halt by them."

## CHAPTER XVII.

## THE PLANTAGENETS. SCOTLAND. [A.D. 1154 TO 1485.]

§ 1. Most of the Plantagenet monarchs, of whom Richard the Third was the last, were able men, with quite as little claim to be considered "humble" as their founder.<sup>a</sup> On the contrary, they were warlike, aggressive princes, and their rule of more than three centuries forms a very important part of the history of Europe. They conquered both Ireland<sup>b</sup> and Wales,<sup>c</sup> though they hardly increased their own power thereby, for the spoil in each case, instead of coming into the king's hands, fell almost entirely to a few great nobles or bold adventurers, who soon became independent princes in all but in name. The Plantagenets also waged almost ceaseless wars with France and Scotland, which failed in their object of conquest, but had an effect upon England that their authors had never contemplated.

§ 2. The feudal system,<sup>d</sup> which supplied armies only for a limited period of service, was quite unsuited to kings who wished to achieve distant conquests and keep them for themselves. Therefore the first of the Plantagenets resorted to the plan of accepting money instead of knights' service, and employed soldiers who were ready to serve at all times and in all places, provided only their pay in ready money was forthcoming. The necessity of providing this treasure had the result, eventually, of giving a new form to the government of the State, and from it directly sprang the middle class, between the crown and nobles and the poor, which long before the close of the Plantagenet rule was at least the equal of the others combined, and more powerful than either separately.

§ 3. The rise of this class, though slow, was sure; as, unlike the kings and the nobles, it never parted with any advantage that it had once gained. By the offer of money to their immediate superiors, the bondmen became freemen,<sup>e</sup> and then the freemen became townsmen, or dwellers and artisans in villages, with the right to govern themselves, and to give shelter within their walls to the villain<sup>f</sup> who fled from the too great tyranny of the barons. Next came the giv-

<sup>a</sup> § 13, p. 129.<sup>b</sup> § 21, p. 139.<sup>c</sup> § 5, p. 183.<sup>d</sup> § 6, p. 96.<sup>e</sup> § 26, p. 92.<sup>f</sup> § 5, p. 164.



## Growth of Popular Power.

## Contemporary Events in Scotland.

ing the townsmen a distinct place in the State by summoning their representatives to the parliament in the time of Henry the Third,<sup>a</sup> and from that time they have remained an order in the State without whose concurrence no wise king has attempted to govern. Their importance increased with the increasing sphere of the wars of the Edwards, and when the Plantagenets

were divided into the hostile Houses of Lancaster and York,<sup>b</sup> their power was so firmly fixed that they had established the unquestionable right of giving or withholding the "aids" and "supplies" for the service of the State, and also of calling to a strict account the highest officers, and even of concurring in settling the succession to the throne.

§ 4. Such power had resulted from the encouragement given to traders and manufacturers, which had been a part of the policy of Edward the Third, in order to depress the French and the

Flemings.<sup>c</sup> England had grown wealthy in spite of war, and her merchants had become adventurous, so as to rival the Germans on the one hand and the Italians on the other. And it was in the time of the Plantagenets that the foundations were laid of the England of the present day, which rejoices in its "ships, colonies, and commerce," but seldom carries their origin sufficiently far back. The Tudors, to whom these things, as also the establishment of the Royal Navy, are usually ascribed, only carried out what had been begun centuries before their time.

§ 5. The intimate historical connection of Scotland with England during the Plantagenet dynasty, and the permanent union of the two kingdoms at the close of the Tudor dynasty, make it proper to give here a brief account of events in Scotland during the later years of the period we have been considering.

§ 6. The grandson of The Bruce, Robert the Third,<sup>d</sup> possessed the throne of Scotland at the beginning of the fifteenth century. Lacking energy, he allowed others to govern the kingdom and himself. His brother, Duke of Albany, acted as regent until 1398, when the nobility and national feeling were rallied around Robert's son, the Duke of Rothesay, and heir apparent to the throne, who then assumed the office of regent, with a promise of energy and wisdom. The government was in

his hands when Henry the Fourth of England,<sup>e</sup> at the close of the year 1400, made the last of the English raids into Scotland, led by an English monarch in person.

<sup>a</sup> § 21, p. 179.

<sup>b</sup> § 21, p. 262.

<sup>c</sup> § 7, p. 208.

<sup>d</sup> § 15, p. 243.

<sup>e</sup> § 1, p. 237.

## Condition of Public Affairs in Scotland.

§ 7. Rothesay proved to be incompetent, and his enemies persuaded his father to order his arrest and imprisonment, when he was starved to death in a dungeon of the royal palace of Falkland. Then the ambitious Duke of Albany resumed the regency, made war on England, and was carrying matters with a high hand when the result of the battle of Shrewsbury<sup>a</sup> caused him to withdraw and disband his troops. A<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 240. truce followed, and on the 30th of March, 1405, King Robert's second son, James, then heir apparent, was captured by the English when voyaging homeward from France. Robert died on the 4th of April, 1406, having been king, in name only, nearly sixteen years.

§ 8. James was kept a prisoner in England. The Scottish parliament proclaimed him king, but Albany continued to exercise right royal power as regent. In 1411 he suppressed a formidable rebellion of The Lord of the Isles,<sup>b</sup> and compelled<sup>b</sup> § 3, p. 265. that potentate to acknowledge himself to be a vassal of the crown of Scotland. Meanwhile James was held a prisoner, and Albany willingly prolonged his captivity for a sinister purpose. He made a truce with England for six years, but, under French influence, he violated it [September, 1417], when all southern Scotland was desolated by the English. Soon after that Albany sent a large body of Scotch troops into France, to assist the French in fighting the English.<sup>c</sup> A little later,<sup>c</sup> § 15, p. 251. the regent died [Sept. 3, 1419], at the age of eighty years, after the exercise of feudal tyranny for the space of thirty-four years.

§ 9. Albany's son, Murdoch, succeeded his father as regent; but he was so inefficient that it was not long before anarchy prevailed in Scotland. That state of things continued until late in the year 1423, when the captive King of Scotland, on the death of Henry the Fifth of England, whom he had accompanied in that monarch's expedition to France,<sup>d</sup> was allowed to return<sup>d</sup> § 17, p. 252. to his native country: On the 24th of May following he formed a family alliance with England, by marriage with Lady Joanna Beaufort, daughter of the Duchess of Clarence by her first husband, the Duke of Somerset,<sup>e</sup> and the<sup>e</sup> § 16, p. 271. descendant of Edward the Third by both parents. He was crowned James the First of Scotland, in the Abbey Church of Scone, on the 21st of May, 1424.



Career of James of Scotland. Dealings with his Enemies. His Assassination.

§ 10. James was the most accomplished man of his time. He sincerely desired the welfare of his country; and after making a truce for seven years with England, he set about the difficult task of reform, and the suppression of internal disorders. Several members of the late regent's family, who were disposed to be disloyal and turbulent, were arrested. Among them was the father-

in-law of Murdoch,<sup>a</sup> the Earl of Lennox, then eighty years of age. They were all executed in front of Stirling Castle, in the month of May, 1428. The great estates of the Albany family were forfeited to the crown, and its power was utterly destroyed. After that tragedy, for several years James continued, with his annual parliament, to promote the political, social, and industrial interests of his kingdom. He extended its trade by wise laws, and by making treaties of alliance and commerce with France, Flanders, and other foreign countries.

§ 11. In the spring of 1427, James had taken measures to bring the Highland clans, who defied his authority, into subjection. He imprisoned and executed the heads of several of them. Among those

imprisoned was Alexander, the Lord of the Isles,<sup>b</sup> who had again risen in open revolt. Another Highland rebellion broke out in 1431, led by Donald Balloch, a near relation of the Lord of the Isles. That, too, was promptly suppressed. The "pacification of the Highlands" was accomplished after the execution of about three hundred persons; but the blood then shed nourished dangerous seeds of hatred.

§ 12. James formed an alliance with France, and in 1435 sent his infant daughter, Margaret, to be betrothed to the dauphin, or heir apparent to the throne of that kingdom. By these measures he became involved in a serious dispute with the English government, which led him to break the truce in 1436, and invade England. His queen persuaded him to desist, when he withdrew, disbanded his army, and kept Christmas festivities in the monastery of the Blackfriars, at Perth, unconscious that a conspiracy against his life was then ripe. The leaders in it were Sir Robert Graham, Walter Stuart Earl of Athole, and his grandson, Robert Stewart, adherents of the Duke of Albany, who had some private injuries to avenge. On the night of the 20th of February (to which time the festivities had been prolonged), Graham and armed accomplices made their way to the royal bedchamber, where they found the king in his night-robes, conversing with the queen and

<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 285.

<sup>b</sup> § 3, p. 265.

Anarchy in Scotland.

The Douglas Family.

Intrigues for the Throne.

her lady attendants. James attempted to escape first by the windows, and then into a vault beneath the floor. There he was murdered, Graham giving him his death-blow. James was then in the forty-fourth year of his age.

§ 13. James's only son, a child six years of age, was immediately crowned James the Second. A dark career for Scotland then opened, for rapine and violence, released from truly royal rule, everywhere prevailed. As years rolled on, the Douglas family gained such power that it menaced the monarchy. In William, the eighth Earl of Douglas, was the representative of the most formidable faction against the crown at the time when the young king assumed the management of the affairs of the realm. Douglas, with a large body of retainers, defied the king, and committed acts of the greatest atrocity. James determined to destroy the ruffian. Under pretence of friendship he invited him to Stirling Castle in February, 1452, when he quarrelled with and murdered the great Scottish chief.

§ 14. An open rebellion of the adherents of Douglas ensued, but was speedily crushed; but the brother of the murdered chief never ceased from his work of revenge. He was driven from Scotland, and by intrigues with the Yorkists in England <sup>a</sup> he fomented a quarrel which led James to invade that <sup>a</sup> § 21, p. 262. country. He laid siege to Roxburgh Castle; and at the end of July, 1460, the king was killed by the bursting of a cannon, by the side of which he stood.

§ 15. The crown of Scotland now passed to the head of James's eldest son by Mary of Guelders, whom he had married in 1449. James the Third was only eight years of age when he was crowned. Again intrigue and turbulence prevailed, in which the Boyds and Hamiltons appear conspicuous. The new king was a weak prince; and in due time his younger brothers, who respectively bore the titles of Duke of Albany and Earl of Mar, contemplated the seizure of the crown. Mar was arrested in 1480, and died soon afterward. Albany fled to France, and on returning, in 1482, he entered into a treaty with Edward the Fourth, in which he assumed the title of Alexander, King of Scotland, consenting to receive the crown as a gift from Edward as his lord superior.

§ 16. It was on account of this agreement that the Duke of Gloucester (afterward Richard the Third) <sup>b</sup> § 22, p. 274. marched into Scotland in the summer of 1482,<sup>b</sup> when James



Church and State in England.

Heresy.

The Lollards.

also raised an army. But James had greater trouble at home; and for a while the Duke of Albany was the actual administrator of the government. By a turn in affairs he was precipitated from power, and compelled to flee to England, while James once more assumed supreme rule. Albany was kindly received by Duke

<sup>a</sup> § 22, p. 274.

Richard at Berwick, which he had captured.<sup>a</sup> The war was soon closed, at a treaty at Nottingham in 1484, and with it ended the principal events in the history of the Plantagenet dynasty, begun in 1154.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### SOCIETY DURING THE RULE OF THE LATER PLANTAGENETS.

§ 1. WE have observed how strong was the papal power in England at the close of the fourteenth century, and how restive

the people were becoming under its exactions.<sup>b</sup> From that time it began to decline, not only in England,

but elsewhere. The general councils began to resist its pretensions; and the great schism which broke out on the death of Gregory the Eleventh, in 1378, and divided the Western Empire for half a century, diminished its strength, and left the elements of decay in its foundation. In England the crown, as state policy, continued to make common cause with the clergy; and the only instance recorded in English history in which, as a body, they ever appeared disloyal, was in that of the deposition of Richard the

Second.<sup>c</sup> Even then they were only partisans of one of the two competitors for the crown.

<sup>c</sup> § 24, p. 227.

§ 2. Until the period we are now considering, heresy had not much troubled the church in England, and it had never been capitally punished. The first prelate who became an actual persecutor was Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, who was a promi-

nent actor in the deposition of Richard the Second<sup>d</sup> in 1399. As we have seen,<sup>e</sup> he took violent measures

<sup>d</sup> § 21, p. 225.

<sup>e</sup> § 3, p. 245.

against the reformers known as Lollards, the followers of Walter Lollard, who was burnt as a heretic at Cologne, in 1322. In the new "heretics" the church saw a hostile force, formidable in numbers and zeal; and from Arundel's time

Statute against Heretics.      Fiery Persecutions.      Evil Influence of the Clergy.

they were dreadfully persecuted. One of their chief offences was the "damnable teaching" that in the making of pilgrimages to Canterbury, Beverly, and other places, the people were duped and made to spend time and money foolishly. The archbishop's craft was put in danger, and the revenues of the church might be decreased by such teaching.

§ 3. At the beginning of the second year of the reign of Henry the Fourth [A.D. 1401], the famous statute against heretics, which came to the aid of the church in suppressing innovations and punishing innovators, was proclaimed. It forbade all preaching, teaching, or circulating of books, in public or private, without the consent of a bishop, under penalty of fine and imprisonment; and upon those who were convicted of teaching anything "contrary to the Catholic faith or declaration of the holy church," and who refused to abjure, it imposed the dreadful punishment of a public burning at the stake. The primate (Arundel) was made a sort of inquisitor-general, and he had the pleasure of presiding at the trial of such a contumacious heretic a few weeks after the cruel statute was published. The victim was William Sawtree, a clergyman, who was burnt at Smithfield early in March, 1401. He was the first person around whom the fires of religious persecution were lighted in England. They burnt on fiercely, at times, after that, the chief offence of the victims being a denial of the real presence of Christ's flesh and blood in the consecrated bread and wine taken at the sacrament of the Lord's Supper.

§ 4. At this period the great body of the clergy stood obstinately in the way of all reforms in church and State, and were hinderers of the progress of Christianity and civilization. To keep the people in ignorance and awe, and to promote the power of the priesthood, they fostered the worst superstitions of the Dark Ages, and continually urged the importance of penances, confessions, indulgences, processions, pilgrimages, veneration for wells and adoration of images and the relics of saints. At this time [A.D. 1410] the wine in the Lord's Supper was withheld from the laity and used only by the clergy; and every species of dissent from the teachings of the ecclesiastics was denounced and punished as heresy. According to a document published by the University of Oxford, in 1415, these "lords spiritual," who held such an iron grasp upon the people, crushing in them every noble aspiration for self-assertion, were, as a body, ignorant, rapacious, and profligate, enemies to



## Laws and Government.

## Commerce and Manufactures.

true religion and social order, who were seldom punished for the grossest offences against morality. But in spite of the church a purer religion and morality spread among the people, especially of the middle class represented by the House of Commons,<sup>a</sup> as a consequence of greater independence of thought and action. The seeds of that Reformation whose fruit we are enjoying then germinated.

§ 5. We have little to note concerning jurisprudence and law during this period. It was a season of civil war and great commotions, a condition unfavorable to social advancement. It may be sufficient to say that the power of the Commons and their constituency was gradually increased. The monarchy became less and less an autocracy, and lost much of its despotic power. Concession after concession was made to the people, and the crown became, in a large degree, a dependant of the parliament. Many feudal laws, through necessity, fell into desuetude. Courts of law became more distinctively courts of justice, and the rights of the people were more clearly recognized and positively protected.

Changes had been made in the matter of crown lands,<sup>b</sup> and the revenues of the monarch were much less and more honestly obtained. In this statement we must except the profligate and extravagant Edward the Fourth, and his predecessor Henry.

§ 6. Notwithstanding the unfavorable condition of society, during this period of turbulence, for the advancement of national industry, the commerce and manufactures of England greatly increased. Efforts were made for the increase of the foreign trade. They were successful. Treaties for commercial intercourse with the sixty or seventy cities and towns in Germany belonging to the Hanseatic League were made; and British ships were seen in every mart of traffic. The wool and the woollen fabrics of England were superior to those of any other country; and so extended was the exportation of these that, in the fifteenth century, Venice, Florence, and Genoa found, in their commercial intercourse with England, the balance of trade against them. Of course this did not imply the real prosperity of England, for her wool and cloth and other useful things were largely exchanged for luxuries. London was, at that time, the English emporium of trade and manufactures. A Greek writer said, in the year 1400, that it was "preferred to any city in the West for population, opulence, and luxury."

The Mechanic Arts.

Post-Offices.

Agriculture.

Furniture.

§ 7. In mechanic arts new industries were developed. The invention of gunpowder and firearms at this period had created new wants and diminished old ones. The business of the armorer was almost wholly changed. And so with other trades. But all were hampered by unwise restrictions, yet all flourished; for notwithstanding the civil wars of the Lancaster period <sup>a</sup> England continually grew richer and richer, and the wants of the inhabitants were greater and were gratified. Notwithstanding the foolish restrictions put upon commerce, merchants, both native and foreign, amassed enormous wealth, and during the seasons of quiet the lands produced much more than the wants of the people required. It was during this period that public posts for the conveyance of intelligence—in fact a post-office system—was established in England, and greatly promoted facilities for trade and commerce. It was wholly in the hands of the government. The national coins remained the same as at the former period <sup>b</sup> in name, but their value was somewhat <sup>c</sup> changed—generally depreciated.

<sup>a</sup> § 21, p. 262.<sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 252.

§ 8. During this period the people, on the whole, were better fed, clothed, and housed than at any previous time. The *villein* class <sup>c</sup> were gradually merged into free laborers, and many of them betook themselves to handicrafts. Increased production followed this emancipation, and allowed the exportation of agricultural products. The exportation of corn was permitted by statute in 1425, and from that time England was a grain-exporting country. Yet the product per acre, as compared with the present yield, was very small—less than six bushels of wheat, twelve of barley, twelve of peas, and five of oats.

<sup>c</sup> § 5, p. 164.

§ 9. Intercourse with foreign nations, and an increase of wealth, caused modifications in the arrangement of households and the general mode of living in England. The walls of houses of the better sort were hung with tapestry instead of being painted as in the preceding age. The furniture was more elegant and costly in material and fashion; and rich tapestry was used in the curtains of beds and windows. Tables, buffets, chairs, desks, cradles, and stools were often elegantly carved, and inlaid with various woods and metals, and were often covered with rich stuffs beautifully embroidered. Feather beds were introduced at this period; and leopard skins were sometimes used as bed-coverings. Early in



Dress and Fashions.

Effects of Gunpowder.

Amusements.

the fifteenth century, clocks with weights and strings, hanging against the wall, were first seen in illustrated manuscripts.

§ 10. In dress, the extravagant fashions introduced in the reign of Richard the Second <sup>a</sup> appear to have undergone very little change during the remainder of the Plantagenet dynasty. The fashions were ridiculed by the satirists, and against some, legislative enactments were hurled, but with little effect. The hair of the men was cut short, and the head-dresses of the women became more elaborate and fantastic during a portion of the period. Among other absurdities was the horrid head-dress in the reign of Henry the Fifth, an illustration of which is given in the monumental effigy of Beatrice, Countess of Arundel, in Arundel church.

§ 11. It was in this period that chivalry attained its highest eminence, and defensive armor was made in the greatest perfection before the invention of gunpowder and fire-arms. Men were covered with garments made sometimes of a net work of small chains, but more generally of plates of steel and iron, so adjusted by hinges as to fit and work with the body. So they were covered from head to foot, with openings only for the ears, eyes, and nostrils. Metal shields, made very strong, were also used. Then the helmets, and indeed the whole armor, were made proof against sword, battle-axe, and spear. The horse of the warrior was also clad in mail. But so heavy was the armor of a knight, that if thrown to the ground he could not rise without assistance. Gunpowder and cannon-balls made such armor useless, and it soon went out of use.

§ 12. Gunpowder exploded chivalry with all its mummeries and shams, and the tournament, the great military pastime of the middle ages, disappeared. Other amusements for the court, knights, and people were much the same as during the preceding period.<sup>b</sup> Public exhibitions more nearly resembling the modern theatre took the place, to a great extent,<sup>c</sup> of the grosser mummeries.<sup>c</sup> Pantomimes and dialogues, called "Mysteries," were in great repute, in which sacred subjects and characters were mingled with much profanity. Bowling, ball-playing, and archery continued to be the favorite amusements of the common people; and chess and card-playing whiled away the hours in halls and castles. The latter had been introduced from the East by the crusaders or pilgrims. Blindman's

<sup>a</sup> § 31, p. 238.

<sup>c</sup> § 32, p. 237.

Literature, Science, and Art.

First Printing in England.

buff, or "Hoodman blind," as it was called, jumping through hoops, shuttlecock, tumbling, leaping, and running, were also common sports; and licensed or professional fools, answering to the "clown" of the circus in our day, were to be seen everywhere. The "fool," or "jester"—generally a witty fellow—was an established officer in the royal households of England and among the nobility, from the time of the Conquest to that of Charles the Second, a period of six hundred years. His business was to make fun at table and elsewhere.

§ 13. Of the literature, science, and fine arts of England at this period, little may be said. The enthusiasm for study which sent thirty thousand students to Oxford at one time<sup>a</sup> was only a spasm. So early as 1357, the thirty thousand had dwindled to less than six thousand. The popular veneration for learning had declined; and men of learning and science were seen begging bread. The actual contributions to the national literature in the fifteenth century were less than those of any preceding age since the Conquest. There were historians, romancers, and poets of excellence, but not of great pre-eminence, since Chaucer died; and philosophers were few. Yet the love of learning was alive. It was only slumberous. In the course of that century several new colleges were added to Oxford and Cambridge. The Scottish universities of St. Andrew and Glasgow were established; and schools for the common people were more numerous than before. Indeed, there was no decline of zeal for study among the middle class, while it grew cold with the nobility, among whom learned men became of little repute.

§ 14. England was then watching the dawn of that glorious day when the art of printing burst upon the world like another sun, giving new light and heat to the souls of men. That art was practised in Germany thirty years before it was introduced into England or France. It was not until 1474, when William Caxton, a native of Kent, who had been for some time in the household of Margaret, Duchess of Burgundy,<sup>b</sup> on returning to England brought the art with him, and set up a printing-office near Westminster Abbey. Then he printed a book which Earl Rivers<sup>c</sup> had translated from the French, and who, in 1477, introduced Caxton to Edward the Fourth.

§ 15. The fine arts, particularly architecture, flourished during this period. A style of Gothic peculiarly English, known as the

<sup>a</sup> § 19, p. 233.<sup>b</sup> § 5, p. 296.<sup>c</sup> § 21, p. 273.



## Improvements in Architecture.

## Painting, Sculpture, and Music.

*perpendicular*, had been introduced as a successor to the more decorative style, whose excesses on the Continent had offended good taste. Panelling was its chief method of ornamentation. Even doors and windows formed panels in the general design. Lightness of construction was another new feature in all kinds of architecture; and churches, castles, and manor-houses assumed a more airy appearance. The latter displayed handsome Gothic gables; also Gothic windows, flat and projecting. Chimney-pieces were beautifully ornamented; and gateways often presented pleasing specimens of art. England now began to exhibit to the traveller, as a national characteristic, tasteful buildings everywhere, and art of every kind.

§ 16. In painting, the fifteenth century was, perhaps, the most barren period of English history. The great Warwick<sup>a</sup> employed his tailor to do the painter's work to be displayed in the pageantry of his embassy to France. The art was employed chiefly in heraldic and decorative painting; and the best artists were the illuminators of manuscripts. Sculpture was equally neglected, though a few monumental works really deserved much praise.

§ 17. Music in this period began to take, in rude form, something of the character of modern melody and harmony. Ecclesiastical music was studied at the universities; and at the coronation of Henry the Fifth,<sup>b</sup> a prodigious number of harps were used; also drums, then lately introduced from the East. The splendid victory of Agincourt<sup>c</sup> gave birth to the first English musical composition entitled to the name. It was written on vellum, and is preserved in Cambridge University. In the year 1469 the minstrel profession was chartered. Minstrels were paid much higher for their services than priests, and some became wealthy. A musical school was established at Oxford, which in time produced eminent composers.

<sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 265.

<sup>b</sup> § 1, p. 245.

<sup>c</sup> § 11, p. 249.







## BOOK VI.

### THE TUDORS.

[FROM A.D. 1485 TO 1603.]

---

#### CHAPTER I.

REIGN OF HENRY THE SEVENTH. [A.D. 1485 TO 1509.]

§ 1. THE fortunate adventurer who had won a crown by a single battle<sup>a</sup> was the grandson of Catherine of France, the widow of Henry the Fifth,<sup>b</sup> through her second marriage with one of her attendants, a handsome young Welshman, named Owen Tudor. Their two sons, Edmund and Jasper,<sup>c</sup> were created Earls of Richmond and of Pembroke by their half-brother, Henry the Sixth. Edmund married Margaret Beaufort, a great-granddaughter of John of Gaunt,<sup>d</sup> but died in the following year, leaving his young widow and their infant son to the care of his brother Jasper. When the child was but five years old his grandfather was taken at Mortimer's Cross and beheaded,<sup>e</sup> and his uncle became a fugitive. Pembroke's title and his strong castle of Pembroke were both given to William Herbert, a new-made noble, who was happily a generous man, and, though obliged to act as their keeper, he treated both mother and son with kindness. The temporary restoration of Henry the Sixth<sup>f</sup> set the young earl at liberty for the first time in his life; but on the return of Edward the Fourth his uncle Jasper took him abroad, his mother being then married to Sir Henry Stafford, a Yorkist.<sup>g</sup>

§ 2. The two fugitives passed many anxious years, sometimes in Brittany, sometimes in France, treated now as guests, now as prisoners, according to the changing policy of the rulers of those countries. The danger became the greater as young Richmond, when he grew up, evinced such talent and courage that he rather



Accession of the House of Tudor.

Beginning of the new King's Reign.

than his uncle began to be considered formidable by the Yorkist princes, who endeavored to procure his surrender. This unwise proceeding caused him to be looked upon as the head of the Lan-

castrian exiles,<sup>a</sup> and, by the intrigues of his mother, many of the Woodville party<sup>b</sup> also were induced to join him after the accession of Richard the Third, a

common hatred of the new king being their only bond of union.

But when Richmond had gained the battle of Bosworth,<sup>c</sup> he showed at once that he had won the

crown for himself alone; and though, according to the agreement

made, he eventually married the Princess Elizabeth<sup>d</sup> [A.D. 1486], it was not until he had procured from the

parliament a declaration that the regal dignity belonged to himself and his heirs, "and none other," which was as clearly contradictory to all idea of hereditary succession as the setting aside of

the Earl of March to make way for Henry of Bolingbroke, nearly a century before.<sup>e</sup>

§ 3. Richmond, upon whose head Stanley placed the crown,<sup>f</sup> was

saluted as king on the field of battle by his followers, and he at once began to play the tyrant by seizing

young Edward Plantagenet, then fifteen years of age, whose only

offence was that he was the son and heir of the late Duke of Clarence.<sup>g</sup> His uncles had merely kept him

in seclusion since the death of his father, but the new ruler sent him to the Tower, where, though styled Earl of Warwick after the death of his grandmother [A.D. 1490], the rest of his unhappy life was passed in such ignorance that an old writer says he hardly knew one beast or bird from another.

§ 4. By slow marches the new king reached London [Aug. 27, 1485], where he was received with enthusiasm; but he was not crowned until the 30th of October following, on account of a fatal epidemic that prevailed in the capital. The ceremony was performed by the Cardinal Archbishop of Canterbury. Then a parliament was assembled [Nov. 7, 1485], which pursued the usual course of the last thirty years. The Lancastrian attainders, 107 in number, were reversed, and about thirty of the prominent Yorkists were condemned without form of trial. A little later [Jan. 18, 1486] Henry

married the Princess Elizabeth, who, as we have seen,<sup>h</sup> had been eager to become the wife of Richard.

§ 5. Henry added many new features to the revolution on

<sup>a</sup> § 18, p. 273.

<sup>b</sup> § 1, p. 274.

<sup>c</sup> § 11, p. 281.

<sup>d</sup> § 9, p. 280.

<sup>e</sup> § 7, p. 239.

<sup>f</sup> § 11, p. 281.

<sup>g</sup> § 21, p. 273.

<sup>h</sup> § 8, p. 280.

Assumptions of Royalty.

The Court of Star-chamber.

Insurrection.

his own authority. First he established a permanent body-guard for himself, under the name of yeomen of the crown, a step that former kings had not thought necessary. Then he revoked all the crown grants from the time that Richard, Duke of York, had been first appointed Protector,<sup>a</sup> which reduced most persons of any consequence to a complete dependence on him; and, to get rid of any trouble that the ordinary courts might occasion in judging any of these matters, he next induced his parliament to agree to the foundation of the Court of Star-chamber. This tribunal was composed of seven members of the council. Its powers were as extensive as he or his successors chose to make them, so that its very name became odious, and not without substantial reason. These proceedings plainly showed the Yorkists what they had to expect from the new ruler, and accordingly Lord Lovel (who had just been attainted), the Staffords (cousins of the late Duke of Buckingham), and others, rose in arms early in the year 1486. But their measures being badly taken, the rising was soon suppressed. Some sought refuge in sanctuaries, but the chief men escaped to Flanders, where, under the protection of Margaret of Burgundy,<sup>b</sup> the sister of Richard the Third, they busied themselves in preparing for a more formidable attempt in the following year.

§ 6. This was made in Ireland, where the house of York was in great favor, for there Duke Richard had been lord lieutenant, and there his son Clarence was born. John, Earl of Lincoln,<sup>c</sup> who had been declared heir to the throne by Richard the Third, was now in Flanders, when a beautiful youth, called Lambert Simnel, appeared in Ireland, attended by Richard Simon, a young priest from Oxford, who declared that his charge was the Earl of Warwick (Edward Plantagenet), escaped from the Tower, and claimed support for him as the son of their countrymen, which was accorded without any appearance of distrust in the tale. At the same time rumors were spread that one at least of the sons of Edward the Fourth who were said to have been murdered by their uncle Richard<sup>d</sup> was still alive; and Henry gave some appearance of truth to the idea by seizing their mother, the dowager queen, just at this very time, and imprisoning her for the rest of her life in the nunnery at Bemondsey. Her son by her first marriage, the Marquis of



A Pretender in Ireland.

Lincoln's Invasion of Ireland.

Dorset, was also imprisoned, but he was released after a few months.

§ 7. The government of Ireland had been given by Henry to his uncle, Jasper Tudor, who was also created Duke of Bedford; but an Anglo-Irish noble, Fitzgerald, Earl of Kildare, was the deputy, who had had that office bestowed on him by statute for life, in the preceding reign. He was a warm partisan of the House of York, but he was too powerful to be removed. Probably he was privy to the scheme; but at all events he received the youth joyfully, and, utterly abjuring Henry, caused him to be solemnly crowned at Dublin by the archbishop, with the title of Edward the Sixth. Henry, to discredit the youth's claim, brought the young earl out of the Tower and showed him in public, but to little purpose. The poor boy had been kept in seclusion so long that no one of any credit knew him; and the Yorkists plausibly maintained that Henry was attempting to impose on the world, and that theirs was the real earl.

§ 8. Either believing this, or merely from enmity to Henry, the Duchess of Burgundy supplied her nephew, Lincoln,<sup>a</sup> with a force of 2,000 veteran German soldiers under the command of a renowned leader named Martin Schwartz. Lincoln, Lovel, and the rest passed over to Ireland, and being there joined by the kinsmen of the Lord Deputy Fitzgerald, and some thousands of their followers, the whole body soon after landed in Lancashire, where Sir Thomas Broughton and all his tenantry took arms in their cause. On their way through Yorkshire but few of the friends that they had reckoned on came to them, not liking the appearance of the wild, ill-armed Irish, though they sent money and food, and promised to join them after a single battle had been gained.

§ 9. This selfish policy was fatal to the adventurers, as when they reached Nottinghamshire they were met by Henry at Stoke upon Trent, and utterly defeated after a well-fought battle. Lincoln, Lovel, the two Lords Fitzgerald, Schwartz, Broughton, and the other leaders fell on the field, and their men were mercilessly butchered, both Irish and Germans being alike regarded as foreigners. Simnel and his tutor Simon were made prisoners, and their lives were spared—Simnel, that the Yorkists might be mortified at seeing him employed as a turnspit, for many of them still believed in him; and Simon, from a superstitious fear of shedding the

Execution of Yorkists.

Extortions.

The Nobility robbed by the King.

blood of a priest. Simon was doomed to imprisonment for life; and so was Bishop Stillington, who was charged with having favored Simmel, but whose real offence was that he had once been employed in endeavoring to persuade the treacherous minister of the Duke of Brittany to surrender the Earl of Richmond,<sup>a</sup> and had nearly succeeded. <sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 280.

§ 10. Henry first held a three days' rejoicing at Lincoln for his victory; and then he proceeded to execute all who were accused of having favored the Yorkist cause and were not rich enough to ransom their lives at a heavy price. He next visited Yorkshire, where he acted in the same manner. The sums extorted he retained for himself; and he then asked for, and obtained from the parliament, a subsidy for his expenses. But this the Yorkshire people resisted, and they killed the Earl of Northumberland, who endeavored to enforce it. This nobleman had betrayed their favorite, Richard, at Bosworth,<sup>b</sup> and was therefore odious to them. Henry, however, released the attainted <sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 281.

Earl of Surrey from the Tower, and sent him into the north, when the money was paid. As a reward, the earl had his title restored, and even some part of his lands, and he was ever after a trusted adherent of the new line of kings, the second of whom created him Duke of Norfolk.

§ 11. One settled purpose with Henry was to depress and humiliate the house of York and all the old nobility, which he very fully effected; but even a more important object with him was the acquisition of treasure, and he scrupled at no baseness to gain his end. This is well shown in his conduct to the orphan daughter of the Duke of Brittany, in whose territories he had so long been sheltered.

§ 12. That prince, soon after Richmond's establishment on the throne, was threatened with invasion by the King of France, and in his distress he naturally looked for aid from his former guest, who owed his life to him. Henry, however, had no sense of honor or gratitude, and whilst pretending great concern, was really only seeking to benefit himself by the distress of his former host. He easily got a subsidy from his parliament for a war with France in support of the duke; but at the same time he came to a secret understanding with the French king, and, in lieu of equipping an army, he contented himself with allowing a few hundreds of English adventurers to go to Brittany at their own expense, just as in



The King's Ingratitude and Avarice. His Suspicions. Fate of the old Nobility.

later days a British legion served in Spain. This enterprise was unsuccessful. The volunteers were all killed at the battle of St. Aubin, in July, 1488; and though Henry congratulated himself on having thus got rid of many troublesome subjects, the clamor was so great that he was at last obliged to send a small force of his own. But he was a gainer even by this. The French paid him for the troops being kept idle in garrisons that were not meant to be attacked, instead of taking the field, and the young Duchess of Brittany (who had become an orphan just after the fatal battle of St. Aubin) was obliged to bear all their expenses as if they were serving her. The consequence was, that the duchy was soon overrun, and the unfortunate princess was taken prisoner, when she was absolutely forced to marry the King of France, although she was already wedded by proxy to Maximilian of Germany.

§ 13. Henry had found his kingdom at war with Scotland, and he made proposals for peace; but as he declined to surrender Ber-

wick,<sup>a</sup> which the Scots demanded, the negotiation  
<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 287. failed, though, after a time, a truce was agreed to.

Before this was done, all Scots were ordered to quit the realm, and some slight preparation for war had been made; so, to repay him-

self, Henry levied a "benevolence,"<sup>b</sup> which he also  
<sup>b</sup> § 18, p. 272. employed as a test of men's apparent liking for him,

saying openly that he should value their love by the amount that each gave in proportion to his estate. This threat, for it was nothing else, brought him large sums from his bitter enemies, lest they should be ruined. But Henry, like a tyrant of earlier date, was quite content to be hated so long as he was also feared, and he held it as a maxim of State policy that wealthy subjects were more difficult to rule than poor ones. His suspicious temper made him act as his own minister, and he gave his confidence to no one, except in some slight degree to Cardinal Morton, who had lured Buckingham to destruction. He was now chancellor, and he bears the odium of having pointed out to Henry the readiest ways of carrying his tyrannical intentions into effect.

§ 14. The old nobility had been reduced to half its number by the civil war, and most of the survivors being Yorkists, they now were poor also. Henry raised some of his adherents to the peerage, but he took care that they should never become too great or too rich through his lavish grants; and when occasionally a Yorkist obtained the reversal of his own or his ancestor's attainder, it

Origin of the English Yeomanry.

Perkin Warbeck, or Richard, in Ireland.

was always at the price of a large part of his estates, and he usually received only a lower title. Under the pretext of relieving the distresses of the nobles he allowed them to dispose of a large part of their lands, and these being bought by merchants, traders, and farmers, a middle class grew up between the peerage and the poor, which in the next reign purchased the church lands also, and thus, holding the greater part of the soil of the country, soon became the chief power in the State. This was the origin of the powerful "yeomanry" of England.

§ 15. Henry never ceased to show his distrust of the Yorkists instead of attempting to conciliate them, and, as a natural consequence, their machinations against him were endless. Seven years of his reign were disturbed by the proceedings of a young man, known in history as Perkin Warbeck, but who asserted himself to be Richard Duke of York, the son of Edward the Fourth, and who was received as such by many of that king's old friends. These were men who had lived in Edward's court, and who either told the truth or were guilty of wilful falsehood, for they could not be themselves deceived. The matter has never yet been fully proved, either way; but the account that the young man always gave of himself has a far greater air of probability than either of those which Henry published, for he put forth several, which contradict each other. The very different treatment, too, that the young man received when he was made prisoner, to that afforded to Lambert Simnel,<sup>a</sup> is hard to be accounted for except by sup-  
 posing that he was really a prince. It seems thus  
 reasonable to style him Richard, instead of Perkin Warbeck, a name that at once brands him as an impostor.

<sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 297.

§ 16. In the summer of 1492 this young man landed at Cork, and at once assumed the style of a prince. He was tall, of fair complexion, of courtly manners, and handsomely dressed; and his strong resemblance to King Edward was undeniable. John Water, a wealthy merchant, who had not long before been mayor of the city, at once espoused his cause, as did many of the citizens. The Archbishop of Dublin, the Lord Prior of Kilmainham, who was at the head of the Knights of St. John in Ireland, the Earl of Desmond, and Lord Barry also joined him; but Kildare,<sup>b</sup>  
 the deputy, put off the time with courteous excuses.

<sup>b</sup> § 7, p. 298.

Others held back, waiting for him to declare himself, as he was a well-known Yorkist; and before much had been done in the way of



Invasion of France.

Warbeck acknowledged in Flanders.

Treachery.

raising troops, Charles, the French king, invited Richard to his court. Here he was treated as a prince, and the Yorkist exiles (who were now as numerous in France as the Lancastrians had once been) were allowed to assemble around him, with the view of their being employed against Henry, who was at last about to carry out his threatened invasion.

§ 17. But Henry, though he landed at Calais in October with a formidable army, had no real intention of making war. He besieged Boulogne for a few days without effect, and then withdrew, to the great disgust of his followers. They had been obliged to incur vast expenses in equipping themselves, and now that they had to return without having either gained a battle or put hundreds of wealthy prisoners to ransom, they looked on the enterprise as a mere scheme of the king to impoverish them, for he let his distrust of rich subjects be everywhere known. A treaty was soon afterward concluded, by which Henry agreed to prevent any further aid being given to the Bretons, who were in arms against their French masters; and Charles was no longer to shelter Richard, though he absolutely refused to give him up.

§ 18. The young man on this repaired to Flanders, where Margaret, the Duchess of Burgundy, received him with joy as her nephew. She styled him "the White Rose of England," and gave him a guard of honor dressed in the well-known Yorkist livery colors of murrey and blue. At her court he remained for nearly three years, the cause of great anxiety and alarm to Henry. Many of the Yorkists went over to Richard; others sent an agent to make inquiries, but were betrayed by him. This agent was Sir Robert Clifford, a son of "the butcher Clifford" who killed the young

<sup>a</sup> § 24, p. 263. Earl of Rutland at Wakefield,<sup>a</sup> but who himself passed for a Yorkist. He acted with detestable treachery;

for whilst he assured his employers that Richard was indeed the long-lost duke, he betrayed the names of all his correspondents to Henry. Among them were Lord Fitzwalter, Sir William Daubenev, and Sir Robert Ratcliffe, all well-known Yorkists; but Henry was more concerned to find that his own chamberlain, Sir William Stanley, had declared that if he were once convinced of the truth of Richard's tale, he would never bear arms against him.

§ 19. Clifford was recalled, and had a secret interview in the Tower with Henry, who soon made up his mind how to act. The persons named were summoned to attend him as if for some ordi-

Murder of Stanley. Warbeck styled King in Scotland. Insurrection in Cornwall.

nary purpose, when they were seized, attainted without trial, and beheaded. So important did Clifford's services appear that Henry paid him £500 out of his own purse. Sir William Stanley had greatly contributed to gain the battle of Bosworth, where he set Richard's crown upon Henry's<sup>a</sup> head; he was also the brother of Lord Stanley, who was Henry's step-father; <sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 281. and the expression into which he had been betrayed by Clifford, though displeasing to the king, had nothing treasonable in it. But he was very wealthy, and soon disappeared. The common impression was that he was "murdered for his money," which was a severe condemnation of Henry's government.

§ 20. In a few months after the execution of Stanley, Richard sailed [A.D. 1495] with a force to invade England. It had more men of note in it, and was at least as strong as that which landed with Richmond at Milford-haven; but a party that was treacherously invited on shore at Deal was cut off, when the rest returned, dispirited, to Flanders. Because they failed, they have been described only as "a rabblement of knaves." Henry, by granting great commercial privileges to the subjects of the Duke of Burgundy, and by bribing his ministers, soon after procured Richard's expulsion from Flanders, when he repaired, for the second time, to Ireland. But his partisans remembered how the ill-armed Irish had fared at Stoke, and by their advice he went to Scotland, where the king (James the Fourth), received him most cordially, styling him King Richard the Fourth, and gave him in marriage a kinswoman of his own, the beautiful Lady Catherine Gordon, a daughter of the Earl of Huntly.

§ 21. In October, 1496, James and Richard advanced into England with a large army, but the dislike to the Scots was so great that very few of the Yorkists would join them. The Scots, in spite of Richard's interference, plundered the country, and then retired. War with Scotland was now determined on, and a subsidy granted for the purpose; but the people of Cornwall refused to pay their share, asserting that they had nothing to do with the north country. Headed by Lord Audley, a man of ruined fortune, Flam-mock, a lawyer, and Joseph, a blacksmith, they took up arms, and actually marched to London; but they were defeated at Black-heath [June 22, 1497], and their leaders executed. The common people found their way back to the west, checked rather than subdued, and ready to rise again when the occasion might offer.



James and Warbeck invade England. The latter a prisoner. His treatment.

§ 22. They had not long to wait. James and Richard had again entered England, but with the same result as before. Richard then withdrew to Ireland, when he was at once invited to England by the Cornishmen. He landed in Whitsand bay, near Penzance, and being joined by large numbers of the people, he seized the strong post of St. Michael's Mount. Here he left his wife, and marched to Exeter. The walls, however, were strong, and the townsmen, who hated the Cornishmen as foreigners,<sup>1</sup> made so stout a defence that he soon abandoned the siege and pushed forward into Somersetshire. Here, at Taunton, he met the vanguard of the royal army, and hearing that the main body, led by Henry himself, was approaching, his courage failed him, and he fled, Sept. 21, 1497, with a few horsemen to Beaulieu, in the New Forest, where he took sanctuary. But this shameful desertion of his followers availed him little. The monastery was surrounded, and he was soon induced to surrender on a promise that his life should be spared, as it was, though only for a time.

§ 23. Henry at first treated his prisoner with such consideration as is usually only bestowed on persons of real rank, and not on detected impostors. He placed his wife in the court of his queen, and allowed Richard a horse, beside paying various sums of money for him, even down to his tailor's bill, as remains to this day duly entered in Henry's privy purse accounts. But he reimbursed himself for these and all his other expenses by levying enormous fines on all who could be in any way represented as Richard's adherents; and the list of these, which is still preserved among the public records, shows how numerous they were. Richard's imprisonment evidently was but light (probably treacherously so), but an attempt to escape led to his being sent to the Tower, which he only left for the scaffold.

§ 24. It has been mentioned that the unhappy Earl of Warwick was shut up in the Tower by Henry in the very beginning of his reign.<sup>a</sup> Fourteen years had now passed, and Henry

<sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 296. was already looking about for a wife for his eldest son, Arthur, a boy of twelve years of age. He applied to Ferdinand of Castile, a man as heartless as himself, who replied that he could not think of giving his daughter in marriage whilst so near a relative of the former kings existed. Henry had no scruple about re-

<sup>1</sup> They were really so, if manners, customs, and language afford any test, long after this; and the difference has not entirely disappeared even at the present day.

Warbeck and Earl of Warwick beheaded.

The King's Avarice exhibited.

moving such an obstacle, and he also managed to rid himself of Richard at the same time. The two prisoners were allowed to associate. Spies listened to their conversation, charged them, whether truly or untruly, with planning to escape, and they were both executed as traitors in the summer of 1499. Warwick, in consideration of his royal blood, was beheaded within the Tower; whilst Richard was hanged and quartered at Tyburn, his faithful associate John Water, once the mayor of Cork,<sup>a</sup> suffering with him. <sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 301.

§ 25. From this time forward Henry lived undisturbed by any real attempt to dispossess him, although to the end of his life he continued to enrich himself at the expense of all who were in any way connected with the fallen house of York, under the pretence that they were conspiring against him. This was the case with the De la Poles, the brothers of John, Earl of Lincoln,<sup>b</sup> who fell in the battle of Stoke. On the death of their father the dukedom of Suffolk was suppressed, on Henry's own authority, and Edmund, the eldest son, only received the lower title of earl two years afterward on paying a large sum of money. On the death of Richard the hopes of the Yorkists were believed to rest on Edmund, and finding himself in danger from Henry's suspicions, he and his brother Richard withdrew to Flanders. They were at once attainted, and several gentlemen were executed as their confederates. Among them was Sir James Tyrell, who is usually regarded as the murderer of the young princes in the Tower,<sup>c</sup> but the charge was not made against him until long after his death, and is therefore probably untrue, at least so far as he is concerned. <sup>b</sup> § 6, p. 297. <sup>c</sup> § 4, p. 276.

§ 26. As the Yorkists seemed now to be finally crushed, the Spanish king had given his daughter Catherine to the young Prince Arthur with a splendid fortune. But the death of the youth in a few months threatened to undo all that had been accomplished, and the loss of his son was a light matter to Henry compared with repaying the money. He therefore compelled his remaining son, a boy of only eleven years of age, to enter into a contract of marriage with his sister-in-law, who was a handsome young woman of eighteen. The marriage, which was sanctioned by the Pope, though repugnant to every proper feeling, was not celebrated until after Henry's death; but it eventually exercised a most important influence on the affairs of the world. Henry also married his



The King's "Ravening Wolves."

His Baseness toward his Benefactor.

daughter Margaret to the King of Scotland, and though he did not follow the example of the Spanish monarch in giving her a splendid dower, the result was more satisfactory, as her descendants wore the crown of both kingdoms, and thus put an end to the wars that had so often desolated North Britain.

§ 27. Henry's wife, Elizabeth of York,<sup>a</sup> died in 1503, shortly before the marriage of her daughter, and he at once sent ambassadors to various courts to treat for another partner, but they could find no princess sufficiently wealthy, and the expense of their journeys was incurred in vain. He was better served, however, by "two ravening wolves," as a writer of the time calls them, who filled his coffers by the most scandalous means, reviving obsolete laws and perverting existing ones, so that every rich man stood in danger of being ruined by them, though guiltless of any real offence. These "wolves" were two lawyers, named Richard Empson and Edmund Dudley, of whom the first was the son of a poor sieve-maker, but the other was by birth a "gentleman." They took into a kind of partnership with them a band of men of infamous characters, who, under the name of "promoters," carried out their designs by perjury, though in the name of the law. Some of them were appointed under-sheriffs, and in that capacity they named others who sat as jurors, and before these others bore false witness, whilst those who knew the truth dared not contradict them from fear of being proceeded against themselves.

§ 28. Thus every one who was accused was sure to be convicted; and it was soon seen that the only way to escape utter ruin was by coming to some agreement with the "wolves," who thus extorted enormous sums of money, often in the shape of a yearly pension. The greater part went into the king's treasury, where it was kept under his own lock and key; but the agents enriched themselves also, and though "noble men grudged, mean men kicked, poor men lamented, and preachers openly, at Paul's Cross and other places, exclaimed, rebuked, and detested," the oppression endured until Henry became the richest and most odious king in Christendom. One peculiarly base transaction marked his latter years. Philip, Duke of Burgundy, on his way to Spain was driven on the English coast by a tempest, and was welcomed by Henry with great show of regard. But before he could obtain leave to depart he was obliged to agree to a commercial treaty, which gave up all

The King shows Remorse. His Character. Mean Treatment of his Family.

the advantages that he had formerly gained as the price of the expulsion of Richard,<sup>a</sup> and also to surrender Edmund de la Pole, who had long been sheltered in his dominions. <sup>a</sup> § 20, p. 203.

Philip had the grace to stipulate that Henry would spare his captive's life, and he did so; but he let his successor know that he was not bound by his father's promise, and Suffolk was beheaded after a seven years' imprisonment.

§ 29. Henry's later years were marked by much sickness, in the form of gout and consumption, and, in fear of death, he occasionally released poor debtors, and bestowed some small gifts on monasteries and hospitals; but the exactions of Empson and Dudley were never checked by him, and when he died [April 21, 1509], at his new palace of Richmond, he left an enormous treasure behind him, which his prodigal successor very soon dissipated.

§ 30. Henry was a tall, thin man, of a severe yet anxious aspect, who never moved abroad without his guards, and made no attempt to gain the favor of the people by mixing freely with them, as the Yorkist princes had done. His character hardly needs delineation. His courage and address gained him a throne, but he had none of the other high qualities that ought to accompany such a position. He had known actual poverty in his youth, and his every action afterwards seemed devoted to guarding against such a calamity for the future. Hence he cared not how he gained money, though no doubt he was best pleased when he could extract it from the Yorkists. Their depression, indeed, seemed the great purpose of his life after the acquisition of treasure, and he often managed to combine the two.

§ 31. Richard the Third had provided for the widow of Edward the Fourth, but Henry, her son-in-law, resumed the estates as the gift of an usurper, and, besides imprisoning her, married her daughters, against their will, to noblemen who would take them without portions, though one of them escaped this humiliation by becoming a nun at Dartford. His treatment of his wife was no better; for he kept her in complete dependence, and took her plate in pledge when he lent her money to pay her debts. The whole character of his reign was in accordance with his private life—harsh, cold, and suspicious; but it forms a memorable era, as being the turning-point when the old forms of government and living began to pass away, and the foundations were laid of something like the present state of society, when laws and commerce have raised



Accession of Henry the Eighth.

The Promise of his Beginning.

up powers in the State that were all but unknown under the Plantagenets.

## CHAPTER II.

REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH. [A.D. 1509 TO 1547.]

§ 1. THE eldest surviving son of Henry the Seventh, who now came to the throne, a tall, handsome youth of eighteen, was in all outward respects as complete a contrast to his father as could well be imagined. He succeeded to unbounded wealth, and set himself to enjoy it, giving pompous entertainments, and taking an active part in every diversion, so that he at once gained a personal popularity which he never entirely lost. He was proclaimed king on the 22d of April, 1509, and was crowned with his queen (Catherine of Arragon, whom he had just married) on the 24th of June following.

§ 2. His first step was to send Empson and Dudley <sup>a</sup> to the Tower, and then he appointed commissioners to receive the complaints of all who had been injured by them, promising full compensation, lest, as he said, his father's soul should suffer for their iniquity. But this good intention was never carried out. The claims rose to so vast an amount that the treasurer despaired of paying them, and, instead, the "wolves" were put to death [Aug. 17, 1510] on an absurd charge of treason. The money thus saved paid the expenses of the king's marriage with Catherine, which was solemnized in spite of the advice of Archbishop Wareham. The virtues of this unhappy princess had the effect, for many years, of imposing a wholesome restraint on the conduct of her husband, so that his government, though with many blots, was to be preferred to that of his father. But when she lost her influence the whole current of affairs was changed, and henceforward he may justly be considered the worst of English kings.

§ 3. One of the earliest results of the king's marriage was that he was involved in a war with France, which was the beginning of a series of interferences in the affairs of the Continent that lasted during his whole reign. The treasure that he had inherited ena-

War with France.      Henry's Schemes of Conquest.      Death of his Admiral.

bled him to equip fleets and armies, and even to take an emperor into his daily pay; but he had to do with men of much greater abilities than himself in Francis the First and Charles the Fifth, and his schemes of conquest<sup>1</sup> came to nothing. Each alternately sought his alliance or threatened him with invasion, as they saw their own interest at the moment, so that he was hardly ever at peace; and though the plunder of the Church gave him an amount of treasure such as no English ruler had ever before possessed, he spent it all, and died hopelessly in debt.

§ 4. The war with France commenced in 1512, with a defeat inflicted on the French fleet near Brest, when the largest ship on each side (the English "*Regent*" and the French "*Cordelier*") was burnt, and some 1,600 men perished in them. Sir Edward Howard, the English admiral, soon after blocked up the French fleet in Brest, and regarding victory as certain, he wrote to invite the king to come over and have the glory of capturing it. Henry was willing to make the attempt, but his council eagerly protested against it, and wrote a letter to the admiral blaming him for his proposal. Sir Edward, who felt aggrieved at their tone, made a desperate assault on some French galleys, and perished.<sup>2</sup> Henry, when he heard of this mishap, gave the command of the fleet to Sir Edward's brother, and soon afterward passed over to France, where the towns of Terouenne and Tournay were captured under his eyes, the Emperor Maximilian of Germany commanding his cavalry, wearing the Tudor colors of green and white, and receiving for his pay one hundred golden crowns daily. The cavalry bore but a small part in the operations in the field; but on one occasion they had a skirmish with a body of French nobles and knights who took so precipitately to their heels, leaving many prisoners behind them, that the affair was contemptuously styled the Battle of the Spurs. That was late in August, 1513. Among the

<sup>1</sup> How extravagant these were in popular opinion, if not in his own, appears from a manuscript still preserved among the State Papers of the early part of his reign, which indulges in the prophecy that "he shall subdue the realm of France, recover Constantinople and the Holy Land from the Turks, die Emperor of Rome, and eternal bliss shall be his end."

<sup>2</sup> He boarded the French admiral at the head of a party of seventeen men, but being unsupported owing to his galley drifting away, all except one man were driven into the sea at the point of the pike. Seeing capture or death inevitable, Sir Edward threw his gold chain and whistle into the sea, saying that the French should never have the spoils of an English admiral to make a show of.



## A Scottish Invasion of England.

## Battle of Flodden.

French knights at that time was the famous Bayard, a "Chevalier without fear and without reproach," and who was one of the last of the true representatives of the ideal of chivalry.

§ 5. In little more than a fortnight afterward, however, a battle of a very different description was fought at Flodden, among the Cheviot hills, on the borders of Scotland. James the Fourth was the brother-in-law of Henry, but he was in close alliance with France, and in the interest of the French king he invaded England, when Queen Catherine greatly exerted herself to equip an army, for she was regent of the kingdom during her husband's absence. The command was given to the Earl of Surrey (the father

<sup>a</sup> § 4. p. 309.

of the admiral who had perished at Brest),<sup>a</sup> who had with him his son Thomas Howard, and many of the north country gentry. Thomas Howard was particularly obnoxious to the Scots, as he had, a short time before, defeated and killed Andrew Barton, a noted sea-rover, who was regarded as the best mariner in Scotland,<sup>1</sup> and they, in consequence, threatened loudly to take vengeance on him. He therefore obtained leave to quit the fleet, and led 5,000 of his men to serve on land, where they formed the vanguard of his father's army.

§ 6. The Scots had been very successful in their inroad, having beaten down several castles and gained much plunder. A large part of their army had gone home with their spoils, and when the English appeared in superior force the more prudent wished to follow them. James, however, seized the hill of Flodden, and saying scornfully that "all who were afraid had liberty to retire," prepared for battle, placing his guns so as to command the river. After a couple of days passed in messages between the earl and his son and the Scots, urging the latter to descend into the plain, according to a promise that James had formerly given, Thomas Howard and his shipmen forced their way up the hill, and almost destroyed a large body of Scottish spearmen. The main army of the Scots stood firm for a while on the top of the hill, and beat off the Cheshire men; but, being greatly galled by the archers, they at last descended, the king and his nobles marching on foot like the rest.<sup>2</sup> This was the opportunity that Surrey had looked for. The Scots soon found themselves hemmed in on all sides, and though

<sup>1</sup> A naval war existed between the Scots and the Portuguese, and Barton had plundered several English ships on the pretence that they had Portuguese goods on board.

<sup>2</sup> This was a measure seldom resorted to unless in desperate circumstances, and

## The English Victorious.

## Marriage of the Princess Mary.

they sold their lives very dearly, they were almost annihilated. Nearly 9,000 of them lay dead on the field that night [Sept. 9, 1513], and the body of the king was found the next day almost cut to pieces. The loss of the English was hardly one-fifth as great. The Scottish cannon were all taken, and were much valued as trophies;<sup>1</sup> but the victors lost all their baggage, through an attack made by night by the men of Tynedale, a band of borderers who lived by the plunder of English and Scots alike.

§ 7. This victory was very welcome to Henry, who returned to England shortly afterwards, and rewarded the Earl of Surrey with the title of Duke of Norfolk, which his father had lost, with his life, at Bosworth.<sup>a</sup> A peace with France followed, <sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 281. one of the conditions of which was, that the French king (a feeble old man) should marry the Princess Mary, who was Henry's sister, and was then [A.D. 1514] only in her seventeenth year. The princess was sent to France accordingly, and the wedding took place, but in three months' time she was left a widow. The Duke of Suffolk (Charles Brandon)<sup>2</sup> was sent to bring her back to England, but she left behind her one of her attendants, Anne Boleyn, who also was destined for a short time to wear a crown.

§ 8. This newly created Duke of Suffolk was the one person for whom King Henry seems to have entertained a regard that lasted all his life through. He professed much esteem for several others, but the slightest thwarting of his inclination was sufficient to bring them all to destruction. Charles Brandon alone was more fortunate. His uncle had been killed at Bosworth,<sup>b</sup> bearing <sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 281. Richmond's standard, and he was brought up at court as the playfellow of the young Tudors. He became very proficient in all martial exercises, and he bore a conspicuous part in the tourneys, and masquings, and revels of the new reign. He was knighted, then made a peer, as Lord Lisle [A.D. 1513], and soon

was meant as an assurance to the foot that their leaders would stand by them even to the death. The contrary course of riding off and leaving them to their fate in any emergency, was but too common with the knights and nobles of the middle ages.

<sup>1</sup> Among them were several very handsome brass culverins (about the same as the modern eighteen pounders), which were styled the Seven Sisters. Guns in those days usually had names, like ships at present.

<sup>2</sup> Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk, after a long imprisonment, was beheaded in 1513, and his father's title of duke was bestowed, soon afterward, on Charles Brandon, a court favorite.



Brandon in France. He marries the widowed Mary. His "Proud Humility."

afterward, as we have seen,<sup>a</sup> Duke of Suffolk. He repaired to

France to take part in the joustings at the young queen's wedding, and displayed so much address as to

rouse the jealousy of the French nobles, who meanly employed a gigantic German to oppose him. This was in vain. The queen was present, and, forgetful of her dignity, when she saw the giant approach, cried out, "Harm not my gentle Charles!" But there was no cause for her fear. The duke overthrew the giant, and knowing him to be a mere hired man-at-arms, and not a knight, instead of taking his life contented himself with cudgelling him with the broken staff of his own lance until he cried for mercy.

§ 9. Though still a young man, Suffolk had already been married twice, and he had since sought the hand of Margaret, the daughter of the Emperor Maximilian. But he next tried for a higher prize, and gained it, for he secretly wedded the widowed

French queen, Henry's sister,<sup>b</sup> and, to the astonishment of most men, retained the favor of his king,

who insisted on their being married afresh, with all the pomp of royalty. In one of the pageants that followed, Suffolk appeared with the trappings of his horse on one side of cloth of gold, and on the other of frieze, with a motto on each alluding to his queenly partner and himself. On one was to be read,

"Cloth of gold, do not despise,  
Though thou art matched with cloth of frieze."

And on the other,

"Cloth of frieze, be not too bold,  
Though thou art matched with cloth of gold."

§ 10. This example of "proud humility" was very pleasing to the king, but it was lost on one of those who witnessed it and might have profited by it. This was Thomas Wolsey, the son of an Ipswich butcher, who, though a priest, in less than twenty years, by unwearied diligence in everything but church affairs, raised himself from the humble position of tutor in the Marquis of Dorset's family to be lord chancellor, archbishop, cardinal, and papal legate, and aspired to become Pope. All the affairs of the kingdom passed through his hands, and he tried to grasp at those of all Christendom also. His household was as sumptuous as that of the king. Rival monarchs heaped favors and pensions on him. He seemed to make peace and war at his pleasure, and he had the absurd arrogance, in writing to foreign powers, to use

Arrogance of Cardinal Wolsey. The English ravage France. Wolsey's Exactions.

the expression, "*Ego et Rex meus*" (I and my King), "as if," as it was afterwards remarked in the parliament, "the king was his servant." Well might Archbishop Wareham (who had been stripped of the chancellorship that Wolsey might hold it) exclaim, "This man is drunk with too much prosperity." At present, however, and for some years afterward, all went smoothly with him. The Duke of Buckingham incurred his displeasure, and lost his head in consequence.<sup>1</sup> The proudest noble no longer dared withstand him in his "full-blown dignity;" whilst every quarrel between the King of France and the Emperor Maximilian only added to his wealth, as he sold the aid of "his king" first to one party and then to the other.

§ 11. By Wolsey's advice Henry went to France in the year 1520, and held interviews with the king, on what was called the Field of Cloth of Gold (near Calais), so lavish were the adornments of the two courts; and soon afterward Wolsey paid a visit with almost equal pomp to the German emperor. A war with France followed [A.D. 1522], when the French king attempted the conquest of Ireland, promising to put Richard de la Pole, who now bore the title of "the White Rose of England,"<sup>2</sup> in possession of it. In return, France was ravaged on the coast by the Earl of Surrey (the Lord Thomas Howard of Flodden),<sup>a</sup> and up to the gates of Paris by the Duke of Suffolk.<sup>b</sup> These operations, of course, demanded large supplies of money, and a "benevolence"<sup>c</sup> supplied it for the year 1522; but the next year another large sum was wanted, and to gain it "my Lord Legate's Grace" (such was Wolsey's title) condescended to visit the House of Parliament. He did at last obtain a grant, but with so much difficulty that he resolved to pursue another course for the future.

<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 313.

<sup>b</sup> § 7, p. 311.

<sup>c</sup> § 18, p. 272.

§ 12. From this time forward we trace only the defeats and humiliations of the proud cardinal. The Pope died in 1524, and Wolsey, it may be said, nominated himself for the office. But this did not suit the views of Maximilian, and with the certainty of offending the haughty favorite, he declined his assist-

<sup>1</sup> The charge against the duke was, that he had consulted astrologers about his chance of succession to the throne: but his real offences were, his refusing on some public occasion to give way to the proud cardinal, and also his great wealth.

<sup>2</sup> He had long been in the service of the King of France, having joined it when the war of 1512 broke out. In revenge, Henry beheaded his brother, the imprisoned Earl of Suffolk (see note 2, page 311), the first of many judicial murders, from similar motives, that disgraced his reign.



Battle of Pavia. Wolsey, alarmed, courts Popularity. His Hypocrisy plain.

ance. Wolsey at once went over to the French party, taking "his king" with him, though the emperor was Henry's nephew and the consequence was a coldness between them which led to war in the year 1528.

§ 13. Before things had reached this pass several matters had occurred that had more important consequences than the war itself. In the first place, the French king was defeated and made prisoner at Pavia, on the 24th of February, 1525, so that the alliance with him was an unprofitable affair, for wanting all his treasure for his ransom he had none to spare for the cardinal. The battle of Pavia, however, had one consolation for Henry, as his hated enemy,

Richard de la Pole,<sup>a</sup> was there slain. The king showed his joy on the occasion by making several new peers. Then Wolsey tried to extort money by means of a commission, instead of applying to the parliament, but this was resisted on all hands, and the scheme had to be abandoned.

§ 14. Thus at one stroke Wolsey lost the favor of his master, and though he tried to regain it by presenting the magnificent palace of Hampton Court, which he had just built, to the king, it had but a temporary effect. It was seen that he could no longer be relied on to meet every demand that his prodigal master might choose to make, and therefore he was no longer valued. Sensible of this, he now, for the first time in his life, appeared willing to court popular favor. The people of Norfolk and Suffolk had been particularly violent in resisting the commission, and though the scheme was abandoned it was thought necessary, for the support of authority,

to bring some of them before the Star-chamber court.<sup>b</sup>

Here they were roundly rated for their conduct, and ordered to find surety for their good behavior in future. They replied that they had done nothing wrong in resisting an unlawful demand, and no surety would they give. The council threatened to commit them all to prison, when the cardinal came forward and said "He would be surety for his own countrymen," and so they were dismissed. But this did not make them forget that "their countryman" it was who had caused all their trouble by his illegal conduct.

§ 15. Scarcely had this discontent been appeased when another broke out, in consequence of the cardinal's high-handed proceedings. He professed to be a patron of learning, and he obtained the royal license to found two great establishments, to be called

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 313.

<sup>b</sup> § 5, p. 296.

Suppression of Monasteries.    Validity of Queen Catherine's Marriage questioned.

Cardinal's College, at Oxford and at Ipswich. His mode of raising funds for this purpose furnished the precedent for the suppression of the monasteries, which took place after his death. By his influence with the Pope he was allowed to seize on the property of several small monasteries on his own allegation that they were ill-conducted, and this plunder he devoted to his own foundations. But in one instance at least, at Bayham in Sussex, the people of the neighborhood drove out his officers and replaced the monks. "All men cursed and grudged at the cardinal," says a writer of the time, and "the butcher's dog" was the name that no punishments could hinder them applying to him in common discourse. He knew also that both Queen Catherine<sup>a</sup> and her nephew, the emperor, disliked and distrusted him, and <sup>b</sup> § 1, p. 308. in revenge he took a step that brought great trouble upon them and ended in his own ruin.

§ 16. It has been mentioned that Archbishop Wareham objected to the marriage of Henry with his brother's widow,<sup>b</sup> but he was overruled, and the royal couple had now <sup>a</sup> § 26, p. 305. lived for sixteen years in harmony; but, to Henry's great disappointment, they had no son, two having died in infancy. Their only living child was the Princess Mary, and when a marriage between her and the son of the King of France was proposed, though they were both children, the French ambassador expressed a doubt whether her parents' marriage was a valid one. Wolsey communicated this doubt to the king, and to magnify his own importance and to ruin the queen at the same time, he suggested that he could prevail on the Pope to dissolve the marriage, and thus allow Henry to wed some other woman who might give him his much-desired male heir. It was really a matter of public concern, lest a war for the succession should break out on his death. The Pope was at once applied to, and seemed disposed to comply, only he dared not offend the emperor. He therefore took the middle course of appointing two cardinals (Wolsey was one of them, and the other, Campeius, who held an English bishopric) to inquire into the matter. The Pope (Clement the Eighth) had been not long before a prisoner in the hands of the imperialists, by whom he had been so harshly treated that, though now at liberty, he was in mortal fear of them. Hence he acted the feeble part of first intrusting a bull, granting the divorce, to Campeius, and then ordering him to destroy it and remit the cause to Rome.



Henry seeks a Divorce. The Queen Protests. Henry's Love for Anne Boleyn.

§ 17. Accordingly, near the end of the year 1528, Cardinal Campeius arrived in England, when the king made a speech to his parliament, declaring that he was troubled in mind at the thought that he had probably been living in sin for so many years, and that it was this, and not any dislike to the queen, that had caused him to act as he had done. Next the cardinals waited on the queen, and endeavored to persuade her to consent to a divorce, but she steadily refused, saying that "she was the king's true wife, and would never disgrace her child by allowing that her marriage was unlawful."

§ 18. In the summer of the following year [A. D. 1529], the cardinals held a court, at which both the king and the queen appeared. Henry professed his readiness to stand by their award, but Catherine protested against them as partial judges,<sup>1</sup> and throwing herself at her husband's feet made a pathetic appeal to him. It failed to move him, when she declared that she appealed to Rome, and left the court, never more to appear in it. For form's sake, the cardinals passed some time in taking evidence about Catherine's former marriage, and then adjourned their court, which never met again.

§ 19. The king at once showed the real cause of his proceedings by going on a progress, and taking with him, in royal state, one of his queen's maids of honor, the beautiful Anne Boleyn, who had re-

mained at the French court when his sister Mary had  
<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 311. quitted it,<sup>a</sup> but had recently returned, and had been

placed by her uncle, the Duke of Norfolk, in the royal household. Here she was courted by Lord Henry Percy, and would have married him, but unhappily she attracted the notice of the king, and by his order Wolsey (in whose household Lord Henry was) broke off the match. Henry now shamelessly declared himself her lover, and with as little principle she listened to him, to her own destruction. No doubt her gay, frivolous manners suited him far better than the quiet demeanor of his wife, who, besides being older than himself, suffered from ill-health, and could no longer take a part in the riotous pageants and long journeys in which he delighted.

§ 20. At this crisis, when it was seen that the Pope dared not grant a divorce, Thomas Cranmer, a member of Jesus College, Cambridge, suggested that the universities should be applied to

<sup>1</sup> She had sufficient ground for doing so. Wolsey was well known as unfriendly, and had procured the commission under which they acted; and Campeius was Bishop of Salis bury. He was deprived of the see when Henry finally quarrelled with the Pope.

Wolsey's Humiliation, Treatment, and Death.

His Possessions Seized.

to answer the question, "Do the laws of God allow a man to marry his brother's widow?" This entirely suited Henry's humor. Cranmer was summoned to court, and employed with others, both lawyers and divines, to write in favor of the divorce; and a secret agent was sent out to the different foreign universities. Henry anticipated their decision in his favor; Wolsey was therefore no longer wanted to conduct "the king's matter," as it was called, and his fall was even more sudden than his rise.

§ 21. Wolsey opened the Court of Chancery with even more than his usual pomp at the beginning of Michaelmas term, 1529. On the same day the king's attorney preferred an indictment against him, charging him with receiving bulls from Rome, an offence against a statute of the time of Richard the Second, for which he was liable to forfeiture of goods and imprisonment. Though it was notorious that what he had done was by the king's direct command, judgment was given against him, the great seal was taken from him, and he was sent to reside in comparative poverty at Esher. His pride at once sank to the most abject humiliation, and he seemed likely to die of grief, when Henry condescended to send his own physician to him, and held out a hope of restoring him to favor. This was a cruel deception. He was soon ordered to repair to his see, for, among other dignitaries, he held the archbishopric of York; but it was not long after he had reached it when he was arrested, whilst at dinner, on a charge of high treason, Lord Henry Percy (now become Earl of Northumberland), whom he had <sup>a</sup> § 19, p. 316. so cruelly injured,<sup>a</sup> being directed to seize him.

§ 22. Wolsey was soon put into the hands of the lieutenant of the Tower, who brought him towards London; but he died at Leicester Abbey, on the way, of grief and fear, exclaiming with his last breath, "Had I served God as faithfully as I have served the king. He would not in mine old age have abandoned me to my enemies." All his possessions, including his projected colleges, fell into the king's hands, who also extorted £120,000 from the clergy for submitting to his legatine power, though they would have been treated as traitors had they attempted to resist it. Wolsey was the last great churchman of the Roman school, and very soon after his death the papal power in England was swept away.

§ 23. Several years before this event a movement had arisen in Germany which rejected not merely the supremacy, but many of the doctrines of the Roman church. Its chief originator was Mar-



## Luther and his Doctrines.

## Henry Repudiates the Pope.

tin Luther, a Saxon monk and an eloquent preacher, whose opinions were widely received and embraced in his own country. Like Wickliffe, he taught that the Bible was the only true rule of faith, doctrine, and practice.\* And it was he who first projected into society with power the idea that every man has the right to exercise his private judgment in religious matters, independent of princes, pontiffs, or hierarchies. But Henry, assisted by Sir Thomas More, wrote a book against the German Reformers, which was so welcome to the Pope (Leo the Tenth) that he bestowed on the king the title of Defender of the Faith, which is still borne by the British sovereigns, but not in the sense in which it was originally conferred. The difficulties that he experienced with regard to his divorce, however, brought him round to one of Luther's prominent tenets, and he resolved to cast off all subjection to Rome. He also overthrew the monasteries, and reduced the church, as an establishment, to an absolute dependence on the State; but he did not, like Luther, quarrel with the doctrine of Rome. The changes in that direction were introduced from abroad, in the days of his successor. Henry's only quarrel was with the supremacy of the Pope and the wealth of the church, and he dealt blows to each from which neither has ever recovered.

§ 24. Wolsey was succeeded as chancellor by Sir Thomas More, an eminent lawyer, for whom Henry professed great regard, but he did not long retain the office, for he was too honest to lend himself to every changing fancy of his master. In the mean time Anne Boleyn's father had been created a peer, and Cranmer, the king's supple tool, resided in his house, diligently employed in advocating the divorce which was to make Anne a queen and himself Archbishop of Canterbury. Opinions in its favor were obtained from the two English universities (Oxford and Cambridge) and from several foreign ones, by threats in the one case and by bribes in the other. Cranmer was then sent to Rome, and offered to maintain an argument on them with all comers; but this was civilly declined. He then went to Germany, where he remained awhile in company with the adherents of Luther, and received from them doctrines which he dared not impart to Henry, but which he successfully introduced in the time of his successor.

§ 25. Henry had by this time learnt that the Pope would not grant the divorce, and he resolved to settle the matter without.

The King marries Anne Boleyn.

Cranmer's infamous Declaration.

He therefore laid the opinions of the universities before the parliament [A.D. 1531], encouraged the writing of books in which the papal power was questioned, and threatened the withdrawal of certain customary payments to Rome. Next he created his favorite a marchioness, and took her with him to visit the French king, who received her as a queen. Soon afterward he married her; but this important step was taken so secretly, as something to be ashamed of, that its date is not accurately known. The priest who performed the ceremony (Rowland Lee) was made an archbishop and was otherwise rewarded.

§ 26. Anne Boleyn had now attained the high position for which she had so long striven; but there was one more humiliation to be inflicted on her royal mistress, and it was not long delayed. The see of Canterbury was vacant. It was given to Anne's zealous champion, Cranmer, whose first public act was to pronounce Catherine's marriage invalid and Anne's marriage good. Catherine was removed, almost by force, from Amptill, and sent to reside at a secluded seat in Huntingdonshire, called Kimbolton, with only a few attendants, who were forbidden to style her queen—only Princess Dowager of Wales, as widow <sup>a</sup> § 26, p. 305. to Prince Arthur,\* her first and lawful husband.

There she died in less than three years, and Anne survived her but a few months.

§ 27. Henry's conduct in this matter of his divorce was vehemently condemned by many, but especially by John Fisher, Bishop of Rochester, and by the various orders of friars, who had a liberal patron in Queen Catherine. One of them, named Peto, preaching before the king at Greenwich, after the second marriage was known, boldly likened Henry to Ahab, and prophesied a like fate for him; and a nun at Canterbury, Elizabeth Barton, who was known as the Holy Maid of Kent, professed to have visions which threatened him with dethronement and death unless he took back his lawful wife. Henry met this opposition by procuring an act of parliament which made it treason to refuse to swear that his second marriage was good; and then he put to death the maid and several monks who were said to be associated with her. Peto was fortunate enough to escape to the Continent.

§ 28. Four days after Cranmer's declaration of the queen's degradation, Anne was crowned with great pomp [June 1, 1533], and three months afterward she gave birth, not to the greatly desired



Anne Boleyn Beheaded. Jane Seymour Queen. The King Head of the Church.

son, but to a daughter, who was afterwards Queen Elizabeth. From this time her favor with the fickle king began to decline, and very soon a fair maid of honor, named Jane Seymour, supplanted her in his affections, as she had done Catherine. But Anne's fate was much more promptly decided. Something in her manner at a pageant at Greenwich roused the jealousy of Henry, and she was hurried to the Tower, tried, with her brother and four other courtiers, on charges almost too horrible to be true, and beheaded on the 19th of May, 1536. The king was out hunting on the day of the beheading, and was informed of the act by a preconcerted signal—the firing of the Tower gun. It gave him joy; and the next day he rode into Wiltshire and married Jane Seymour, Anne's maid of honor, who a little more than a month later appeared as queen. By this union Henry's wishes were gratified, as Jane brought him a son, and though she died in a week after, her brothers rose to power from her brief queenship, and one of them, Edward, who was created Earl of Hertford, became the Protector of the kingdom.

§ 29. Whilst these domestic affairs were freely canvassed by people of every station, steps were taken by the king to make the breach with Rome irreparable. Every kind of dependence on the Pope was formally renounced by act of parliament, and the king was declared to be the Head of the Church. In that capacity he appointed a layman, Thomas Cromwell, “Lord Vicegerent in matters ecclesiastical,” or Vicar-General, who superseded the bishops in many of their functions, and controlled the exercise of the rest. This, however, was but the beginning of the change that was contemplated, and was carried out.

§ 30. All over the country monastic establishments—some large, some small, but possessing among them a vast amount of property—were then scattered. Many of them were anything else than *religious* establishments in the best sense of the word, and did not deserve existence. The wealth of some was used for vicious and unholy purposes, while that of others was properly managed. The king determined to seize all this property, confounding bad and good together, and he had an instrument ready to his hand in his new lord vicegerent. Cromwell was the son of a blacksmith at Putney, and as a trader and a soldier had visited France, Germany, and Italy, and had shared in the plunder of Rome when sacked by the German imperialists long before. Afterwards he

Vicar-General worthy of the King.

Religious Houses Suppressed.

was in Wolsey's household, and had the rare merit of not deserting him in his adversity. Next he entered the royal service, and soon showed himself so bold and unscrupulous that he was judged to be a fit agent to carry out any scheme which the rapacity or the anger of the king might suggest. Accordingly he was directed to undertake a visitation of the monasteries, which he carried out, either in person or by his deputies, in the year 1535.

§ 31. Cromwell and his deputies, knowing well what was required, soon presented a series of reports to the king, accusing the monasteries in general of every imaginable crime, and the result was that, without any further inquiry, or hearing any of them in their own defence, the parliament passed an act suppressing all the monasteries that had an income of less than £200 per year, and giving all their property to the king. The heads of the houses received small pensions, but the rest had only a trifle for their present wants, and were told that they were no longer bound by their vows, and must work for their living. "Go spin, jades; go spin," was the recorded exhortation to some aged nuns.

§ 32. Nearly four hundred religious houses were thus swept away, but the sum brought into the royal treasury was not so large as had been expected, and it was then resolved to suppress all the rest. The monks, however, whatever their shortcomings may have been, seem to have been highly regarded by the people, who murmured loudly at what had been already done; it was therefore determined to proceed differently with the "noble great monasteries," such as Canterbury, Westminster, St. Alban's, and Malmesbury. The heads of these houses were assailed with both promises and threats, and many were thus induced to surrender their abbeys and priories. Existing vacancies were filled up with men who had already promised to obey the king's directions; and the most odious charges were brought forward against those who stood firm.

§ 33. These found hosts of partisans, and insurrections broke out, especially in Lincolnshire and Yorkshire, having for object the restitution of the monasteries, the suppression of "heresy," and the removal of "base-born councillors," by which Cromwell and Cranmer<sup>a</sup> were specially aimed at. But, with worldly wisdom, these notable men had advised a liberal distribution of the abbey lands among the nobility and gentry, and the Duke of Norfolk, uncle of Jane Seymour,<sup>b</sup> who had his full share, though as fierce an opponent of

<sup>a</sup> § 26, p. 319.<sup>b</sup> § 28, p. 319.



Suppression of Monasteries.

The Spoils.

Cruelty and Plunder.

“heresy” as any of them, marched against the Yorkshiremen, who called their insurrectionary journey the Pilgrimage of Grace, and earned Henry’s approbation by his merciless severity in putting down the popular movement.

§ 34. This abortive insurrection was speedily followed, in 1539, by the suppression of the whole of the monasteries yet remaining;<sup>1</sup> and the king avoided the necessity of pensioning many of their members by executing them as traitors. Their treason consisted in denying that a layman could be the Head of the

Church,<sup>a</sup> a treason for which Bishop Fisher and Sir

<sup>a</sup> § 29, p. 320.

Thomas More, as well as several priors and monks of Carthusian houses,<sup>2</sup> had already [1535], been judicially murdered. Among the sufferers were the abbots of the great houses of Barlings, Colchester, Fountains, Glastonbury, Jervaux, Reading, Sawley, Whalley, and Woburn, and the prior of Bridlington; whilst others who had compliantly rendered up their charges were made bishops of the six new sees, to the foundation of which a small part of the plunder was devoted. Another part went to build fortresses along the coast, for which the ruined churches furnished some of the materials;<sup>3</sup> and a trifle was bestowed on the universities, consisting mainly of what had been seized some years before by Wolsey.

§ 35. These public works, however, did not represent a tithe of the spoil. The king justly bears all the odium, but he did not get so large a share of the profit as might be expected. Indisputable evidence remains that, by bribes to Cromwell and his associates, much of the land was sold at merely nominal prices, and Henry’s prodigal generosity induced him to grant whatever was

<sup>1</sup> The whole number, exclusive of the small houses dissolved in 1536, is reckoned at 645; but many of these had already come into the king’s hands by so-called voluntary surrender. Twenty-nine of these were styled mitred abbeys or priories, and their heads had seats in parliament equally with the bishops.

<sup>2</sup> Their chief house was in London, and the greater part of its members were of one mind in upholding the cause of the queen, and refusing to acknowledge the royal supremacy. The prior, John Houghton, was first executed, but this did not shake the firmness of the rest. Three of the monks were then hanged, and soon afterward nine more in a body. A few still remained, who were suffered to die of sickness in Newgate. A fresh prior was appointed, who surrendered the house, which was given to the Duke of Norfolk, who was the uncle of the new queen.

<sup>3</sup> As one instance, large quantities of the stones from St. Augustine’s Abbey, Canterbury, were sent over to repair the fortifications of Calais; and in pulling down Hurst Castle, recently, it was found that many parts were almost entirely composed of curved stones from Beaulieu Abbey, in its neighborhood.

Destruction of Sacred Property.

Jewelry seized.

A Solemn Farce.

asked for by his hungry courtiers. Thus a very large part of the property of the country at once changed hands, and its new holders, "making haste to grow rich," committed the most pitiable havoc, many traces of which are to be seen even at the present day. "These men ruthlessly destroyed many of the noblest edifices of the country merely to sell their materials, desecrated churches or bartered them like merchandise, wantonly or ignorantly ruined valuable libraries, threw down tombs and obliterated monumental inscriptions, and cast out the bones of the great and good that they might gain a little further profit from their leaden coffins and their sepulchral brasses." By such means many of them acquired vast estates, and others were ennobled. But in very few instances indeed had their prosperity any long continuance, and several of them perished on the scaffold.

§ 36. But beside the landed property of the monasteries, which Henry was obliged to share with his assistants, there was a rich store of jewels and gold that, petty plunder by his agents excepted, came exclusively into his own hands. These were the accumulated offerings of pilgrims for ages past to the many shrines of saints that the country then contained, and which the most lawless robber had never ventured to touch. Foremost among these was the shrine of St. Thomas (Thomas <sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 137. à Becket<sup>a</sup>) of Canterbury, which yielded a vast sum to the royal treasury, gathered from superstitious devotees who worshipped at it. Not content with appropriating this, Henry went through the solemn farce of having a man who had been dead nearly four hundred years condemned as a traitor. He ordered the shrine to be demolished, directed that the saint should only be styled Bishop Becket for the future, and that his image, wherever met with, should be defaced. Other shrines were equally plundered, but in their case it was not thought necessary to attain any of their tenants. In the exercise of what was professed to be pious zeal against idolatry, innumerable relics and images were destroyed. But Henry was a believer in the efficacy of such things himself, and would probably not have quarrelled with them had they not been cased in gold and glittering with gems.

§ 37. The king, as has been mentioned,<sup>b</sup> had no <sup>b</sup> § 23, p. 317. sympathy with the opinions of Luther and his friends; and knowing that he had deeply offended the great body of his people by his plunder of the monasteries, he endeavored to regain



The King not a Protestant. He persecutes. Marries a Protestant Princess.

their good opinion by mercilessly persecuting the “sacramentarian heretics,” as the disbelievers in transubstantiation were called. At the same time he was equally severe on all who refused his title of Head of the Church,<sup>a</sup> and he burnt the one  
<sup>a</sup> § 29, p. 320. and hanged the others in company.

§ 38. The king seemed more anxious, after his quarrel with the Pope, than before, to show that he held firmly the leading doctrines of the Church of Rome; and so it was that in 1539 he procured the passing of an act by parliament, since known as the Statute of the Six Articles, which was especially directed against the holders of the “new opinions,” such as Luther and others taught. Cranmer was known to be one of these, but as his timid nature prevented his bringing his views prominently forward, and as he had secured a peculiar degree of favor with Henry by his services in the divorce of Catherine of Arragon,<sup>b</sup> they  
<sup>b</sup> § 26, p. 319. were passed over in him, whilst bolder men who avowed them were burnt. But the reproach of moral cowardice does not attach to Cranmer alone, for the imperious Henry bore down the very idea of opposition in all immediately about him. In the time of his successor, Bishops Bonner, Gardiner, and Tunstall (to mention only a few noted names) showed a firmness but little to be expected by any one who had seen how readily they bent under Henry’s iron hand, and joined with alacrity in his attack on Rome, the plunder of the monasteries, the substitution  
<sup>c</sup> § 29, p. 320. of Cromwell for the whole bench of bishops,<sup>c</sup> and the murder of duke and countess, bishop and baron. In fact, under Henry few public men had the honesty and courage to act up to their opinions; and the few who did paid for it with their lives.

§ 39. In spite of his dislike of all opposers of the doctrines of the Italian church, political considerations induced Henry to think of allying himself with the Protestant princes in Germany who held the so-called heretical opinions, and, unfortunately for himself, Cromwell (now created Earl of Essex) induced him to marry Anne of Cleves, whose brother, the Duke of Cleves, was a person of some consideration among those princes. When she came to England, at the close of 1539, she did not suit Henry’s taste. The vulgar brute coarsely styled her “a Flanders mare,” and though he married her [January 5, 1540], it was with an ill-will which he afterwards pleaded as a reason for setting the marriage aside. At

Fall of the Vicar-general.

The Pope threatens Excommunication.

first he only lamented his "evil fortune," but it was soon seen that he blamed Cromwell for it, and the fate of the great "Hammer of the Monks," as he was fitly called, was decided, as he had nothing but the royal favor to rely on.

§ 40. No man of his time was so unpopular as Thomas Cromwell. He was regarded as a heretic in religion; and even those who had profited by him in the partition of the abbey lands<sup>a</sup> hated him as "base born." Of this mind was the Duke of Norfolk, who suddenly accused him of treason whilst sitting at the council table [June 10, 1540], and he was hurried to the Tower. Under his direction several persons had been condemned unheard, by being attainted without trial,<sup>1</sup> and now he experienced the same measure of injustice himself. He was declared guilty of treason and heresy, and condemned to die. But he was suffered to live a month longer, not in consequence of his urgent entreaties for life ("Most gracious Prince, I cry for mercy, mercy, mercy!" he wrote in vain), but in order that he might draw up a statement containing such an account of the marriage as would enable Henry to divorce his fourth wife. This iniquity was soon effected [July 26, 1540] by the compliant Cranmer,<sup>b</sup> and the king married the beautiful Catherine Howard, niece of the Duke of Norfolk, and a thorough papist, two days afterward (the very day that his "miserable prisoner and poor slave," Cromwell, was beheaded), only to execute her also in turn.

§ 41. Even before the total suppression of the monasteries the Pope (Paul the Third) had threatened Henry with excommunication, and in 1538 he issued the bull, and endeavored to induce the emperor and the King of France to unite in an invasion of England. The alarm that this excited gave occasion to some of the most cruel murders that disgrace Henry's reign. He had a kinsman named Reginald Pole, who became a priest, and who offended him by writing a reply to one of the publications in favor of the divorce. He was abroad at the time, and, neglecting to return when summoned, was attainted. This was only the usual course of government under Henry; but when the papal bull was issued, as Reginald was beyond his reach, he seized on his brothers, and

<sup>1</sup> Cromwell is often said to have devised this perversion of justice, but such is not the fact. He only revived what Henry the Seventh had often practised.



The Order of St. John suppressed.

Preparations for Invasion.

even his aged mother, and had them all executed on the charge of corresponding with him. The mother, who was Countess of Salisbury, had been the governess of Henry's daughter Mary,<sup>a</sup> and

<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 315. was the sister of the Earl of Warwick, who had been murdered to allay the scruples of Ferdinand,<sup>b</sup>  
<sup>b</sup> § 24, p. 304. the father of Catherine of Arragon.

§ 42. After the suppression of the monasteries there still remained the Order of the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem,<sup>c</sup> and as its members were trained soldiers, it was seen that they might be dangerous enemies in case that any attempt was made to put the bull in execution. The order was therefore dissolved by act of parliament [A.D. 1540] and its possessions seized, on the plea that some of its members upheld the Pope's power and slandered the king and his councillors. Some of them were seized and executed as traitors, and their grand prior, Sir William Weston, fell down dead in the gateway when leaving their stately house of Clerkenwell.

§ 43. The great body of the people were deeply dissatisfied with Henry's proceedings, but the threat of invasion caused them to rally to his standard, nor was he wanting in activity on the occasion. He visited the sea-coasts, superintending the erection of castles, some of which still stand;<sup>1</sup> and he turned such of the monastic churches as yet remained in his hands into storehouses, laying up gunpowder in one, wine in another, and salt fish in a

<sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 299. third. Then, imitating the policy of his father,<sup>d</sup> he journeyed into the north [Aug., 1541] taking his new

queen with him, where all who had favored the Pilgrimage of Grace<sup>e</sup> or other risings met him with rich peace-offerings. But his contentment was of short dura-

<sup>c</sup> § 33, p. 321. tion. His queen, whom he declared he loved most dearly, was accused by the obsequious Archbishop Cranmer of unchastity, and was hurried to the block [Feb. 13, 1542], and the royal savage was for the fifth time a widower. The unhappy young creature being the niece of the Duke of Norfolk, her marriage was looked upon as a sign that the breach with Rome might after all be healed.

§ 44. Submission to the Pope was not Henry's intention. The idea of being his own pope was too much to his taste to be aban-

<sup>1</sup> Among them may be mentioned Walmer Castle, near Deal; Southsea Castle, in Hampshire; and St. Mawes, in Cornwall.

Henry assumes the Pontificate.    Another Protestant Queen.    Persecutions.

done, and regarding himself as charged with the spiritual instruction of his people, he set about supplying it. He had received as learned an education as most of his bishops, and he conceived himself quite able to superintend their labors. He therefore directed them to draw up for his consideration a series of articles "to establish Christian quietness and unity," and when he had corrected them with his own hand they were published. Next he allowed Cranmer to translate the Bible, but afterwards, seeming to repent what he had done, he prohibited the reading of it in public. With the strange idea of supplying its place he directed the bishops to draw up a book which should give to the "unlearned sort" just as much religious knowledge as he considered proper for them. The book was published in 1536, and was styled "The Institution of a Christian Man," or more shortly, *The Bishops' Book*. This, however, did not suit him long, and in 1543 it was superseded by "*The Necessary Doctrine and Erudition for any Christian Man*," shortly called *The King's Book*, which inculcated many Roman dogmas that had been left open questions by the "*Institution*."

§ 45. This seemed an unfavorable circumstance for those who had imbibed the "new opinions;" but, fortunately for them, Henry's sixth choice of a wife [1543] was from among their number. This was the widow of Lord Latimer, but who is better known by her maiden name of Catherine Parr. She was more successful than any of his other wives in retaining his favor, for he now suffered much from illness, and she sedulously attended to him. Hence, though all who dared to question his headship of the church died the death of traitors, her watchful care prevented any harm befalling the "heretics," if they did not declare their opinions too loudly. If they did, Gardiner, or Rich, or Wriothesley—supple tools of Henry—brought the matter before the king, and then no hope of mercy remained for them. One of these imprudent people was Anne Askew, a lady connected with the court, who, previous to her martyrdom, was racked in the Tower, in the hope of making her disclose something unfavorable to the queen; but her constancy was proof against the torture.

§ 46. The end of Henry's eventful reign was now approaching. The threatened invasion<sup>a</sup> never took place, though a French fleet hovered on the English coast, and the Scots were induced to ravage the northern countries. On the con-

<sup>a</sup> § 41, p. 325.



A Marriage Treaty.

A Subservient Parliament.

The King's Ingratitude.

trary, Henry, though now growing old and unwieldy, again crossed the seas, and captured Boulogne in the year 1544, when a great number of Scottish nobles fell into his hands, who were set free on condition of advocating a marriage between his son

<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 310.

and Mary Stuart, the infant daughter of his nephew, James the Fifth.<sup>a</sup> The treaty was agreed to, though never carried out; and Scotland was invaded, but without producing the desired effect. Henry, however, continued his interference with the affairs of the country, and paid a band of assassins, who murdered Cardinal Beaton [1546], a man of bad character, but an able statesman, who refused to fall in with his views.

§ 47. Henry's parliaments had ever been most discreditably subservient to him; the fact being, that a large number of the Commons were his servants, or named by him. Three times did they relieve him from his debts. Three separate times did they alter the succession to the throne, and make it treason to cast a doubt on any of his marriages beyond the first. They allowed his proclamations to have the force of law; and finally they surrendered the last shadow of independence by permitting him actually to dispose of his dominions by will, as freely as any gentleman might dispose of a private estate. He acted upon this, and named his son as his successor, but also enabled his two daughters, Mary<sup>b</sup> and

<sup>b</sup> § 16, p. 315.

<sup>c</sup> § 28, p. 319.

Elizabeth,<sup>c</sup> to inherit the crown; though, by his own wish, they had both been declared illegitimate, and the mother of one had died of a broken heart, and the other had perished on the scaffold.

§ 48. But the latest act of his life was one of the worst. No one had rendered him greater services than the Duke of Norfolk, yet he too was marked out for destruction. Henry lay on his death-bed when it was suggested to him that Norfolk (or at all events his son, the Earl of Surrey) had a design on the crown. The only evidence for this improbable fancy was, that Norfolk had used a coat of arms, as his ancestors had done (for he was of royal descent), which the king thought should only be used by himself; and Surrey was asserted to have said that he or his father ought to have the guardianship of the prince if he should come to the throne whilst still a minor. This post of guardian was coveted by the Earl of Hertford (the prince's uncle), and it is believed that he roused Henry's jealous fury against the Howards. The young earl was tried for treason. Of course he was convicted and be-

Character of Henry the Eighth.

His wicked Reign.

headed. His father was attainted without trial, and the order was given for his execution. But on the following night [January 26, 1547] Henry himself sunk into a state of stupor, and early in the morning he died, at the age of exactly fifty-six years, and in the thirty-eighth year of his reign. The warrant for the execution was thus rendered invalid, and the life of the duke was saved, but he remained a prisoner in the Tower during the whole of the next reign.

§ 49. Henry, like his father, when his end drew near, relinquished a small part of his spoil and devoted it to purposes of charity. Thus he bestowed on the citizens of London the original endowment of St. Bartholomew's, St. Thomas', and Bethlehem Hospitals,—all monastic property, that had cost him nothing. Indeed, through life his liberality was of this cheap description. He is often said to have paid for the education of his kinsman Reginald Pole; but the fact is, that he compelled the convent of St. Frideswide, at Oxford, to support him whilst a student. He portioned his niece, Margaret Douglas, from the spoils of the Pilgrimage of Grace,<sup>a</sup> and he endowed the divorced Anne of Cleves<sup>b</sup> with a part of the ill-gotten gains of Cromwell. No considerations of justice, honor, or charity seem ever to have had power to turn him away from any course that he proposed to himself; and the utter subserviency of his parliaments and his judges enabled him to become as absolute and as cruel a tyrant as ever afflicted a nation. He was a human monster of vulgar type, and a disgrace to his species. From his accession to his death, many thousands of men and women were destroyed in England to appease his unholy wrath or vile lusts.

<sup>a</sup> § 33, p. 321.<sup>b</sup> § 39, p. 324.

---

## CHAPTER III.

REIGN OF EDWARD THE SIXTH. [A.D. 1547 TO 1553.]

§ 1. WHEN King Henry the Eighth's will was opened it was found that he had appointed sixteen persons as his executors, who were to have the government of the young prince Edward, his only surviving son, and then in the tenth year of his age, until he attained his eighteenth year, and were to be assisted by twelve others—



The Regency.

Strife for Supremacy.

How settled.

the whole body forming the privy council. Men of very opposite opinions were named among the executors; and as no direction was given that any one should have precedence of the others, their very first meeting, which was within a few hours of Henry's death, witnessed a contest for superiority among them. It ended in the choice of the Earl of Hertford, who was the young king's uncle,<sup>a</sup>

and professed himself a favorer of the "new opinions."<sup>a</sup> § 48, p. 328.

That choice at once determined the course of events, and determined them, no doubt, very differently from what King Henry intended. It was on this occasion that the accession of the new king was regarded as having taken place at the moment of the old monarch's death, and gave rise to the legal maxim which yet prevails, that "the King never dies." Edward was not crowned until the 20th of February, 1547—four days after the funeral ceremonies of the dead king had ended.

§ 2. That part of the English Reformation which consisted in throwing off all dependence on Rome and the suppression of the

monasteries had been already accomplished by Henry<sup>b</sup>,<sup>b</sup> § 31, p. 321.

but now most important changes in doctrine and ritual were to follow. As to religious profession, the executors were about equally divided; Cranmer and Hertford being what may now properly be termed Protestants. The Lord Chancellor Wriothesley and Bishop Tunstall were Romanists; and, now that they feared Henry no more, prepared to act up to their opinions. Hence it was easy to see that the strange committee of government that Henry had devised would not long endure. A clause in his will had directed that any promises he might have made of conferring dignities should be held good, and this provision at least was fully carried out.

§ 3. According to their own representation of what had been intended for them, the Chancellor was made Earl of Southampton; Lord Lisle, Earl of Warwick; Sir Thomas Seymour, Lord Sudeley; the Earl of Essex became Marquis of Northampton; but, as a matter of course, the most distinguished honors were claimed by the

Earl of Hertford.<sup>c</sup> He was created Duke of Somerset,<sup>c</sup> § 28, p. 319.

received the offices of Lord Treasurer and Earl Marshal, of which the Duke of Norfolk, who lay in the Tower under sentence

of death,<sup>d</sup> had been deprived, and at once began his  
<sup>d</sup> § 48, p. 328.

ambitious career by driving the Lord Chancellor from the council, and imprisoning him. This point accomplished,

The Reformation in England.    Change in Public Worship.    New Service-Book.

Somerset procured from his boy-nephew letters patent, constituting him Protector, and allowing him to act independently of his fellow-executors.

§ 4. Thus, in less than two months after Henry's death, all his arrangements were overthrown, and a career of reformation entered on that he would have repressed with the axe and the fagot. Somerset's resolution supplied the want of that quality in Cranmer; and, though Tunstall, Gardiner, Bonner, and others protested, the work of defacing the churches under the plea of removing images and crucifixes was vigorously carried on. The answer to remonstrances was to send those who made them to prison. Bonner and Gardiner were deprived of their sees, when Ridley and Poyntet, two of the Reformers, were appointed at stipends of £1,000 a year each; a very profitable arrangement for the government, but showing that no ecclesiastical person was safe if he presumed to have an opinion of his own. Tunstall's see of Durham was afterwards suppressed entirely, and all its property bestowed on Dudley, Duke of Northumberland.

§ 5. Somerset, in the mean time, had invaded Scotland, gained the battle of Pinkie, and burnt Edinburgh [September, 1547], his object being to compel the Scots to carry out the marriage treaty.<sup>a</sup> The old idea of alliance with France, <sup>a § 46, p. 327.</sup> however, prevailed; and even the few among the Scots who favored the scheme, declared that though they liked the match, they hated the manner of wooing. To prevent its renewal, the child-queen was sent into France, and educated there.

§ 6. When Somerset returned to England the parliament met, and it was seen that they were favorable to extensive changes in religious matters. Accordingly a new communion office was prepared, and several of the foreign reformers were invited to England, to give their assistance in further alterations. These men were more spiritual-minded than most of their brother Protestants in England, and held views of religion as a bond between man and his Maker more exalted and scriptural than those of a majority of the British reformers. The new Service-book, published in 1548, was therefore very unsatisfactory to them, for in preparing it an attempt was made to please both Romanists and Protestants. The consequence was that it offended both. It was therefore withdrawn, and what is known as the Second Book of Edward the Sixth was put forth. That, though purged of many things ob-



## Foreign Reformers in England.

## Families of Henry's Wives.

noxious to the radical reformers, allowed, and even prescribed, so much of the Romish ritual in vestments and ceremonials having doctrinal significance, that it too was offensive to the most advanced reformers. But they were not strong enough to cause another change, and the book, not unlike in general arrangement the Book of Common Prayer now used in the Anglican Church, remained as a manual for public worship a long time.

§ 7. The favor of the government, however, for the foreign reformers continued unabated, and they were encouraged to settle in congregations in England, several of the disused churches being allotted to them. One party was placed with their looms amid

<sup>a</sup> § 4, p. 56. the ruins of the famous abbey of Glastonbury.<sup>a</sup> Among

these foreigners there was a great variety of doctrine, but they agreed in the essential proposition of Wickliffe and Luther, that the Bible was the primary authority for faith and

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 229. practice.<sup>b</sup> There was one limit that they might not

pass. If they held the Anabaptist tenets,<sup>1</sup> which were supposed to be of dangerous political consequence, they had only the same choice—abjuration or burning—that Henry himself would have given them. Archbishop Cranmer and others, who themselves afterwards suffered, burnt both men and women on this account, and conceived that they did God good service.

§ 8. Four out of Henry's numerous marriages had been with his subjects, and thus certain families from which his wives had been taken had been led to consider themselves something different from the rest of his people. This was especially the case with the Seymours, a Wiltshire family; and Edward and Thomas, two active men, had fully profited by the fortunate chance of their sister Jane

<sup>c</sup> § 28, p. 319. having been a queen for a year.<sup>c</sup> They enjoyed high distinction in the court of their brother-in-law, and

when he died Edward, as we have seen,<sup>d</sup> became Duke of Somerset and Lord Protector;<sup>e</sup> whilst Thomas, who was

<sup>d</sup> § 3, p. 330.

<sup>e</sup> § 3, p. 330.

<sup>f</sup> § 45, p. 327.

<sup>g</sup> § 47, p. 328.

made Lord Admiral, married Henry's widow, Catherine Parr.<sup>f</sup> She died within a year afterward; but even before her death her husband had commenced a correspondence with the young Princess Elizabeth,<sup>g</sup> and his brother was informed that he harbored designs against the State.

<sup>1</sup> The Anabaptists held that the baptism of adults only was efficacious, and denied the validity of infant baptism.

Fate of Admiral Seymour.    The People and the Monks.    Somerset's Hypocrisy.

§ 9. What the designs of Admiral Seymour were is not very clearly known,<sup>1</sup> as, in the usual Tudor fashion, he was attainted without trial, and executed [A.D. 1549], the warrant being, perhaps unavoidably, signed by Somerset; but the fact greatly added to the unpopularity that he was daily incurring among all classes. He offended his colleagues by his conduct in seeking extravagant grants from the crown, and he enraged the great bulk of the people, who in general had still a deep reverence for holy things, by pulling down even churches to furnish materials for a stately palace that he was building in London. He had a rival in the Earl of Warwick, who carefully watched all his imprudences and speedily brought him to destruction.

§ 10. The sale or gift of the abbey lands,<sup>a</sup> however much it might enrich the receivers, and however much it might appear to forward the Reformation,—for, as Bishop Latimer said in one of his sermons, “thousands became Gospellers for them,”—was the cause of deep distress to the people at large, particularly in the country districts. The monks had been liberal landlords and charitable neighbors, and never suffered the poor around them to want for food. But with new lords of the soil it was altogether different. Many of them had been once poor themselves, and when the estates came into their hands they thought of nothing else than how they might obtain from them the uttermost farthing. No more entertainment for all comers; no more daily meals at the gate; no more free gifts of a horse, or a cow, or a sheep to the poor man who had lost his own by accident or disease. These things had all passed away with the monks; and even the open commons now began to be enclosed by the new men, on the false pretence that they had once been church property.

§ 11. At last, just when Somerset's unpopularity was at its height, the people began to throw down the enclosures, and he, thinking to gain their support as a balance to the ill-will of his associates, took their part, and thus bitterly offended the members of his council. The insurgents took heart, and appeared in arms

<sup>1</sup> He was charged in the bill of attainder not only with intending to marry the princess, but with coining bad money, and planning to seize and fortify the Scilly Islands as a pirate State. But these Tudor bills of attainder cannot be relied on as containing one particle of truth. Writers who are worthy of belief say that the quarrel of the brothers really arose out of a contest for precedence between their wives. The duchess looked upon the dowager queen only as the wife of a baron, and so her inferior; whilst the other still claimed royal state.



Violent Insurrections.

Humiliation of Somerset.

Earl of Warwick's Power.

in various parts of the country, some only aiming at throwing open the commons, but others also crying out, "Kill the gentlemen!" and others again demanding the restoration of the old service. In Devon and Somerset, in Berks, Hants, and Oxford; in Kent, Surrey, and Sussex; and from the very gates of London to Norfolk, the whole country was in a blaze. Somerset, repenting of the encour-

<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 333. agement that he had given, with Russell, Warwick,<sup>a</sup> and other holders of abbey lands, set forth to put

down the commotions, but determined to avenge them on the Protector.<sup>b</sup> By dint of merciless severity they succeeded in dispersing the assemblages, hung priests and monks from the church steeples, and brought a few of the prominent men to London for trial. Among them were Humphrey Arundell, a veteran soldier from the West, and Robert Ket, a wealthy tanner from Norwich, who were speedily executed.

<sup>b</sup> § 3, p. 320.

§ 12. Warwick and his partisans now indulged in loud threats against Somerset, who at once fled to Hampton Court, taking the young king with him. In a few days Warwick got the king into his own hands [Oct. 14, 1549], and sent Somerset to the Tower. After a two months' imprisonment he made his submission, acknowledging everything that his opponents chose to charge him with. Then he was released, and readmitted to the council at the beginning of 1550. He bore his humiliation with impatience; and so suspicious was his conduct, that a charge of endeavoring to murder Warwick was got up against him, and he was beheaded on the 22d of December, 1552, his royal nephew consigning him to

<sup>c</sup> § 9, p. 333. death as quietly as Somerset himself had sacrificed his brother Thomas <sup>c</sup> awhile before.<sup>1</sup>

§ 13. The Earl of Warwick who had thus thrust himself into power was John, the son of that Arthur Dudley who had been one of the "ravening wolves" of the time of Henry the

<sup>d</sup> § 27, p. 306. Seventh.<sup>d</sup> He was an able man, and had much distinguished himself in the wars of the late king's reign.

Whilst only one of the council, he avowed himself a Romanist; but now finding the king firmly attached to Cranmer and the Protestants, he professed to become one himself. He deposed and imprisoned the Bishops of Durham, Chichester, and Worcester, and

<sup>1</sup> The young king kept a journal, which still exists, and in it he has noted down the deaths of both his uncles just as matters of ordinary news, and without a single expression of natural feeling.

Princess Mary at Court.

Her Firmness.

Poverty of the Government.

set to work so vehemently to forward the Reformation that the Princess Mary<sup>a</sup> took the alarm, and endeavored to escape from the country; but steps were taken to prevent her. She was sent for to the court, and the king undertook personally to convince her of her error. It was, however, not likely that the reasonings of a boy of fourteen should have much influence with a woman of more than twice his age, and whose faith was endeared to her by her mother's sufferings<sup>b</sup> and her own. She told him, as he relates in his journal, that "her soul was God's, and her faith she would not change;" adding (which must have been a severe reproach to the majority of his councillors), that "she would not dissemble her opinion with contrary doings." Conformably with this she refused to receive the new Service-book,<sup>c</sup> or to hear Ridley, one of the most eloquent Protestants, lately made a bishop; and though her brother's council imprisoned her chaplains and her attendants, she stood firm, and they were obliged to leave her unmolested, lest they should find themselves involved in a war with her kinsman, the Emperor of Germany.

§ 14. They had, in fact, reason to dread this, as they had been signally unsuccessful in their wars with France and with Scotland. The Scots had recovered Haddington and other places, and the French kept up such a ceaseless attack on Boulogne,<sup>d</sup> that it was soon discovered to be "too chargeable," and was surrendered for a small sum of money and a disgraceful peace. The parliament had placed at their disposal all that yet remained of the movable property of the Church, even to the very bells,<sup>1</sup> and they had also seized on the lands of hospitals and almshouses; yet they were hopelessly in debt, and though they issued base money and pawned the crown jewels, they could hardly pay the garrison of Calais. Never before had England sunk quite so low. Warwick, however, having first placed Tunstall<sup>e</sup> in the Tower, enriched himself by procuring a grant of the bishopric of Durham, and next he induced the king to make him Duke of Northumberland, and to bestow new honors on several of the men who had been most active in hunting his uncle Somerset to death.

<sup>1</sup> In 1551 commissioners were appointed in every county to carry out this scheme. Their instructions direct them to leave but one small bell to summon the people to church.

<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 315.

<sup>b</sup> § 26, p. 319.

<sup>c</sup> § 6, p. 331.

<sup>d</sup> § 46, p. 327.

<sup>e</sup> § 4, p. 331.



Feebleness of the Boy King. Northumberland's Schemes. Death of the King.

§ 15. Edward had been something like an invalid from his birth, but his father would not recognize this. He wished all his children to be learned like himself, and the plan answered well with his daughters Mary and Elizabeth; but the close application that was insisted on by Edward's tutors (Sir John Cheke and Dr. Cox) was too much for the feeble frame of the boy, and his head was crammed with crude learning to the ruin of his bodily health. He was sincerely anxious that Cranmer's reforms should be carried out, and he was filled with boyish indignation against his sister Mary for declining to adopt them, though he, her sovereign, had condescended to argue the matter with her. On this foundation Northumberland formed the daring scheme of bringing the crown into his own family.

§ 16. In the spring of 1553 Edward was much worse than usual, and it was evident that he would not live long. Northumberland, in the May of that year, married Guilford Dudley, one of his sons, to Jane Grey, the daughter of the Duchess of Suffolk, who was the daughter of King Henry's friend Charles Brandon by Mary,

the Dowager-queen of France.<sup>a</sup> The Duchess herself

<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 312. had been a holder of the "new opinions" in the late reign, and she had brought up her daughter in them. Being the king's cousin, very beautiful and accomplished, and like-minded in religion, Jane was, both before and after her marriage, much in favor with Edward, and Northumberland had little difficulty in persuading him that there was but one way of avoiding the subversion on his death of all that had been done, and that was by bestowing his crown on the Duchess of Suffolk, who would decline it in favor of Jane. The poor youth was dying at the time, and no doubt believed that the counsel was honestly given for the best. His other councillors, however, did not think so, and it was only at his positive command that they agreed to draw up the letters

<sup>b</sup> § 47, p. 328. patent which, for the second time in less than seven years, disposed of the crown as if it had been a private estate.<sup>b</sup>

§ 17. Even then Edward's councillors gave only a reluctant assent; but the vehemence of Northumberland prevailed, and in an unhappy hour for himself as well as the unfortunate Lady Jane, the patent was duly authenticated. Edward died at Greenwich a fortnight afterward [July 6, 1553]. The event was kept secret for four days, until Lady Jane was installed in the Tower as queen

Lady Jane Grey proclaimed Queen.

Energy and Success of the Princess Mary.

[July 10, 1553], and steps had been taken to seize both Mary and Elizabeth, by sending them a summons to attend the sick-bed of their brother, although he was already dead. They were, however, warned in time, and avoided the snare. Mary was then at Kenninghall, in Norfolk. She at once made her claim to the crown, and was proclaimed queen in the important city of Norwich, on the 12th of July. Both high and low joined her standard, some of the earliest being the crews of two ships that had been stationed on the coast to prevent her escape.

§ 18. When this was known in London, Northumberland set forward with a small force, thinking to capture her; but he went with melancholy forebodings, saying to his companion, an uncle of Lady Jane, "The people press to see us, but not one sayeth God speed you." Whilst he held on his way, the council that he had left in London, freed from his menaces, began to consider how they could withdraw from their illegal enterprise. Whilst they hesitated, Ridley, the Bishop of London, preached a violent sermon at Paul's Cross, denouncing Mary as an idolater, and therefore unworthy to reign over a Christian people. This appeal was not favorably received, and, three days afterward [July 19, 1553], the council proclaimed Mary queen, and sent orders to Northumberland at once to disarm. He received the order at Cambridge, and at once proclaimed Mary, though not directed to do so, throwing up his cap, and professing extravagant joy that his own devise had miscarried. His yile hypocrisy was too transparent. He was seized the next day, together with his sons, and Dr. Sands, who under his direction had preached in the same style as Ridley, and they were all lodged in the Tower. Mary, meanwhile, journeyed by slow stages to London, where she was joined by her sister Elizabeth and the Lady Anne of Cleves.<sup>a</sup> Her first act as queen was one of mercy, for she proceeded to the Tower, and set free many prisoners. Most of them, it is true, were sufferers in what might be considered her cause; but such was not the case of the widow of the Protector Somerset,<sup>b</sup> who certainly had no claim on her regard beyond compassion; yet she was released with the rest.

<sup>a</sup> § 39, p. 324.

<sup>b</sup> § 3, p. 330.

§ 19. Edward, as the king under whom the English Reformation may be said to have begun, has been celebrated as a model ruler, by writers who forget how very little a sickly youth, who died before he was sixteen, could possibly have had to do with it. His chari-



The Beneficiaries of the King.

Queen Mary's Life and Character.

ty is loudly praised in bestowing his palace of Bridewell on the citizens of London ; but the fact is that he left the gift legally imperfect, and that it was his much-abused sister Mary who completed it. The grammar schools, too, that go by his name were mostly founded by private individuals, though the forms of the law ascribed them to the king ; and the few institutions (as the well-known Christ's Hospital or Bluecoat School) that he did endow cost him nothing, as

<sup>a</sup> § 14, p. 325. the funds came from the suppressed chantries and hospitals.<sup>a</sup> The proficiency that he evinced in literature and the dogmatic tone of his writings show a general resemblance to his father, which very probably might have become more complete had his life been longer.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### REIGN OF MARY. [A.D. 1553 TO 1558.]

§ 1. FEW sovereigns have a worse name among general readers of English history than Queen Mary, daughter of Henry the Eighth and his first wife, Catharine of Arragon.<sup>b</sup> This is owing <sup>b</sup> § 16, p. 315. to the fact that her political and religious enemies have written her history and impressed it indelibly. It is certain that she suffered far more, and was much more influenced by conscience in what she did, than any other of the House of Tudor. She had hardly emerged from childhood when the trouble about her parents' marriage began ; and from that time forward until her accession to the throne she lived in constant dread as to her liberty, if not her life, being obliged to make the most humiliating submissions to her brutal father, and sheltered from the violence of her brother's advisers only by their fear of the power of Charles the Fifth.

§ 2. In all these anxious years Mary's only consolations were her religious exercises, her books, and such acts of charity as her limited <sup>c</sup> § 26, p. 319. income allowed. She had seen her mother die broken-hearted,<sup>c</sup> and her tutor lose his life rather than slander his royal mistress, by order of her inquisitors. She had seen the Countess of Salisbury, her governess, and many more <sup>d</sup> § 41, p. 325. of her intimate friends put to death.<sup>d</sup> Others had pined for years in the Tower, and when she became queen she had

Fate of Northumberland.

Mary and her Enemies.

Firmness of Bonner.

just escaped a cunningly devised scheme for her destruction.<sup>a</sup> It is not then to be wondered at that she found it hard to pardon all the prominent actors in so much evil, though <sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 336. she did pardon many. She was then thirty-seven years old—an age when it is difficult to erase impressions burnt, as it were, into her very soul. Any blame that is to be given must in part, at least, be borne by her advisers, and part also must be attributed to the then system of government, which looked on pardon too freely granted as a sign of weakness, and an abandonment of the duty of the ruler.

§ 3. Mary was crowned on the first day of October, 1553, in St. Peter's Church, in London, by Bishop Gardiner, who omitted none of the ceremonials of the Roman Catholic Church. She had already taken vigorous measures to restrain her most dangerous enemies.

§ 4. In a month after the failure of his mad attempt, Northumberland<sup>b</sup> died on the scaffold with two of his associates, <sup>b</sup> § 16, p. 336. Sir John Gate and Sir Thomas Palmer. His brother, Sir Andrew Dudley, was condemned with him, but was pardoned. Northumberland avowed himself a Romanist, and warned his hearers against turning religion into sedition, as he had done. "His body, with the head," says a writer of the time, "was buried in the Tower, by the body of Edward, late Duke of Somerset," <sup>c</sup> § 3, p. 330. so that there lieth before the high altar in St. Peter's church two dukes between two queens, to wit, the Duke of Somerset and the Duke of Northumberland between Queen Ann<sup>d</sup> and Queen Katherine,<sup>e</sup> all four beheaded"—a terrible picture of the Tudor times. <sup>d</sup> § 28, p. 319. <sup>e</sup> § 26, p. 319. But the government of which Gardiner, Bishop of Winchester, was now the head shed no more blood until a formidable insurrection in the following year warned them that they had enemies whom no leniency would conciliate.

§ 5. One of the persons who had been most harshly treated by King Edward's advisers was Bonner, Bishop of London. He had been deprived of his see, and had been imprisoned for years in the Marshalsea, this place being chosen as a studied insult, as none but the vilest malefactors, pirates, and murderers, were usually sent there. He had a spirit, however, that such usage could not break, and on one of the many occasions that he was brought before the council he replied to their threats: "Three things I have, to wit, a small portion of goods, a poor carcass, and mine own soul. The two first ye may take, though unjustly, to you; but as for my soul, ye



Romish Prelates restored.      Protestants persecuted.      The Queen's Good-Will.

get it not." Of course he was set free on the accession of Mary, but his first appearance in public was marked by a disgraceful tumult. Bourne, his chaplain, inveighed at Paul's Cross against the treatment that his lord had received, when a dagger was thrown at him, and he only escaped with life through the exertions of Rogers and Bradford, two of the Reformed preachers. Bonner had the pulpit guarded by soldiers on the next Sunday, and on the following one, nothing daunted by the threats of some of the Londoners, he restored the Latin service in his cathedral on his own authority, trusting that the parliament when it met would hold him blameless.

§ 6. The other bishops had now been restored to their sees, and the queen had assured the citizens of London that she "meant not to strain men's consciences in matters of religion." Whether she meant to keep her word cannot now be known; but if she did not, she soon had an excuse that was called reasonable for breaking it. In consequence of the tumult at Paul's Cross, an order had been given that no one should preach without a license. These licenses being granted only to the Romish party, the Protestants boldly preached without them, and were at once sent to Newgate and Fleet prisons, or the Tower, for their "seditious demeanor." Among them were the prebendaries Rogers and Bradford, already mentioned, Latimer, who had been Bishop of Exeter in the time of Henry the Eighth, and Hooper, now expelled from Worcester to give his former place to Bishop Heath, who had

<sup>a</sup> § 38, p. 324. attended Northumberland on the scaffold. Cranmer<sup>a</sup>

was still untouched, and a report was spread abroad that he had offered to re-establish the mass in his cathedral. Peter Martyr, one of the foreign divines who were now ordered to leave England, and a man of hot temper, very unlike Cranmer's, persuaded him to deny this in a document of needlessly offensive tone. The archbishop was then summoned before the council and was committed to the Tower, where Holgate, Archbishop of York, was sent shortly after.

§ 7. The queen had been crowned with all the ancient pomp (the ceremony on the last occasion had been greatly simplified on account of Edward's youth), and as a proof of her good-will to her subjects, she declined to receive the taxes that had been voted in her brother's last parliament. Her own parliament soon assembled, and at once swept away many of the statutes of Edward,

Change in Public Worship.

The Queen's proposed Marriage.

Insurrections.

\* abolishing a host of his new-made treasons, and re-establishing the Latin service. The second book of Edward <sup>a</sup>—Book of Common Prayer—was declared to be an abomination. They also reversed the attainder of the Duke of Norfolk, and affirmed the marriage of the queen's parents to be “most just and lawful.”<sup>b</sup> Next Cranmer, Lady Jane and her husband,<sup>c</sup> and his brothers Ambrose, Henry, and Robert Dudley were brought to trial, and pleaded guilty to the charge of treason. They were all sent back to the Tower, where their confinement was by no means rigorous. They were allowed to walk into the queen's garden, and to receive visitors. Lady Jane, who had played queen most innocently for only a few days, was treated with especial consideration; and it seems not unlikely that none of their lives would have been taken, but for the mad enterprise of Sir Thomas Wyatt, a Kentish gentleman of indifferent character and mean capacity.

<sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 331.<sup>b</sup> § 16, p. 315.<sup>c</sup> § 16, p. 336.

§ 8. A project was now on foot for the marriage of the queen to Philip, Prince of Spain, the son of her old protector, the Emperor Charles the Fifth. Both father and son were vehement opponents of the Reformed doctrines, and many of their followers in England thought no measure too violent to prevent the match. Wyatt, though a Romanist, took up arms, declaring that he wished to “save his country from Spanish slavery,” and posted himself at Rochester Bridge. The long-imprisoned Duke of Norfolk, who had beaten the Scots at Flodden forty years before,<sup>d</sup> and was now more than eighty years of age, was sent against him with a force among which were some of the royal guard, and a body of 500 Londoners, commanded by one Alexander Brett. Wyatt contemptuously refused an offer of pardon, when the Londoners cried “We are all Englishmen!” and went over to him, and the aged duke was obliged to flee for his life, leaving his guns and baggage behind him. Wyatt now marched slowly on, and from Deptford sent a message to the queen requiring her to change her councillors, surrender the Tower to him, and go to reside there in his custody. Instead of this Mary repaired to the Guildhall at London, and having obtained a promise of support from the citizens, who entirely disclaimed the doings of Brett and his men, returned to her palace, where she quietly awaited the event.

<sup>d</sup> § 5, p. 310.

§ 9. Two days after this [Feb. 5, 1554], Wyatt quartered his men



Insurgents in London.

The Queen in Peril.

Insurrections Crushed.

in Southwark; but, being fired on from the Tower, he was obliged to move off, though not before he had plundered Winchester House, the palace of Bishop Gardiner. The bishop had a very fine library, and of this the insurgents made such havoc, that we are told "men might have gone up to their knees in leaves of books cut out and thrown under foot." After this barbarous ravage they marched to Kingston, repaired the bridge, which had been broken down, and held on their way towards London all through the night, hoping to surprise the queen in her palace. Wyatt, however, was not equal to the task that he had undertaken. Though every minute was precious, he wasted hours in endeavoring to bring on a gun that had broken down, but which he obstinately would not leave behind. His followers now began to desert him, one of the first to go being John Poynet, formerly Bishop of Winchester, but now displaced by Gardiner's return to his see. At last, at ten in the morning, the rebels approached St. James's palace, and skirmished with the royal guard and other troops, who, however, were not strong enough to do more than defend their posts.

§ 10. Whilst the battle thus raged around her, Mary remained at her devotions with her ladies and her priests, and refused to take refuge in the Tower, though her life was manifestly in danger. Failing to force an entrance, Wyatt at length moved on, hoping to gain an entrance to the city; but he found the gates closed against

him, and held by a son of the Duke of Norfolk.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 8, p. 341.

His followers now began to disperse, when a herald approached and exhorted Wyatt to merit the queen's mercy by surrendering at once, and thus saving useless bloodshed. He took the advice, and was soon lodged in the Tower. About four hundred of his followers also surrendered or were taken, and were placed in Newgate and other jails. Forty or fifty were executed by martial law; but the rest, being a few days afterward led into the court of the palace barefooted, and with ropes round their necks, the queen came out on a balcony, pardoned, and dismissed them.

§ 11. Whilst Wyatt had been in arms, risings had been attempted in Devonshire, Leicestershire, and Wales. They all signally failed, but the last was unfortunately headed by the father and

the uncle of Lady Jane Grey.<sup>b</sup> Its immediate result

<sup>b</sup> § 17, p. 336.

was the execution of the unhappy lady and her husband, which took place five days after Wyatt had been brought to

Execution of Lady Jane Grey. Protestant Bishops removed. Charges of Heresy.

the Tower [Feb. 12, 1554], and would have been even earlier, only Dr. Feckenham, the queen's chaplain, begged a delay of three days, hoping to convert Lady Jane. He tortured her with questions and disputations, but did not succeed in changing her religious opinions; but he attended her to the scaffold. Wyatt, Suffolk (the father of Lady Jane), and his brother were executed; but several other persons of note, as Sir Peter Carew, Sir James Crofts, and Sir Nicholas Throckmorton either escaped or were pardoned. The Dudleys were also set at liberty, along with many other prisoners; but Cranmer was not released.

§ 12. It was now seen that Cranmer and his fellow-bishops were not meant to be treated with the leniency that had been shown to the insurgents, for the archbishop himself had been a merciless persecutor. Eight of them were removed from their sees;<sup>1</sup> and though Scory of Chichester preserved his a little longer by renouncing his wife and doing penance, he too was soon after driven out. The inferior clergy also were pronounced incapable of holding benefices if married; and those who, after deprivation, would not part with their wives, were obliged to perform public penance as bigamists.<sup>2</sup> At length Cranmer, Ridley, and Latimer were taken to Oxford, and compelled to state their opinions on the chief points in dispute between the Reformers and the Romish Church. Instead of being answered, they were borne down by clamor, and the ominous sentence was pronounced that they were "obstinate heretics." Cranmer had himself pronounced such a sentence on Joan Bocher, but he had a far longer time than she was allowed to prepare for what, in that age, was the inevitable result of such a declaration, whether pronounced in Rome, or Oxford, or Geneva.

§ 13. The insurrections did not shake Mary's purpose as to her marriage,<sup>a</sup> for she was anxious to have a legitimate successor to her throne, who would, like his parents, be true to the Romish Church. Neither did their failure put an end

<sup>a</sup> § 8, p. 341.

<sup>1</sup> The Archbishop of York, and the Bishops of Bristol, Chester, and St. David's were deprived because they were married, the celibacy of the clergy being rigorously enforced in the Romish Church; and the Bishops of Gloucester, Hereford, and Lincoln on the plea that they held their sees only by letters patent during pleasure, such being the mode that King Edward's advisers had introduced—a mode never heard of before or since. The Bishop of Bath and Wells made his escape to the Continent without waiting to be condemned.

<sup>2</sup> The priest was considered as already married to his "cure of souls;" hence his taking a wife was regarded as a second marriage.



## Impostors and their Fate.

## Marriage of Queen Mary.

to the plottings of her opponents. The Protestant worship was prohibited, but it was carried on, and some at least of the fiercer spirits prayed for the queen's death. Others encouraged an imposture in London, called the Spirit in the Wall, in which a young girl, Elizabeth Croft, hid in a cupboard, made use of a whistle, and some of her confederates pretended to explain the sounds as denouncing the queen's marriage, the mass, confession, and other matters; and one William Thomas, who had been clerk of the council in King Edward's time, endeavored to induce a man named Arnold to undertake the murder of the queen. Thomas was condemned and executed, after attempting to commit suicide; and, contrary to the custom of the day, he behaved with violence on the scaffold, fighting and struggling, and exclaiming that he died for his country. The girl was dismissed on making an open confession of her imposture at Paul's Cross. But as, if the queen were murdered, it would be necessary to have a successor, some had fixed on the Princess Elizabeth, giving her for a husband Edward Courtenay, the young Earl of Devon, who had been released from a long captivity by Mary,<sup>1</sup> but seemed not unwilling to plot against her. The consequence was that both he and the princess were imprisoned, though not, as has been said, for their adhesion to Protestantism. Courtenay was a Romanist, and Elizabeth at least professed to be one as long as Mary lived.

§ 14. The marriage of the queen took place in July, 1554, and Philip, her husband, attempted to gain popularity by procuring the release of Courtenay and Elizabeth. Courtenay was allowed to go abroad, and died in Italy soon after; but Elizabeth fell under suspicion again, and lived in seclusion in the country, more like a prisoner than a princess, until she in turn became queen.

§ 15. Shortly after Philip's arrival a visitation was carried out by the bishops, having for its object the complete re-establishment of Romanism. The Protestants showed their dislike by composing ballads in ridicule of the restored ceremonial, and hung cats and dogs, shaven like priests, with a piece of paper between the paws, meant to represent the consecrated wafer. One such was shown to the people at Paul's Cross by one of Bonner's chaplains, Dr. Pendleton, when the feeling of one at least of his auditors was shown by his being fired at. Most probably on the advice of Philip, rigorous

<sup>1</sup> He was the son of Henry, Marquis of Exeter, who was executed in 1539, as a favorer of Cardinal Pole,<sup>a</sup> and had been imprisoned ever since.

Cardinal Pole.

Attempts to reconcile England and the Roman See.

measures were now determined on, though they were not carried out immediately. An object more dear to the queen's heart was to be accomplished first. This was the formal reconciliation of her kingdom with the Holy See.

§ 16. As the first step, when the parliament met in November, 1554, the attainder of the honest and faithful Cardinal Pole was reversed. He had suffered many years of exile for his advocacy of her mother's cause,<sup>a</sup> and it was by Mary's express desire that he was charged with the important mission to Rome as a pacificator. He was received with joy by her, and a day was appointed for the parliament to attend at the palace, to hear from himself what was to be done. After thanking them for the reversal of his attainder, which allowed him once again to visit his native country, he truthfully said: "If we inquire into the English schism we shall find avarice and sensuality the principal motives, and that it was caused by the unbridled appetite and licentiousness of a single person. Though it was given out that there would be a vast accession of wealth to the public, yet this expectation vanished. The Crown was left in debt, and the subjects, generally speaking, more impoverished than ever; and as to religion, the people were rigorously tied to forms, and fettered by penalties; and to speak plainly, there was more liberty of conscience in Turkey than in England."

§ 17. After claiming credit for the Holy See for refraining from putting the bull of excommunication<sup>b</sup> in force by the help that foreign princes had offered, Cardinal Pole concluded by saying: "I have no prejudicial instructions against any person. My commission is not to pull down, but to build; to reconcile, not to censure; to invite, without compulsion. My business is not to proceed by way of retrospection, or to question things already settled. As for past errors, they shall be overlooked and forgotten; but, to qualify yourselves for the pardon now offered, it is necessary to repeal those laws which have broken the Catholic unity, and divided you from the society of the Church." This speech produced the desired effect. An earnest supplication was made by the parliament, through the king and queen, for reconciliation; the cardinal pronounced a solemn absolution, and the whole of the statutes (nineteen in number) that had been passed since the year 1528, to the prejudice of the Holy See, were swept away by a single act.



## Queen Mary's Restorations.

## The "Marian Persecution."

§ 18. This would seem to imply that the abbey lands<sup>a</sup> were to be restored, but the cardinal declared himself empowered to abandon this claim; he would only lay it on every man's conscience to make such restitution as he was able. The queen was the first, and almost the only person to act up to this; and as soon as the necessary arrangements could be made, she gave up the tenths and first-fruits, and restored all the church property that was still in her hands. She went further soon afterwards, for she re-established the Order of St. John,<sup>b</sup> and endowed Westminster and as many other religious houses as her scanty means could afford. These means were really small, for she had taken upon herself the payment of her father's and her brother's debts, and she discharged a great part of them.

§ 19. Cardinal Pole no doubt spoke in all sincerity when he said that he came "to reconcile, not to censure; to invite, without compulsion," for he was one of the most amiable of men. But he had to deal with some who took a very different view of things, and their violent counsels unhappily prevailed. The lamentable events known as the Marian Persecution followed [A.D. 1555]; but the odium of this cannot with justice be laid on the queen, as is usually done. It is rather the harsh spirit of the privileged class of that age, than any one or two or three individuals (say Mary, Gardiner, and Bonner), that should bear the blame. The victims themselves had already shown that they were quite willing to act in a similar way.

§ 20. Early in the preceding year the various foreign congregations<sup>c</sup> had been ordered to leave the country, and many Protestants had since joined them abroad. Now, when the old statutes against heresy were threatened to be re-enacted, so many more took the same step, that, except the preachers who were already in prison (as Bradford, Rogers, Philpot), and the deprived bishops,<sup>d</sup> scarce any person of note remained. But those who had escaped abroad, by their violence made it all the worse for their poorer brethren who had not the means of flight. Afterwards the exiles disputed much among themselves on points of doctrine and discipline, and they wrote so sharply and most provokingly concerning the English government, that they injured their friends who were left behind. They issued what they termed a plea for liberty of conscience, in which they tried to alarm the holders of the abbey

<sup>a</sup> § 33, p. 321.<sup>b</sup> § 42, p. 326.<sup>c</sup> § 6, p. 331.<sup>d</sup> § 12, p. 343.

The Queen Insulted.

Protestants punished.

Character of the Sufferers.

lands with the idea that they would be taken from them; but that was a point on which full satisfaction had been given, or else the reconciliation with Rome would never have been carried, so little were the penitents impressed with the idea of sacrilege.

§ 21. The queen's sex exposed her to insult, and John Knox, a Scottish exile, published a book most offensive to her, styled "The Monstrous Regiment (Government) of Women." Philip, too, was accused (and justly) of persecution in his own dominions; and Archbishop Gardiner was provoked by the republication of a book on True Obedience, that he had written many years before, in which he defended both the divorce of Henry the Eighth and his breach with Rome.<sup>a</sup> In truth, he had been an active

agent in both; though now he would willingly have <sup>a § 25, p. 318.</sup> had it forgotten. It was in those days considered quite justifiable to burn a man's body in the hope of saving his soul. This idea was held by Protestants as well as by Romanists, and was only exclaimed against by the former when they, and not merely Anabaptists, suffered by its application. The angry Gardiner apparently thought that a few terrible examples would be sufficient to bring the mass of Protestants to conformity, seeing that most of their acknowledged leaders were either in his hands, or had fled away. He found himself mistaken, but the mischief was done. He could not stop the course of persecution if he would; and he died himself before the end of the year 1555—the memorable year of persecutions.

§ 22. The number of sufferers during that year is variously stated, but the least estimate makes it about 300 who perished at the stake, and many more died in prison. The five prelates, Cranmer, Ridley, Latimer, Hooper, and Ferrar, with Philpot, Rogers, and Bradford, and about a dozen others, were the only individuals of position or learning among them; the rest consisted mainly of poor working-people, many of whom had been employed by the foreigners now banished, and had taken their religious opinions from them. Not but that the Reformers' doctrines had made some progress among the better classes; but these either fled, or a mere nominal conformity was accepted from them. Certain it is that they had more freedom for worship, if they only conducted themselves quietly and did not force the authorities to take notice of them, than the Romanists enjoyed under Elizabeth, or the Church in the time of the Commonwealth.



Fate of Cranmer and his Protestant Associates.

His final Heroism.

§ 23. But the poor and humble, who blindly followed more competent leaders, showed no such discretion, and some seem to have actually courted persecution. One of that class, William Flower, who had once been a monk, but was now a preacher among them, stabbed a priest at the altar in St. Margaret's, Westminster, on Easter-day, 1555; and others, when brought before the magistrates, but particularly before the bishops, set them at defiance with most offensive words. Of course many such, who really deserved pity, suffered; but a still greater number were found in the next reign, who, whether truly or untruly, made a

<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 339.

<sup>b</sup> § 3, p. 339.

boast of how they had bearded the terrible Bonner<sup>a</sup> or the all-powerful Gardiner,<sup>b</sup> had reviled them in the grossest manner, styling them "limbs of Antichrist," and had denounced the mass as the invention of the devil, and yet lived to tell the tale.

§ 24. It would be both painful and useless to dwell on this subject, but some remark must be made on the fate of Cranmer and his immediate associates. Hooper, the deprived Bishop of Gloucester, who, in Edward's reign, had inveighed against the vestments of the clergy and other Romish features of the ritualism of the professed Protestant Church, was one of the very earliest victims, being burnt in February, 1555; but Cranmer, Ridley, and

<sup>c</sup> § 12, p. 343.

Latimer were carried to Oxford, and subjected, as we have observed,<sup>c</sup> to a lengthened trial before they met a like fate. Ridley and Latimer suffered in October, Latimer in his last moments encouraging his more timid fellow with words that have ever since sounded like prophecy: "Be of good cheer, brother Ridley, and play the man. We shall this day light a candle that all the power of Rome may not put out." Cranmer still remained—doomed to death, no doubt, but tempted with offers of life until he had solemnly recanted and disavowed, as abominable, all that

<sup>d</sup> § 26, p. 319.

he had said and done in the matter of the divorce<sup>d</sup> and against Rome.

§ 25. The barbarous deception of the doomed archbishop was long kept up, and it was not until he was brought into St. Mary's Church at Oxford that he became fully aware of what was intended. Then, exhibiting a courage that he had never shown before, he disowned all his six successive recantations, each more full than the last, and declared that the "unworthy right hand" that had signed them should suffer first of all when he came to the

Revolting Acts.

Plots.

Civil War.

French Influence.

stake. He kept his word; and such fortitude in a man constitutionally timid was looked upon as something miraculous, and made a great impression.<sup>1</sup> The death of Cranmer is, in truth, the darkest feature of the Marian persecution. For so utterly to degrade before destroying him was intolerable cruelty towards a feeble old man (he was almost seventy), whose greatest offence was that he had proved timid and time-serving, and had, like too many others, implicitly followed the bidding of the imperious Henry and the aspiring Northumberland

§ 26. From this time forward the reign of Mary presents nothing but painful features. Cardinal Pole<sup>a</sup> had become Archbishop of Canterbury on the day after Cranmer's death, as well as papal legate, and held a visitation of the Universities, when not only English Bibles and "heretical books" were burnt, but the bodies of some of the foreign teachers of King Edward's time<sup>b</sup> were removed from their graves and burnt also. This revolting act, however, was none of Pole's, but his authority was abused by Scott, Bishop of Chester, and other personal enemies of the deceased. Meantime, plots were discovered to rob the Exchequer, and to betray the Isle of Wight to some of the English exiles who had planned an expedition from France for the purpose, the leader being Henry Dudley, who, though convicted of treason, had been released after a brief imprisonment.<sup>c</sup> Another exile, Thomas Stafford, with French help seized Scarborough Castle, and this led to a war. The queen had been long urged to join her husband (who, in 1556, had become King of Spain, as Philip the Second) in his war with France, but her ministers opposed it. Now that England was seen to be in danger from the intrigues of that power, they declined no longer. English troops were sent to Flanders, and had a great share in gaining for Philip the victory of St. Quentin, on the 10th of August, 1557. In return, the French incited the Scots to invade England, and a fleet sent against them, under Sir John Clere, was defeated with loss, and the admiral was killed.

§ 27. But this was as nothing to the loss that was impending, and which forms as memorable a feature of Mary's reign as the Persecution itself. The town of Calais had now been in the hands of

<sup>1</sup> One of the spectators, Julius [Jocelyn] Palmer, a Romish schoolmaster, was so impressed by it that he became a convert, and he was burnt not long after at Reading.



Loss of Calais.

Its possession Coveted.

The Queen's Distress.

the English for more than 200 years," and through all the changes of government that it had seen, never had its defence been neglected until the time of Edward's unprincipled ministers. They had weakened its garrison and neglected its defences, and Mary, burdened with their debts, had not the means to repair the mischief. The Duke of Guise, a French general, marked the neglect. In the first days of January, 1558, he suddenly appeared before the town, and, after a slight skirmish (in which one man only was killed) and a cannonade, without loss on either side, he captured the castle. On the following day the town was surrendered to him, the governor and fifty others remaining as prisoners, but the rest of the garrison and the inhabitants being allowed to withdraw. They were, however, plundered of all their goods and money, and would hardly have escaped with their lives but for the Scottish horsemen in the duke's army, who guarded them through his camp. The town of Guines was captured on the 21st of January, and the strong fort of Hamme being abandoned the same night, the English rule ceased. The French of course rejoiced greatly, and to the present day the district around Calais bears the name of the Reconquered Country.

§ 28. The news of the danger of Calais caused large bodies of troops to be assembled at Dover; but the weather was too tempestuous for them to cross over at once, and the town was lost before it moderated. Philip offered to assist in its recapture, and the queen vehemently urged it on her council, addressing them herself, and styling Calais "the chief jewel of our realm;" but they declared that they should certainly recover it by treaty whenever peace should be made, and that the best way to bring that about was to carry on the war on other parts of the French coast. Accordingly the English fleet assisted the Spaniards at the battle of Gravelines, and burnt some towns in Brittany; but they were not able to capture Brest, which they hoped to exchange for their lost "jewel."

§ 29. The queen, who had long been ill with a prevailing fever and ague, and was prematurely old, took the failure very grievously, and at last she died, declaring that "Calais" would be found written on her heart. This, however, was far from her only anxiety in her last moments. Cardinal Pole, her chief earthly hope for the perpetuation of Romanism in England, lay on his death-bed at the same time: her husband had long been absent from her, and she

## Death of Queen Mary.

## Her Character and Deeds.

knew that all she had so striven to achieve would be undone by her successor, her half-sister Elizabeth. To that successor her will, executed very shortly before her death, is addressed, especially begging her to pay her and their father's and brother's debts; to allow of her bequests to the religious houses that she had founded; but, more than all, to confirm her gift of four hundred marks a year for a hospital for old and maimed soldiers, "the which," she says, "we think that honor, conscience, and charity willeth should be provided for." Elizabeth, however, was of a different opinion, and kept the gift herself.

§ 30. Mary died in the palace of Westminster, on the 17th day of November, 1558, at the age of forty-two years. She was not buried until nearly a month after her death, and enough had been done in the mean time to show that still greater changes were impending. Bishop White, of Winchester, who preached her funeral sermon, took for his text the passage, "I praised the dead which are already dead more than the living which are yet alive," and in praising her he was considered to reflect on her successor. He was therefore confined to his house, and was soon afterward deprived of his see. From this time forward no one ventured to defend her, and the returned exiles<sup>a</sup> found a pleasure<sup>a</sup> in blackening her memory. Hence the belief that she was a monster of cruelty has come down to the present day, although in truth she was by far the most clement of the Tudors, as may be seen from the fact that many of Elizabeth's principal ministers and favorites were men whose lives she had spared in spite of their repeated treasons. Cecil, the Dudleys, Throckmorton, Crofts, and Peter Carew may be mentioned among them. And when Lady Carew petitioned for leave to succor her husband who was in exile, Mary not only granted the request, but commended her for making it, declaring that she had only acted as a good wife should do. Very different this from Henry's murder of the Countess of Salisbury for writing to her own son;<sup>b</sup> from Edward's indifference to the deaths of his uncles;<sup>c</sup> or Elizabeth's cruel jealousy, which led her to persecute to the death the sisters of Lady Jane Grey, merely because they were so unhappy as to be her kinswomen.

§ 31. Mary possessed many good qualities. She was generally sincere and high-minded, and shrank from that trickery and treachery in State matters to which her successor and half-sister was

<sup>a</sup> § 20, p. 346.<sup>b</sup> § 41, p. 225.<sup>c</sup> § 12, p. 334.



Accession of Queen Elizabeth. Her Favorite. His Pretensions and Elevation.

addicted as a general rule of conduct. She was a bigot in an age when bigotry was the rule and toleration the exception. Judged by the standard of royal virtues in those days, it is unfair and unjust to call her, as historians and ecclesiastical writers have done, "The bloody Mary."

## CHAPTER V.

### REIGN OF ELIZABETH. [A.D. 1558 TO 1603.]

§ 1. THE Princess Elizabeth, Henry the Eighth's second daughter by Anne Boleyn, was twenty-five years of age when Queen Mary died and she became Queen of England. She was at Hatfield on the day of Mary's death; and a few hours after that sovereign's departure, she was proclaimed queen in front of Westminster Hall. Then the bells were set a-ringing, and fables were spread in the streets for "plentiful eating and drinking," and at night bonfires blazed. That was on the 17th of November, 1558. On the 15th of January following she was crowned at Westminster Abbey, by Dr. Oglethorpe, the Bishop of Carlisle.

§ 2. Like her sister Mary, Elizabeth received small kindness from her father; but, unlike her, she was in favor with their brother Edward. She professed a complete accordance with all his half-formed views, and thus passed for a firm adherent of the English Church; but when Mary came to the throne she showed herself equally ready to go to mass, and she did go to it. Her sincerity, however, was doubted, and she was looked up to by all who were dissatisfied with the check that the Reformation had received. When called to the throne, Elizabeth put herself at once into the hands of Sir William Cecil, a man who had been a good Protestant under Edward and an equally good Catholic under Mary, and was quite ready to make any further change that might advance his fortunes. When he had become a great man, he professed to discover that he was descended from Sitsylt, a Welsh prince of older date than William the Norman;<sup>a</sup> but the people of his own day only knew that his grandfather had been a poor artisan, and his father a menial servant in the royal household, who had the wisdom to send his son to college. The youth

<sup>a</sup> § 28, p. 85.

Adroitness of Minister Cecil.

Change in Religious Services.

was a diligent student, and thus attracted the notice of Henry the Eighth. Afterwards he became secretary to Protector Somerset,<sup>a</sup> and having the worldly wisdom to desert him at the right time, he thus gained the favor of his rival, Northumberland.<sup>b</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 330.<sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 325.

§ 3. Cecil had shown equal address in regard to the bequest of the crown to Lady Jane Grey; for though his name appeared to it, he declared that it was only as a witness to the signatures of the rest—a plausible excuse from a secretary. Thus his offence was passed over. He was continued in office, and professing unbounded loyalty and devotion, he was next employed as one of the envoys to fetch over Cardinal Pole.<sup>c</sup> He, however, all along kept up a secret understanding with the Princess Elizabeth, and now, at the age of less than forty, he became her prime minister, a post that he held for the remainder of his long life, moulding her to his own purposes while affecting to consult her wishes, and under all circumstances taking particular care to improve his private fortune. He always possessed her confidence, but her affections appeared to be given to Lord Robert Dudley (a son of the Duke of Northumberland), a married man of bad character, but very handsome and of engaging address. His wife was murdered in his country-seat whilst he was at court, and he was always treated with such marked favor that the queen was generally supposed to design to marry him. But this she did not do.

<sup>c</sup> § 16, p. 345.

§ 4. Under Cecil's guidance Elizabeth entered London, receiving all who came to her graciously, with the exception of Bonner, to whom she showed such marked aversion as seemed intended to point him out for popular vengeance. Cecil had already prepared what he called "a device for alteration of religion," and forthwith the Service of King Edward's time<sup>d</sup> was re-established in many places without waiting for parliamentary authority; priests were hindered in their ministrations and assaulted in the streets; and the refugees flocking back from abroad occupied the pulpits, and preached angry controversial sermons. This soon rose to such a height that unlicensed preaching was forbidden by proclamation; but as the Lord's Prayer, the Creed, the Ten Commandments, and the Litany were ordered to be said in English instead of Latin, as before, the Romanists saw that their overthrow was intended.

<sup>d</sup> § 6, p. 331.

§ 5. Though Mary's councillors were all Romanists, they showed



Adventurers in Power. Everything reversed. Court of High Commission.

every willingness to receive Elizabeth as queen; but it did not suit the policy of Cecil that they should long remain in office. On his advice they were displaced, and a body of mere adventurers like himself—"men younger in years and meaner in substance," he truly calls them—soon supplanted them, who were bent on making fortunes for themselves out of the bishops' lands, as the men of

Henry's time had done with the monasteries.<sup>a</sup> The

bishops, alarmed at this, refused to crown the queen; but one of their number, Oglethorpe of Carlisle, was bribed to perform the ceremony.<sup>b</sup> The parliament met almost

immediately after, and, in spite of the opposition of the bishops and many of the peers, repealed all the statutes of Mary's reign concerning religion. The first-fruits and tenths that

she had restored to the Church<sup>c</sup> were again bestowed

on the crown, and the queen was authorized to seize all the bishops' lands, giving them mere stipends instead. The money was to be furnished by the tithes that had belonged to the abbeys. The scheme was not carried out, but scarcely a single bishop was appointed during Elizabeth's reign who had not to surrender a portion of the lands of the see as the price of his preferment. Mary's religious houses were now closed, and their revenues seized. The monks mostly took to some occupation for their support, but the nuns in general retired to foreign convents. Some found shelter with pious friends.

§ 6. One act of this parliament declared that its members "did assuredly believe the Lady Elizabeth, by the laws of God and the realm, to be their lawful queen," and with this general and vague declaration she remained content, never taking any step afterwards to have her mother's marriage or her own legitimacy distinctly

affirmed.<sup>d</sup> It was, however, made treason to deny her title, and it involved the forfeiture of office to decline

to swear that she was "the only supreme governor of the realm in things ecclesiastical as well as temporal." By virtue of this act a Court of High Commission was set up to regulate ecclesiastical

affairs. It was the counterpart of the Star Chamber<sup>e</sup> in having only the will of the sovereign for the limit of its powers; but, unlike that, it was not feared by the ordinary courts of law, and its proceedings were frequently interfered with and often controlled by them.

§ 7. Before it closed, the parliament waited upon the queen and

Elizabeth's Coquetry and Vanity.

The Revised Service-book disliked.

presented an address, urging her to marry. She gave a vague reply, but at the same time she listened with apparent favor to the King of Sweden (as she did afterwards to other royal personages), and she even allowed some of her subjects to indulge vain hopes, as the handsome Sir William Pickering and the Earl of Arundel. Reasons of State forbade her marrying any one of them, or even the favorite Dudley,<sup>a</sup> who was created Lord of Denbigh one day and Earl of Leicester the next; but to the end of her long life she encouraged the extravagant homage of her young courtiers, who approached her with hands shading their eyes, as if unable to look steadily on what they, to her face, termed her "divine beauty." She was tall, of a fair complexion, and usually with a cheerful expression of countenance; but one of her admirers tells us that this speedily changed to a "princely tartness" when anything displeased her, and oaths and blows very often followed. She always dressed in the most sumptuous attire, loaded with jewels; and as she never allowed her raiment to pass to her attendants, she is recorded to have left not less than three thousand rich dresses in her wardrobe at the time of her death.

§ 8. The Service-book of King Edward<sup>b</sup> had been re-established by the parliament, but it had previously undergone a revision, which made it distasteful to many of the clergy who had been in exile. The queen had a liking for the old pompous ceremonial, and the committee of revision, at the head of which was Matthew Parker, had reintroduced a part of this, so that those who had been used to the simple worship of the foreign reformers declared it to be only "the mass in disguise." On the other hand, it was refused by the bishops of Queen Mary's time, and advantage was taken of this to dispossess them of their sees. They had before this been summoned to hold a disputation on articles of faith with some of the Protestants, and they were now treated as unfairly as they themselves had behaved to Crammer, Ridley, and Latimer. After a single angry meeting they were charged with "disorders, stubbornness, and self-will," and sent to the Tower. The supremacy oath was then offered to them, which they refused, with only two exceptions, on which their sees were declared vacant. That was in the year 1559.

§ 9. Three or four of the bishops, as a matter of favor, were



Death of Bonner.

Plundering.

Radical and Independent Reformers.

allowed to go abroad, and some died whilst the process was going on; but the rest were imprisoned for the remainder of their lives.

Bonner of London<sup>a</sup> died in the Marshalsea, his old prison under Edward the Sixth, in 1569. Thirlby of Durham expired at Lambeth in 1570, and Watson of Lincoln in Wisbeach Castle in 1584. The filling up of their sees presented serious difficulties. Cecil and his associates, the "men meaner in substance," sought not for the most suitable men, but for those who would surrender the largest number of episcopal manors to them in exchange for tithes or abbey lands of not a tenth of their value. In this they were abetted by the queen, who thus lessened the cost of her government; and several of the new prelates imitated the courtiers by plundering their churches on their own account.<sup>1</sup> This system endured throughout the whole of Elizabeth's reign, and Bishop Cox of Ely, who remonstrated against it, was threatened with deprivation of his see. Matthew Parker,<sup>b</sup> who had been chaplain to Anne Boleyn,<sup>b</sup> was appointed Archbishop of Canterbury by the end of the year, and the sees of London, Ely, Bangor, and Worcester were filled a few days afterward. But more than three years elapsed before the whole were supplied.

§ 10. The task of the newly-appointed archbishop was an arduous one. He had remained in England during the late reign, and he had none of the prejudices against ceremonials that many of the exiles had imbibed abroad. Anything that had been connected with Rome was hateful in their eyes. Hence bishops and vestments, common prayer and organs, the use of the cross in baptism and of the ring in marriage, were alike odious; and they showed very plainly that they considered no allegiance due to any sovereign less opposed to the old ritualism than themselves. Many also, from their residence in the republican communities of Switzerland and Germany, had imbibed an independence of thought that gave tone to their actions which was very distasteful to Elizabeth and her obsequious advisers. By the queen's injunctions, "seemly habits, garments, and square caps" were required to be worn, and

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps the worst of these men was Edmund Scambler, afterwards known as "scandalous Scambler," a chaplain of Archbishop Parker. When made Bishop of Peterborough, he, as the price of his promotion, conveyed much of the lands of his see to Cecil, who thus gained the chief part of his lordly estate of Burghley or Burleigh. Scambler was made Bishop of Norwich several years afterward, and he mercilessly plundered that see to enrich his family.

Innovators punished.      Rise of the Puritans.      Policy of the Government.

to these many of the more prominent of the radical Protestants had invincible objections. Considerable latitude in these matters was for a time allowed them, and they were suffered to hold preferments without conformity being insisted on.

§ 11. Of course the original objectors to the Romish ceremonials soon found imitators; and at last, when the innovations became too great to be any longer borne, Parker was ordered to deal peremptorily with them. This was done by the High Commission Court;<sup>a</sup> but as he was its president, it exposed him to furious reproaches from the more violent of the party.

<sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 354.

One of them, remarking that he was the seventieth archbishop, said that seventy was so complete a number that it would be a pity that he should not be the last; and his difficulties were increased by the support which some members of the Government gave to them. He complained of this double dealing, as purposely intended to throw the odium of persecution on the bishops, which it very probably was. He acted up to his instructions, however, and Sampson and Humphrey, who were masters of colleges at Oxford, and were looked up to as leaders, were deprived of office, by which it was wrongly supposed that their followers would be intimidated. The contrary effect followed, and from this time [A.D. 1565] may be dated the formation of an organized party of nonconformists, who, because of the austerity of their morals and purity of their lives, were called, in derision, Puritans. They held secret religious meetings, from which the Prayer-book was excluded. Then they rejected some of the doctrines, as they had already cast off the discipline of the Church. With this "disobedience," as it was termed, to the hierarchy, they combined what was called disloyalty to the State, for their habit of thinking and independence in action made them bold in asserting the rights of the subject. Such was the rise of the PURITANS, who appeared at the middle of the sixteenth century as pioneer champions of civil and religious liberty.

§ 12. Though Elizabeth and her ministers had thus a great cause of uneasiness, which sprang directly from the connection of her subjects with the foreign reformers, political considerations led them to put her at the head of the religious malcontents in France, in Holland, but especially in Scotland, in spite of her dislike of the earnest John Knox, who had declared government by a woman to be "monstrous."<sup>b</sup> In all

<sup>b</sup> § 31, p. 347.



Elizabeth and the Huguenots. Mary Queen of Scots. "Congregation of the Lord."

these countries the Reformers had taken up arms, and it appeared a matter of good policy to afford them aid, thereby distressing their Catholic sovereigns, who, as Cecil well knew, looked on Elizabeth as an illegitimate usurper. The conduct of the French Reformers, who are known as Huguenots, was strongly condemned by her, because, after receiving from her assistance in both men and money, they suddenly made their peace with the king, and joined his German mercenary forces in driving out their allies. But stress of circumstances, it is well known, compelled them to take the course which offended her. The English were besieged by them in Havre-de-Grace, but made a gallant resistance, and at length only surrendered when worn out with famine and the plague. The survivors brought the pestilence with them to England, and many thousands perished in the year 1562. The Dutch also received aid from her; but their story belongs to a later period.

§ 13. Elizabeth's attention was most engaged by the Scots. So great was her, or rather Cecil's influence with them, that she was far more their sovereign than either of their nominal rulers. At the time of her accession, Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots, whom Henry

had desired should become the wife of his son,<sup>a</sup> was

<sup>a</sup> § 46, p. 327.

in France, the wife of the heir to the French throne; and by the command of her father-in-law she and her young husband soon afterward assumed the title of King and Queen of England. Her mother, Mary of Guise, was her regent in Scotland, and was supported by French troops. Elizabeth had, in the mean time, concluded a peace with France, though without

recovering Calais, as had been expected,<sup>b</sup> and she

<sup>b</sup> § 28, p. 350.

was not able to renew the war; but she sent a fleet to assist the Scots of all classes, who had formed a Protestant league, and styled themselves the "Congregation of the Lord." They formed a large army, each member of which marched with a small Bible in one hand and a sword in the other. They captured Leith, where a thousand French soldiers had been quartered in the interest of Mary. Then a treaty was entered into by which Mary resigned the title of Queen of England; but she insisted on still bearing the English royal arms, as an evidence of her claim to the eventual succession to the throne.

§ 14. The Scottish Reformers were now triumphant, and, under the guidance mainly of John Knox, whose spiritual trumpet could

Destruction of Churches and Abbeys. Mary in Scotland. Nonconformity.

quickly summon a large army to the field, they made such havoc of churches and abbeys as far exceeded all that had been done in England. "Throw down their nests and the crows will take flight," was his exhortation, and in consequence the noblest structures of the land went to the ground. The church lands were seized by the nobles; the bishops were replaced by superintendents on the foreign model; all former ecclesiastical establishments were swept away, and libraries were wantonly destroyed. In the course of a few days Scotland was covered with the ruins of the stateliest temples dedicated to the worship of God, and the most venerated shrines.

§ 15. Whilst this anti-Romish feeling was at its height, Mary, having become a widow, and finding the French queen a most unfriendly mother-in-law, returned to her native land, which she had left when a child,<sup>a</sup> and from that moment she fell into the power of a number of rapacious and <sup>a § 5, p. 221.</sup> cruel men, who were the paid agents of the English ministers. They frequently quarrelled and fought among themselves, but the result was always to her injury; and her long imprisonment and death were due far more to their violence and treachery than to anything that has ever been proved against her, though accusations, to screen the accusers, are plentiful.

§ 16. The act that re-established King Edward's Service-Book,<sup>b</sup> commonly known as the Act of Uniformity, contained <sup>b § 6, p. 221.</sup> a clause directing all persons to repair to their parish churches on Sundays and certain holy days. Although this was not agreeable to the Roman Catholics, they, for several years of the queen's reign, gave such a compliance as screened them from the penalties of the statute. But at length this occasional attendance was declared to be sinful,<sup>1</sup> and they went no longer. Many of the old monasties still remained, and at once congregations were formed in which they ministered, while priests who had left the country on the death of Mary, returned. It soon became evident that the conformity that had appeared to be brought about was in many cases a mere delusion. That age knew no other mode of swaying its subjects than compulsion, and accordingly the penalties for absence from church were now enforced with ruinous

<sup>1</sup> The Council of Trent, which had been called in 1545 to oppose the Reformation, and had held occasional sittings up to 1563, denounced the practice at almost its last meeting, and it was at once abandoned.



Mary's Scotch Husband.

Plots and Murders.

Mary abdicates.

effect, but in vain. The number of "recusants," as they were termed, steadily increased, and persons of wealth among them began to send their sons abroad for education, from which very important consequences arose in after years.

§ 17. Mary of Scotland,<sup>a</sup> though all but a prisoner in her own country, and exposed to personal insults from Knox and the other preachers, who commonly styled her Jezebel, was an object of jealous dislike to Elizabeth and her ministers. She had the advantage of the English queen both in youth and beauty, and her religion made her an object of regard to the Anglo-Roman Catholics. Unhappily for herself, she married her cousin, Henry Darnley, a weak and profligate young man whose family claimed royal rights. He often treated her with brutal insolence, so as to bring tears into her eyes in public. He joined himself with Murray, her natural brother, and other Protestants, whose avowed aim was to dethrone her as an idolater. After a time these confederates quarrelled, and the house in which Darnley lay ill was blown up [A.D. 1567] by their contrivance, though they had the baseness to ascribe it to Mary.

§ 18. Associated with Murray and the rest, though with different motives, was James Hepburn, Earl of Bothwell, a man of daring character, who was resolved to turn their common crime to his own special advantage. He hardly pretended to conceal his share in the murder, but when accused of it he appeared in court with a body of fully-armed friends. The Earl of Lennox, Darnley's father, did not dare to come forward, and of course he was declared innocent. The "Congregation of the Lord"<sup>b</sup> had entered in a bond for the destruction of Darnley, and Bothwell imitated them by getting his friends to enter into a similar engagement to assist him in seizing the crown. To be ready for this he had already divorced his wife, by mutual consent, on some idle pretence of relationship, and he now seized the unhappy queen and forced her to marry him. The other murderers, however, rose against him, when he fled from Scotland, and lived for a time by piracy; but, being captured by the Danes, ended his days a prisoner and a madman ten years afterward. The queen was compelled to resign her crown in favor of her son, a child by Darnley only a year old, and she was then confined in an island in Lochleven. That son was afterward James the Sixth of Scotland and James the First of England.

<sup>a</sup> § 13, p. 358.

<sup>b</sup> § 13, p. 358.

Mary tries to regain her Throne.

Doings of her Enemies.

§ 19. Mary's half-brother Murray now became regent, but the queen escaped in the following spring, and endeavored to recover the throne. Her small force was defeated at Langside, when she crossed the Solway Frith into England in an open boat, almost unattended. She wished to repair to Elizabeth's court, to justify herself; and when this was refused, she desired to withdraw to her relatives in France. But she found herself a prisoner [A.D. 1568], and that, too, in the hands of men who hated her because they had injured her.

§ 20. Mary was now only twenty-six years of age, and her beauty and fascinating manners made friends for her wherever she came. This was soon painfully evident to Elizabeth's ministers, and Leicester <sup>a</sup> himself is the witness, that within a year of her arrival a warrant was made out for her execution. In the mean time, Murray <sup>b</sup> and others came into England, and, with a deference to Elizabeth's supremacy such as the Scots had once paid to Edward the First, <sup>c</sup> laid their accusations against Mary before a board of

<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 254.<sup>b</sup> § 17, p. 250.<sup>c</sup> § 15, p. 187.

English commissioners at York. But even this prejudiced body declined to convict her; and the Duke of Norfolk, who was at their head, testified his belief in her innocence in the strongest manner by wishing to marry her. Still she was kept a prisoner, and plots began to be formed for her release. Norfolk was induced to take some part in the matter, when he was betrayed and beheaded in the year 1572. He was one of the ancient nobility, and therefore odious to such new men as Leicester and Cecil (now Lord Burleigh), who both sat on his trial.

§ 21. Even before Elizabeth came to the throne, the Netherlands had taken up arms to resist the introduction of the Inquisition, and had for a while been successful; but in 1567 Philip of Spain, <sup>d</sup> their sovereign, sent the Duke of Alva with an army to reduce them to obedience. Many of the Netherlands fled to England, and as they brought with them some useful manufactures, they were warmly welcomed. Philip complained of the slight, but could obtain no redress. On the contrary, as the Netherlands had now a fleet, many of the English joined them, whilst others, though war had not been declared, assailed the Spanish treasure-ships. Hawkins, Drake, and other well-known seamen commenced their career in this piratical manner; and to Hawkins belongs the additional disgrace of

<sup>d</sup> § 26, p. 349.



Insurrections.      Complaints against Elizabeth.      Bull of Excommunication.

having begun the slave trade between Africa and America. Alva in return seized on the English merchants' goods, and the Spanish ambassador in England supplied the funds for an insurrection, which was meant to set free Mary, and also, if possible, to overthrow Elizabeth and restore Romanism. The Earls of Westmoreland and Northumberland made the attempt [A.D. 1569], but an experienced Spanish officer sent to direct their movements was intercepted on his way. As they had themselves no skill in arms, many who were ready to join them held back. Their plan entirely miscarried, though they got possession of Durham Minster, and re-established the mass there for a short time.

§ 22. This abortive attempt, which is known as the Rising of the North, was an infinitely less serious affair than Wyatt's rebellion, and never for an instant put Elizabeth in personal danger; but it was far more rigorously punished. Westmoreland escaped; but Northumberland was, after a three years' imprisonment, given up by the new Scottish ruler, Morton, for a bribe of £2,000 (for

\* § 17, p. 360. Murray<sup>a</sup> had already been assassinated). and executed; whilst in every market-town in the North mar-

tial law was carried out with terrible severity, nearly seventy persons being hanged in the city of Durham alone. Besides those actually concerned, many wealthy Catholic families were ruined by forfeiture on the mere suspicion of disaffection. Some of these found employment in the Spanish armies, others were pensioned by Philip, but more wandered over the continent, filling every Catholic country with complaints of the cruelty and injustice of Elizabeth's government. The effect was soon seen. A bull, called a "sentence declaratory" of excommunication and deposition, had been prepared long before. It was now issued [A.D. 1570] by Pope Sixtus the Fifth, and fixed upon the house of the English ambassador at Paris. In very coarse language it stigmatized the queen as an illegitimate usurper and a heretic, who had endeavored to destroy the Catholic faith and practice, and it declared her deprived of the throne, and her subjects absolved from all allegiance to her. An enthusiast named John Felton, who affixed a printed copy of this bull on the gate of the Bishop of London's palace, was seized and executed as a traitor.

§ 23. From this time to the end of Elizabeth's reign a life and death struggle was maintained with France and Spain and the Pope. All the malcontents in the dominions of the one received support

Help for the Netherlands and the Huguenots.

Jesuit Propagandists.

from the other. Elizabeth now openly avowed the proceedings of her sailors, which she had before styled piratical, and supplied men, money, and arms to the Netherlanders and the Huguenots. Philip sent soldiers and the Pope sent priests to Ireland, where a civil war was thus maintained for years. Spanish agents got up plots against her life, which were foiled by the sagacity of Sir Francis Walsingham, himself a man of dark and designing character, who labors under the imputation of being as unscrupulous as any of his opponents.

§ 24. The evil effect of forcing the Romanists to send their children abroad for education<sup>a</sup> was now seen, as persons had been found who turned this to a political purpose. For these youths a college had been established at Douay, in Flanders, by Dr. Williams, afterwards Cardinal Allen, a learned man who had been the Principal of St. Mary's Hall at Oxford in the preceding reign.<sup>1</sup> Some of his pupils no doubt took to other courses, but many of them entered the priesthood. The effect that sending these young men back to England might be expected to produce was at once perceived. Institutions called seminaries were soon established in France, Italy, Spain, Portugal, and the Netherlands, with the avowed object of training up English youths as priests, who should be ready at the command of their superiors, and at whatever risk, to return to England in order to attempt to "convert the souls of their countrymen and kinsmen."

§ 25. At about the year 1574, the "Seminarists" from Douay began to arrive in England in considerable numbers, and in every imaginable disguise. They moved about from place to place, and, hidden in secret chambers in old manor-houses (the recesses since well known as "priest's holes)," often escaped detection for years. But when captured (and they were eagerly hunted down as the worst of criminals), though they earnestly disclaimed all political motives, they suffered as traitors. One Cuthbert Mayne, who was hanged in 1578, is spoken of by Romish writers as the "protomartyr of Douay." In the course of the queen's reign more than 200 of these Seminarists were executed, but the enterprise was not abandoned. One of the most eminent of their number, Edmund

<sup>1</sup> At that college a translation of the Bible into English was made by Dr. Gregory Martin, assisted by Drs. Allen, Richards, and Briston. The "Douay Bible," as this translation is called, is the English version accepted by the Roman Catholics ever since.



A Jesuit's Declaration.

Condition of Romanists.

Persecutions.

Campion, a Jesuit, made a declaration to the queen's council, which he and others fully acted up to so far as suffering was concerned. "Be it known unto you," he says, "that we have made a league, all the Jesuits in the world, whose succession and multitude must overreach all the practices of England, cheerfully to carry the cross that you shall lay upon us, and never to despair your recovery, while we have a man left to enjoy your Tyburn, or to be racked with your torments, or to be consumed with your poisons. Expenses are reckoned, the enterprise is begun; it is of God, it cannot be withstood. So the faith was planted, so it must be restored." Many of the sufferers are known to have been learned and amiable men. But there were among them others of widely different character, and the government, seeing them backed by the Pope and the King of Spain, naturally became too much alarmed to discriminate between them.

§ 26. Though the Romanists still formed the majority of the population, the condition of most of them was pitiable in the extreme. Students holding their opinions were driven from the Universities; but many of these became lawyers, and by their skill the severity of the laws was in a measure averted, until at last a kind of sufferance was allowed, provided no open display was made. But to be a priest was to incur daily the actual risk of death. All who succored them were in equal danger; and it was only the personal favor of the queen to some few nobles, and the corruption of the courtiers, who for money shielded the rich, whilst the poor filled the prisons, that allowed even a shadow of the old form of religion to exist. Year after year, however, saw fresh "Seminarists" arrive, and though the laws were made more and more severe, the government at length got in some measure tired of its useless rigor, and long before Elizabeth's reign came to a close it had become the custom to imprison or banish rather than to hang the greater part of these "disobedient persons."

§ 27. But even in thus dealing with these propagandists, almost incredible hardships were inflicted, as is confessed in publications issued by the government in its own justification. From these it appears that the prisoners in the Tower were carried by main force to the chapel to hear themselves and their faith reviled; that they were put on the rack to make them confess who had given them shelter, and that one priest at least (Alexander Briant) was remorselessly starved to death. He licked the moisture from his prison walls, so

“Massacre of St. Bartholomew.” Its effect. Conduct of Radical Puritans.

urgent was his thirst, and he was refused all food unless he would apply for it in writing, the object being to make him show himself the author of some seditious papers.

§ 28. Soon after the execution of the Duke of Norfolk,<sup>a</sup> an event occurred in France which sent a thrill of horror throughout Christendom. Catherine de Medici, the dowager Queen of France,<sup>b</sup> acting as the willing instrument of the family of Guise (of which the mother of Mary of Scotland was a member),<sup>c</sup> consummated a plan for the destruction of the French Protestants known as Huguenots<sup>d</sup> throughout the kingdom. At her instigation her weak son, Charles the Ninth, issued a secret order for their massacre at a chosen time. The dreadful work began in Paris on the eve of the festival of St. Bartholomew [Aug. 24, 1572], and seventy thousand Protestants perished within the borders of France. Among the more conspicuous victims was the eminent Admiral Coligny, who had been treacherously invited to court under a guise of friendship. The queen dowager sent his head to Pope Gregory the Thirteenth, then just elevated to the pontificate, who, in testimony of his satisfaction because of the destruction of so many heretics, caused a memorial medal to be issued.

§ 29. This event caused so much fear of the power and intentions of the Roman Catholic rulers, that the various Protestant States were drawn together more closely. And it seriously affected Mary of Scotland (a relation and presumed partisan of the Guises and Catherine of France), who, though a prisoner, was feared as well as hated; and thoughts of putting her to death were again entertained. But these gave way to more urgent matters, and she was left to endure many years of prison-life.

§ 30. The danger in which all Protestants were supposed to stand from the union of Spain and France and the Pope, had no effect in causing the Puritans to cease from their attacks on the Anglican Church, which they considered quite as corrupt and dangerous to religious liberty as the church of Rome. On the contrary, the more urgent the apparent danger seemed, the more clamorous did they become, and their zeal partook largely of fanaticism. Some of them were disposed to establish such a democracy in religious matters that all ecclesiastical order would be obliterated. They desired to sweep away episcopacy, set forms of prayer, vestments and ceremonies, music and the observance of festivals; every “godly



Separation of Church and State proposed.

Power of the Puritans.

man" to be allowed to pray and preach after his own fashion. But the more thoughtful, who perceived the necessity of a bond of union in governmental form, insisted only upon the more ancient and primitive presbyterian order in the organization of the church of the realm. At the same time they, with their more zealous brethren, denied the right of civil magistrates to interfere in ecclesiastical matters. They boldly declared the necessity of a total separation of Church and State for the good of true religion—a feeling now powerfully working throughout Christendom.

§ 31. Such views could not, of course, be tolerated by so imperious a governor as Elizabeth; but they had supporters among her

ministers, and especially in the parliament.<sup>a</sup> Their great champion was Thomas Cartwright, a member of

the University of Cambridge, and an eloquent preacher, who was never tired of pointing to bishops and all belonging to them as "limbs of Antichrist." He was expelled, but not silenced; for he had the courage to address an "Admonition to the Parliament" [A.D. 1572], in which the most bitter and contemptuous language was employed towards the church. This was in consequence of the parliament having abandoned their intention of abolishing many rites and ceremonies on hearing that the queen was displeased. The Admonition was followed by the establishment of a presbytery at Wandsworth, and the example was followed in other places. The government now interfered, silencing some of the most vehement Puritan preachers, when Cartwright went abroad.

§ 32. Archbishop Parker<sup>b</sup> had pointed out to the queen the revolutionary spirit by which the Puritans were actuated, and as long as he lived they were kept in a measure in check. But on his death, in 1575, his see was given to Grindal, Archbishop of York, who had been one of the exiles,<sup>c</sup> and whom the Puritans claimed as "their own."

He was a man of most amiable character, but quite unfit to control or to contend with such spirits as the stern Puritans possessed. Under his nominal rule they were allowed to hold what they called "prophesyings," where ministers who had been silenced for non-conformity were at liberty to preach and pray, and declaim against both Church and State, until the government peremptorily stopped them and suspended the archbishop. He died soon afterward [A.D. 1583], and was succeeded by Whitgift, Bishop of Worcester, a man of a firm spirit, who had already writ-

<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 353.

<sup>b</sup> § 9, p. 355.

<sup>c</sup> § 20, p. 346.

The Puritans Checked.

Discovery of America.

Walter Raleigh.

ten against the Puritans, and who showed that the law would be too strong for them so long as he lived.

§ 33. Whitgift's firmness was potential. No more presbyteries were formed, and though the Puritans printed at a secret press some most offensive tracts, as the production of "Martin Mar-Prelate," they could not again induce the parliament to take up their cause. Their champion, Cartwright, found himself overmatched, and retiring to a preferment that his patron Leicester had given him, he abandoned the cause for which he had so long contended, and, his enemies said, grew rich by usury. But his followers, though nominally conforming, to avoid penalties, retained their peculiar opinions; and as many of them lived as chaplains in noblemen's houses, or took to school-teaching, they had the opportunity, which they did not neglect, of spreading them widely, as was seen in the next reign.

§ 34. At about this time some of the most notable events of Elizabeth's reign occurred—events which cast into insignificance and contempt the disputes of bigots, the jealousies of monarchs, and the quarrels of courtiers, with the attendant ill consequences to the people, the narration of which forms the bulk of the recorded history of that time. They were the efforts of a few of her subjects to make discoveries and plant colonies beyond the Atlantic Ocean.

§ 35. Late in the preceding century, Columbus, of Genoa, had asked the rich King of England, Henry the Seventh,<sup>a</sup> to assist him in testing his theory that a continent might be found by sailing westward over the Atlantic Sea. Henry refused; but that bold navigator, aided by Isabella of Spain, discovered some of the West India Islands near the American continent. A little later an English navigator (Cabot) discovered the continent itself; but during the lapse of full three-fourths of a century after the Genoese sailed from Palos, no real progress was made toward a permanent European settlement in the new-found world. Some English navigators had explored the northeastern coast of America in search of precious metals; but it was not until the middle of Elizabeth's reign that efforts were made to plant settlements in the milder regions of the northern portion of the vast continent.

§ 36. There was a young English courtier named Walter Raleigh, who, while learning the art of war with Coligny, the eminent French Huguenot,<sup>b</sup> had heard of

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 295.

<sup>b</sup> § 28, p. 365.



Attempted Settlements in America.

England helps the Netherlands.

the middle regions of North America. His step-brother, Sir Humphry Gilbert, obtained a patent from the queen for making settlements in the New World. Raleigh joined him in the enterprise. After several unsuccessful efforts to reach that middle coast, Gilbert was lost at sea; but Raleigh, undismayed, sent other ships, and succeeded in making a settlement on Roanoke Island, on the coast of the present North Carolina. That was in the year 1585. The navigators of his vessels had given a glowing account of the country. The queen declared that its discovery was one of the most glorious events of her reign; and in memorial of her unmarried state it was called VIRGINIA. But this first settlement, and another made two years later, were broken up and destroyed by the Indians, or aborigines, who were badly treated by the English people.

§ 37. Whilst the Church was disturbed by zealous reformers, the State was made equally unquiet from apprehension of the invasion

<sup>a</sup> § 26, p. 349. which Philip of Spain,<sup>a</sup> Queen Mary's husband, was known to be preparing. As one means of averting the

danger, it was thought advisable to give efficient assistance to the

<sup>b</sup> § 7, p. 354. Netherlanders, and accordingly the Earl of Leicester<sup>b</sup> was sent to them with an army. Admiral Drake was

at the same time despatched to the West Indies, in the hope of capturing the Spanish treasure-ships, and thus bringing the projected Armada, or great fleet, to a stand for want of money. Neither expedition was very successful. The treasure-ships eluded Drake, and Leicester showed conspicuous incapacity as a leader, besides offending the queen by accepting the supreme government of the Netherlands without her permission. He was soon recalled. The most remarkable event of his campaign was the death of his nephew, Sir Philip Sidney, commander of his cavalry [Oct., 1586], who was eminent alike as a scholar, a courtier, and a soldier. So high was Sidney's character that, in the year before his death, he was named as a candidate for the crown of Poland.

§ 38. Philip continued his preparations, and, whether with or without his knowledge is not certainly known, some zealous Romanists began to plot for the assassination of the queen. Walsingham,<sup>c</sup> however, prevented any of their schemes

<sup>c</sup> § 23, p. 362. taking effect, and Anthony Babington, a gentleman of fortune; Savage, a soldier in Philip's pay; Ballard, a priest, and eleven other persons suffered as traitors. But Walsingham's inqui-

Mary Queen of Scots accused, tried, and beheaded.

A Royal Hypocrite.

sitorial diligence was pushed further than the defeating of this plot. One of his spies had mixed in it, and from his statement and Babington's confession it appeared that Queen Mary had some knowledge of the matter. Her friends say that only a righteous attempt was to be made to set her at liberty; her enemies, that she was consenting to Elizabeth's death. Walsingham undertook to prove this last assertion, which brought her within the terms of an act passed some time before, at the suggestion of Leicester, denouncing death against any one who should either make or sanction any attempt on the queen's life. Mary's papers were seized, her secretaries were questioned, and she was soon removed from Tutbury to Fotheringhay Castle, where her so-called trial took place. As her death was already determined on, the commissioners, though they heard her charge Walsingham with forging some of the letters that he produced, and falsifying others, soon closed their investigation. They returned to London, and there, in the Star-chamber,<sup>a</sup> pronounced her guilty of having "compassed and imagined the death of the queen." That was on the 25th of October, 1586.

<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 296.

§ 39. The parliament met soon afterward, and made it their urgent request that the unhappy prisoner might be executed. Elizabeth affected great reluctance, but she confirmed the sentence; and when it was published in London every house was illuminated, all the bells were rung, and the populace showed a barbarous joy, "making bonfires and singing psalms in every street and lane in the city." This was in December, 1586; but Elizabeth appeared in no hurry to carry out the sentence. She listened to the representations of the French and the Scottish ambassadors, and gave them ambiguous answers; and it was not until the first of February, 1587, that she would sign the death-warrant. This she gave into the care of William Davidson, her secretary. Her council knew that they only carried out her real wishes when they sent it to Fotheringhay, where, in accordance with it, Mary was judicially murdered on the 8th of February, 1587. When that deed was done, the royal hypocrite on the throne professed the most extreme surprise, anger, and sorrow; but she easily suffered herself to be pacified when her councillors told her that "the life of one Scottish and titular queen ought not to weigh down the safety of all England." But, as a sacrifice to appearances, the unfortunate secretary, Davidson, was prosecuted in the Star-chamber and ruined,



Patriotism of the English People.

Preparations to meet Invasion.

his "good masters of the council" having the baseness to swear that he had acted without orders.

§ 40. Soon after the death of Mary, Drake was again despatched against the Spaniards, and he brought back the news that the invasion would certainly be attempted in the following year. The most vigorous preparations were made to meet the danger, the Romanists joining heartily in them, whilst the Puritans showed lukewarmness. This was at the very period when they were assailing the church more harshly than ever in the Mar-Prelate

<sup>a</sup> § 33, p. 367. tracts,<sup>a</sup> a fact that was long remembered to their disadvantage. But a thoroughly patriotic spirit pre-

vailed throughout the kingdom. A fleet of about one hundred and forty vessels was got together, and the Netherlands<sup>b</sup> supplied sixty more. Three armies, of 70,000 men altogether, were collected, and a camp was formed at Tilbury, where Leicester commanded, and which the queen visited, declaring that she had come to die there if necessary. "I know," she said, "I have but the body of a weak and feeble woman, but I have the heart of a king, and a king of England, too." The fleet was under the command of Lord Howard of Effingham, a Roman Catholic, the son of Lord William Howard, Queen Mary's admiral, and he was assisted by Admirals Hawkins, Drake, Frobisher, and many other bold seamen whose names are most conspicuous in English history.

§ 41. The Spanish fleet was of vastly superior force, numbering not less than one hundred and thirty ships of war, most of them of much larger size than any of the English vessels. It carried, beside the ships' crews, an army of 22,000 men, a large number of volunteers from the first families in Spain, and 180 priests and monks, for it was hoped to convert as well as to conquer England. To assist in the work there was a large store of whips, chains, thumb screws, and other instruments of torture on board. The Duke of Medina Sidonia, a man unused to the sea, was in command; but he was assisted by Martinez de Ricaldi, a

<sup>c</sup> § 15, p. 211. hardy Biscayan mariner,<sup>c</sup> and when the fleet rendezvoused at Lisbon, which it did in the month of May,

1588, it made so gallant a show that Philip seemed justified in styling it "the Invincible Armada"—a name which it yet bears in history. The Pope had sent his blessing, and a consecrated banner, and the fleet set sail on the 1st of June, 1588. A

Appearance of the Armada.      Its destruction.      Humiliation of the Spaniards.

storm, however, arose, and the Armada was obliged to take refuge at the Groyne, having already suffered so much that a report was spread of the expedition being abandoned until the following year. Lord Howard, however, visited the Spanish coast with a few vessels, found that the damage suffered had been purposely exaggerated to throw him off his guard, and, returning to port, revictualled his fleet.

§ 42. Only a week after Howard's return the Armada came in sight. It was far too strong for him to venture to oppose its passage, and it sailed proudly up the Channel, making for the coast of Flanders, where 30,000 veteran troops and a body of English deserters<sup>1</sup> were to be taken on board. But this was never accomplished. The Spaniards were very poor seamen, and managed their huge ships so badly that three of them were captured by the active English who followed them in their small vessels. At length they arrived in Calais roads, where they anchored. Here, at night, Howard sent eight fire-ships among them, which created such a panic that they cut their cables and thought only of escape. Many of them, instead, got on shore, others surrendered without resistance, and the plight of the rest was so pitiable that the Spanish general, the renowned Duke of Parma, refused to suffer his troops to embark. And so the intended invasion was perforce abandoned.

§ 43. But the miseries of the Spaniards were only now beginning. Even if they would face the English fleet, it seemed impossible to pass through the Straits of Dover, owing to heavy westerly gales, which, being unusual at that time of the year, inspired them with superstitious dread. They therefore resolved to attempt to return to Spain by passing to the north of Scotland. They threw their mules and horses overboard, in order to save water, and then took to flight, followed as far as the Orkneys by the English ships, which made fresh captures every day without a blow, so entirely was the haughty Spanish spirit humbled. Then the English ammunition failed. The pursuit was discontinued, and the fugitives had only the dangers of almost unknown and stormy seas to contend with. Some who were wrecked on the coast of Scotland were humanely succored; but those who were

<sup>1</sup> These had garrisoned Deventer, under the command of Sir William Stanley. He was accused, unjustly, of being concerned in Babington's conspiracy, on which he surrendered the town to the Spaniards, and joined their army with his whole force.



Rejoicings in England.      Contributions for War.      Operations in Portugal.

lost among the Hebrides <sup>a</sup> and on the Irish coast were mostly put to death. At last, in the month of September, 1588, <sup>a § 9, p. 2.</sup> the remains of the Armada reached Spain, where their wretched condition excited great grief. But Philip professed to be little disturbed by it, saying that he had still fleets and armies to send against heretics; and he at once set about preparing for another expedition.

§ 44. The destruction of the Spanish fleet, though far more the work of the weather than of anything else, very naturally gave occasion for extravagant rejoicings in England. The captured flags were carried in solemn procession to St. Paul's, the queen herself accompanying them, and many of the finest weapons were placed in the Tower, where some few of them may yet be seen. The prisoners taken were very numerous, and some of the more considerable were ransomed by the Duke of Alva; but the rest pined out their days miserably on board of prison-ships moored at the mouth of the Thames, as the people were so embittered against them that they could not safely be brought on shore. But a more dignified revenge was taken in the summer of the next year.

§ 45. By contributions from all classes in England, and even by collections in churches, the sum of £50,000 was raised for the purpose of fitting out a new land and naval expedition. When preparations were completed, Drake and Norris led the fleet and army to Portugal, which on their way stormed the town of Corunna, defeated a strong Spanish force, and destroyed a vast number of ships, with their stores, which Philip had already collected for a new attempt. Their great object, however, was to place a Portuguese prince, Don Antonio, on the throne of Portugal, as Philip had treacherously seized on the country a few years before, on the occasion of its king (Sebastian) being killed in battle with the Moors. They did not succeed, as the Portuguese showed no inclination to take up arms. Norris landed, and marched unopposed to Lisbon; but as Drake remained to plunder Cascaes, and so gave him no help, he was obliged to retire. The two commanders naturally quarrelled, and after burning Vigo they returned to England, where they met a very ungracious reception from the queen. She had borne a part of the expense of the expedition, and looked for an ample return of treasure. But this was not the case. What prizes were made were bought for a tenth of their value by the merchants at Plymouth, and the sum received was so

Ruinous warlike Enterprises. The Huguenots disliked. Civil War in France.

small that the soldiers and sailors received only five shillings each for their five months' labor. Many in consequence took to plunder, and they even concerted a plan for robbing the merchants at St. Bartholomew's Fair; but the vigilance of the London citizens defeated this, and a great number of executions followed.

§ 46. The queen's early favorite, Leicester, had been chosen by her to command the army at Tilbury.<sup>a</sup> He died very soon after the dispersion of the Armada, and he was <sup>a</sup> § 40, p. 370. succeeded in her affections by his stepson, Robert Devereux, Earl of Essex, a handsome youth just come of age. He had already shown great gallantry under Leicester in the Netherlands,<sup>b</sup> and he wished to sail with Drake, but the <sup>b</sup> § 37, p. 368. queen forbade him. He, however, secretly joined the expedition, led the party that first landed in Portugal, though the water rose to his shoulders, and dispersed the enemy at the point of the pike. Afterwards, when the garrison of Lisbon retired within their walls without fighting, he sent a challenge by a trumpeter offering single combat to any man of his own quality. He was peremptorily recalled before the close of the expedition, and his rashness was forgiven, though the queen had at first threatened to hang Sir Roger Williams, a veteran soldier, for favoring his escape from the court.

§ 47. This expedition to Portugal was the first of many retaliatory enterprises in which the naval and military men, the nobles and courtiers, joined with an eagerness proportioned to the wealth that they hoped to acquire. But these hopes were fallacious; and not only Hawkins and Drake, but the Earls of Essex and Cumberland, Sir George Carey, Sir Walter Raleigh, and many more, after incurring almost incredible hardships and dangers in their adventurous cruises, all died ruined men.

§ 48. The conduct of the Huguenot leaders in the early part of Elizabeth's reign<sup>c</sup> had prevented any effectual assistance being given to them by her, even when the <sup>c</sup> § 12, p. 357. massacre of St. Bartholomew [A.D. 1572] made them an object of pity in all Protestant States.<sup>d</sup> With brief intermissions the war was carried on between the successive <sup>d</sup> § 28, p. 365. kings, Charles the Ninth and Henry the Third (with the Guises and other heads of the Catholic League), and the Huguenots headed by a prince of the blood, Henry of Bourbon. In 1589 Henry the Third was assassinated, and Bourbon became king as Henry the Fourth. To him succor was freely sent, and English troops, com-



The Edict of Nantes. Spaniards assail England. Their Influence in Ireland.

manded by the Earl of Essex, Lord Willoughby, and Sir John Norris, took a very active part in the war. But Henry the Fourth found his Protestantism an insuperable objection with the great bulk of his subjects, and he therefore became a Romanist, by which he at last secured his throne. He, however, granted freedom of worship to his old associates, and also put into their hands several strong towns, thus making in reality another kingdom within his realm. This arrangement is known in history as the Edict of Nantes, issued on the 13th of April, 1598. He also made peace with the Spaniards, by whom the Leaguers had been supported, and thus England was again in danger of invasion.

§ 49. The Spaniards had borne the destruction of their Armada very uneasily, and it needed all the vigilance and skill of the English commanders to foil their projects. They managed to send men and money into Ireland, where the Roman Catholics were fiercely persecuted, and English authority was for a while reduced to a very low ebb. They landed in Cornwall and burnt the town of Penzance in the year 1595, and in 1602 a fleet of Spanish galleys ranged the English Channel for a while, until encountered and destroyed by Sir Robert Mansel. They also captured Calais in 1596; but in the same year their own city of Cadiz was taken by the English and Dutch, and an attempt was soon afterward made by the former on the islands known as the Azores, in the North Atlantic Ocean. This last attack failed; the Spanish treasure-fleet

<sup>a</sup> § 47, p. 373. escaped, and Essex and Raleigh,<sup>a</sup> the commanders,

<sup>b</sup> § 26, p. 349. quarrelled so fiercely over the miscarriage that they were enemies ever after. Philip of Spain<sup>b</sup> died in

1598; but his son, Philip the Third, inherited his projects and much of his disposition, and caused great alarm by announcing an invasion of England as the first step that he would take. The Earl of Nottingham (the Lord Howard of Effingham who had

<sup>c</sup> § 41, p. 370. foiled the Armada)<sup>c</sup> was made "lieutenant-general of the kingdom by sea and by land," and he took

his measures so well that the scheme was abandoned.

§ 50. It was seen that the Spaniards still possessed a very dangerous influence in Ireland, where, through their support, one chief especially, known as the O'Neil,<sup>1</sup> had headed an insurrection and

<sup>1</sup> This was Hugh, son of the Baron of Duncannon, whom the queen had made Earl of Tyrone, and who had exalted himself to be the O'Neil and rightful Irish sovereign of Ulster.

Essex sent to Ireland.

He fails.

He is overthrown by Cecil.

foiled several English commanders. He assumed the state of an independent prince, though he bore the title of Earl of Tyrone, which had been conferred on a former O'Neil when Henry the Eighth assumed the style of king, instead of Lord of Ireland.<sup>a</sup> Essex,<sup>b</sup> who was always covetous of applause, was, at his own request, sent against O'Neil, but only achieved his own ruin. The great minister, Burleigh, was now dead, and his place in the queen's councils was aspired to by his younger son, Robert Cecil, much to the indignation of Essex, who claimed to bear rule wherever he appeared, whether in the court or the camp.

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 154.<sup>b</sup> § 47, p. 373.

§ 51. The queen was now growing old, and the question as to who was to succeed her employed the active wits of all her courtiers. Both Essex and Cecil, therefore, entered separately into secret communications with James Stuart of Scotland, the son of the beheaded Mary.<sup>c</sup> But the hasty, impetuous Essex was no match for the crafty Cecil, now the queen's favorite. He apparently discovered this, for after wasting his time in fruitless marches after the O'Neil, and then holding a suspicious secret interview with him [Sept. 5, 1599], he threw up his command and hurried back to England without permission, and forced himself into the queen's presence, saying that he desired to justify himself from the calumnies of his enemies, Cecil and Raleigh. But he had reckoned wrongly on the queen's affection. He was committed to custody for a while, and was afterwards, when released [Aug., 1600], forbidden to approach the court. He had always been a popular favorite, but he now applied himself more than ever to gain the good-will of all. The discontented of all classes flocked to him, and at last, some eighteen months after his return from Ireland, he attempted to raise an insurrection. What was his object in this, beyond driving his opponents from the court, is uncertain; but the attempt utterly failed, and he was now helpless in the hands of his enemies. He was tried and found guilty of high treason, and was executed on the 25th of February, 1601. This act was greatly resented by the populace in London, who attempted to murder the executioner on his way home.

<sup>c</sup> § 39, p. 269.

§ 52. The queen lived but two years after the tragical end of the ambitious Essex. She had long carried on a friendly correspondence with James of Scotland; had often supplied him with



The Queen and her Successor. Her Death. James of Scotiand proclaimed King.

money, and at last she settled a yearly pension on him; but she would never make any formal declaration of accepting him as her successor. Her courtiers, however, eagerly contended for his favor as their future king. She gained a knowledge of this, and it disquieted her extremely. She said that talking of her successor was pinning her shroud round her face. At last, early in the year 1603 she became seriously ill, and as she obstinately refused the aid of medicine, she grew rapidly worse, and her death was hourly expected. Even then she hesitated, and to the direct question that her councillors were obliged to put, would only reply, "Who should succeed me but a king?" While the queen was dying, a mounted horseman, Sir Robert Carey, loitered in the courtyard of the palace at Richmond; and when, at two in the morning of the 24th of March, 1603, a light placed by agreement in a certain window was extinguished, he knew that the queen was dead. It was even so. She expired in a stupor, without any apparent pain, after having intimated, in a negative expression, her desire that James the Sixth of Scotland should be her successor. She was then in the seventieth year of her age, and the fifty-fifth of her reign.

§ 53. Immediately on the death of the queen Sir Robert Carey galloped off, and though he met with an accident by the way, he reached Edinburgh late at night on the 27th March [1603], and saluted James as King of England. A messenger sent by Arch-

bishop Whitgift, the Primate,<sup>a</sup> speedily followed,

<sup>a</sup> § 22, p. 366. and the prelate was gratified by the assurance that the church might rely on the protection of the new king. James in the mean time had been proclaimed in every town in England, his correspondent Cecil reading the proclamation in London, and every one appearing to acquiesce and rejoice in the peaceable settlement of the succession.

§ 54. As the ruler in whose time the Reformation was considered as accomplished in England, Elizabeth has received more praise from some, and more blame from others, than she really deserved. As in the case of her sister Mary, she probably had little to do with the harsh mode in which her government was generally administered; but some cases in which she was personally concerned show that she was innately as proud and cruel as Henry himself.

No ruler of ordinary humanity could have acted as she did to her cousins, the sisters of the unfortunate Lady Jane Grey.<sup>b</sup> Mary Queen of Scots was, no doubt, the vic-

<sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 342.

Elizabeth's Character and Reign.

The Reformation partially carried out.

tim of political views as well as of personal jealousy and offended vanity ; but no such excuse can be offered in the cases of Catherine and Mary Grey, who both died in misery after years of imprisonment, merely because they had ventured to marry without first obtaining her permission.

§ 55. Two large classes of Elizabeth's subjects also were made to feel that she could bear heavily on all who presumed to think for themselves. These were the non-conformists or Puritans,<sup>a</sup> and the Roman Catholics. She seems to have <sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 357. entertained an absolute personal dislike of the former. She took care to have them excluded from several general pardons which she issued ; and one most severe act, passed in the year 1593, "to restrain the queen's subjects in obedience," was especially directed against them. Under its provisions the Puritans Barrow, Greenwood, Penry, and others were executed. The quarrel with the Romanists was more that of her ministers, and was originally political rather than religious ; for though she was easily persuaded to sanction whatever severe measures the elder Cecil and others proposed, she always had Romanists in high office at court. And in her own chapel she retained many of the ceremonies of the old religion, to the deep offence of the Puritans. They regarded the Reformation as but half carried out in her reign, and they looked for its completion to her successor, but they were disappointed.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### SOCIETY IN THE TIME OF THE TUDORS.

§ 1. So much has been necessarily mentioned in our record of the civil and military transactions of the period of the Tudor dynasty, from the accession of Henry the Seventh<sup>b</sup> to the death of Elizabeth (a space of one hundred and <sup>b</sup> § 1, p. 295. eighteen years), concerning the changes in England in religious opinions, and of persecutions because of difference in such opinions, that very little remains to be noted relative to the religious aspect of the realm during that eventful age. It was a period of wonderful events in the world's history—a period of the great



An Eventful Period. Protestants. Religious Controversies. Intolerance.

Schism, as the Roman Catholics call it—of the great Reformation, as the Protestants call it, in Germany, which spread to other countries within the bounds of Christendom. It was the period, too, when the printing-press appeared as a new and marvellous power among men, and with wonderful might grappled in tremendous conflict with kingcraft and priestcraft, while it also at times became their powerful auxiliary.

§ 2. At the Diet of Spires, called by Charles the Fifth, Emperor of Germany, in 1529, a decree was passed to support the doc-

trines of the Church of Rome against schismatics like  
<sup>a</sup> § 23, p. 317. Luther.<sup>a</sup> Six German princes protested against the

decree, and they, and all who left the Church of Rome were from that time called *Protestants*. They declared in that protest the inalienable right of every man to the exercise of private judgment in religious matters, and the freedom of conscience<sup>c</sup> from priestly and magisterial interference. That was the fruitful seed which took root in England, as well as on the Continent, centuries

after Wickliffe<sup>b</sup> had prepared the soil. And when  
<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 229. the vile Henry the Eighth, for lustful purposes, ended the supremacy of the Church of Rome in his dominions, and vir-

tually declared himself to be pontiff as well as king,<sup>c</sup>  
<sup>c</sup> § 44, p. 326. the rapid growth of that seed was a logical result of the action at Spires.

§ 3. Controversies everywhere watered the Protestant seed, and persecution gave strength to the vigorous roots, from which sprang

Puritanism,<sup>d</sup> and its sturdy antagonist, the Angli-  
<sup>d</sup> § 11, p. 357. can Church. Both struggled for supremacy through the whole of Elizabeth's reign, and fiercer still in that of her successors. The actors in those great struggles, in which the Roman Catholics also bore a conspicuous part, were generally cruel Christians, and the one who held the power for the moment was the persecutor. Bigotry, superstition, and passion, instead of enlightenment, reason, and calm judgment, were generally their guides. Toleration was almost unknown. Brute force, stronger than argument, was generally employed by all parties. Fines, imprisonment, the gibbet and the axe were the penalties inflicted, by whichever party was in power, for non-conformity to religious ritual and belief.

§ 4. During the dynasty of the Tudors there were important changes in the government and laws of the realm. At the acces-

Constitutional Monarchy foreshadowed.

Wickedness of the King.

sion of Henry the Seventh,<sup>a</sup> the once formidable power of the feudal aristocracy<sup>b</sup> had disappeared. Statutes were enacted which limited the power and restrained the rapacity of the nobles. At the same time the royal prerogative was somewhat abridged, and a shadowy precursor of constitutional monarchy appeared in fact as well as in name. Yet the kingly functions might be and were used for the exercise of the most tyrannical and oppressive measures under the solemn forms of law. And the king and his council, chosen by himself, sitting as a high criminal court, as in the Star-chamber,<sup>c</sup> constituted, when occasion called, the most terrible despotism. It was systematic, and was more to be dreaded than the rude despotism of the less enlightened ages in English history. English liberty, as it is now defined, was largely theoretical until the death of Elizabeth, and some time afterward. The people had not yet appeared as a power in the State.

§ 5. In the reign of Henry the Eighth the royal prerogative reached its height. That bad man, with a parliament always obsequious and cowardly and base, established a reign of terror more dreadful than that of the French Revolution. He caused to be created so great a number of treasons that no man could feel that his life and property were safe for an hour; in fact, the lives of the people were entirely in the hands of the crown. Every action and word of a subject that might be construed to affect the royal dignity was defined as treason. New oaths were introduced, and the most ingenious methods for creating guilt were devised. The king became as absolute in authority as any of the Cæsars, and he wielded an atrocious tyranny that has no parallel in history, excepting in the wild and inhuman caprices of a crazy Caligula.<sup>d</sup> "One wonders," says a late English writer, "in reading of these things, that human beings, with the most moderate portion of sagacity and courage, could have endured such a state of existence, and should not have preferred to it the chances and dangers of insurrection. For insurrection, however, it seems this was not the time. The spirit and power of the higher nobility were broken; those of the people, or rather of the lower nobility or gentry, and of the middle class or yeomen, the really solid men of England (for the people were not destined to come upon the scene till long after this date), had not yet arisen."

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 295.<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 96.<sup>c</sup> § 5, p. 296.<sup>d</sup> § 28, p. 13.



## Divine right of Kings.

## Legislation in three Reigns.

§ 6. And now the preposterous claim of the divine right of kings to rule, so paraded by the Stuarts afterward, was foreshadowed in a statute giving to the king and his council power to act independently of all laws, in emergencies, by virtue of the monarch's "royal power given by God," as the act expressed it. With that assumption of divine appointment and inspiration, Henry practically said to his people, as Louis the Fourteenth did to the Parliament of Paris, "*L'état! c'est moi!*"—The State! I am the State. It gave him a warrant for denying and defying the papal power, and expelling it from his dominions, under the

<sup>a</sup> § 25, p. 318. dictates of his passions,<sup>a</sup> whereby his wickedness wrought incalculable blessings for his people. Thus

was opened a way for the exercise of the right of free thought in religious and political matters, which the German Reformers declared to be every man's birth-right, which led the English people surely though slowly out of the terrible bondage of kingcraft and priestcraft to civil and religious liberty.

§ 7. The principal legislative acts of the short reign of the boy-king, Edward the Sixth,<sup>b</sup> were those relating to the State religion, for it was a time of violent

controversy on that subject—a time of preparation for a transition from the rule of Romanism to that of Protestantism. Those of Mary,<sup>c</sup> the first queen regnant

<sup>d</sup> § 1, p. 95. of the line of the Conqueror,<sup>d</sup> looked to the restoration of the power of the Romish Church in her realm. Acts were passed annulling all additions to the law of treason which

<sup>e</sup> § 5, p. 379. Henry had made,<sup>e</sup> and for enacting some new ones.

<sup>f</sup> § 1, p. 352. The first work done on the accession of Elizabeth<sup>f</sup> was the establishment of the Reformation upon the same footing where the death of her brother Edward left it.

<sup>g</sup> § 29, p. 320. By statute, the supremacy over the church was as fully given to the new queen as to her father,<sup>g</sup> by which she might exercise absolute spiritual control as a pontiff in her realm, through persons appointed for that purpose. This

<sup>h</sup> § 6, p. 354. was the origin of the Court of High Commission,<sup>h</sup> one of the most dangerous weapons ever placed in the hands of a monarch. It was intended to be an instrument for crushing the power of the Romish hierarchy, but it became, in the hands of such men as Laud, in Charles the First's time, a sharp and powerful instrument of religious and

The Thirty-nine Articles.

National Industry.

Foreign Trade.

political tyranny. This court and the Star-chamber<sup>a</sup> constituted two engines of arbitrary power, wielding the rack, the torture, and the prison, which, perhaps, were never<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 396. surpassed by any contrivance of government to keep the people in continued awe of the sovereign authority lodged in the King and the Primate of the church.

§ 8. It was this court which set forth [1571] in present form the *Thirty-nine Articles of Religion* (compiled from a body of divinity arranged in Edward the Sixth's time), which have ever since formed the creed of the Anglican and American Protestant Episcopal Churches, and their rule of faith and practice. The Church of England has ever maintained, as strenuously as the Romish church, that the Holy Scriptures shall be received, not as any individual may interpret it for himself, but as it is expounded in the Articles and other prescribed formularies. Until a very late period, pains and penalties have impended over those who refused to subscribe to those Articles.

§ 9. The national industry of England, during the rule of the Tudors, experienced great revolutions and remarkable increase and expansion, in spite of the unwise legislative restrictions imposed upon commerce and manufactures. Political and personal considerations also seriously interfered with trade at times, such as the expulsion of all the Flemings<sup>b</sup> from Eng-<sup>b</sup> § 21, p. 123. land in 1493, because the Duchess dowager of Bur-<sup>c</sup> § 18, p. 302. gundy encouraged Perkin Warbeck.<sup>c</sup> At that time the merchants of London wielded vast power and wealth by associated efforts. They formed a league for mutual benefit, which was incorporated in 1505 under the title of "The Merchant Adventurers of England," whose operations were as extensive as the area of British commerce. The spirit of adventure was then rife in England and on the Continent, and Western Europe was contending with Italy for the coveted commerce of the East. It was in the reign of Henry the Seventh that the Cape of Good Hope was passed, and America was discovered<sup>d</sup> in the<sup>d</sup> § 35, p. 367. search for an ocean passage to India.

§ 10. The increase of the foreign trade of the country from that time, and the wealth of the people, which commanded every luxury, was marvellous. It was not unusual, in the<sup>e</sup> § 1, p. 308. early part of Henry the Eighth's reign,<sup>e</sup> for a single ship to enter an English port with three to four thousand pieces of



## Commerce.

## Ship-building.

## National Industry.

cloth of gold and silver, velvets, satins, silks, and other rich stuffs.

<sup>a</sup> § 9, p. 381. At about the same time the Merchant Adventurers<sup>a</sup> of England shipped for Flanders no less than forty

thousand pieces of the plain substantial cloths of English manufacture. The commerce of the kingdom was carried on almost exclusively by foreigners settled there. But English navigators were usually the carriers of the merchandise, and their ships were seen moored upon the coasts of the four quarters of the globe. So

§ 40, p. 370. early as 1530, Captain William Hawkins, father of the admiral,<sup>b</sup> traded on the coasts of Brazil and Guinea.

§ 11. Ship-building was carried on extensively, and so skilfully, too, that English shipwrights were sought after in other countries. Early in his reign, Henry the Eighth caused a very large war-ship, the *Great Harry*, to be built, which, with another, the *Regent*, of a thousand tons burden, constructed at Woolwich, in 1512, may be considered as the beginning of the royal navy of England. Henry also encouraged the merchant marine, by which his individual wealth was increased.

§ 12. Early in Elizabeth's reign, enlightened legislation gave a new impulse to the national industry. Most of the unwise restrictions upon commerce and manufactures were removed, and a system of comparative free-trade was introduced, which caused an immense and immediate increase in the wealth and power of the kingdom. In one year after these restrictions were removed, the English exported, to the Netherlands alone, wool and cloth to the value of £2,400,000, or \$12,000,000, to the great benefit of both countries. Antwerp received the most of these goods, and distributed them over Europe. In that queen's reign, the Newfoundland fisheries on the American coast became an important part of the national industry; and direct trade was opened with the East Indies. The London merchants became very wealthy and powerful; and one of them (Sir Thomas Gresham) built [1566] the magnificent Royal Exchange for the use of the merchants' guild. Navigators were much of the time abroad on voyages of discovery, and for the extension of the area of English commerce; and toward the close of Elizabeth's reign the beginning of England's colonial system was seen in efforts such as those of

§ 36, p. 367. Raleigh<sup>c</sup> to plant settlements in distant parts of the earth.

§ 13. The manufactures of the Tudor age did not vary much

Manufactures.

Agriculture.

Farmers and their Wives.

in kind from those of the preceding period, but in all departments there was greater skill observed. The workers in iron and other metals had become numerous, and many improvements had been made in the method of tanning leather. The manufacture of cloth had spread from London, and was carried on extensively in other cities. Silk was also manufactured, the workmen being chiefly French Huguenots who were driven out of France by persecution.<sup>a</sup> The manufacture of pins was introduced from France in the reign of Henry the Eighth. The first worn in England was by his queen, Catherine Howard.<sup>b</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 28, p. 365.<sup>b</sup> § 40, p. 325.

§ 14. Agriculture in England was vastly improved, during this period, in the extent and production of tillage. It was done by free labor. The villein class<sup>c</sup> had disappeared. The yeomanry<sup>d</sup> lived in better houses than formerly. They were usually of the kind known to the American pioneer as log houses, with walls of wattle and plaster, but not always having chimneys. The farmer slept on a straw pallet, or a flock mattress, with a bolster filled with chaff. His servants slept on straw. All dined off wooden trenchers, and ate their pottage with wooden spoons. The most substantial yeoman seldom had more than five or six shillings in his pocket.

<sup>c</sup> § 5, p. 164.<sup>d</sup> § 5, p. 379.

§ 15. Farm-servants and the poorer classes ate bread made of barley and rye, and sometimes of beans, peas, and oats, often mixed together. Only the gentry could afford wheaten bread the year round.

§ 16. The housewife was a pattern of industry, or rather a pattern slave. She spun and wove, of wool and flax, the clothing worn upon the farm; and it was her duty, according to a writer of the time, to “winnow all manner of corn, to make malt, to wash, and to make hay, shear corn, and in time of need help her husband fill the muck-wain or dung-cart, drive the plough, to load hay, corn, and such other, and to go to market and sell butter and pigs, fowls, or corn.” And yet, with all the industry of men, women, and children, and the exercise of the greatest frugality, it was found difficult, in the early part of the Tudor period, for the farmer to pay the rent for his land and tenement without selling a cow, for he and his servants who sat at his table consumed nearly all that the land produced.

§ 17. But there was a gradual improvement in the condition of the rural population, notwithstanding rents in the time of Henry



Condition of the People.

Horticulture.

Luxurious Furniture.

the Eighth and his children's reign had doubled. Implements were better, and tillage was far more productive. The farmer had an abundance of food generally, and he was fond of entertaining. The materials for good cheer may be found in the following lines by Tusser:—

“Good bread and good drink, a good fire in the hall;  
Brawn, pudding, and sauce, and good mustard withal;  
Beef, mutton, and pork, shred pies of the best;  
Pig, veal, goose, and capon, and turkey well drest;  
Cheese, apples, and nuts, jolly carols to hear,  
As these in the country is counted good cheer.”

§ 18. The farmers had better houses. The wooden dishes were superseded by pewter ones, and feather-beds made repose easier. Rotation of crops made tillage more productive. In the reign of Elizabeth, clover was introduced from the Netherlands, and increased the capacity of the land to feed cattle and sheep. Ewes were milked, and five of them were considered equal to a cow in value. Gardens began to be cultivated in this period, and the hop was introduced from the Netherlands in 1524. From thence, also, came salads, cabbages, gooseberries, apricots, and the muskmelon, all of which increased the comforts of the people. Pippins were introduced from the same country in 1525; cherries, from France, in 1540; and currants, from Zante, in 1555. Almost  
a § 29, p. 320. fifty years earlier, Thomas Cromwell<sup>a</sup> introduced  
b § 21, p. 123. plums from Italy. The Flemings<sup>b</sup> brought the rose and other fragrant plants.

§ 19. Wealth fostered and gratified a growing taste for luxury at court and among the nobility and gentry. Dwellings, furniture, and dress felt the influence. The furniture was carved and inlaid with greater extravagance and elegance in Queen Elizabeth's time than ever before. Chairs were cushioned with velvet coverings, and beds and bedsteads were made of the costliest stuffs and elegant workmanship. Glass mirrors, imported from France, were introduced early in Elizabeth's reign. Ornamental clocks were found in many houses. One may yet be seen in Hampton Court bearing the date of 1540. Carpets for floors were introduced from the East at the same period, and were soon made by English weavers. Turkey carpets are mentioned in the  
c § 1, p. 329. time of Edward the Sixth,<sup>c</sup> but they were then used for table coverings. Until some time in Elizabeth's reign the floors of palaces were covered with rushes and matting.

## Dress and Fashions of the Wealthy.

Knives were first made in England in 1563, and forks at the dinner-table were yet unknown at the time of the death of Elizabeth.

§ 20. The costume of both sexes, during the Tudor age, did not vary much in general form, only in minor details. The masculine costume was most effeminate in the time of Henry the Seventh.<sup>a</sup> It consisted of a fine shirt of long lawn, with silk-embroidered collar and wristbands; a doublet, the sleeves of which were sometimes composed of two pieces each, fastened at the shoulder and the elbow with laces or points, through which the shirt protruded; and sometimes only slashed at the elbows. To this were added a stomacher, over which the doublet was laced, and petticoat; a long coat or gown, with hanging sleeves, and broad turn-over collars of velvet or fur; long stockings with two or more colors, and broad-toed shoes or slippers. Velvet or felt caps, with feathers, were worn. The feminine costume was generally graceful. Slashings were fashionable. The laced stomacher was a prominent feature. The hair fell negligently down the back; and high head-dresses were seldom seen.

§ 21. In the time of Henry the Eighth the fashions were more extravagant, and they were extremely so in the reign of Elizabeth. In Mary's reign<sup>b</sup> they were less so. But the materials used in the dress of both sexes were of the richest kind; and as the "common people" imitated the nobility as far as possible, sumptuary laws were promulgated in 1543. Crimson or blue velvet, embroidered with silk and gold, and the richest damask silks, were worn.

§ 22. The hair of men was cut short in Henry the Eighth's time, by his orders, while beards and moustaches were allowed to grow long. The hats and caps of the men and the women were particularly extravagant, yet often elegant and picturesque. The hair of the women was "curled, frizzled, and crisped." False hair was much worn. Queen Elizabeth wore such in the sixty-seventh year of her age, sometimes red, as her own was originally, and sometimes of other hues. Stockings of knit silk and worsted were first made in England in her reign. Jewelry of every description was worn to excess; and perfumed gloves, bordered with silver and gold, were fashionable.

§ 23. Court pastimes now assumed a character, between the



Pastimes of the Court and People.      Festivals.      Refinement of the Table.

masque and the pantomime, and were often conducted with magnificence in dresses and accessories. Music and dancing formed a large share of the sport. The English drama had its rise at this period, the mummeries of the Mysteries<sup>a</sup> having been succeeded by a better style of performance known as the Moralities, in which the dialogues were carried on chiefly by allegorical personages. And plays, down to the time of Shakespeare, at the close of the sixteenth century, continued to blend the shadows of allegory with real life. Shakespeare and his contemporaries introduced the drama much as we have it in our day, but without the effective accessories of the present time.

§ 24. The great mass of the people were still content with their simple pastimes, already described,<sup>b</sup> to which may be added bull and bear baiting and cock-fighting—cruel and ferocious sports—in Elizabeth's reign, and horse-racing as a regular systematic amusement. Even the Puritans indulged in the latter sport. Backgammon was now introduced as an indoor sport, and chess and cards held their places as favorites.

§ 25. Christmas and other festivals were indulged in by all classes of the people. The processions, when bringing in the Christmas-log or May-pole, were jolly affairs for both sexes; and around the plough on Plough-Monday (early in January) the country people had many dances. So, too, had the milkmaids on May-day; and the festival of St. Valentine, in February, was a fruitful season of love-making leading to marriage.

§ 26. The huge joints of salted beef, platters of wood and pewter, and the swarms of jesters, tumblers, and harpers, seen around the tables of the rich in earlier times, disappeared after the Tudors came into power, and the more delicate entertainments of the French, similar to the customs of our day, prevailed. Wines, fruits, and confectioneries abounded. Guests washed before dining, and used perfumes furnished by the host. The hat was generally worn at the table. What the guests left was given to the waiters and servants, and what was then left was distributed to the poor who waited without the gate.

§ 27. During the greater portion of the Tudor rule, learning was depressed rather than encouraged in England. Nobles and clergy were ignorant; and it was not until late in Elizabeth's reign that the schools and the literature of England assumed a commanding attitude. These brilliant exceptions, such as Spen-

ser, and Shakespeare and his literary cotemporaries, have caused her reign to be called the literary age of England; but it is certain that learning was not generally diffused, even among the higher classes, and among the poor scarcely at all. Not one in ten of the gentry could write his or her own name. The father of Shakespeare, an alderman of Stratford, could only make his mark indifferently. There were poets of eminence late in the sixteenth century; but the chief glory of what is commonly called the "Elizabethan age of English poetry" properly belongs to the commencement of the reign of her successor, when the productions of the great dramatist and others bloomed out in greatest beauty and splendor.

§ 28. The fine arts made but little progress in England during the time of the Tudors. The Gothic style in ecclesiastical architecture, which excessive ornamentation had demoralized on the Continent, showed signs of decay in England at the close of the fifteenth century, and after the Reformation unmixed Gothic fell into disuse. Palatial architecture, known as the Tudor style—a combination of the house and castle<sup>a</sup>—prevailed; the best expression of which was given in the Richmond<sup>a</sup> § 23, p. 234. palace, built by Henry the Seventh at the close of the fifteenth century.<sup>b</sup> Henry the Eighth had a real taste for art, and encouraged it by the erection of fine buildings<sup>b</sup> § 29, p. 207. himself, and in inducing his nobles to do likewise. Really splendid edifices arose in various parts of the kingdom, which command admiration. He also tried to induce eminent artists to come to England from the Continent; but only the names of Holbein, the Swiss painter, and Torregiano, the Florentine sculptor, appear eminent in England during his reign. Henry formed a collection of paintings, the first attempt of the kind made in England. But his children did not inherit his taste.

§ 29. The only native painter of eminence of the Tudor times was Nicolas Hilliard, an excellent miniature painter, to whom Queen Elizabeth sat several times. She encouraged art only as it subserved her vanity.



## BOOK VII.

### THE STUARTS.

[FROM 1603 TO A.D. 1649.]

---

#### CHAPTER I.

REIGN OF JAMES THE FIRST. [A.D. 1603 TO 1625.]

§ 1. JAMES the Sixth of Scotland, the only son of Mary Queen of Scots,<sup>a</sup> had been nominally a king ever since he was a year old, and at the time of his mounting the throne of England he was thirty-seven years of age. His uncle, Murray,<sup>b</sup> his grandfather, Lennox,<sup>c</sup> and a more distant kinsman, Morton, in turn, held the dangerous post of regent, and all came to violent ends. Murray and Lennox were assassinated, and Morton was executed for the murder of Darnley.<sup>d</sup> That was in 1581, when the young king had reached his fifteenth year, and had chosen Esme and James Stuart, to whom he gave the titles of Duke of Lennox and Earl of Arran, for his favorites; but the next year saw him for a while a captive in the hands of the Earl of Gowrie, and his favorites in exile. He was soon set at liberty, and Gowrie pardoned; but only to be executed as soon as James was sufficiently strong to venture on the step, in the year 1584.

§ 2. The rest of James's reign in Scotland was passed in a kind of tutelage, sometimes to one party, sometimes to another; for all the chief men of the kingdom appear to have been the "feed men," as it was termed, of either Elizabeth<sup>e</sup> or of Philip of Spain,<sup>f</sup> and many clearly received bribes from both. Such being the case, James either took little heed of the execution of his mother,<sup>g</sup> or he was betrayed by his ambassadors. He certainly did not suffer it to break off his intercourse with Elizabeth, who, as her letters remain to show, sometimes advised, sometimes scolded him, as if he was

<sup>a</sup> § 52, p. 375.

<sup>b</sup> § 26, p. 349.

<sup>c</sup> § 39, p. 369.

King James opposed to War. Arabella Stuart. Plots against the Government.

her subject; but through all kept him in dependence on her for a yearly pension, which she made less or greater, according as he took or neglected her advice.

§ 3. But James was too politic to depend upon her good-will only. Though strongly urged by her, he never would openly quarrel with the Spanish king, or the Pope, or even his own Catholic subjects, though, to please her, he sometimes spoke of them as his "Spaniolized rebels." In spite of her remonstrances, he listened favorably to the complaints of her Roman Catholic and Puritan subjects,<sup>a</sup> and therefore, when he came to the English throne, on the death of Elizabeth [March 24, 1603],<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 357. each party considered him pledged to them to mitigate the rigor of the laws under which they had so long suffered.

§ 4. These expectations were entirely disappointed; and James had hardly reached London [May 1], where he and his queen, Anne of Denmark, were crowned on the 25th of July, he as James the First, before a plot was formed to place his cousin, Arabella Stuart, on the throne. She was daughter of a younger brother of Darnley, James's father.<sup>b</sup> The deviser of this was Sir Walter Raleigh, who, as we have seen, was a man of <sup>b</sup> § 18, p. 360. much consequence in the time of Elizabeth, but was burdened with debts, and ready for any desperate measure to retrieve his fortunes. He and Cecil had equally striven to gain the favor of James, whilst in Scotland. Cecil succeeded, but Raleigh failed, and lost his important post of captain of the royal guard. In revenge he leagued himself with Lord Cobham, the warden of the Cinque Ports;<sup>c</sup> Lord Grey, a Puritan; and some <sup>c</sup> § 10, p. 157. Romish priests and gentry, and was promised help both in men and money by the Spanish governor of the Netherlands. The plot was discovered, and the parties were tried and sentenced to death, but only the priests and one gentleman were executed. Cobham, Grey, and Raleigh were sent to the Tower, where Grey died in 1614. Soon after this, Raleigh was released, and Cobham was liberated in 1619, but died in extreme poverty shortly afterward.

§ 5. Another plot against James was that so familiarly known as the Gunpowder Treason. It was the work of a few fanatical Romanists, who, having been deluded by the false and specious promises of the king, determined to revenge themselves by destroying not only the monarch and his parliament, but even the very building in which the laws against the open profession of



## The Gun-powder Plot.

their religion had been passed. The project appears to have originated with Robert Catesby, a Northamptonshire gentleman, and

<sup>a</sup> § 8, p. 280. a descendant of the Catesby of the time of Richard the Third.<sup>a</sup> He had been a Protestant, but had become a Romanist, and had suffered severely, as a recusant, in the

<sup>b</sup> § 51, p. 375. last reign. He had taken part in Essex's insurrection,<sup>b</sup> and on its failure he opened a negotiation with the Spaniards, promising to join them with a body of Romanists if they landed at Milford-haven. The plan had been favorably received, when the death of Elizabeth altered the politics of the King of Spain, who had every desire to ally himself with her successor.

§ 6. Undaunted by this failure, Catesby now resolved on the horrible Gunpowder Plot. He gained the assistance of Thomas Percy, a relative of the Earl of Northumberland, and of five other gentlemen; took Bates, a trusted servant, into his confidence, and obtained the paid service of Guy Fawkes, a needy Yorkshire gentleman in the Spanish army. By the personal labor of these confederates a mine under the Parliament-house was attempted, but before it was completed they were able to hire an adjoining cellar, and in this they stored twenty barrels of gunpowder. Catesby had hitherto borne most of the expense of the enterprise, and his funds were now exhausted. He therefore communicated his scheme to Sir Everard Digby and three other gentlemen of fortune, the whole party taking an oath of secrecy at the hands of Henry Garnet, a Jesuit, and promising never to desist from their barbarous enterprise.

§ 7. The meeting of the parliament had been fixed for February, 1605; but, owing to some cause not now known, it was deferred until the following November. At first the plotters were greatly disturbed at this, and they had reason, for their scheme

<sup>c</sup> § 51, p. 375. was known to Sir Robert Cecil,<sup>c</sup> now created Earl of Salisbury, and holding the office of prime minister

<sup>d</sup> § 2, p. 352. to James, as his father had to Elizabeth.<sup>d</sup> He, how-

ever, left them in false security, and forbore to interfere with them until the end of October, 1605, when a letter was delivered to Lord Monteagle, a Romish nobleman, and brother-in-law to Francis Tresham, one of the conspirators, warning him not to attend the parliament on the 5th of the following month. A similar notice was probably given to the Earl of Northumberland,

## Fate of the Conspirators.

and the Lords Montague, Mordaunt, and Stourton, all Romanists, as they did not quit their country houses to attend the parliament. On this suspicion they were all heavily fined, and Northumberland was imprisoned for many years.

§ 8. The letter was submitted to the king, who professed at once to discover from its wording that an explosion of gunpowder was meant. Search was accordingly made, and Fawkes, who passed as John Johnson, a servant, was seized in the vault, prepared to fire the train at the proper moment, for which purpose his employers had left him behind, whilst they rode into Warwickshire to raise an insurrection there. They intended to seize the Princess Elizabeth, daughter of the king, a girl of ten years old, who resided with Lord Harrington in that county, make her their nominal queen, appoint a regent, and, as they hoped, re-establish Romanism by the help of Spain.

§ 9. On the seizure of Fawkes the conspirators were quickly followed (only three more Romanists joining them), and were hunted to Holbeach House, in Worcestershire, where, after a fierce resistance, they were all either killed or captured. Fawkes was tortured on the rack; but, though he avowed and gloried in his own share in the plot, nothing could make him accuse others. Their guilt, however, seemed too manifest to admit of doubt, and, except Francis Tresham, who died in prison before he could be tried, and two Jesuits who escaped, all the rest suffered as traitors. This horrible project occasioned the passing of several new statutes, which made the condition of the Romanists much worse than before; but, as in the time of Elizabeth, the laws were seldom enforced against those who could afford to bribe the courtiers. Even James's queen did not disdain to sell her protection, which exposed both herself and her husband to the suspicion of not being so entirely Protestant as the Puritans<sup>a</sup> desired. \* § 11, p. 357.

§ 10. This suspicion had much influence on the rest of James's reign, though it appears not to have had any real foundation. But the Puritans had now the ascendancy in the parliament, and they showed that they would not submit to the treatment that they had endured in the last reign. They at first regarded James as a friend, and some of them met him on his way to London, with what they styled their Millenary Petition,—a petition signed by a thousand ministers, “all groaning under a common burden of



The Puritans complain.

Settlements in America.

Religious matters.

human rites and ceremonies." It was filled with complaints against the church, and in consequence, a conference was soon after held at Hampton Court, before the king, when the bishops replied so much to his satisfaction that he at once declared the Puritan grievances to be imaginary. Acting on his own experience of the independence of the presbyteries in Scotland, he declared very truly that "no bishop" meant also "no king." He had sagacity to perceive that ideas of civil liberty were intimately connected with those of religious liberty. "A Scotch presbytery," he said, "agreeth with the monarchy as God with the devil." Henceforth he entirely relied upon the loyalty of the English church, and so much did it commend itself to him, that he some years afterward [1617] succeeded in re-establishing episcopal government in his native country.

§ 11. At about this time a successful attempt was made to plant an English colony in America. The English then claimed, by right of discovery, a belt across the continent, extending in width from the Cape Fear, in North Carolina, to Nova Scotia.

<sup>a</sup> § 36, p. 367. This was Elizabeth's VIRGINIA.<sup>a</sup> It was divided into

North and South Virginia. The northern portion was granted to an association of West England men, called the Plymouth Company, and the southern portion was granted to residents chiefly of London, and was called the London Company. The latter sent out a company of emigrants near the close of 1606. They sailed up the Powhatan River in April, 1607, and on its banks began the construction of a village. This was called Jamestown, in honor of the king, and the noble stream was called the James River. There, after great trials, a permanent settlement was made and the Virginia colony was established.

§ 12. Archbishop Whitgift died very shortly after the Hampton Court conference, and was succeeded by Bancroft, Bishop of London, who followed his predecessor's policy of restraining the Puritans. Bancroft was succeeded in 1610 by Abbot, a man who favored them, and at the same time rendered the church unpopular by his harsh dealing with causes in the High Commission

Court.<sup>b</sup> In 1621, Abbot had the misfortune to kill a man by accident whilst hunting, and though the king

readily pardoned him, declaring that "an angel might have miscarried in such sort," he was in reality suspended from office, as William Laud and other clergymen (of whom we shall hear more

The Dutch exasperated.

The British Flag dishonored.

in the next reign), who hated him because he was tolerant to the Puritans, absolutely refused to receive consecration from "hands soiled with blood."

§ 13. James had always, whilst King only of Scotland, refused to quarrel with Spain, and one of his earliest cares was to establish a peace between that country and England. He had no liking for the Dutch, considering successful republicans "an ill example for a monarch to cherish," and when they declined to lay down their arms at his desire he made peace without them. They complained loudly and justly of being deserted, and were henceforward his bitter enemies. The English sailors who served with them were recalled. Finding little employment at home, many of them became pirates, and joining with Moors and Algerines, they did great damage along the English and Irish coasts.

§ 14. The Dutch made a peace with the Spaniards in 1609, and then at once commenced a privateering warfare with England. They endeavored to deprive the English alike of the East India trade and of the northern whale fishery, never scrupling to use force whenever they found themselves the strongest. At the same time they themselves fished on the English coasts without license, and terribly offended the old sea-captains of Elizabeth's reign by refusing to salute the king's ships when met with in the narrow seas. This "honor of the flag," as it was termed, had been the constant usage of all foreign nations for at least 300 years, and James became unpopular for not at once making it a cause of war. He, however, bore for his motto "*Beati pacifici*" (Blessed are the peacemakers), and until near the close of his reign his only wars were with the House of Commons, which were angry enough in words, but of which the full significance only appeared in the time of his successor.

§ 15. The first of these quarrels occurred in the year 1610, and it arose on a question of money. The king made his eldest son, Henry, a knight,<sup>1</sup> and, in accordance with the old feudal custom, he claimed a sum of money, termed an aid,<sup>a</sup> from his subjects to pay the expense of the ceremony. The sum was only a little over £20,000; but feudal ideas had now lost

<sup>a</sup> § 8, p. 97.

<sup>1</sup> The king, from the moment when he received the news of his accession to the English crown, seemed to have an almost insane passion for creating knights. He made large numbers of them while on his way to London to receive the crown, without much regard to their previous condition.



Cæsarism advocated.

The King Defied.

His Divine Right to rule.

their force, and it was very unwillingly paid. To make matters worse, one Dr. Cowell just about this time published a book called "The Interpreter," in which he claimed absolute power for the king, and when the Commons complained of this, James told them that it was seditious to inquire what a king might do by virtue of his prerogative, though in law his actions were limited. The Commons were not satisfied with this, and James could only prevent their prosecuting the doctor by dissolving them. Three years elapsed before they again met; and then they soon incurred the royal displeasure by refusing to grant the king supplies of money to support his extravagance, and were dismissed [July 16, 1614] without having passed a single act, from which circumstance they were termed the Addled Parliament. But they had set the good example of refusing to grant supplies before a long list of grievances was considered. They had openly questioned many branches of the royal prerogative that had never been assailed before, and they had threatened to impeach Williams, Bishop of Lincoln, who charged them with disloyalty.

§ 16. The king, thus left without money, resorted to a "benevolence,"<sup>a</sup> but this was only a temporary relief. Oliver

<sup>a</sup> § 18, p. 272.

St. John, a Wiltshire gentleman, not merely refused to contribute, but addressed a letter to the Mayor of Marlborough, in which he maintained that such a mode of raising money was contrary alike to law, reason, and religion. He was sent to the

Tower, fined £5,000 by the Star-chamber<sup>b</sup> for "reflecting on the king's proceedings," and ordered to

<sup>b</sup> § 5, p. 296.

be imprisoned for life, but was soon set at liberty. The Puritans, however, were not daunted by this severity. They very generally declined to pay, and taking their tone from Peachum, one of their ministers, they declared, "Silver and gold have we none, but we will pray for the king."

§ 17. But though the topic of the divine right of kings to rule<sup>c</sup>

was so distasteful to the parliament, where the republican ideas of the early Puritans had an influence as

<sup>c</sup> § 6, p. 380.

yet unavowed, both writers and preachers maintained it, and James was not backward in supporting his champions. One of these was Dr. Montagu, afterwards Bishop of Chichester (a supple instrument of the king on all occasions), who, when charged by the Commons, in 1624, with publishing false doctrine, appealed for protection to the king, in a work whose very title "Appello

James and his Scotch Friends.

Fate of Arabella Stuart.

Cæsarem," bitterly offended the Puritans, as reviving the doctrine which Dr. Cowell had published many years before.<sup>a</sup> James took the same course now as then, of stopping all proceedings by dismissing the parliament.

<sup>a</sup> § 15, p. 393.

§ 18. James, when in Scotland, was always surrounded by crafty favorites, who easily prevailed over his naturally indolent temper, which made him but too ready to be relieved of all the cares and labors of government, though no one had higher ideas of the power and dignity of a king than he had.<sup>1</sup> These people followed him into England in such crowds, and were so lavishly rewarded with offices and honors as to give deep offence to his English subjects, one of whom announced his discovery of a new "Art of Memory," as necessary for the remembering of the titles of the Scotchmen suddenly grown rich and great. Among these was Robert Carr, the younger son of a Scottish border family that had suffered in the cause of Queen Mary, and on him James heaped every office and honor, eventually creating him Earl of Somerset; but in a few years he was convicted of murder, and died in poverty. Carr was succeeded in the king's regard by an English favorite, George Villiers, for whom James displayed as much fondness as for his own son. Strangely enough, Villiers, who was soon created Duke of Buckingham, was equally a favorite with Prince Charles, and, by his bad example and advice, greatly conduced to his ruin.

<sup>b</sup> § 20, p. 361.

§ 19. Raleigh's conspiracy,<sup>c</sup> as we have seen, had been intended to place on the throne Arabella Stuart; but as she was believed not to have been cognizant of the plot, she retained the king's favor, though, as a measure of precaution, it was resolved to prevent her marriage, lest her husband should urge her claims to the crown, which some lawyers considered better than James's. Several foreign suitors were thus dismissed; but in 1611

<sup>c</sup> § 4, p. 389.

<sup>1</sup> In a discourse before both Houses of Parliament, in 1610, James blasphemously compared kingship with Deityship. He told them that kings were justly called gods, for they exercise a resemblance of Divine power on earth. He said God could make or unmake at his pleasure, and like power was given to kings, whose subjects had no higher duty to perform than absolute obedience to the sovereign's will; and that to the king, as to God, were due the affections of the soul and services of the body, and subjects had no right to question the judgment or the will of the monarch. These pretensions were made more ridiculous by the personal deformity and filthiness of James, and the meanness and unmanliness of his character as a shameless liar, a false friend, and addicted to contemptible habits and associations.



The Elector Palatine. War with Spain. Raleigh beheaded. Parliament.

the unhappy woman clandestinely united herself to William Seymour, Lord Beauchamp, and endeavored to escape with him to the Continent. She was captured and confined in the Tower, where she died a lunatic, in September, 1615, a victim to the jealous fears of the infamous king.

§ 20. In November, 1612, Henry, the king's eldest son, died, and soon afterward [A.D. 1613] his daughter Elizabeth was married to Frederick the Fifth, the Elector Palatine, a German prince of small influence or capacity, but whose proceedings had important results for England. In 1618 the Protestants of Bohemia offered the Elector their crown, which he accepted. The result was that he soon lost it, and even his paternal States; and James found himself, sorely against his will, forced to declare war with Spain [A.D. 1624], a power whose friendship he valued above all things, and to preserve which he had, some years before, committed a cruel act that must always bear heavily on his memory.

§ 21. This was the execution of Sir Walter Raleigh,<sup>a</sup> who, after more than twelve years' imprisonment in the Tower, had been set at liberty, and proceeded to Guiana, in South America, where he professed he had discovered a gold mine many years before. He did not reach the mine, but he came into conflict with the Spaniards, lost his son and many of his associates, and on his return to England was executed on his sentence passed in the year 1603.<sup>b</sup> Raleigh was a proud, bad man, but he was universally considered as sacrificed to the king's wish to procure a Spanish princess as the wife of his son Charles, now Prince of Wales; and as the people in general would have preferred any other alliance to this, he was regarded as almost a martyr.

§ 22. The king's evident leaning to the kings of France and Spain, and his coolness to the foreign Protestants, gave great offence to the parliament, and they showed their displeasure by refusing supplies, at the same time [A.D. 1621] that they urged him to plunge into war in support of the Elector Palatine.<sup>c</sup> James censured their proceedings as the work of "fiery, popular, and turbulent spirits," to which they replied by inserting in their journals a declaration that they had the right of discussing all subjects, in such order as they might think proper, and asserting that they were not responsible to him for their conduct. The king sent for the book, tore out the obnoxious entry

<sup>a</sup> § 36, p. 367.

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 389.

<sup>c</sup> § 20, p. 396.

Legislators banished.

Affairs in Ireland.

New Order of Knighthood.

with his own hand, and suspended their sittings. The parliament was dissolved soon afterward, when Sir Edward Coke (an eminent lawyer and violent and unprincipled man) and Pym, a distinguished orator, were imprisoned. Several other obnoxious members were in reality banished, being obliged to repair to Ireland against their will, under pretence of the king's service, which demanded an inquiry on the spot as to a plan for the pacification of that country that had lately been introduced.

§ 23. The number of English settlers in Ireland had never been large enough to complete the conquest of the island, and plans had often been devised to remedy the defect. One, of the time of Henry the Eighth, was, to settle one family from every parish in England in the land, but this was never attempted. Henry had contented himself with taking the style of king instead of lord,<sup>a</sup> and he prevailed on several of the Irish chieftains to assume English titles; but this had no effect, and the land continued "so Irish, and so poor," all through the time of the Tudors. At length, when James came to the throne, the Lord Deputy Mountjoy, one of Elizabeth's officials, had broken the power of the natives. Soon afterward the Earls of Tyrone and Tyrconnel (descendants of Henry's peers) abandoned the hopeless struggle and fled to Spain. The greater part of the north of Ireland, called Ulster, thus became forfeited to the crown, and it was resolved to colonize it with English or Scotch Protestants in a regular manner.

§ 24. To raise funds for this political and religious propagandism, a new order of hereditary knighthood, called Baronets, was created, the 200 gentlemen who received the title paying the sum of £1,100 each for the support of thirty foot-soldiers for two years to protect the colonists. The lands were to be divided into estates of from 1,000 to 2,000 acres, suitable buildings were to be erected, and certain towns were to be built. A large tract of country was also granted to the citizens of London, which they still possess. But the conditions of the "plantation" were not honestly carried out. Some parties by fraud obtained ten times their allotted share of land. Most of them neglected the building and planting, and many of them allowed the natives to remain, taking a small rent from them, and saving the expense of the settlers that they were bound to furnish. Into these abuses the unwilling commissioners naught to inquire; but they did their work so carelessly that no good came of it.

<sup>a</sup> § 27, p. 141.



War between the King and Parliament.      Person and Character of the King.

§ 25. From this time forward the war between James and his parliaments raged without intermission. They resented his treatment of their members, and in return attacked all his favorites. The *people* now began to appear as a power in the State, and the king dared not attempt the ferocious measures of the fagot and the block, employed by his predecessors in carrying out the royal will. It had long been the custom to grant the monopoly of dealing in various articles to certain persons, who, of course, paid a sum to the crown for the privilege; this was now declared illegal, and some of the chief offenders were punished. The treasurer, Lord Middlesex, was impeached, as the chancellor, Sir Francis Bacon,<sup>1</sup> had been before him. A marriage treaty with Spain was broken off, and war was declared instead; and at last a German leader, Count Mansfeldt, was allowed to raise a body of 12,000 men for the service of the Elector Palatine. They were hastily embarked in crowded ships, and lost full half their number by sickness, whilst the rest were so enfeebled that they never could take the field. This misfortune had a great effect on the indolent, peace-loving king, whose health had been lost by indulgence in intemperate eating and drinking, and who died very shortly afterward [March 27, 1625], bitterly lamenting that he had yielded to the persuasions of evil councillors, and had gone to war in his old age.

§ 26. James, though the child of parents remarkable for personal beauty, was singularly deficient in comeliness and dignity. He turned away his eyes half in fear from a naked sword; and though a constant hunter, was so bad a rider as to provoke the ill-concealed contempt of his court. His love for idle show consumed his revenues and involved him in debt. The necessary expenses of the government were neglected altogether, soldiers and sailors remaining unpaid, and ships made useless for want of stores, whilst vast sums were wasted on shows and pageants. He was the embodiment of an egotist, and claimed to be wise and learned beyond all of his cotemporaries in church and State. He was, both in public and private, an ill-mannered, vulgar, and contemptible character. His learning is unquestionable. The present translation of the Bible owes much to his encouragement. He appears to have been sincerely desirous of promoting the union and conse-

<sup>1</sup> Bacon (Lord Verulam) was a courtier all his life. Pope long afterward described him as—

“The greatest, wisest, meanest of mankind.”

England debased by King James.

The people despise him.

quent welfare of all his kingdoms. But it was his misfortune that he was no wiser than other rulers of his time, and that he failed to see that the time had passed away for irresponsible government in England. The tyranny of the Tudors had made every one impatient of authority, and he had not their force of character to compel obedience. On the contrary, he one day irritated his parliament by his extravagant pretensions of setting his prerogative above the law, and on the next gave way to some equally extravagant claim on their part. He thus prepared a state of things that inevitably led to the ruin of his successor.

§ 27. The influence of England sank greatly in the time of James. He professed a profound knowledge of what he styled "kingcraft," but he left the actual management of affairs to his ministers and his favorites, being so devoted to cockfighting, bear-baiting, and other coarse amusements, as well as the ordinary field sports, as to say that rather than sit a day at the council-table he would go back to Scotland. All his reading and writing was devoted to establishing the fact that he ruled by divine right and was above all law; but he had not the men of Elizabeth's or Henry's time to deal with, and his learned Latin speeches had no more effect than his rude English ones in persuading the House of Commons that he was in the right. They, on the contrary, were bent on showing that they were independent, and had the resolution to act up to their profession. Hence it is no wonder that, after the first civil greeting to their new sovereign, their manner changed, and mutual distrust and aversion grew up instead.

§ 28. The persecutors of the Puritans in England caused a movement in James's reign which had a most important influence upon the future condition of the realm. Several of the Puritan ministers and their congregations fled to Holland, where there was absolute freedom of conscience. They regarded themselves as pilgrims, and in the year 1620, a company of them left Delftshaven for America, there to make a settlement in North Virginia, by permission of the Plymouth Company.<sup>a</sup> After touch-  
ing England and encountering perils at sea, a hundred men, women, and children crossed the Atlantic, landed on the coast of what is now Massachusetts, from a small vessel called the *May-flower*, and there, in the midst of December snows, planted a settlement and called it New Plymouth. This was the pioneer of those marvellous emigration movements during the next reign.

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 392.



Accession of Charles the First.

His Queen.

His Embarrassments.

## CHAPTER II.

REIGN OF CHARLES THE FIRST. [A.D. 1625 TO 1649.]

§ 1. FIFTEEN minutes after James the First expired, Prince Charles, his eldest surviving son, was proclaimed King Charles the First. On the first of May [1625], when in the twenty-fifth year of his age, he was married by proxy, at Paris, to Henrietta Maria, the sister of Louis the Thirteenth of France. George Villiers, Duke

of Buckingham, the bold and unscrupulous courtier of King James,<sup>a</sup> acted in the young king's stead.

He took the royal bride to England, where Charles met her, at Dover Castle, on the 28th of June. He had, two years before, made a journey into Spain, accompanied by his favorite Buckingham, with the view of espousing a Spanish princess, and to gain the consent of her father and the Pope he had agreed to many provisions in favor of the Romanists in England. The match was broken off, but the French king, of course, would not hear of worse terms; and accordingly the beautiful little black-eyed Henrietta<sup>1</sup> brought with her a train of priests and foreign attendants, who conducted themselves so unwisely and offensively that Charles was soon obliged to send them back, but not before they had done much mischief, and laid the foundation of more in producing public discontent.

§ 2. Few monarchs have found themselves in so embarrassing a position as Charles did on his accession. The preceding parliament had granted £300,000 for the war against Spain, a sum notoriously insufficient; but their successors absolutely refused to grant any more until they had a full account of how this sum had been spent, and had obtained the redress of many grievances.

The chief of these was Dr. Montagu's "Appello Cæsarem,"<sup>b</sup> which they were resolved should not go unpunished, so hostile was it to the supreme authority of the parliament, which it was their aim to establish. They censured its author, and held him to bail, and not content with this, they opened so long a list of businesses to precede supply, that it was

<sup>1</sup> She was very small in stature, with a light and flexible figure. Her eyes were piercing black. Her face was sweet in expression, except when she frowned. "I suppose nobody but a queen could put on such a scowl," said one of her attendants.

<sup>a</sup> § 18, p. 395.

<sup>b</sup> § 17, p. 394.

The Parliament refuses Supplies. The King makes Loans. War with Spain.

evident they meant not to grant anything. The king in vain offered to call them together again in the winter to discuss their griefs, if they would only furnish money for the fleet and army that was in preparation against Spain, and which would be delayed to a dangerous time of the year if it waited until their complaints were all discussed. Nothing would move them, and at last [Aug. 12, 1625] the king dismissed them in anger, by which he gave them a fatal advantage, as they had not even voted the "tonnage and poundage" duties, which had been, as a matter of course, granted to each king in his very first parliament, and for the term of his life, ever since the time of Edward the Third.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 205.

§ 3. The king, however, felt himself committed to the war with Spain, and he resolved to proceed. Loans of money were procured from all classes, and at last, in October, 1625, the expedition was sent out, hoping to intercept the Spanish treasure-ships and to capture Cadiz. It had been delayed to this late season of the year by the refusal of the supplies, and the Spaniards had so improved the time by fortifying Cadiz that it could effect nothing. The leader was a new-made peer, Edward Cecil, a grandson of Lord Burleigh,<sup>b</sup> who, though he had been long employed in the Dutch wars, now proved so incompetent that he received the nickname of "General *Sitstill*." The troops returned in miserable condition about Christmas, and were kept in the western counties, partly because an attack was feared from the Spaniards, but more because there was no money to pay and discharge them. The poor creatures became disorderly, the Londoners and Essex men being noted as the most violent, and to curb them, martial law was proclaimed, and some of them were executed. Others formed a large part of companies of emigrants then going to Virginia. The martial law was professedly intended to protect the country people, but when the new parliament met [Feb. 6, 1626] it was vehemently exclaimed against as only the first step to placing all men's goods and lives at the king's disposal.

<sup>b</sup> § 20, p. 361.

§ 4. The Commons at once began to complain of the conduct of the late expedition, and summoned its leaders to appear before them. The king forbade them to attend. Next they proceeded to impeach Buckingham,<sup>c</sup> charging him with great abuses in his office of Lord High Admiral to which

<sup>c</sup> § 1, p. 400.



Buckingham Impeached. The King's Usurpations. War with France and Spain.

James had elevated this special favorite, and even insinuating that he had poisoned King James. The king, taught by his father most thoroughly those doctrinal lessons about the divine right of kings, sent Sir Dudley Digges and Sir John Eliot, the managers of the impeachment, to the Tower, and said to the Commons: "I will not allow any of my servants to be questioned among you, much less such as are of eminent place, and near unto me." The House then refused to proceed with any business until their members were released, and the king gave way. Buckingham made a kind of answer to the various charges, but this did not satisfy the Commons. They petitioned the king to remove him from his councils, and on his refusal they remonstrated so loudly that they were suddenly dismissed [June 15, 1625], leaving all business in confusion, and without having granted the needful supplies for the ordinary government.

§ 5. Charles's advisers unfortunately maintained that this was a case of necessity, and that as the Commons had neglected their duty of providing for it, he was justified in raising money independently of them. He accordingly ordered the tonnage and

<sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 400.

<sup>b</sup> § 6, p. 279.

poundage duties<sup>a</sup> to be levied as if they had been formally granted, compounded with recusants for sums of money, required loans and "benevolences,"<sup>b</sup> and seized the goods of those who refused, besides imprisoning the more refractory, or sending them to serve at sea. By these means a new fleet was got together, for there was now war with France as well as with Spain, in consequence of the dismissal of the queen's attendants.<sup>c</sup> But the Earl of Denbigh, the admiral, proved either incompetent or dishonest, and suffered many English vessels to be captured. As some of these vessels belonged to members of the late parliament, the sufferers scrupled not to say that this was intentionally done.

<sup>c</sup> § 1, p. 400.

§ 6. At this time [A.D. 1627], Cardinal Richelieu, who really governed France, laid siege to La Rochelle, the stronghold of the French Protestants. Their case greatly interested the Puritan party, and at their desire a fleet was despatched to their relief. The inhabitants of La Rochelle, however, distrusted its commander, Buckingham, and refused to admit him into the town. He therefore landed on the adjacent Isle of Rhé, and besieged the citadel, but was soon obliged to retire with great loss. Rochelle held out for a while, but was at last taken, when the power of the

The Autocracy of the King proclaimed.

Contentions with Parliament.

Huguenots was totally broken, an event very displeasing to the Puritans, one of whom published an offensive book called "Zion's Plea against the Prelates," which he described on the title-page as "printed in the year and month wherein Rochelle was lost."

§ 7. The failure of Buckingham's expedition, into the cause of which no inquiry was permitted by the favorite, caused a great clamor; but this was as nothing to what followed shortly after, when five of the gentlemen who had been imprisoned for refusing loans<sup>a</sup> applied to the courts for release. The judges deliberately affirmed that a special mandate from the king was a sufficient reason for their detention. This was an open denial of one of the most important provisions of Magna Charta, that "no penalty shall be laid on any man, but by the judgment of his peers and according to law,"<sup>b</sup> and was resented as a declaration that the liberty and the property of the subject were absolutely dependent on the royal will. Such a doctrine had been held by some of the court preachers, and had been censured in parliament; and it caused very great alarm and indignation to find it upheld by the judges of the land.

§ 8. These feelings were at their height when the third parliament of a reign of only three years assembled [A.D. 1628]. Among its members were several gentlemen who had suffered for refusing the forced loan, and no time was lost in passing votes affirming the illegality of imprisonment without cause fully shown, and of taxes levied without the authority of parliament. To prevent such proceedings in future, they drew up a Petition of Rights, affirming their illegality, which the king long declined to agree to, desiring them instead to trust to his royal word that he would in future observe the laws, and confessing that Magna Charta and the statutes confirming it were still in force. After causing reasonable doubts of his sincerity by his objections and delays, Charles gave way, and the petition became law.

§ 9. The Commons followed up their victory by praying for the removal of Buckingham, and accusing the bishops of popery. The king now openly defied them, by ordering all proceedings against Buckingham to cease, "being," he said, "persuaded of his innocency." He also granted special marks of favor to some of his chaplains who had preached loudly in favor of his prerogative. Among these was Montagu, who was made Bishop of Chichester, and Mainwaring, Dean of Worcester, and afterwards Bishop of St.



Murder of Buckingham.      Oliver Cromwell.      Violence in Parliament.

David's. The king declared he could not and would not go without tonnage and poundage, though they still neglected to grant it to him; and to silence their remonstrances he adjourned them very soon afterward. In the course of the same summer [1628] Buckingham was murdered by John Felton, a gentleman of birth and education, who, though he had some private grievance, stated that he would never have killed the duke but for the complaints of the Commons against him; and henceforth the king looked on them with increased suspicion and aversion, for he felt that in losing Buckingham he had parted with the right arm of his power.

§ 10. In the following year [A.D. 1629] the parliament again met, but they were allowed to sit only a short time, as they pursued the same course as before. They absolutely refused to grant supplies until they had discussed their grievances in religion, which ranged from favor shown to Romish recusants to the late promotions of court chaplains; and one member, Oliver Cromwell, then obscure, though afterwards well known, declaimed loudly against Neile, Bishop of Winchester, as an encourager of popery. Cromwell was the son of Robert Cromwell, of Huntingdon, and was born there, April 25, 1599. At the age of seventeen he was sent to the University of Cambridge, but did not long remain there. He married early, and settled at Huntingdon, where, for a while, he carried on the business of a brewer; but on receiving a handsome legacy from an uncle, he quitted his trade, and became the lessee of some church lands. He was of the straitest sect of the Puri-

tans, and would have gone to New England,<sup>a</sup> as the country east of the Hudson River was called, with his kinsman Hampden, and their families, had they not been prevented. On this, his first appearance in parliament, he provoked remark by the plainness of his dress, and the inelegance of his manners. From the time that the civil war broke out, his history is part of the history of the country, as will be seen hereafter.

§ 11. At last the difficulties between the king and parliament were brought to a crisis. Sir John Finch, the speaker, refused to put the question, that the seizing of goods for tonnage and poundage was a breach of privilege; and he was, in effect, deposed from his office. When the question was again raised he stated that he had orders to adjourn the house; upon which the door was locked, the keys were brought up and laid before him on

<sup>a</sup> § 28, p. 399.

Parliament dispensed with.

The King's mistakes.

the table, and he was forcibly held in the chair by Sir John Eliot<sup>a</sup> and others, whilst a resolution was read declaring all innovators in religion, and all who either levied or<sup>a</sup> § 4, p. 401. paid tonnage and poundage not granted by parliament, to be enemies to the kingdom.

§ 12. In a week after this violent scene the king dissolved the parliament; and in his speech in the House of Lords he said that this was owing to "the seditious carriage of some vipers, members of the lower house." He followed this up by a declaration justifying his proceedings, and a proclamation which was understood to imply that he would govern without parliaments for the future. This, according to the principles of divine right that Charles had imbibed from his father,<sup>b</sup> was natural enough. He<sup>b</sup> § 18, p. 395. considered himself as the source of power, and responsible to God only for his actions, and he regarded parliaments as they had been regarded three hundred years before, merely as means to raise money. Hence, if they failed in this function, and still more if they aspired to a voice in the direction of affairs, they were to be laid aside, and "other councils" substituted. He saw nothing of the momentous change that the past three hundred years had produced, whereby wealthy burgesses and country gentlemen, representing the people, had now become that great council of the nation which the peers had once been, and that they were far more than a match for the new nobles who had sprung up under the Tudors, and had no other property than the spoils of the church.<sup>c</sup> In a fatal hour he tried to carry out his<sup>c</sup> § 35, p. 322. principles, and for a while he succeeded. But in the end it appeared that he and his "other councillors" had made a fatal mistake, and that the parliament were more able to govern without him than he without a parliament. For a while, however, the new policy seemed to succeed, and England remained at peace while the rest of Europe was convulsed by war between the Roman Catholic and Protestant States.

§ 13. On the dissolution of the last parliament, several of its more prominent members were imprisoned on a charge of conspiring to sow discord between the king and his people, and others were gained over by titles and offices. The most eminent of the latter was a Yorkshire gentleman, Sir Thomas Wentworth, a man of great resolution and enterprise, who was soon made a peer, then President of the Council of the North, and afterwards



Wentworth and Laud.

Oppression by the Church and State.

Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland. In both posts he carried out what he termed a "thorough" policy—that is to say, made law and justice give place to whatever might forward the king's service for the time being. He thus became very unpopular, and Pym,<sup>a</sup> once his fellow-representative in parliament, said to him, "You have left us, but we will not leave you whilst you have a head on your shoulders." Although many years elapsed first, Pym kept his word.

§ 14. Quite as active a spirit as Wentworth's was found in William Laud, now bishop of London, who set himself to work with more zeal than discretion to find a remedy for the hostility of the Puritans to the hierarchy. He so misunderstood the spirit of the time that he thought to serve the church and the king alike by taking an active part in the business of the State, and inducing other bishops to do the same. He was one who had declined

to receive consecration from Abbot.<sup>b</sup> That austere prelate being now again in disgrace at court, through refusing to license a "high-prerogative sermon,"<sup>1</sup> Laud was in reality at the head of the church, and he took such a prominent part at the council-table also, that all the oppressive measures passed there were popularly ascribed to him, though unjustly in some instances, as records remain to show. When he became Archbishop of Canterbury, and so the Primate of England [A.D. 1633], he dealt with a high hand with the nonconformists of all classes, and thus earned such extreme hatred from them that he was accused of every imaginable delinquency, and was styled "the Pope of Canterbury" or "the servant of the devil" when he escaped worse appellations.

§ 15. Laud's hatred of the Puritans was intense and sincere, and he employed all his power in Church and State in the hopeless task of reducing them to conformity. He introduced many peculiarities of the ritual of the Roman Catholic Church, especially in the communion service, into his own cathedral, and tried to force this ritualism upon others. He was an execrable inquisitor, and was ready to punish anything repugnant to his ideas of order in public worship; and men like Bishop Williams,

<sup>1</sup> Such was the name given to the discourses of Dr. Sibthorp, Dr. Mainwaring, and others, who maintained that the authority of the parliament was not necessary for the raising of taxes, and that the slow deliberations of such assemblies were a hindrance to the designs of princes.

Laud and the Puritans.

Struggles for Power.

Dutch Privateers.

of Lincoln, were sent to the Tower because they opposed him. He tried to reduce the descendants of the foreign settlers<sup>a</sup> to conformity, with the plea that by non-conformity they dishonored the church, and by their proximity to the sea-coast held dangerous communications with foreigners. He declared that no State could with safety allow such a condition of things. As far as he dared he persecuted the non-conformists, and earned for himself and a few prelates like Montague<sup>b</sup> an unenviable fame as an enemy to civil and religious liberty.

<sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 331.<sup>b</sup> § 17, p. 394.

§ 16. For several years from the accession of Laud to the primacy, the most prominent feature in English history presents the struggle for power between the crown and the people. Charles vehemently asserted the royal prerogative, based upon divine right, and claimed absolute sovereignty, while parliament as vehemently asserted the supremacy of the people. The consequence was that the king endeavored for a long time to act without a parliament; and for the purpose of raising money he made a forced loan of what was called "ship-money," and revived a custom of Henry the Eighth, which allows a subject to pay for the privilege of declining the honor of knighthood. This scheme for extortion was cunningly devised. All persons with an income of £40 a year from land were bound to present themselves for knighthood, and when so honored they had to pay a tax of thirty shillings for every twenty shillings paid by the untitled gentry. The subject was allowed to pay a certain sum to avoid the honor and the burdensome tax. In 1631, Oliver Cromwell<sup>c</sup> paid £10 as such commutation-fee; and that year the king so raised £130,000, by which the public revenue was diminished.

<sup>c</sup> § 10, p. 404.

§ 17. It has been mentioned already how the Dutch privateers conducted themselves. They and the Puritan party had much in common as lovers of liberty; and as the design of the ship-money was to raise a fleet that should be chiefly employed to curb the Hollanders, the Puritans threw every possible obstacle in the way. The government, however, assuming that both the honor and the safety of England were concerned, made this, "the king's great business," their chief concern.

§ 18. Noy, the attorney-general, once a vehement parliament-man, but now a courtier, drew up the writ according to ancient precedents, which required the various ports of the kingdom to



Ship-money fleet.

Taxation resisted.

Doings of the British fleet.

raise about £100,000 for the fitting out of a fleet; but lest this should prove too burdensome, the maritime counties were soon after directed to assist them. This sum was levied in the year 1634 without any particular opposition, and the building of several noble ships was commenced with it. One of them, arrogantly called "the Sovereign of the Seas," was long after known as the finest "ship-royal" in the world.

§ 19. The sum that the ship-money would yield, if confined to the coasts, was soon seen to be insufficient, and accordingly in August, 1635, a new writ was issued, extending the tax to the whole country, on the ground that it was for a matter of national concern. This it was thought would produce about £220,000, with which forty-five ships, fully manned, equipped, and stored for six months, could be provided; and they were directed to be ready for sea in Portsmouth Harbor on the 1st of May, 1636. The Dutch, who had of late been especially active on the English coasts, capturing Spanish vessels in English harbors, and even landing and marching inland in pursuit of their crews, now bestirred themselves to some purpose, and found instruments ready to their hands in the disaffected Puritans all over the country. The levying of the tax in the inland shires was violently opposed where attempted; but in many cases, from the connivance of the sheriffs, it was not attempted at all. If goods or cattle were seized for payment they found no purchasers, and sometimes they were recovered by their owners by actual violence. Sir John Stanhope, a gentleman of Elvaston, in Derbyshire, acted thus, and his example soon found imitators. Yet in spite of these difficulties, and though it cost far more than the tax produced, the fleet was got together, and in the summer of 1636 it cruised about under the command of the Earl of Northumberland, and re-established the king's supremacy in the narrow seas. The great ships overawed the Dutch, whilst ten nimble pinnaces, called "Lions' Whelps," hunted down the privateers. At the same time a fleet of seven vessels was sent to Barbary, and released many English captives who were in slavery there.<sup>1</sup>

§ 20. These results were most satisfactory; but still it seemed advisable to support the acts of the government by a legal deci-

<sup>1</sup> Some idea may be formed of how numerous these captives were from the fact that there exists in the Public Record Office a petition to King Charles, early in his reign, from 2,000 women, who describe themselves as the wives of English captives at Sallee.

The King's Prerogative upheld.

The Courts instruments of oppression.

sion, and accordingly in February, 1637, the judges were called on for their opinion on the questions: (1), "When the kingdom is in danger may not the king call on his subjects for ships, or money to supply them?" and (2), "Is not the king the sole judge of the necessity?" The judges, who were dependants of the king, of course answered in the affirmative; but this did not settle the matter. On the contrary, it was more vehemently opposed than ever.

§ 21. One eminent member of the Puritan party was John Hampden, a Buckinghamshire squire, and the cousin of Oliver Cromwell. He had, some time before this, been cited in the ecclesiastical court for holding a train-band muster in Beaconsfield churchyard on a Sunday, and also for absenting himself from his own parish church, which stood within a few yards of his house. He thought it advisable to make the required submission, and on promising "willing obedience for the future" he was dismissed. He, however, considered himself aggrieved in being thus obliged to obey such tyrannical laws, and when the sum of thirty shillings was demanded from him as ship-money, he refused to pay it. The cause was argued before the whole twelve judges, and judgment was of course given for the crown. From this time forward no considerable opposition was made to the levy of the tax; but it was afterwards voted illegal by the Long Parliament, and the judges and others who had sanctioned it were most rigorously dealt with.

§ 22. Less defensible than the fining for knighthood<sup>a</sup> or the ship-money were the revival, for money, of monopolies that had been abolished as oppressive, and the proceedings of the Star-chamber,<sup>b</sup> the High Commission,<sup>c</sup> the Forest courts, and the Court of the Earl Marshal.

<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 407.

<sup>b</sup> § 5, p. 296.

<sup>c</sup> § 6, p. 354.

Not one of these courts had any settled rules of procedure; hence, even where their conduct was equitable it could often be represented as not legal, and the jealousy of the judges of the law courts inclined them to listen favorably to every complainant, and to interfere in his favor on the merest pretext. The Earl Marshal's court took cognizance of any slighting speech against the nobility, and, to give one instance alone, punished a London citizen for calling a peer's servant's badge a goose instead of a swan. The Forest courts made inquiry as to encroachments on the royal forests, and extorted large sums as a composition for offences that had been committed, if committed at all, hundreds of years before.



Proceedings of some Courts.

The King and Archbishop in Scotland.

The jurors were the king's servants, and as men were threatened with the rigor of the Star-chamber if they "cast a slight upon royalty" by disputing any of its obsolete claims, no one had confidence in them.

§ 23. The courts of Star-chamber and High Commission, and the king's council, were mainly composed of the same persons, though assembling under different names and in different numbers, as suited their convenience from time to time, and hence any appeal from the sentence of one to the other was a mere delusion. The proceedings of these tribunals, though to us, in a better state of society, they appear terribly harsh, were yet in reality much less unmerciful than they had been in the time of the Tudors. To offences which Henry or Elizabeth had punished with death, they awarded the pillory, branding, and imprisonment; and this comparative leniency was certainly not earned by any want of offence given. For example, Prynne, a lawyer, published a book in which he applied the most scandalous epithets possible to the queen; Leighton, a Scotchman, described her as "a Canaanite and an idolatress," and plainly recommended the assassination of the bishops; whilst Burton, once a royal chaplain, and Bastwick, a physician, assailed them in terms that it might be thought no educated men would use under any circumstances. The records of the court remain to show that Archbishop Laud frequently voted for more moderate sentences than were passed, and in Burton's case, in particular, he declined to vote at all, saying that the matter touched him too closely for him to be an impartial judge. But he was already so hated by the Puritans that they chose to ascribe every severity to him, and said that "the arch-wolf of Canterbury ever had his hand in persecuting the saints and shedding the blood of the martyrs."

§ 24. King James had paid a visit to Scotland in 1617, and had replaced the bishops. Laud, then one of his chaplains, accompanied him, and took an active part in the business. Now that he was at the head of the English Church he wished to complete the work, and what seemed a suitable opportunity soon offered. The Scots had begun to murmur that King Charles had never visited them, saying that they saw how he despised their poor country; and so loud grew their complaints, that they were suspected to be fomented by the Marquis (afterward Duke) of Hamilton,\* who was of the blood royal, and was

\* § 52, p. 424.

Attempt to restore Episcopacy in Scotland opposed.

Strafford and Laud.

thought to aspire to the crown. To check this design, Charles repaired to Scotland in 1633, and was so cordially received that nothing he could desire seemed likely to be rejected. Laud therefore proposed that the Scottish episcopate and liturgy should be restored and the English liturgy introduced, and Charles consented.

§ 25. But the national as well as the religious feeling of the Scots rose against this, for Laud proceeded with a high hand. Tumults ensued. The crafty Richelieu, of the French court,<sup>a</sup> revenged himself for the aid given years before to the

<sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 402.

Huguenots by supplying money and arms, and in a short time all Scotland appeared banded against the enemies of freedom in Church and State in a covenant, which bound all subscribers to "resist all persons whatsoever" who should attempt to introduce any of these English innovations. The king tried to pacify them by abandoning both bishops and liturgy; but his concessions came, as they always did, too late. The Scots elected a General Assembly on their own authority, deposed the bishops in a body, and prepared for war by seizing the royal fortresses and stores; at the same time they entered into open negotiations with the King of France, invited Scottish officers and soldiers to repair to them from the German wars, and secured the favor of the Puritan party by declaring that they had no ill-will to the English people, and had only taken up arms to resist the introduction of popery.

§ 26. Puritanism, from the very first, had its political as well as its religious aspect, and Laud was the determined foe of both. Strict in enforcing obedience, he was quite as ready to render it where he acknowledged it to be due. He openly avowed himself a believer in the divine right of kings, and quite willing to accept all its consequences of absolute lordship over the person and property of the subject. Such a belief was more odious to the Puritans, who were republicans at heart, than even his adherence to the rituals of the Roman Catholic Church. He and Strafford, the king's chief adviser, were such intimate friends, that whatever one did the other was equally responsible for, and are equally blamed. Hitherto they had carried all before them, and they were now apparently firmly established in power, though in reality a terrible reverse was close at hand.

§ 27. Early in the year 1639 a fleet and army was despatched against the Scots, and the king proceeded as far as York, as if to take command. Instead of fighting, an agreement was come to



The King and the Scotch. A new Parliament called. Its Character and Doings.

by which the Scots promised to lay down their arms. But this they did not do. On their own authority a new Scottish parliament and assembly met, which proceeded rigorously against all who declined to join them, and refused to disperse when dissolved by the royal commissioner. To bring them to submission the king raised a new army; but his funds were exhausted before it was properly equipped, and he found himself obliged at last, after eleven years of despotic rule, to call a parliament. This met on the 13th of April, 1640; but, following the example of their predecessors, they insisted on discussing their grievances before granting supplies, and after a sitting of only three weeks they were dissolved. The nobility, however, lent the king the sum of £300,000, when the army was equipped and set out. By this time, however, it had become disaffected, and it suffered itself to be shamefully defeated by the Scots at Newburn, when, in spite of the efforts of Strafford, who had taken the command, it retired to the borders of Yorkshire, leaving all the north of England open to the invaders. The Scots, who professed unbounded devotion to the king, as well as sincere love for the English nation, readily agreed to a cessation of arms on condition of being amply provided for, and were allowed to send commissioners to London to discuss all their grievances. The king now summoned the peers to meet him at York, and acquainted them with his intention to call another parliament; and accordingly the memorable Long Parliament met at Westminster on the 3d of November, 1640.

§ 28. In this assembly everything was directed by a small knot of active, daring men, such as Pym, Hampden, Cromwell, and Vane, who soon came to be known as "Root and Branch," and whose settled design it evidently was to overthrow both Church and State. One of their earliest steps was to pass resolutions censuring the levying of ship-money, tonnage and poundage, monopolies, innovations in religion, indeed every act of the government for the last dozen years, so that every person of property found himself liable to be called before the House for something that he had done or had not done. Awed by this, too many of the rest sought safety by applauding every step that was taken, whether right or wrong. And the same course was followed by the peers, who, with the exception of some faint resistance to a few particular measures, where they always gave way at

Tyranny of Parliament.

Strafford impeached.

last, seemed to be quite content to act as "their masters of the House of Commons" would have them.

§ 29. The first care of the House was to appoint a number of committees to receive complaints of all "grievances and exorbitances in Church or State." These complaints poured in from all quarters, and in dealing with them the Commons at once assumed sovereign power, setting aside sentences of courts, releasing prisoners, and ordering their judges to make them compensation; whilst every one who was complained of to them found that he had to appear before a tribunal as thoroughly inquisitorial as the Star-chamber or High Commission. Prynne, Burton, and Bastwick were set at liberty, and brought in triumph to London; Puritan ministers who had been deprived for contumacious conduct were sought for where they did not come forward voluntarily; and, to provide them again with pulpits, clergymen whose chief offence was that they had obeyed the laws revived by the king for raising money or enforcing conformity in matters of religion, were denounced as "scandalous," and driven from house and home, and often imprisoned also, on the vague charge of "malignancy," or dislike of the proceedings of their new masters. This, however, was but the beginning of the troubles that they were to endure.

§ 30. Whilst John White, a lawyer, and Sir Edward Deering, a Kentish baronet, and the nephew of a famous Puritan preacher of Queen Elizabeth's time, as chairmen of committees, eagerly listened to every charge against the clergy, the real leaders of the republicans, Pym and Hampden, were engaged in measures for the deposition of a more formidable opponent, namely, the Earl of Strafford.

§ 31. Knowing how odious he was to them, and also thinking that his remaining with the army in the north would keep the Scots in check, the Earl did not attend the parliament at its opening; but in a few days after the king commanded him to repair to London and take his seat among the peers. No sooner was this known than Pym, who had threatened him so many years before, made a most bitter speech, describing him as "the greatest promoter of tyranny that any age had produced," when it was resolved to impeach him of treason, and to require the Lords to commit him to custody until the Commons had time to frame their charges against him. Pym carried up the request. It was at once granted, and Strafford's fate was sealed.



Laud and Strafford in Prison. Action of the Commons. Strafford beheaded.

§ 32. Shortly after this, Archbishop Laud, Strafford's zealous coadjutor, was complained of as "the great incendiary," and in like manner was sent to the Tower. Alarmed at these steps, Sir John Finch, the lord keeper, once the Speaker of the House of Commons,<sup>a</sup> and Windebank, the secretary, fled for their lives. Next the charges against Strafford, twenty-eight in number, were presented to the Lords, and he was brought to trial. The investigation lasted many days, for the Earl defended himself with spirit, and the peers hesitated to convict him, as they could not agree to Pym's argument, that any number of misdemeanors could mount up to treason. The Commons solved the difficulty by passing a bill of attainder, just as a Tudor parliament might have done,<sup>1</sup> and the Lords gave way. About sixty of the Commons voted against this tyrannical measure, when their names were posted up in the streets as "Straffordians, who to save a traitor would betray their country," by which their lives were endangered.

§ 33. The only hope remaining for the Earl was that the king would refuse his assent to the bill; but this he had not the courage to do. Williams, the Bishop of Lincoln, who had been in disgrace in the time of Laud,<sup>b</sup> and was a Puritan in heart, as he afterwards showed by joining the Parliament, was now applied to for his advice, and he suggested to the king that though "as a man Charles Stuart could not desert his faithful servant with a clear conscience, he might do so as a king." The monarch acted accordingly, and signed the bill, as he did another at the same time, that afterwards proved as fatal to himself. This was a bill that rendered the Parliament incapable of dissolution except by its own consent. Strafford, when told of his fate, might well have exclaimed, with the experience of all past English history before, "Put not your trust in princes, for in them is no salvation." This desertion of his friend and faithful servant was so mean and ungenerous that Charles had but few real friends among honorable men thereafter. His minister was beheaded on Tower Hill on the 12th of May, 1641; and from this time for-

<sup>1</sup> Like Henry's parliaments, they made a law for the purpose, as is shown by the following entry on their Journals: "April 19, 1641. Resolved upon question, That the endeavor of Thomas Earl of Strafford to subvert the ancient fundamental laws of the realms of England and Ireland, and to introduce an arbitrary tyrannical government against law, is high treason."

Affairs in Ireland.

Long Parliament and the King at War.

ward the reign of Charles the First was merely nominal. He had conclusively shown that he had not the power to save those who served him, and his course was one downward path till his head also rolled on the scaffold.

§ 34. The attempted colonization of the north of Ireland in the time of King James has been already alluded to,<sup>a</sup> and it has been mentioned how imperfectly it was carried out. Its result was shown, in less than thirty years after it had been commenced, by a formidable rising of the natives, headed by Roger O'More and Sir Phelim O'Neil, men of old Irish families though educated in England, and men who saw with hot indignation the insolent oppression practised on their countrymen by the adventurers who alone occupied the grants that had been made. They expected that the old English settlers would make common cause with them, all being Romanists, and they had planned the surprise of Dublin and the expulsion of the new-comers for the same time, namely, October, 1641. They were exposed by Owen O'Conolly, an Irish Protestant, who learned the secret from one of the conspirators who was intoxicated, and Dublin was secured by the lords justices, who had succeeded Strafford in the government. But the insurrection broke out in the north, and was accompanied by terrible havoc, though not to the extent that the Parliamentarians afterwards represented.

§ 35. The news reached the king (who was in Scotland) and the Parliament much about the same time, and measures for the safety of the Irish Protestants were at once ordered; but little was done. The king had no means of helping them, and the parliament delayed action so long that the matter stood over until civil war broke out in England. Then they talked loudly of vengeance, which, from mere alarm, induced many Romanists who had hitherto stood aloof to join the insurgents. Others declared for the king, when their opponents asserted, with good warrant, that the rebellion had been originally planned by the royalists, in Church and State, from their hatred to the true Protestant faith.

§ 36. The "Root and Branch" men<sup>b</sup> and their adherents in both Houses formed a compact body, to which the king could only oppose divided councils, and therefore they pressed forward in their struggle for emancipation with only such occasional checks and fruitless resistance as made their ultimate triumph the more complete. They imprisoned judges and

<sup>a</sup> § 23, p. 397.

<sup>b</sup> § 28, p. 412.



Despotic measures of the King.      His Flight from London.      Prepares for War.

bishops, and compelled the king to agree to sweeping away the Star-chamber, High Commission, Stannary and Forest Courts, granting tonnage and poundage for a month at a time as the price of each concession. Thus more than a year of the Long Parliament passed away, when at last the king, finding his power rapidly waning, resolved to try vigorous measures. He made an attempt to seize Lord Kimbolton and five of the members of the Commons (Hampden, Haselrigge, Holles, Pym, and Strode), intending to have them tried for treason. In this he failed [Jan. 4, 1642], and becoming alarmed at the threatening aspect of the Londoners, among whom the members had found refuge, he, on the 10th of the same month, quitted his capital, never more to return to it till brought in a prisoner doomed to death.

§ 37. But though the king had thus withdrawn, some intercourse was kept up between him and the parliament. Each party saw that the sword alone could settle their differences, but each wished to make the other appear as the aggressor. Accordingly, whilst the parliament seized on the Tower, and Portsmouth, and Hull, and the queen proceeded abroad to buy arms and military stores by pledging or selling the crown jewels, the king desired the parliament to draw up one complete statement of their demands and grievances, which he promised to consider favorably; and they, with a profusion of thanks, agreed to do so, only requiring him, as a proof of his confidence, to put the militia into their hands. Charles had already granted as important a matter as this, but he now positively refused compliance, and prepared to take up arms. His first step was singularly unfortunate. He went in person to Hull, in March, 1642, but Sir John Hotham, the parliamentary governor, refused to admit him. The parliament then called out the London trained bands [May, 1642], under Major-General Skippon, who was originally a private soldier in Flanders; and the king summoned the gentry of York, where he then was, to form a guard for his person.

§ 38. Each party now denounced the other as traitors, and several members of the Commons, who were unwilling to follow the leaders of the House to the extremity to which matters were tending, left them and joined the royalists. The Commons then sent propositions for peace to the king; but as they demanded such concessions from him as his views of the royal prerogative would not allow him to grant, he refused to listen to them. Then the

Beginning of Civil War. ♡

Comparative strength of King and Parliament.

Houses voted that an army should be raised “for the defence of the king and parliament,” of which they appointed the Earl of Essex (the son of Elizabeth’s favorite) <sup>a</sup> captain-general.

The king, on this, declared Essex a traitor, and set <sup>a</sup> § 50, p. 374. up his royal standard at Nottingham, on the 22d of August, 1642. In three days afterward he sent propositions for peace to the parliament; but they refused to entertain them whilst his standard continued spread, when they, too, were denounced as traitors. In a few days more he offered to withdraw his proclamation if they would do the same; but they knew their superior strength and growing power, as well as the untrustworthiness of the king, and promptly replied that their arms should never be laid down until all delinquents were left to justice. Henceforth war was inevitable.

§ 39. In entering upon war, the parliament were well aware of the advantages on their side. The more intelligent people understood and applauded the principles for which they were contending. London, and almost all the wealthy towns, adhered to them, and they had thus abundant means not only to equip an army, but to secure the services of veteran officers, long experienced in the wars of the Continent, who speedily imparted the necessary discipline to their men. The king, on the other hand, had only such service as the nobility and gentry were willing to give at their own cost, and there was this heavy drawback to it, that there was great variety of motives among them; for whilst some were enthusiastic, others were only lukewarm, and had no wish to give him too decided a victory, lest he should recall his late concessions. Hence, having no great principle of action as a bond of union, they quarrelled among themselves instead of uniting, and only agreed in the fatal mistake of despising the military order and precision of their adversaries.

§ 40. Though the parliament had the towns, the spirit of loyalty was strong in some of the rural districts, particularly in Yorkshire, Wales, and Cornwall, and abundance of fighting men presented themselves, but these the king could never properly equip. His magazines had been seized even before the war broke out, and of the supplies that his queen sent from abroad <sup>b</sup> much the greater part fell into the hands of the <sup>b</sup> § 37, p. 416. enemy, who had also possessed themselves of his shipping, the sailors in general being partisans of the parliament.



Battle of Edgehill.

Negotiations fail.

The Court at Oxford.

§ 41. The king, soon after setting up his standard, marched to Shrewsbury, where, by coining his plate into money, he collected his first army. Prince Rupert of Bavaria, and nephew of Charles, had come to England with some followers to assist his uncle, and was placed at the head of a regiment of horse. He overthrew a body of the insurgent cavalry near Worcester, but was obliged

<sup>a</sup> § 38, p. 416. to withdraw on the approach of Essex.<sup>a</sup> The royal army then marched towards London, and on the 23d

of October [1642] encountered its adversaries at Edgehill, in Warwickshire. The battle was fierce, full 5,000 men being slain, of whom 3,000 were parliamentarians, but the night closed in before either party could be said to be the victor. They remained watching each other for the greater part of the next day, when the king marched off to Oxford, which was his chief post during the war, and Essex retired to Coventry<sup>1</sup> and its neighborhood, where he remained until his troops were recruited. Desiring peace, the parliament now proposed a negotiation to that end. Commissioners met, but as those of the parliament still made the same lofty demands as before, negotiations were speedily broken off, and the country was finally divided into two hostile camps. Of the lamentable war that followed, a very brief notice is all that need be attempted. The very different position of the parties to it must first be noticed.

§ 42. During the years from 1643 to 1646, the king, though he made occasional visits to Wales, the west of England, and the midland counties, had his seat of government at Oxford, which was strongly fortified, and where he held a parliament of his own in 1644. Though a very much larger number of peers attended, and the Commons were at least as numerous as those of the Long

<sup>b</sup> § 27, p. 411. Parliament,<sup>b</sup> who sat at Westminster, they could do him little service except as individuals. Here he had

<sup>c</sup> § 14, p. 167. the whole resources of the University<sup>c</sup> at his disposal, the colleges giving him their plate to be coined, and the students and

<sup>d</sup> § 14, p. 167. many of the older members serving as soldiers in his forces. The University of Cambridge,<sup>d</sup> though equally well inclined to his cause, was kept in subjection by the forces

<sup>1</sup> This was then a strong walled town, whose inhabitants in general were zealous partisans of the parliament. They had been fined in the Star-chamber for their be-

<sup>a</sup> § 23, p. 410. havior when Prynne passed through on his way to prison; <sup>a</sup> and, in common with several other towns that had taken a conspicuous part

in opposing the royal forces, their walls were demolished at the Restoration.

The Long Parliament.

Enthusiasm of the People.

Ordinances.

of the Earl of Manchester (the Lord Kimbolton of former days),<sup>a</sup> consisting of many strong regiments of horse and foot raised in the associated (or eastern) counties, which<sup>a</sup> § 36, p. 415. had long been the very hot-bed of Puritanism. The Earl himself was little inclined to push matters to extremities; but he had under his nominal command Oliver Cromwell, of Huntingdon,<sup>b</sup> and by him the University was speedily “regulated,” as it was called, its property being seized, its loyal members expelled or imprisoned, and its buildings turned into garrisons and jails; a fate that befell Oxford a few years later.

§ 43. The Long Parliament sat at Westminster, and nearly all London ranked as their partisans. The Presbyterian ministers then held marvellous control over the great mass of the people. They occupied the pulpits of churchmen, and, like their predecessors, used texts of Scripture in discourses intended to fire the hearts of the people and induce them to “go to the help of the Lord against the mighty.” In this they were successful. The women were as enthusiastic as the men. They threw their rings and other ornaments into the fund for the army, and carried earth in their aprons to the workmen on the fortifications. Hampden,<sup>c</sup> Cromwell,<sup>d</sup> and many other members raised troops and put themselves at their head, and those<sup>c</sup> § 21, p. 409. who remained in London were indefatigable in forming and carrying on an orderly but vigorous government. The Houses usually sat three days in the week, and the other three days were occupied with committees, which met at the Goldsmiths’, Haberdashers’, and other companies’ halls in the city. So soon as the king quitted London they dispensed with the custom of asking his consent to anything that they had a mind to do; and for the future, instead of Acts of Parliament, in the legal sense, they passed Ordinances in their own names only, many of which were deemed by the royalists as infinitely more illegal and oppressive than anything that the king had ever attempted.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A late English writer, whose sympathies for the royal and church party of the time are very apparent, sums up as follows their principal measures, which the exigency of the case clearly called for, in an abridgment of a portion of the “Annals of England,” prepared by himself, in which may be found the dates of the various ordinances:

“By such instruments they levied heavy weekly assessments for the support of their army and the relief of the wounded, the widows and orphans, and rates for fortifying the city of London and many other places: imposed an excise, and established courts-martial. They confiscated the estates of ‘all persons, ecclesiastical or temporal,’ who appeared in arms against them, or voluntarily contributed to the king’s service,



## Archbishop Laud beheaded.

## Professions of the Republicans.

§ 44. One of the most notable of the ordinances was that by which they put to death Archbishop Laud,<sup>a</sup> on the 10th of January, 1645. After an imprisonment of more than three years he had been brought to trial; but in spite of all the inquisitorial diligence of the lawyer, Prynne,<sup>b</sup> no real ground for condemning him could be found. He replied to every charge with a clearness and spirit wonderful in so old a man (he was seventy-two years of age), and fairly baffled his prosecutors, when they solved the difficulty, as they had before done with Strafford,<sup>c</sup> by passing a vote [November 11, 1644] declaring him a traitor; and it was with difficulty that they could be prevailed on to allow of his being beheaded, instead of being hanged like any common felon.

§ 45. Through the whole course of these proceedings the chief actors in them always professed to believe that the king was in the hands of a faction—usually, to make it the more odious, styled “the popish faction,” or the “queen’s faction”—and that they took arms as much for his preservation as their own. Hence they always declared that their armies were raised for the service of the

treated those who attempted to stand neuter as enemies, forbade quarter being given to Irishmen taken in England, and when the war was closed, ordered all ‘papists, officers, and soldiers of fortune, and other delinquents,’ to remove from London, under the pains of treason. In direct violation of the Bill of Right, they made numberless forced levies of horses and arms; gave powers to their generals to press men into their service; passed a most tyrannical ordinance to ‘repress disorders in printing;’ and after imprisoning by mere arbitrary votes any who ventured to present addresses that were distasteful, they passed a rigid law against ‘tumultuous petitioning,’ the very means by which their own power had been first established. To keep alive the interest in their cause, they imposed a contribution of a meal a week towards the support of their troops, and ordained a monthly fast, besides numerous occasional ones; they also prohibited public amusements, but were obliged by the clamor of the London apprentices to allow the second Tuesday in each month as a day of recreation, instead of the customary festivals and holidays, which had been suppressed as superstitious and vain. To show their irreconcilable hostility to the church and its ministers, and to banish all decency and order from the public service of God, they ordered a systematic defacement of churches, under the pretext of ‘removing monuments of superstition or idolatry,’ and removed ‘scandalous ministers.’ In forgetfulness of their professed regard for ‘tender consciences,’ they imposed the Covenant on all classes, beginning with the judges and lawyers, and disabling all refusers to practise any liberal profession, or hold any public employment. They substituted the Directory for the Prayer-book; forbade preaching, except by persons allowed by both Houses; set up the Presbyterian form of church government; formally abolished episcopacy; ‘regulated’ both the universities, and sold the bishops’ lands, paying their most active instruments with the proceeds, and thus making the plunder of the church directly contributory to the ruin of the State—a lesson which should not be forgotten.”

Flight of the Queen.

Battles of Marston-moor and Newbury.

“king and parliament,” professed unbounded deference and respect for him personally, and frequently invited him to leave his evil advisers, whom they were determined to bring to condign punishment,—his queen, who, in spite of many risks, had rejoined her husband<sup>a</sup> after the war broke out, being named as one of the chief. She, feeling her life in danger,<sup>a</sup> § 37, p. 416. left England soon after the battle of Marston-moor [July, 1644]; but even before this their threats had detached many men from the king’s party. One of these set the example of compounding for his “delinquency”—that is, to pay whatever fine they chose to impose. It was that Sir Edward Deering, the Puritan, who had once so distinguished himself by persecuting the clergy and proposing to do away with episcopacy.<sup>b</sup> He had become alarmed at the furious proceedings of the “Root and Branch,”<sup>c</sup> and fled from them to Oxford. His estates<sup>b</sup> § 30, p. 413. <sup>c</sup> § 28, p. 412. were then seized, and, as he was a man of little courage or principle, he soon came back again, hoping to recover them. But in this he was disappointed, and he died shortly afterward, unpitied by either party, though his young heir was favorably dealt with, to induce others to follow his example.

§ 46. In the first year of the war [A.D. 1643], success inclined to the king, and the parliament called in 20,000 Scots, under General Leslie, to their assistance, not only paying the soldiers for their services, but gratifying the rest of the nation by renouncing episcopacy and taking the covenant.<sup>d</sup> These allies, how-<sup>d</sup> § 25, p. 411. ever, did not suffice to turn the scale, as the king also found new adherents, and consequently the year 1644 was one of varied fortune to each party. Prince Rupert was defeated at Marston-moor [July 2, 1644]. On the other hand, the Earl of Montrose raised the royal standard in Scotland, and inflicted many heavy blows on the covenanters; and Essex, by some mismanagement, suffered himself to be surrounded in Cornwall; and his troops were obliged to surrender. A fresh army was now raised, under the Earl of Manchester and Sir William Waller, which fought an indecisive battle at Newbury [October 27], and then went into winter quarters.

§ 47. Great discontent and alarm now prevailed in the parliament, which Oliver Cromwell, bold and ambitious, aggravated by his course. He had always been impatient of control, and had quarrelled with his general, Manchester, whom he regarded as too slow



Cromwell's Course.

Ironsides Regiment.

Action on Cromwell's Advice.

and cautious. Cromwell had shown much courage and conduct in the field, though he had not been bred to arms, and a regiment of horse that he had raised, mainly from among the small freeholders, his neighbors, was, on account of its prowess and endurance, popularly called the Ironsides, and regarded as the choicest of the parliamentary soldiery. Cromwell conceived the idea that the war was purposely prolonged by Essex, Waller, Leslie, and other soldiers by profession, for the sake of their own gain;<sup>1</sup> and he maintained that "men earnest in the cause" could and would finish it at once. He obtained a favorable hearing, and it was determined that the army should be placed on a "new model," his Ironsides being chosen to furnish it. At the same time a number of preachers, on

a monthly fast-day, soon after the battle of Newbury,<sup>a</sup>  
<sup>a</sup> § 46, p. 421.

declaimed simultaneously against the war, saying that their ill-success was a token from God that too many of the parliament sought their own private ends, and held profitable offices instead of attending to the affairs of their country. Sir Henry Vane, a son of Charles's secretary of state, who was an acute politician, expert statesman, and a religious enthusiast, was greatly moved by these charges, and at once offered to surrender an office that he held. Cromwell appeared even more eager, and not only proposed to give up his command, but exhorted all true lovers of their country to do the same, assuring the House that there were officers in the army not of their number who were fit for any command in the world, naming as one, Sir Thomas Fairfax, who had long served the parliament in Yorkshire, and who had greatly contributed to the victory at Marston-moor.<sup>b</sup>

<sup>b</sup> § 46, p. 421. Thus they would have proper officers for their new army, and they, the representatives of the people, could give all their attention to redressing the evils of the State.

§ 48. In spite of the murmurs of the Lords (only twenty-two in number), a self-denying ordinance was passed, prohibiting any member of either house from holding any office of profit; and in consequence Essex, Waller, and others resigned their commissions. Cromwell was absent on the day that this was done, and Fairfax, when put in Essex's post of lord general, applied for leave to keep Cromwell with him for a few days, for the purpose of assisting

<sup>1</sup> Essex had an allowance from delinquents' estates of £10,000 per annum, and the pay of all ranks in their army was high. Hence many men were noted as having grown rich by the war.

Cromwell Acting Military Chief.

The King sold by the Scotch.

him to get his troops in proper order. The permission was granted, and when the Houses afterwards wished to recall it, they found the matter beyond their power. Fairfax proved to be a mere cipher, and Cromwell was his master and theirs. For it was he who had mainly gained the victory of Naseby [June 14, 1645], which in reality put an end to the war, though Montrose continued in arms, and Oxford and some other of the royal garrisons held out for more than a year longer.

§ 49. The new model of the army had had the designed effect of filling its ranks with men of the sternest Puritanism, calling themselves Independents, and to whom the Scots and the Presbyterians were almost as odious as the king and the church. Cromwell, especially, spoke slightly of the Scotch troops, and his soldiers sometimes dragged the Presbyterian preachers out of their pulpits. This might have been borne, but by his management the monthly pay of their "brethren of Scotland" was, under various pretences, purposely let fall into arrear. Alarmed at this, the Scots entered into negotiations with the king, who was still at Oxford, and he had the simplicity to repair to their quarters near Newark [May, 1646], thinking that this appeal to their honor and good feeling would procure him, as "their native prince," better terms than the English parliament would offer.

§ 50. But the king was deceived. The parliament (or rather Cromwell and his Independents) threatened to take him from them by force, on which the Scots carried him with them to Newcastle, but announced that they would be ready to deliver him up "on a consideration being paid for their losses, hazards, charges, and damage," which "consideration" they fixed at £1,000,000. The sum of £400,000, which was raised by the sale of the bishops' lands, was offered to them. This they accepted, and then marched off to their own country, leaving the unhappy king in the hands of the parliamentary commissioners. Their conduct was approved in Scotland, only fourteen members in the parliament there voting against it;<sup>1</sup> but after a time the people became sensible of the disgrace, and to wipe it off they went to war with the English in 1648.

§ 51. When the king was thus secured, the parliament made a momentary show of independence, not only by entering into nego-

<sup>1</sup> The first man to object was Alexander Strang, a shoemaker, the provost of Forfar, who, when asked for his vote, replied, "I disapprove, as an honest man should do."



Cromwell and the Parliament at War.

Levellers.

Flight of the King.

tiation with him, but by proposing to disband the greater portion of the army and send the rest to Ireland, where civil war still raged. Relying on the support of their fortifications, which were manned by the London militia under General Skippon, they assumed a lofty tone, and threatened the soldiers as “disturbers of the public peace.” But Cromwell, who was named for dismissal, thwarted all their measures. He was the real commander of the

<sup>a</sup> § 48, p. 422.

army, though, for appearance’ sake, Fairfax<sup>a</sup> was retained at its head. Cromwell’s steps were prompt

and decided. By his direction the king was seized at Holdenby House and brought to the army, which the very next day [June 5, 1647] refused to be disbanded. Then he marched upon London, where the militia abandoned the forts at his approach, and compelled the parliament to expel several obnoxious members and to recall all their offensive declarations which seemed meant to unite the royalists and the Presbyterians against the army. Finally, he installed the king at Hampton Court, offering to replace him on the throne. But the conditions that he proposed were so burdensome that Charles, instead, listened to the Scots, most erroneously thinking that whatever party he joined with must prevail. Then Cromwell boldly proclaimed his republicanism, by saying openly, “How happy the condition of this people would be if our government were on the model of that so firmly established in Holland!”

§ 52. A faction called Levellers had now arisen in the army, who, even more republican and unrelenting than the men who had begun the war, clamored for the abolition of all distinctions in the State, and openly demanded the death of the king as the cause of all the bloodshed. Alarmed at their menaces, the monarch fled from

Hampton Court to Carisbrook Castle, in the Isle of Wight,<sup>b</sup> but only to find himself still a prisoner. The

<sup>b</sup> § 9, p. 2.

governor was Colonel Hammond, the son-in-law of Hampden,<sup>c</sup>

and he was so unlikely to be favorable to the king  
<sup>c</sup> § 21, p. 409.

that it is supposed Charles was betrayed into his hands when he really meant to escape to the Continent in a ship that had been promised him. He renewed his efforts to negotiate with the parliament, but the army interfered, and, coerced by them, the Houses declared they would no more hold treaty with him, and would treat as traitors all who should attempt to do so.

§ 53. This declaration, as showing their submission to the sol-

Invasion by the Scots, and Insurrections.

Cromwell's Measures.

diery, was odious even to many of their own party, and the king procured an appeal to the people to be circulated, which had such an effect that risings in his favor took place in many parts of the country. But Cromwell was able to put them all down, as well as to defeat the Scots, who, according to their engagement with the king,<sup>a</sup> had entered the north of England. Their leader was that Duke of Hamilton who had been supposed to aspire to the throne of Scotland,<sup>b</sup> and who had throughout the war acted a very ambiguous part. Some of the king's ships, which had long served the parliament, went over to the royal side, and blockaded the river Thames; but from an idea that there was a party favorable to the king in London, they did no damage. In the mean time a formidable rising had occurred in Kent and Essex; but this also was suppressed; and to show that a government was now established against which it should be treason to take up arms, Sir George Lisle and Sir Charles Lucas, who had defended Colchester, were shot, and Lord Capel, Lord Holland, and the Duke of Hamilton were beheaded.

<sup>a</sup> § 49, p. 423.<sup>b</sup> § 24, p. 410.

§ 54. Still the work of Cromwell and his associates was not complete. Soon after the suppression of these risings the parliament, contrary to the vote they had passed, resumed negotiation with the king, and sent a committee to treat with him at Newport, in the Isle of Wight. The negotiations lasted for two months (Cromwell being absent in Scotland), and the king agreed to most of their proposals, when the council of officers accused the parliament of perfidy, and marched several regiments into London. In spite of this the parliament, after a three days' debate, voted that the king's concessions were a sufficient ground for a settlement. On the following day [December 6, 1648] the house was beset by a guard, commanded by Colonel Thomas Pride. As the members approached they were identified by Lord Gray of Groby, when forty-seven who had spoken most freely in favor of the treaty were sent to various prisons, and ninety-six more who could not be depended on were expelled. This act, relieving parliament of obnoxious members, is known in history as "Pride's Purge." The privileged members who remained were called the "rump of the parliament," and the assembly which they formed is known in history as the "Rump Parliament."

§ 55. The parliament, now reduced to about fifty persons, voted as the army would have them, that the king should be



Trial of the King.

Efforts to save his Life.

His Execution.

brought to trial as guilty of treason against his people. He had already been seized in the Isle of Wight, and carried to Hurst Castle, on the opposite coast, and after a short detention there was placed at Windsor, where he was treated with extreme rigor and indignity. On the 1st of January, 1649, the Commons resolved that a "high court of justice" should be erected to try him. The peers refused to concur, and adjourned their House, when the Commons declared that the supreme authority resided in themselves, and passed the formal ordinance for the trial.

§ 56. Before this court, held at the upper end of Westminster Hall, and which was presided over by John Bradshaw, a lawyer, and was nominally composed of 150 members, the king was brought on four separate days. Like his grandmother, Mary

Queen of Scots,<sup>a</sup> before a similar tribunal, he refused

<sup>a</sup> § 18, p. 260. to acknowledge its jurisdiction, and next demanded a conference with the parliament. This was refused. His trial was begun on the 18th of January, 1649, and ended on the 27th of the same month, when sentence of death was pronounced. Dutch ambassadors, who had been sent over to watch the momentous proceedings, generously interceded for the king's life, and presented a paper from Charles, the Prince of Wales, signed and sealed, for the heads of the army to insert their own terms for sparing his father's life. It was of no avail, and the tragedy went on. Fairfax and the Presbyterians generally had refused to join in the proceedings against the king, and the commissioners of the

Scots<sup>b</sup> protested against the English alone disposing  
<sup>b</sup> § 27, p. 411. of their prince. But Cromwell and his associates were not men to be turned from their purpose by anything but force, and having the army entirely at their command, no one could use this power against them.

§ 57. Three days were allowed to the unhappy king to prepare for death, which he passed mainly in company with Juxon, Bishop of London. He also took leave of his children, then in England;<sup>1</sup>

but he declined to see his nephew, the Elector Palatine,<sup>c</sup> who had joined the parliament against him, and also some of his most faithful adherents, his time, as he said, being too short. On the 30th of January his head was cut off

<sup>1</sup> Elizabeth and Henry, who had long been prisoners in the hands of the parliament. The princess died in confinement in 1650; but Henry was released in 1652, and joined his brothers on the Continent.

A Substitute for the Church Liturgy.

The reign of Charles the First.

before his own palace of Whitehall; and on the 8th of the following month he was buried at Windsor, the parliamentary governor being present, and denying his afflicted servants the melancholy privilege of reading the burial service of the Anglican Church over his remains. The parliament, which had quarrelled with the church on the ground that no allowance was made for "tender consciences," had, by means of their Assembly of Divines, compiled a sort of liturgy called the Directory for Public Worship, which, to the extent of their power, they imposed on every one in place of the Prayer-book; and the services of the church were forbidden to be used, even in private, under heavy penalties. But they were used, with more or less of secrecy, during all the gloomy period of the civil war; and several of the bishops braved all consequences by ordaining priests and deacons.

§ 58. Charles, thoroughly imbued with the high ideas of his father about the divine right of kings,<sup>a</sup> asserted it even on the scaffold, when addressing those present <sup>a</sup> § 18, p. 395. he assured them that the people ought never to have a share in the government, that being "a thing nothing pertaining to them," and that he "died a martyr to the people." He expired after a turbulent and most unhappy reign of twenty-four years, in the forty-ninth year of his age. His unfaithful queen, who had brought much evil upon him and his people,<sup>b</sup> was <sup>b</sup> § 1, p. 400. then enjoying the smiles of a lover (Jermyn) in Flanders, whom she married soon after the death of her unhappy husband.



## BOOK VIII.

### THE COMMONWEALTH.

[FROM A.D. 1649 TO 1660.]

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### THE REPUBLIC. [A.D. 1649 TO 1653.]

§ 1. ON the day of the death of Charles the First [January 30, 1649] the House of Commons passed an act prohibiting, under penalty of prosecution for treason, the proclamation of the Prince of Wales, or any other, to be king or chief magistrate of England or Ireland, without consent of parliament. They voted to abolish the office of a king, and the House of Lords, as “unnecessary, burdensome, and dangerous to the liberty, safety, and public interests of the people.” Also, to throw down the royal arms in every place where found, and for putting in their places an inscription in Latin, declaring the abolition of royalty, and the establishment of freedom at the date of the late king’s death. A great seal of the Commonwealth was made, bearing a map of England and Ireland on one side, and a representation of an assembled parliament on the other, around which were the words, “THE FIRST YEAR OF FREEDOM BY THE GOD’S BLESSING RESTORED, 1648.”<sup>1</sup>

§ 2. Having thus made an entire change in the outward form of the government, the law courts were opened, and an Executive Council of State was appointed, composed of forty-one members. Its president was Bradshaw,<sup>a</sup> with a salary of £2,000 a year, and several other lawyers and civilians had

<sup>a</sup> § 56, p. 426.

<sup>1</sup> It was still customary to reckon the beginning of a year, according to the old Jewish habit, on the 25th of March. James the Sixth of Scotland (James the First of England) had, in imitation of Numa Pompilius, the Roman ruler, more than six hundred years before Christ, decreed the beginning of the year to be on the first of January, but that custom was not established in England until the year 1752. Hence, in the record under consideration, January, 1649, was reckoned in the year 1648.

Cromwell Dictator. Prince of Wales proclaimed King. Civil War in Ireland.

seats; but the real head of the government was Cromwell, the great military leader, who soon came to be called "King Cromwell," so absolute appeared his power. It was he, and not his nominal masters, the parliament,\* who conquered Scotland and Ireland, forced the proud French and Spanish courts to receive ambassadors from the new government, and humbled the powerful Dutch Republic, which had once been so favorable to them. Desborough, his brother-in-law; Ireton, his son-in-law; and Lambert, a trusted confederate, though not of the council, assisted him in all his projects whilst there were armed enemies to subdue, but no longer.

§ 3. The Scotch commissioners<sup>a</sup> quitted London very soon after the formation of the new government, their intention being to proceed to Holland and offer their crown to Charles, the Prince of Wales, who, with his brother, the Duke of York, resided there, and had some ships at his disposal. They were seized at Gravesend, and sent under an escort to Scotland; but the prince was proclaimed by the Scottish parliament as Charles the Second. War was naturally expected, when Fairfax<sup>b</sup> declared that in such a case he would not take arms against his fellow Presbyterians. This declaration exactly suited Cromwell; but the state of affairs did not allow of an immediate war with Scotland. It was Ireland, where the Marquis of Ormond had proclaimed Charles, that was to be first reduced, and Fairfax was named lord-lieutenant for the purpose.

§ 4. Civil war had long been carried on in Ireland in the most barbarous manner, the parliamentarians being forbidden to give quarter to Irishmen, even if found in England in the king's service, and the natives retaliating to the extent of their power. Cromwell, with Ireton, his son-in-law, passed over in August, 1649, with 6,000 foot and 3,000 horse, stormed Drogheda and Wexford, and put every defender to the sword. He thus struck such terror everywhere that little resistance was afterwards attempted so long as he remained in the island, which was about ten months. He supposed that "this bitterness would save much effusion of blood;" but before he could complete the conquest of the country, he was called away by the news that Prince Charles had landed in Scotland, where the gallant Montrose had preceded him, only to fall a sacrifice to the hatred of the



Cromwell at the Head of the Army.

His successful Invasion of Scotland.

very men who now professed such love for royalty. Among these the Marquis of Argyle was very conspicuous.

§ 5. Fairfax was now urged to take the command of the army against the Scots, no one seeming so earnest in the matter as Cromwell. He again declined, and "my lord general," as Cromwell was called, set forward with his army to anticipate an expected invasion. He crossed the Tweed, and keeping near to the coast, for the purpose of receiving supplies from his ships, he reached the neighborhood of Edinburgh without opposition. Here he found the city strongly fortified and a considerable army gathered, but it was weak from internal dissensions. Many of the English royalists had joined the young King Charles, and as they were mostly veteran soldiers they would have been of great

<sup>a</sup> § 25, p. 411. service had not the zealous preachers who ruled the army insisted on their departure, as they had not

taken the covenant.<sup>a</sup>

§ 6. Cromwell was now in a difficult position. Bad weather prevented his ships keeping up their communication with him, sickness attacked his army, which suffered from want of provisions, and he occupied a confined spot on the sea-shore near Dunbar, whence he could neither advance nor retreat. He was saved, it would appear, only by the mad conduct of the Scottish preachers. They came into the army in crowds, and by their furious harangues, all having the same purport, "Surely the Lord hath delivered them into our hands," they excited such a spirit in

<sup>b</sup> § 46, p. 421. their disorderly levies, that their general, Leslie,<sup>b</sup> a

soldier of the German wars, was obliged, against his better judgment, to leave his strong post on the hills and march down to attack the English. Cromwell hastened to meet him, and after a sharp battle killed or captured the greater part of his army on the 3d of September, 1650. Edinburgh at once surrendered, but the castle held out till near the end of the year.

§ 7. Prince Charles was crowned King of Scotland at Scone, on the 1st of January, 1651; but he found himself exposed to so many humiliations—being obliged daily to attend long sermons where the "sins of his father and his mother," and fierce revilings of himself and his English adherents formed the only theme—that he determined to "put all upon a cast," and invade England whilst his formidable opponent, Cromwell, was employed in re-

## Prince Charles seeking a Throne.

## His Defeat and Escape.

ducing the east of Scotland. His plans were well laid, and starting from Stirling with about 20,000 men, on the 31st of July, he hastily traversed Cumberland, Lancashire, and Shropshire, where it was hoped that Shrewsbury would be surrendered to them, and many English adherents would join; but this did not occur. The governor refused to admit them, and it was then proposed to march direct on London; but the army was now found so exhausted by its rapid movement that it was thought better to make for Worcester, a town that had always been loyal, and where they were received with great joy on the 22d of August, 1651.

§ 8. Cromwell marched with equal expedition as soon as he heard of the departure of the young king from Stirling. He compelled the country people to carry their arms for his troops, and sent for forces from every part of England, which were pushed forward under Lambert and Fleetwood. He reached Worcester on the 28th of August, and, his army being much stronger than that of his opponent, he hemmed in the royalists on every side. They had fortified the town and broken down the bridges over the Severn and the Teme, which occasioned some delay; but on the 3d of September, after some hours' hard fighting, the parliamentarians gained what Cromwell called a "crowning mercy," and the hopes of the royalists were crushed for a while. The Duke of Hamilton (the brother of the nobleman beheaded in 1649)<sup>a</sup> was mortally wounded in the battle. About 2,000 men fell in the field, whilst some

<sup>a</sup> § 53, p. 424.

10,000 were made prisoners, the country people in many cases rising on them in their flight as "foreigners," for so the Scots were still considered. The English royalists were either killed or had separated from them. Of these the Earl of Derby, long a formidable opponent of the parliament, was taken and executed.

§ 9. Cromwell soon returned to London. As he approached the city he was met by the entire parliament, the municipal authorities, and a vast concourse of people, and he was conducted with almost royal honors to Hampton Court Palace. The young king escaped to France after a series of almost miraculous preservations, in which poor men like the Pendrells and the priest John Huddleston showed that they were neither allured by the reward of £1,000 that was offered for his betrayal, nor frightened by the penalties of treason that were denounced against all who



Scotland and Ireland subjugated.

General Monk.

should shelter him, and which there could be no doubt would be inflicted should they be discovered. The prince, who had shown much courage in battle, was cool and skilful in effecting his escape. He wandered about from place to place, sometimes hiding and sometimes disguised in the dress of a farmer or a servant. At length he reached Shoreham, on the coast of Sussex, and at about the middle of October [A.D. 1651] he crossed the Channel to France, in a coal vessel. He abandoned all thoughts of another invasion, and did not see England again until he was brought from the Continent to the throne of his father by General Monk.

§ 10. The loss of their army quite broke the spirit of the Scots, and after the storming of Dundee by Monk [Sept. 1651], who imitated Cromwell at Drogheda, the whole country quietly subsided into an English dependency, governed by commissioners from the parliament. The people were disarmed; their laws were changed; estates were confiscated; preachers were silenced; and military men, of Cromwell's own cast, garrisoned every place, living at free quarter, gathering taxes at the point of the sword, and ever ready to crush the first symptom of opposition. In this they were greatly aided by the Marquis of Argyle, the only man of any consideration who openly joined them, though many more submitted to their fate as an unavoidable evil; but still bands of royalists constantly appeared, particularly in the Highlands, and taxed all the energy of Monk, who was the chief commander, to deal with them. He was originally a royalist, but being taken prisoner whilst serving with some Irish troops in England, he only saved his life by joining the parliamentarians. He was a man of dark, impenetrable character. Cromwell suspected him of keeping up a correspondence with the exiled king, yet he did not venture to displace him, as he was very popular with the soldiers under his command.

§ 11. Ireland was reduced to subjection about the same time as Scotland, but had a much harder fate. The parliamentary commissioners sent to govern it seem to have aimed at peopling the country anew with English or Scottish settlers, and therefore they tried every means in their power to get rid of the native population. Thousands of the men who had been in arms were willing to serve foreign States, and they were allowed to save their lives by doing so, and to take as many more with them. The fertile

Affairs in Ireland.

Cromwell and the Parliament.

lands that they had been driven from were divided among the "undertakers," as they were called, that is, the persons who had lent money to the parliament to carry on the war, and the soldiers who had fought in it. Cromwell's son Henry was appointed to the government in 1654, and his rule was lenient when compared with that of the commissioners. In 1659 he was recalled, when the government fell into the hands of Lord Broghill and Colonel Coote, and they, seeing that the restoration of the king was probable, at once offered him the services of the Protestants in Ireland on condition of being secured in their possessions. This offer was accepted, notwithstanding its injustice to thousands who had adhered to the royal cause, but some slight compensation was eventually given to a few among them.

§ 12. At the desire of Cromwell, an amnesty was granted early in the year 1652, by which he gained favor even in the eyes of the royalists; and as he took no active part in a naval war that soon after broke out with the Dutch, he and his council of officers employed themselves in augmenting the discontent with which the parliament was now everywhere regarded, not only for their tyranny, but for their clinging to power and place in spite of every remonstrance. They had, at the instance of Cromwell, in November, 1651, decided that the present parliament should cease in November, 1654; but they continued to act as if they contemplated no dissolution, and considered their power to be perpetual. To explain this, a brief glance at their four years' administration is necessary.

§ 13. The soldiers throughout the war had prided themselves on an honorable observance of the terms that they granted to their opponents, and now that the war was over, the parliament loudly professed their intention of upholding a legal government, under which every man should have a fair and open trial before the ordinary tribunals, let the cause be what it might, either for life or property. But scarcely were they in power before they contradicted all their professions by erecting what they were pleased to call "high courts of justice," which dealt even more hardly than courts-martial with all brought before them.<sup>1</sup> As one instance,

<sup>1</sup> The president of these tribunals was usually John Lisle, a judge at the trial of the late king, and a commissioner of the great seal. His harsh bearing to the prisoners rendered him very odious, and he was assassinated soon after the restoration of royalty.



Tyranny of the Parliament. Unpopularity of the Parliament. Accusations.

twenty-four persons were tried by one of these new tribunals for a mere riot at Norwich, and twenty of them were executed. And they went beyond the precedent of all former tyranny by passing an act which made words alone treason. Even the Tudors had thought it needful to affirm that something had been done as well as said before they declared a man a traitor. Under that act they

put on trial for his life John Lilburn,<sup>1</sup> a Leveller,<sup>a</sup> who had dared to write of their proceedings as they deserved, in a pamphlet called "England's New Chains Discovered."

They made the mistake of bringing him before a jury instead of

a "high court of justice,"<sup>b</sup> and, after a most spirited defence, he was acquitted. He was, however, marked

for ruin; and soon afterward, having a quarrel with Sir Arthur Haselrigge, one of the council, he was accused of libelling him, and was, by a special act, banished for life without even a hearing.<sup>2</sup>

§ 14. There was another matter that exposed the parliament to much odium, and that was their excessive egotism and pride, and the public plunder that they shared. One of their earliest acts had

been to lodge the Council of State<sup>c</sup> in the palace of Whitehall, and devote £10,000 worth of the late king's rich goods to furnishing the rooms of "my Lords," as their councillors were called, as they held the political relations to parliament that the House of Lords did formerly. This was

resented as an extravagance by their own party, for all that property had been ordered to be sold towards paying the public debts, which were of vast amount, and it was regarded by the royalists as little less than sacrilege. Also, like other men placed in temporary power, many of them "hasted to grow rich" at the public expense. Lands to the value of £2,000 a year were settled on Bradshaw, the president of the Council. The same amount was

settled on Skippon,<sup>d</sup> and the same on the family of

Ireton.<sup>e</sup> Haselrigge received so much of the church

lands in the north that he was commonly known as

<sup>1</sup> He had been a London apprentice, and bore a whipping for circulating some books offensive to the Star-chamber with such stoicism that he received from his party the name of "Sturdy John." He served in the parliamentary army, but was so insubordinate that he was always in difficulties, and it was said of him that if he were alone in the world, "John would fight Lilburn, and Lilburn, John."

<sup>2</sup> He returned when Cromwell expelled the parliament, and addressed to him his "Banished Man's Plea," which was unfavorably received. He was again tried, and though acquitted, was kept in prison in Jersey for some years. At length he was liberated, and received a small pension for his subsistence, but died soon afterward.

Heavy Taxation.

The Long Parliament dispersed.

the Bishop of Durham; and Richmond Park was given to the citizens of London. Cromwell, also, was well rewarded by his friends, and before he openly seized on the supreme power, Hampton Court and £7,000 a year had been granted to him, beside his army pay of £10 a day, and his salary as lord-lieutenant of Ireland. But as many looked up to him for preferment, and all saw in him a probable future ruler, his aggrandizement was less offensive than that of any of his colleagues.

§ 15. Whilst the parliament men thus grew rich, and manifestly remained in power for that very purpose, the people groaned under a weight of taxation such as they had never felt before, and the merchants suffered vast losses from their ships being captured by privateers fitted out from the Scilly Isles,<sup>a</sup> Man,<sup>1</sup> or Jersey, where the royalists still maintained them-  
a § 9, p. 2.  
 selves. They were not reduced until the close of the year 1651. Very shortly afterward a more formidable war broke out with the Dutch, commencing ostensibly from a quarrel about the honor of the flag, but really in resentment of the shelter afforded to the royalists. Several desperate actions were fought, in which Admiral Blake and General Monk greatly distinguished  
b § 18, p. 407.  
 themselves; and the vessels of the "ship-money fleet,"<sup>b</sup>  
c § 7, p. 332.  
 though chiefly manned by the Anabaptists,<sup>c</sup> fulfilled their original purpose of chastising the Hollanders, who were at last obliged to sue for peace.

§ 16. From the first day that the parliament met after the execution of the king, they had been told from all quarters that they had already been in being too long, and had been urged to make preparations for their own dissolution. But this they had no inclination to do; and until their masters, the army, remonstrated with them, they hardly vouchsafed a reply. Then they named the period of three years, as we have seen, at the end of which they would certainly separate. This was looked upon as a studied defiance; but still Cromwell pretended to hesitate. At last, taking a body of musketeers with him, he entered the House on the 20th of April, 1653, and violently expelled the members while overwhelming them with reproaches. Then, with the key of the parliament chamber in his pocket, he walked back to Whitehall, the absolute master of the three kingdoms. Then he proceeded to

<sup>1</sup> This belonged to the Earl of Derby,<sup>a</sup> and his countess defended it after his death, till treachery in her garrison obliged her to surrender.  
a § 9, p. 431.



Cromwell seizes Supreme Power.

The "Barebones Parliament."

disperse the Council by a peremptory order, when he was compelled to listen to some plain talk from Bradshaw and others. He next published a justification of his proceedings, which was well received, in which he declared, with well-feigned sincerity, that he had done it all unwillingly, and declared that "he had prayed the Lord to slay him rather than put him on that work."

§ 17. The Dictator (for such, in fact, Cromwell now was) replaced the Council of State by one of only twelve members, of his own selection, and then, in his own name, summoned about 140 persons, described as "men faithful, fearing God, and hating covetousness," to meet as a parliament, which they accordingly did, on the 4th of July, 1653. This assembly became commonly known as the "Little Parliament" and as the "Barebones Parliament," after one of its noisiest talkers, Praise God Barbone, a leather-seller of London. The very name of this assembly has ever since been a term of reproach, and yet several useful measures were proposed in it, only they were lost sight of among the absurdities of some of the members. Francis Rous, the Speaker, though he extolled Cromwell as greater than Moses and Joshua combined, wished to see a government "under God alone," as with the Jews of old; whilst others would have burnt the records in the Tower as badges of slavery; and the "men of high flight" desired to abolish "magistracy, ministry, and law," as not needed among the Saints, as they ridiculously styled the republican party. They passed about five months in this idle talk, when Cromwell, seeing that they were not likely to forward his ambitious views, or to serve the State properly, induced a few of their number to resign their powers into his hands, when, on the 13th of December, he expelled the rest by a company of soldiers, as he had done their predecessors. And so it was that Oliver Cromwell's ambition to serve himself or his country as supreme ruler culminated in absolute usurpation.

§ 18. What was Cromwell's motive at that time in assuming supreme power is yet an unsettled question. Some regard Cromwell as a selfish usurper. The larger portion of intelligent students look upon him as a wise patriot, who, perceiving that the people were not sufficiently educated for self-government, took advantage of his own popularity to establish, in his own person, a government that should save them from anarchy, and secure to them order, peace, and prosperity.

Cromwell made Lord Protector of England.

## CHAPTER II.

## THE PROTECTORATE. [A.D. 1653 TO 1660.]

§ 1. WHEN Cromwell had received the resignation of power from the parliament, he called a council of officers and other persons, when it was resolved to "have a Commonwealth in a single person, which person should be the Lord-General Oliver Cromwell, under the title and dignity of Lord Protector of England, Scotland, and Ireland, and the dominions and territories thereunto belonging," who was to be assisted in the government by a council of "godly, able, and discreet persons," not more than twenty-one in number. It was decreed that the supreme legislative authority should "be and reside in the Lord Protector and the people assembled in parliament," which should be imperial in its character, and not to exceed four hundred members for England (including Wales), thirty for Scotland, and thirty for Ireland. With these royal functions Cromwell was invested [December 16, 1653] by the notables of the realm, while he stood in a suit of black velvet, by a chair of state, set in the midst of the Court of Chancery. There he took an oath to rule according to the terms of a constitution, written on parchment, called the Instrument of Government. He was now, in fact, monarch of England, and he aspired to the crown of a constitutional sovereign, with many of the prerogatives for which Charles the First contended, and was beheaded by Cromwell.

§ 2. It was agreed that a parliament should not meet until nine months after Cromwell's accession to power, and that during that time he and the Council should rule absolutely. Long before that time Cromwell found that he had disgusted many of his old associates, who now justly reproached him to his face with aiming at arbitrary power. He committed some of them to the Tower, but this did not hinder their opinions from spreading; and when the parliament assembled [Sept. 3, 1654], they at once began to question his authority. He sent for them to Whitehall, and reproached them for their conduct, telling them that the Instrument that made them a Parliament made him also Protector. He declared that he had rights and powers independent of them, and he therefore would not allow any to sit among them who refused to sign a declaration that they would not attempt any alteration in the



Cromwell plays the Autocrat. England's Power respected. Method of Rule.

government. Thus he got rid of a great number, but those who remained were found little more compliant. They persisted in debating the provisions of the Instrument, questioned much that had been done in the nine months' interval before their assembly, and rejected, by a very large majority, a motion to make the protectorship hereditary in his family. At length [January 31, 1655] he summoned them before him, made a long speech, in which he bitterly reproached them, among many other things, with not providing pay for the army, with the intent that the soldiers should thus be rendered mutinous and dangerous, and concluded: "It is not for the profit of these nations, nor for the common and public good, for you to continue here any longer, and therefore I do declare unto you that I do dissolve this parliament."

§ 3. The Protector was not blind to the growing discontents, and he felt that something must be done to give prestige to his rule. So he sent out two strong fleets, one of which, under Admiral Blake, rendered good service by chastising the Barbary pirates;<sup>a</sup> the other, under Admirals Penn and Venables, captured the Island of Jamaica from the Spaniards. The war was entirely unprovoked by the latter—in fact, they had ever kept on good terms with the parliament, and had even condescended to purchase the king's pictures from them. But it answered Cromwell's avowed purpose of "making the name of Englishmen terrible abroad," and the French king entered into an alliance with him, an example that other sovereigns followed. English troops were in consequence sent over to Flanders, where they captured Dunkirk, and held it till after the restoration of monarchy. Feeling his power, Cromwell was accustomed to speak haughtily of it, saying that a ship of war was the best ambassador, and that he could make the thunders of his cannon heard at Rome, and even on the Neva. He really made the power of England felt and feared more extensively than ever before.

§ 4. But if the foreign career of Cromwell was thus successful, it was not so at home, except when he dropped all pretence of legal government, and ruled avowedly by the sword, with a standing army of 30,000 men at his command. The dismissal of his parliament occasioned such general discontent among the republicans, that the hopes of the royalists revived, and preparations were made for a rising in many parts of the country on the ensuing

<sup>a</sup> § 19, p. 408.

Cromwell's dealings with Insurgents and Conspirators.

A new Parliament.

18th of April, 1655. The impatience of Sir Joseph Wagstaffe, an officer of the old royal army, anticipated this. Without waiting for his confederates from Hampshire, he marched into Salisbury on the morning of the 11th of March, seized the judges, who were there on circuit, and the sheriff, and proposed to hang them, by way of committing his followers (about 200 horsemen) beyond hope of pardon. His counsel horrified his associates, Penruddock, Groves, and other Wiltshire gentlemen, who were quite unused to war, and they absolutely refused to follow it. Instead, they retreated into Devonshire, where they found no one prepared to join them. They were soon obliged to surrender, and were executed; but Wagstaffe made his escape. A rising in the north was equally abortive; but Cromwell made these attempts the pretext for acting with extreme rigor against all who had ever been of the royal party. Without any inquiry as to whether they had given any countenance to these risings, he seized on one-tenth of all their property; and he forbade the expelled clergy to act as schoolmasters, though the majority of them had no other means of living, for the fifth of the value of their benefices, which the parliament professed to grant them, was paid but in very few instances by their successors. The Levellers<sup>a</sup> and republicans, who were also conspiring against him, he treated with less severity; but to guard against the machinations of the various parties he now divided the country into fourteen districts, which his majors-general ruled with absolute power.

§ 5. This state of things continued until the middle of the following year [A.D. 1656], when, from the increasing dissatisfaction, he was obliged to summon a new parliament [Sept. 17], and this he endeavored to make compliant by adopting the extraordinary course of allowing none to sit, though duly elected, without being first formally approved by himself. Of course many were thus excluded, and a body of ninety-eight of them published a stinging Remonstrance, in which they denounced those who had been approved, as "betrayers of the liberties of England, and adherents to the capital enemies of the commonwealth." It declared them to be in no proper sense a parliament, seeing that they sat in daily terror of the Protector's armed men, and dared not debate freely or oppose his usurpation and oppression. The assembled body fully justified this description. They drew up a fresh constitution

<sup>a</sup> § 52, p. 124.



Cromwell's Royal State.

Popular Discontent.

He fears Assassination.

of government, called the Humble Petition and Advice, which confirmed Cromwell in power, allowed him to name his successor, and to create a House of Peers. They also proposed to give him the title of king; but Lambert<sup>a</sup> and other officers of the army so vehemently opposed this that he was obliged to decline it. But he was again inaugurated with regal pomp in Westminster Hall, the coronation-chair being brought from the Abbey for the purpose [June 26, 1657].

§ 6. This was the final quarrel between Cromwell and many of the men who had helped him to his exalted position. Lambert refused to take the oaths to him, and Harrison, one of the most active

officers, was sent to the Tower on the charge of attempting an Anabaptist<sup>b</sup> insurrection. Many of this party, which abounded in the navy as well as in the army, had already opened a communication with the exiled king; others were

taken into the pay of Spain, in revenge for Cromwell's aggression; <sup>c</sup> and Sexby, one of these, distributed a pamphlet called "Killing no Murder," in which the assassination of the Protector was recommended as a duty. Sexby was seized and condemned to death. He poisoned himself in the Tower, but this was turned into a reproach to Cromwell, as if he had thus got rid of a man whom he dared not execute. From this time forward all accounts agree that the Protector showed great dread of assassination. He doubled his guards; wore armor under his ordinary clothing; never went anywhere and returned by the same route, and seldom occupied the same room two nights in succession.

§ 7. To add to Cromwell's mortification, when his parliament met again [January 20, 1658] they refused to recognize the new

peers,<sup>d</sup> and were dismissed in a fortnight. The exiled King of Scotland<sup>e</sup> was prompt to take advantage of the discontent that this measure occasioned.

He collected a body of troops in Flanders, and made ready to embark for England; but the Protector's ships watched the ports, and the only result was that Sir Henry Slingsby, an old royalist officer, and Dr. Hewitt, a clergyman, were seized whilst arranging a rising, and beheaded. But the great change was now at hand. Cromwell had suffered much from fever and ague, and was too ill to address his parliament when they met. He grew gradually worse, and at last he died at Whitehall, on the 3d of September,

<sup>a</sup> § 2, p. 428.<sup>b</sup> § 7, p. 332.<sup>c</sup> § 3, p. 438.<sup>d</sup> § 5, p. 439.<sup>e</sup> § 9, p. 431.

Death of Cromwell.

His Character.

His Successor.

1658. the anniversary of his great victories at Worcester and Dunbar.

§ 8. Oliver Cromwell left a name that will not be forgotten, though not deserving all the praise or all the blame that has been heaped upon it. That he had great skill in war, and equally great skill in penetrating other men's thoughts whilst he concealed his own, is undeniable. It is also probable that he was not naturally bloodthirsty, though he had no scruple at shedding blood when he thought his own or the State's purposes required it; but there seems no reason for styling him an able governor, for he appears to have thought that he could rule a nation by just the same violent means as he employed to reduce a mutinous regiment. His iron hand repeatedly crushed resistance at home; but it was as constantly renewed, whilst his popularity, with even his own sect in religion and politics, declined. It might very probably have driven him from his seat, had his life been much longer.

§ 9. Cromwell was in the sixtieth year of his age when he died. Just before he expired he expressed a desire that his son Richard should be his successor. This desire was made a binding obligation, according to the terms of the new constitution,<sup>a</sup> and Richard was received as such with all the usual signs of acquiescence. He was solemnly proclaimed to be Lord Protector, first in London and Westminster, and then in all the cities and towns in the realm, including Dunkirk and the American plantations.<sup>1</sup> The young Protector was in a short time so suddenly displaced, that the royalists gave him the name of "Tumble-down Dick."

§ 10. The overthrow of Richard was, in fact, a military revolution, which ended in restoring the king, though not so intended. Lambert<sup>b</sup> and the other chief officers had borne the elder Cromwell's supremacy merely because they

<sup>1</sup> Sir William Berkeley, the Governor of Virginia, was a zealous royalist, and that province remained loyal. When republican government was proclaimed in England, the colonists boldly recognized Charles, who was crowned at Secone,<sup>a</sup> as their sovereign. They even sent a message to him in Flanders, inviting him to come over and be their king. He contemplated doing so when he was recalled to England. In gratitude to those loyal colonists, he caused the arms of Virginia to be quartered with those of England, Scotland, and Ireland, as an independent member of the empire. From this circumstance Virginia received the name of *The Old Dominion*.



## The end of the Protectorate.

## A Royalist Insurrection.

could not shake it off; but they had no fear of Richard, and soon showed that they meant to displace him. To conciliate them, Lambert was recalled and placed at the head of the army; but at the same time it was resolved to call a parliament, as a curb on the soldiery. When the houses met [January 29, 1659] it was found that many royalists had been elected, and not one-half of the new-made peers attended. The army clamored for their pay, which had fallen into arrear. Instead of voting it, the Houses occupied themselves with debates whether they should recognize Richard as Protector. Finally, a council of army officers compelled him to dismiss the parliament [April 22], and then they dismissed the Protector, and took the management of affairs into their own hands. They recalled the members of the parliament expelled by Cromwell in 1653,<sup>a</sup> appointed a new Council of State, and placed Fleetwood (Richard's brother-in-law) at the head of the army. He was a dull, heavy man, the mere tool of Lambert, as Fairfax had been to Cromwell.<sup>b</sup>

§ 11. A royalist rising in Cheshire followed this action. It was led by Sir George Booth, a Presbyterian, but was soon crushed by Lambert. The parliament, thinking all danger over, and forgetting to whom they owed their power, then proposed to reduce a large number of the troops. Lambert, Desborough, and others opposed this, and were voted out of their commands; and Fleetwood, instead of being retained as commander-in-chief, had General Monk and five others associated with him [October 12], as commissioners to govern all the forces. But the soldiers in London refused to obey their new officers. Headed by Lambert, they drove out the parliament the very next day, when he appointed a Committee of Safety to carry on the government.

§ 12. Early in the next year [A.D. 1660], Monk, who had through all these changes retained his command in Scotland, by hypocritical pretensions of attachment to republicanism, crossed the border in compliance with an invitation from parliament to come to London, when Lambert attempted to make terms with him. Monk, however, who was counted and feared by both parties, kept his own counsel, and marched steadily forward, professing that his only object was to restore the parliament, which he accomplished without difficulty or bloodshed. But he made a most material change in it, by intimating his wish that the members

Doings of General Monk.

The Royalists in Power:

A King proclaimed.

who had been excluded in 1648, for being favorable to the king,<sup>a</sup> should be restored also. His will was law, and they accordingly took their seats. A new Council of State was formed; many royalist prisoners were released; Monk and Montague were appointed commanders-in-chief of all the forces by sea and land, and the restored parliament dissolved itself, after having appointed a new assembly to meet on the 25th of April. The government was now in the hands of the royalists, ready to do the bidding of Monk, who had been one of that party before his interest led him to be a parliamentarian. He was ready to become a king's man, or a devil's man, or anything that best promised to promote his interest.

§ 13. All parties now saw that their sole chance of escape from a mere military tyranny, under an infamous chief, was to recall the king, and the only man from whom any formidable opposition was to be expected was the bold and active Lambert. Refusing to pledge himself to peaceable behavior, he was sent to the Tower. He escaped, and appointed a gathering of his friends at Edgehill, where the civil war had commenced;<sup>b</sup> but before he could reach it with some troops of horse, he was overtaken near Daventry [April 21, 1660]. His men refused to fight against their old associates, and he was made prisoner. Four days after this the new parliament assembled. Sir Harbottle Grimstone, one of those who had protested against the mock parliament of 1656,<sup>c</sup> was chosen speaker, and the peers met in their House as before the war, the lords appointed by Cromwell<sup>d</sup> not venturing to appear.

§ 14. On the 1st of May, Sir John Granville, who had been for some time negotiating between Monk and Charles for the restoration of monarchy in England, presented letters from the fugitive King of Scotland, then at Breda, in Holland, which Monk, yet cautiously wearing the mask, caused to be laid before parliament, with an intimation of his ignorance of the contents. One was a letter from Charles offering a free general pardon, with only such exceptions as the parliament itself should choose to make, and inviting all to return to their allegiance. This Declaration of Breda, as it was called, was accepted with joy by the parliament. The king was proclaimed [May 8, 1660] at Westminster gate, as Charles the Second, and a body of six lords and twelve commoners was de-

<sup>a</sup> § 54, p. 425.<sup>b</sup> § 41, p. 418.<sup>c</sup> § 4, p. 428.<sup>d</sup> § 7, p. 440.



Restoration of the Stuarts.

Charles the Second's Reception in England.

spatched to him at the Hague to invite his immediate return. They were most graciously received, though several of the Presbyterian ministers, whose furious sermons had done so much to bring about the war, accompanied them. They had, however, been anticipated by Montague, who, on his own authority, proclaimed the king in the fleet before it was done in London, himself firing the first gun, and crying, "God bless the king!" to which his sailors heartily responded, although they had throughout the war been reckoned more thorough republicans even than the soldiers. They then set sail for Holland, where the Duke of York, Charles's brother, was invited on board as their admiral, and, at their own desire, he changed the names of several of the ships, substituting "*Prince*" for "*Protector*," etc.

§ 15. The Dutch, who of late, from fear of Cromwell, had shown little kindness for the exiled king, were now so profuse in their civilities that he was in a manner constrained to remain with them a few days; but at last he put to sea in the "*Prince*," and landed at Dover on the following day. The infamous Monk obsequiously advanced even into the sea to meet him; and the king's three days' journey to London was one triumphal progress. He reached his capital on his birthday [May 29, 1660], and was so rapturously received that he smilingly remarked, that it must surely be his own fault that he had stayed away so long, for he saw no one who did not protest that he had ever wished for his return. And so it was that poor England had the curse of a Stuart monarch again thrust upon her.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### SOCIETY DURING THE FIRST HALF OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

§ 1. As at the close of our record of the Tudor dynasty, so now, at the close of the interregnum of the Stuart dynasty, so much has been necessarily said, in the account of the civil and military transactions of the period, concerning religious matters, that little need be noted upon that topic separately.

§ 2. We have seen that Protestantism, after severe struggles, overthrew the more ancient State religion in Great Britain, when

the independence of thought and action which that struggle developed created a variety of theological opinions among the Protestants themselves, which crystallized into separate and often contending sects.

§ 3. The gloomy and implacable theological system framed by John Calvin, of Geneva, known as "Calvinism," was the doctrinal foundation of Puritanism<sup>a</sup> in England and Scotland. John Knox, a disciple of Calvin, was its chief disseminator in the latter country, while propagandists from the Continent<sup>b</sup> gave its color to the belief of the great body of the Protestants in the British islands. Its eminent dogma concerning predestination permeated the Anglican Church, and finds obscure expression in the Thirty-nine Articles.<sup>c</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 357.

<sup>b</sup> § 6, p. 331.

<sup>c</sup> § 8, p. 381.

§ 4. All through the period of the Commonwealth, when "Popery and prelacy" were suppressed, the Calvinists, under different names, such as Presbyterians, Congregationalists, and Independents, each struggled for the mastery in Church and State. The history of those struggles, and of the whole body of Puritans against the Anglican and Romish Churches, during the time of the Stuarts, including the interregnum, is a most interesting chapter in the chronicles of the religious experience of the world—a chapter too large to be even epitomized here. In fact, it is a study more *interesting* than *profitable*, for it is only a record of bigotry, superstition, fanaticism, intolerance, craft, and crime, doing violence to liberty in the name of the sweet religion of Jesus of Nazareth.

§ 5. The period we are considering is a most interesting one to the patriot and statesman, as a remarkable epoch in the great struggle between the king and the nobility—between monarchy and aristocracy—between autocracy and democracy—which had been going on in England for more than four hundred years; for a notion of political freedom had survived from the time of the Saxons as a popular instinct. The earlier Normans and all the Tudors were almost absolute monarchs, yet compelled to feel a little of the restraints of the popular will. This feeling had been notably manifested by the fact that between the thirteenth and the seventeenth centuries the monarchs had confirmed *Magna Charta*<sup>d</sup> thirty-two times, together with new statutes to support and develop it. Step by step the people,

<sup>d</sup> § 16, p. 160.



Cæsarism warned.

Effects of the Reformation.

English Liberties.

more and more potentially felt in the House of Commons, had assumed their rightful sovereignty. And at the very time when the royal bigot, Charles the First, was asserting on the scaffold that the people had nothing to do with government<sup>a</sup>—in other words, had no political right—the gleaming axe of his executioner was both a sharp argument against his proposition, and a proclamation that a monarch, to be tolerated, must henceforth be contented with the subordinate office of executor of the popular will. It was a notice to Cæsarism to cease its pretensions, under the penalty of final destruction.

§ 6. Henry the Eighth was an absolute monarch, yet in his time came that grand insurrection of the human intellect against spiritual domination known as the Reformation, which assumed a religious form, while the scope of its intentions and operations was as wide as the word “liberty” could define it. It struck a fatal blow at absolutism. It assailed slavery in every form, demanding freedom for every human soul from the thralldom of Church and State. It emboldened patriots and made monarchs more discreet. It developed a John Pym<sup>b</sup> in the Long Parliament in 1640,<sup>c</sup> as the first of the outspoken champions of the sovereignty of the people in their struggle against the arrogant assumptions of the royal prerogative.

Then mighty abuses were abated or abolished, among them the Court of High Commission,<sup>d</sup> established by Elizabeth, by which all spiritual jurisdiction was vested in the crown.

§ 7. When the commonwealth was succeeded by restored monarchy, the British constitution (which is only the codified acts of parliament, and therefore flexible) and the government and statute laws had all assumed the modern forms, which guarantee to the subject or citizen whatever is included under the general title of English liberties. Justice for the subject was as well assured, in theory at least, as privilege for the monarch. The crown and sceptre had become subordinated to the parliament. Personal rule was ended, and the people of Great Britain had arisen to their rightful position of a controlling and permanent power in the State. The age of the civil war and the commonwealth was that of the birth of genuine democracy in England. Humanity and mercy took the place of cruelty and implacability in the

<sup>a</sup> § 58, p. 427.<sup>b</sup> § 31, p. 413.<sup>c</sup> § 27, p. 411.<sup>d</sup> § 6, p. 354.

The National Industry.

Evil effects of Monopolies.

Commerce.

punishment of offences, and a clearer image of true Christianity was stamped upon society in all its features.

§ 8. During the period we are considering, the national industry had gradually increased in productiveness, in spite of the stupidity of the monarchs and co-legislators. The Dutch had become successful and damaging rivals of the English in commerce and navigation. The narrow, dog-in-the-manger policy of the British government, and its absurd nursing of monopolies of its own creation, had given to the Dutch free system of trade and navigation a great advantage. At the beginning of the reign of James the First [1603] the Dutch, in the ordinary trade between them and the English, employed between 500 and 600 of their own vessels, while not a tenth of that number of English bottoms were so employed. And it was not until near the close of the sixteenth century, that an English vessel made a commercial voyage [1591] to the East Indies. Its success caused the formation of the famous English East India Company in the year 1600, which, in the course of a generation afterwards, vastly extended the area of the commerce of Great Britain. That company for a long time exercised political functions with imperial sway, and gave, in the course of time, vast territories in Central India to the control of the British government. Its political power ceased only in 1858; and in 1861 the India House—its palace in London—built in 1726, was pulled down.

§ 9. Other mercantile monopolies were created and fostered, but the East India Company overshadowed them all. There were also manufacturing monopolies which enriched a few at the expense of the many. Fisheries in the northern seas for whales, walruses, and seals were established, and were fostered by the government during James's reign [A.D. 1603 to 1625]. In 1615, these fisheries employed 134 vessels; and full 200 more, with an average burden of 15,000 tons, were engaged in the cod-fishery on the banks of Newfoundland. Trade in wool and woollen cloths continued to be the staple<sup>a</sup> of the

<sup>a</sup> § 12, p. 382.

kingdom; but the conceited king, by an illegal proclamation in 1608, deranged the whole business, and greatly injured the prosperity of his realm. During nine years [A.D. 1613 to 1622] the exports and imports of Great Britain, taken together, had increased in value only £311,265. The exports and imports amounted in 1613 to £4,628,586, and in 1622 to £4,939,751. The latter sum,



The Royal Navy.

The Laboring Class.

Arts and Manufactures.

or \$24,698,855, was about the twentieth part of the value of the imports and exports of Great Britain in 1869.

§ 10. And while the commercial marine of Great Britain was comparatively small, the royal navy was also weak. At the accession of James it numbered only thirteen ships; at his death, about twenty years later, it consisted of twenty-four. During Cromwell's administration the navy was somewhat increased, and

its power was felt more than at any other period.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 4, p. 438.

The war-vessels were often engaged in the suppression of piracies which interfered with the colonization of America, that went on vigorously from the early part of the seventeenth century. That colonization was especially active during the reign of Charles the First, when Church and State in England attempted to bind soul and body in intolerable fetters. The commerce of Great Britain was benefited by colonization, and a new article of trade—tobacco—was introduced from Barbadoes and Virginia. Sugar was also cultivated in Barbadoes.

§ 11. From the reign of Elizabeth until the accession of Charles the Second, few improvements of much account took place in the common arts of life. Several other countries then surpassed England in agriculture, gardening, and manufactures, particularly Holland and the Netherlands, the most industrious countries in Europe. English writers of the day spoke of the working population of England as "idle, stubborn, and surly." The manufacture of "new sorts of stuffs" was introduced at the middle of the century, during the Commonwealth. Great efforts were made to firmly establish silk-weaving in England so early as the beginning of James the First's reign, who recommended the planting of mulberry-trees and the growing of silk-worms. Linens were chiefly manufactured in families. The coal of England first began to be used in the arts and for domestic purposes in the reign of Charles the First; and in James's time hackney coaches were introduced, which the absurd king proclaimed against as annoyances to himself, the queen, and the nobility, by obstructing the streets.

§ 12. At this period England became noted for its manufacture of cannon. Charles the First had over 600 pieces cast in the forest of Dean for the States-General of Holland. Glass was also extensively manufactured under the privileges of a monopoly. Pocket-watches were first made in England in 1658; and the East India Company caused large improvements in the art of ship-building.

## Coinage and Banking.

## Dwellings and Furniture.

Before its time few merchant ships exceeded 150 tons burden. In 1610 that company built a ship of 1,000 tons; and a war-ship of 1,400 tons was launched at about the same time.

§ 13. There were some changes in the values of coin during this period; and the legal rate of interest fixed in 1571 was continued until 1624, when it was reduced to eight per cent. This rate continued until the Commonwealth, when it was further reduced. A system of banking was introduced after Charles the First robbed the London merchants of cash to the amount of \$1,000,000, which they had in gold, in the usual place of deposit in the Royal Mint, in the Tower. After that the goldsmiths became bankers, and made the business profitable. They kept the gold of their customers in strong iron chests prepared for the purpose. That system of banking was begun in 1645. Others afterward went into the business; and these private banks were the only depositories of gold until the Bank of England was established, in 1694.

§ 14. The houses of royalty and the nobility, during the first half of the seventeenth century, were furnished in a style of splendor and comfort not since surpassed, and never before equalled. Crimson velvet and cloth of gold were common coverings for furniture, and entered largely into the composition of curtains of every kind. Satin was also extensively used for the same purposes, and carpets were sometimes made of crimson velvet. Paper and leather hangings were invented early in the seventeenth century; and the walls of the wealthy were now enriched with the paintings of the most eminent artists on the Continent, such as Rubens, Vandyke, Teniers, Rembrandt, and Holbein. China-ware, as East India dishes and ornaments that were brought from the Orient were called, became quite common in the dwellings of the rich. Carpets were not yet generally seen as coverings for floors,<sup>a</sup> for down to the period of the Commonwealth mat-  
 tings and rushes<sup>b</sup> were used for that purpose, even  
 in the dwellings of royalty.

<sup>a</sup> § 19, p. 384.

<sup>b</sup> § 19, p. 384.

§ 15. The costume of both sexes of Elizabeth's later years continued in vogue far into the reign of James. The portrait of his queen<sup>c</sup> resembles that of Elizabeth in attire, having  
 the same high ruff and long bodice waist. There  
 was greater extravagance displayed in materials. John Taylor, the "Water Poet," thus alludes to the fact in censuring the waste-  
 fulness of those who

§ 4, p. 389.



Fashionable Costume.

Effeminate Habits.

A Royal Coxcomb.

“Wear a farm in shoe-strings edged with gold,  
 And spangled garters worth a copy-hold;  
 A hose and doublet which a lordship cost;  
 A gaudy cloak three manors’ price, almost;  
 A beaver band and feather for the head,  
 Prized at the church’s tithes—the poor man’s bread.”

§ 16. King James and his courtiers had their clothing made large. For fear of assassination the monarch had his doublet, or short jacket, thoroughly quilted. The breeches were made in great plaits, and full stuffed. The legs were encased in tight-fitting silk hose. The shoes were ornamented with rosettes, and the head was covered with a high-peaked hat bearing a feather. Pearls and precious stones enriched the velvet and satin garments of the more wealthy subjects.<sup>1</sup> Foppery assumed the most vulgar forms. The “fine gentleman” was the personification of odious

effeminacy. Somerset<sup>a</sup> and Buckingham<sup>b</sup> had set  
<sup>a</sup> § 18, p. 295. the example of endeavoring to look as much like  
<sup>b</sup> § 1, p. 400. women as possible; and a beau was made up of rib-

bons, jewelry, and perfume. He carried sugar-plums in his pocket, to accompany, as a gift, his sweet lisping, silly words, addressed to his mistress. He painted his face, and dotted it with black patches, after the fashion of his feminine complement, whose “make-up” was a profound study; and the process of dressing her was as complex and tedious as the fitting out of a ship of war. Her raiment was kept in coffers scented with musk or other rich odors. Her own hair was braided, curled, scented, and ornamented with artificial ringlets. Her face was painted and dotted with black patches cut in the form of crescents, stars, and other objects. Unguents and lotions, with rouge, made fresh complexions.

Her costume retained the patterns of Elizabeth’s  
<sup>c</sup> § 20, p. 285. time<sup>c</sup> until late in the reign of James; and both  
 men and women at court and among the aristocracy were generally

<sup>1</sup> James was always poverty-stricken in Scotland, and dressed plainly. When he entered upon the rich living of monarchs of England he blazed out into a gilded, vulgar coxcomb. He almost daily figured in a new dress. His favorites imitated his extravagance, and continued it into the reign of Charles. When Buckingham went to the French court to receive Charles’s bride, he provided himself with a suit of white unrent velvet, and a cloak, both set all over with diamonds valued at £80,000 (\$400,000), besides a feather made of great diamonds, and his sword, girdle, hat-band, and spurs, also thick set with diamonds. He had another suit of purple satin, embroidered all over with pearls valued at £20,000 (\$100,000). Besides these, he had twenty-five other rich suits.

Cavaliers and Roundheads.

Pastimes.

Low Amusements.

models of folly, extravagance, and vulgarity. There were many exceptions to the rule, however.

§ 17. Early in Charles's reign the court and society assumed a more sober hue ; but when that society became divided into royalists and republicans, the latter became excessively plain, and so caused the former, in order to show their hostility, to run into extravagances and license as great as in James's reign. The men of Charles's party wore their hair in long ringlets falling upon their shoulders, and they were known by the name of "Cavaliers," while the republicans had theirs cut short, which obtained for them the title of "Roundheads." The moustache and peaked beard were common to both. The feminine royalists wore ringlets and feathers, and the republican ladies wore close hoods, caps, or high-crowned hats. Women of fashion, of both parties, used muffs of fur, and carried elegant fans of large dimensions.

§ 18. With the accession of James, the tournament—the ridiculous shadow of chivalry—ceased as a pastime ; and with Charles the First, armor of every kind passed away. James made masques and emblematical pageants (composed principally by Ben Jonson) the chief amusements of his court, in which himself, the queen, and attendants of both sexes were actors. On these occasions liquors were so freely used that generally every one of both sexes was taken to bed by a servant as "drunk as a lord." The populace, at the same time, were treated to similar amusements of a still more vulgar type, in which the actors indulged in obscenity. These so pleased the low taste of the king, that he often invited them to perform in the palace for his amusement.

§ 19. The gluttony of the monarch was imitated by his courtiers and the more obsequious nobility ; and feasts were often exhibitions of the greatest extravagance in cost and prodigality in use. In these both sexes engaged, and low buffoonery was the staple delight of all. Foreigners who visited England were amazed at the gross and frivolous manners of the Stuart courts, and of both sexes in the so-called higher classes. The English taverns were then dens of filth, and filled with tobacco-smoke, indecent songs, and the noise of roysterers ; and yet, according to the writers of the day, women of rank allowed themselves to be entertained in such places, and were flattered by the coarse familiarity offered by their rollicking admirers. The simplicity, courtliness, and refinement which more generally prevailed in Eliza-



Effects of Extravagance and Gambling.

The Middle and Poorer Classes.

beth's reign were exchanged for the most vulgar, sensuous excitements. The young of both sexes rushed to London to join in the common revelry; and vast sums were spent by rich men in fitting daughters to appear "decently" at court. Wastefulness led in the grand march of what is known as society, and want closely followed. Swiftly did ancient manors, and the fortunes accumulated for generations, vanish; and wealthy and time-honored families sunk into poverty and obscurity, and disappeared from the scroll of English heraldry. That "four-squared sin," as dice was generally called, played a conspicuous part in the work of ruin, for gambling was a prevailing vice, in which cheating was regarded as the equivalent of smartness.

§ 20. While the court and aristocracy, possessing the means for every indulgence, presented so sad a picture of human nature during the rule of the earlier Stuarts, the great middle classes—merchants, shopkeepers, artisans, and yeomen—did not form a conspicuous part of that picture. There was among them a sturdy morality and vital Christianity that shamed those who looked down upon them, and awed those who looked up to them. They were a salutary influence in the ranks of the upper and lower classes. Without the means for unlimited indulgence, they were saved from temptations. The country esquires exhibited great hospitality, but it was subordinate to proper economy and decorous manner. The women of such households attended faithfully to domestic duties, and enjoyed the indoor pastimes of rural life, in which their poorer neighbors often shared. These were masquerades, cards, dice, billiards, balls, and musical entertainments. The men engaged in hunting, hawking, wrestling, football, nine-pins, pitching the bar, quoits, bull and bear baiting, and other active amusements.

§ 21. The poorer classes were comparatively comfortable, as the simple test of population proves. When Elizabeth died, the population of England was about 5,000,000 souls. At the close of the Commonwealth, or a little more than half a century, it was about 6,500,000. And yet the poorer class were coarsely and sometimes sparsely fed, for land and its productions were higher than they had ever been before, and wages were low.<sup>1</sup> The bread

<sup>1</sup> Rates of wages were fixed by law. In 1610, the justices of the peace in Rutland county established the following:—A managing farmer, who would also kill a hog, sheep, or calf, 50 shillings a year. A common farm-servant, 40 shillings. A middling

## Condition of the People.

## Wages.

## The Fine Arts.

corn used by the farm-laborers was chiefly barley, and large quantities of oatmeal were used. Onions, leeks, carrots, and radishes were used extensively in making pottage. Potatoes had just been introduced from America, and were scarce and dear, selling as high as two shillings a pound. The servants in rich families were furnished with rye-bread. Coffee was introduced during the Commonwealth; tea was unknown; and only a small quantity of sugar had been imported. Clothing was dear, for wool and flax, on account of a large foreign demand, brought high prices. Wages were so inadequate that from the ranks of the poorer classes, chiefly, England was filled with thieves and beggars.

§ 22. The fine arts received special encouragement from Charles the First, who was a scholar and man of taste. So early as 1615 the Earl of Arundel—the “father of *virtu* in England”—began to collect a gallery of statues and pictures, and was the first to reveal to Great Britain the beauties of ancient art. Other collections followed, among which that of the Duke of Buckingham was the most valuable and costly. It escaped destruction or dispersion by the republicans only by being sent to France. In a short time the royal houses were filled with choice paintings, and those of the nobility were rich in works of genius.

§ 23. When an intimate relation between England and Holland existed, painters of the Dutch and Flemish schools, then competing with those of Italy, furnished many fine paintings for the royal gallery at Whitehall, where Van Dyke became a favorite living artist, chiefly as a portrait painter. Charles invited other continental artists to his court, but few came. Rubens was there as special ambassador for the King of Spain, in 1630, and was persuaded to paint an apotheosis of James the First, on the ceiling of the Whitehall banqueting-house, for £3,000. Through him Charles procured the celebrated cartoons of Raphael, from Flanders;

servant, 29 shillings: and a boy under sixteen years, 20 shillings. A chief woman servant, capable of doing all household work, and overseeing others, 26*s.* 8*d.* A second one, 23*s.* 4*d.* A drudge, 16*s.* A girl under sixteen, 14*s.* A chief miller, 46*s.* A chief shepherd, 30*s.* A mower, 5*d.* a day, and his meat. A man reaper or hay-maker, 4*d.* A woman reaper, 3*d.*; and a woman hay-maker, 2*d.* If no meat was given, these sums were to be exactly doubled. In the winter, wages for farm work were still lower.

A master carpenter received 8*d.* a day, with meat, or 1*s.* 2*d.* without. For a managing mason, having charge over others, 8*d.*, with meat, or 1*s.* without. A master joiner or sawyer, 6*d.*, with meat. A horse collar-maker, the same; and other mechanics an average of 5*d.* a day, with meat, or 9*d.* without. In forming these rates of wages the justices calculated that half the day's wages was equivalent to diet for one day.



## The Cartoons of Raphael.

## Architecture.

## Music.

and he purchased the Duke of Milan's collection for £18,000, or \$90,000.

§ 24. A taste for the fine arts was thus planted in England, and took permanent root; but the republicans made war upon it as a royal extravagance. So early as 1645, when they had possession

of Whitehall,<sup>a</sup> they began to sell the pictures in its gallery; and the parliament ordered all paintings in

which the figure of the Virgin appeared to be burned. Had this order been executed, some of the finest treasures of art would have perished. But the taste and good sense of the republican leaders prevented the outrage. Cromwell purchased the car-

toons of Raphael for the nation. Lambert<sup>b</sup> was an artist of some distinction, and Fairfax was an admirer

of art and an enthusiastic antiquary. But while valuable works of art, and some good artists, came to England from the Continent in the earlier half of the seventeenth century, and Charles planned an academy of art on a grand scale, no conspicuous native artist appeared, either in painting or sculpture.

§ 25. The classic style of architecture introduced by Inigo Jones, a native of London, in James's time, produced a radical change in the art, not only in England but elsewhere. It outshone all that had been done on the Continent. He stripped it of the Italian corruptions. His first great work in his native country was the palace of Whitehall, built for James the First. It gave tone to all that followed it. It formed the point of division between ancient and modern architecture in Great Britain. Engraving also received much encouragement before the Commonwealth; but no native artist of much eminence appeared, if we except Thomas Simon, the exquisite seal-engraver, by whose work the finest coinage ever done in England was that of the Commonwealth.

§ 26. Music had assumed the character of a science in Elizabeth's reign, when Dr. Tye, of Oxford, produced some remarkable anthems for cathedral service. Compositions of that kind and madrigals occupied the attention of the best minds; and music was brought to great perfection before the accession of James. The madrigal, in verse and melody, was very popular, for it was a harmonious expression of love and admiration. The "music for the million"—simple kind for simple folk—was inferior in melody to that of Ireland, but equal to any on the Continent. During the Commonwealth, music, like the other fine arts, felt the deadweight

## Literature.

## The Translation of the Bible.

of that fanatical austerity which was a logical reaction after the licentiousness of the times of the Stuart dynasty.

§ 27. The literature of this period is most conspicuous in dramatic and poetic forms. The age of Elizabeth had given Spenser and Shakespeare to the world; but some of the best productions of the latter appeared early in the reign of her successor. In so wonderful a manner did he put into shape and harmony, by marvellous use of ideas and language, the crude productions of his predecessors, that his genius made those predecessors obsolete, for it wrought a revolution in the national drama. He substituted refined wit and humor for boisterous vulgarity; and by the most perfect limning of every feature of human nature, he placed the signet of immortality upon his productions. Those who hold nearest rank to Shakespeare, as dramatic writers of his time, are Beaumont and Fletcher, who wrote in partnership. Ben Jonson and Philip Massinger were in the charmed circle.

§ 28. There were many poets of excellence, and essayists and historians not a few, in this period, whose names will never be forgotten. Among the poets, Sir John Davis, Drummond, Donne, Herrick, Cowley, and, late in the time, the great Milton, appear the most eminent. Chillingworth, Fuller, and Jeremy Taylor were the greater lights among theological writers; and the essayists were led by Francis Bacon, who wrongfully bears the honors due to Galileo as the father of modern philosophy. He was closely followed by Sir Thomas Browne and Robert Burton. Sir Walter Raleigh and Richard Knolles were the greater historians of the age; and Butler was the eminent satirist.

§ 29. We must remember as one of the greater glories of the period, that our English version of the Bible was, by the authority of James the First, translated from the original Greek and Hebrew. That translation, however, was made upon the basis of that of the "Bishops' Bible," prepared nearly forty years earlier. And that translation was partly the work of Cranmer, in the reign of the boy-king, Edward the Sixth.



## BOOK IX.

### THE RESTORED STUARTS.

[FROM A.D. 1660 TO 1714.]

---

#### CHAPTER I.

REIGN OF CHARLES THE SECOND. [A. D. 1660 TO 1685.]

§ 1. THERE was, doubtless, much sincerity in the joy manifested on the arrival of King Charles the Second, though it sometimes took an extravagant form, such as when a "Master Dobson, a great sufferer for royalty, burnt his windmill as a bonfire." Much of it was doubtless feigned, especially by the Presbyterians, who now coalesced with the royalists for the purpose of turning away kingly wrath from themselves (who had been the original offenders) to fall upon their later adversaries, the Independents and

Anabaptists.<sup>a</sup> Nor were the royalists all jubilant.

<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 232. The better men among them had gloomy forebodings concerning the future of England, for the king, then thirty years of age, was a shameless, heartless, and open profligate, and known to be utterly untruthful. And when, two years after his accession, he married the young Catherine of Braganza, a princess of Portugal, and from the day of her arrival at the palace openly dishonored her by his brutal vileness, it was plainly to be seen that public virtue was in imminent danger from the corruptions of the court, and the State threatened with ruin.

§ 2. The king, as we have seen,<sup>b</sup> had promised a general pardon, subject to such exceptions as the parliament might make. That body, in the excess of their loyalty, were disposed to be less merciful than the monarch, and a large number of the best men in the kingdom were excepted in the Act of Oblivion, which was speedily passed. These were ordered to surrender themselves in humble submission at the feet of his majesty. Some did so, and their lives were spared; but they were stripped of all political rights and possessions, and their families

<sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 443.

Republicans punished.

The Dead dishonored.

A corrupt Alarmist.

were beggared. Others escaped; but ten who attempted to do so, and were caught, were quickly tried and executed, while assassins were employed to destroy others. Among the sufferers was Sir Henry Vane;<sup>a</sup> and even John Milton was imprisoned and threatened with destruction because he had written his "Defence of the English People." Only his friend, Andrew Marvell, and two other admirers of his genius, then in parliament, raised their voices in his favor. They were told that he had been Cromwell's Secretary, and deserved to be hanged. He was finally released after being plundered by the sergeant-at-arms, who called his robberies "fees." Milton was disqualified for public service, and his "Defence of the People of England" was publicly burnt. That House of Commons, swayed by a Presbyterian majority, went further, and disgraced themselves and the nation by ordering the corpses of Cromwell, Bradshaw,<sup>b</sup> and Ireton,<sup>c</sup> with whom these Presbyterians had originally acted, to be dragged from their graves in Westminster Abbey, exposed on gibbets, and then beheaded.

§ 3. In order to gloss this infamy and make republicanism more odious, that base courtier, Lord Clarendon, the eminent chancellor, pretended to have discovered a "horrible plot" for the overthrow of the monarchy. He took the occasion of a little riot in London, led by a half-insane enthusiast named Venner, a wine-cooper and Independent preacher, who declared that there should be no ruler but "King Jesus," to alarm the country. Rumors were put afloat that thousands more of the Independents and Anabaptists were storing arms in every part of the country, and the government made a great display of precautionary measures against insurrection. There really was some reason for suspecting outbreaks, for there was general discontent because of increased taxation and the violation of royal promises. The parliamentary army had been disbanded, and Monk,<sup>d</sup> now rewarded for his treachery to the people by the office of "Lord General," or commander-in-chief, and a coronet as Duke of Albemarle, had retained only such regiments as would do his bidding. The soldiers who were dismissed were naturally discontented, and there were injudicious threats of expelling the king before Christmas.

§ 4. Meanwhile, royalty had been restored in Scotland and Ire-



Affairs in Scotland and Ireland.

Perfidy of King and Parliament.

land. The compliant Scottish assembly, in which the Presbyterians ruled, repudiated the covenant<sup>a</sup> and repealed all the acts that seemed to trench on the royal authority. Republicans were laid under a ban, but only two—the Marquis of Argyle and a preacher named Guthrie—suffered death. Argyle, it was charged, had suggested to Cromwell the necessity of beheading the late king. The Irish parliament occupied themselves mainly in securing the lands that had been wrested from the natives during the Commonwealth, and were less obsequious than either the English or Scotch.

§ 5. Before Charles's first parliament adjourned, they began the business of re-establishing the Church and State upon its old founda-

tions of unity and arbitrary power. In his letter from Breda,<sup>b</sup> the king had declared full “liberty to tender consciences,” and that no man should be disquieted or called in question for differences of opinion in matters of religion which do not disturb the peace of the kingdom. Both king and parliament seemed anxious to ignore this promise, and when a new parliament met, early in May, 1661, the members, composed chiefly of thorough royalists and churchmen, proceeded with a high hand to strengthen the monarchy. They passed acts condemning the

covenant<sup>c</sup> and disposing of the statutes under which the Long Parliament<sup>d</sup> had made war upon the king.

They ordered the liturgy to be used in all places of public worship, and new collects were added to the Book of Common Prayer, in one of which the profane and profligate Charles was styled “our most religious king.” They restored the bishops to seats in the House of Lords, and materially abridged one of the most sacred privileges of the people, the right of petition. A most intolerant conformity bill, known as the Act of Uniformity,

drawn up at the instance of Clarendon,<sup>e</sup> was passed, requiring every minister of the gospel to publicly

declare his assent to everything contained and prescribed in the Prayer-book, and that every preacher who had not received ordination from the hands of a bishop must submit to that rite before the next feast of St. Bartholomew, the 24th of August. By this act “two thousand godly ministers,” as a chronicler asserts, “were driven out of the church on Black Bartholomew's day,” because they would not make their consciences subservient to their temporal interests, as many did. An attempt at reconciliation had

<sup>a</sup> § 25, p. 411.

<sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 443.

<sup>c</sup> § 25, p. 411.

<sup>d</sup> § 27, p. 411.

<sup>e</sup> § 3, p. 457.

Dangerous Coalitions.

Royalist Sufferers discontented.

been made by a conference of nonconformist ministers and bishops of the established church, but it failed because neither party would yield.

§ 6. Up to this time the Presbyterians had regarded the other nonconformists with dislike quite equal to what each felt for the Episcopal Church. Now this persecution reconciled them to the others, who had only carried out the republican principles which the Presbyterians had inculcated. But the latter, rich London merchants and such, kept safe in the background, and supplied ample funds, whilst the bolder Independents and Anabaptists were willing to take the risk of open conflict, should it arise. The parliament tried to meet the danger by passing acts which prohibited meetings under pretence of religious worship, and forbade nonconformists to be members of corporations, or expelled ministers to reside in such towns unless they would take an oath as to their peaceable intentions. This very few of them would do, and the whole body thus very naturally fell under the suspicion of only "biding their time" to renew the calamities of the preceding reign.

§ 7. But the nonconformists were now not the only discontented parties. After so many years of confusion, it was, no doubt, quite impossible to satisfy the claims of all who had suffered in the royal cause, and yet not do injustice to the present holders of offices and lands, as they probably were not the original despoilers. But the difficulty was made the greater by the avarice of Monk,<sup>a</sup> who sold to the highest bidder offices that the king meant to bestow on men who had lost all but life for their loyalty. Their letters and petitions, preserved in the Public Record Office, beside telling tales of almost unexampled suffering and poverty, show how bitterly they felt this. One document, called "the Complaint of the Royal and Loyal Party to the King," speaks out boldly; but it may well be doubted if Charles ever saw it. It says that those who have ruined their fortunes in his cause cannot even get their petitions read by the secretaries at the council table without a bribe, and that they daily see the greatest opposers of the king put in offices of trust for money. The complainants have no large sums to offer, and though they have lost blood and estate in the cause, they must return to their poor homes a joy and a scorn to their adversaries.

§ 8. Of no class was this more true than of the Irish, who, without



Bribery and Favoritism.      The King's Marriage.      Vices and Extravagance.

having been concerned in the insurrection of 1641,<sup>a</sup> had, in later years, embraced the royal cause under the Marquis of Ormond.<sup>b</sup> The Protestants, as has been said, had been the very first to offer their services to the king when his restoration seemed likely, and when this was effected they had such an ascendancy in the Irish parliament that the king's declaration of his intention to do justice between all parties became a dead letter, much to his own discredit. He took a bribe of £100,000, and secured hundreds of thousands of acres of forfeited lands, which he bestowed on his brother James, the Duke of York, the Dukes of Albemarle<sup>c</sup> and Ormond,<sup>d</sup> and on favorites who had no connection whatever with Ireland. This done, he left the whole of the land that was worth having to the Cromwellians on the payment of a small fine, which it was pretended was to furnish a money compensation to those of the loyal Irish who did not receive a few barren acres here and there, but which was, instead, wasted on his profligate pleasures.

§ 9. In the third year of his reign the king married Catherine of Braganza, a Portuguese princess already mentioned,<sup>e</sup> who brought him for her dower, beside a large sum of money, the island of Bombay in the East Indies, and the town of Tangier on the African coast. At about the same time Dunkirk<sup>f</sup> was sold to the King of France, and the proceeds added to the king's private treasure. This act disgusted the entire nation. No sums, however, could be enough for a king so extravagant that he bestowed nearly £140,000 (\$700,000) upon one of his favorites in the course of a single year. To procure means for selfish indulgence he sacrificed alike his own character and the honor of the nation; and he thus at last alienated the affections of even the most loyal, though they felt bound to maintain his throne from a sentiment of duty as well as of interest.

§ 10. Not only to save expense, but because it could not be thoroughly relied upon, the regular army had been disbanded as soon as possible, and some few new troops were raised, of which the Royal Guard was the chief. It was mainly composed of old royalist officers, whose ruined fortunes made them gladly take service in it as "private gentlemen," and it was more a band of attached personal followers of the monarch than an ordinary body

## Royal Guards.

## Warfare with the Dutch.

of troops. The Guards were thus quite prepared to undertake any service that might be required, and they dispersed the religious meetings of the nonconformists known as "Conventicles," hunted after fugitive "regicides" and traitors, and brought in their captives with a zeal inspired by recollections of Naseby<sup>a</sup> and Worcester,<sup>b</sup> which induced many who feared the like fate to seek refuge abroad, but particularly in Holland.

§ 11. The royalists in general regarded the Dutch with dislike, not only from old grievances, when they had been obliged to seek shelter among them, and had been denied it, but because that shelter was now freely given to the republicans and nonconformists. That dislike was manifested by the Duke of York, who, as high admiral and governor of the African Company on the coast of Guinea, ordered the seizure of the Dutch possessions there. The Dutch retaliated in kind, and these troubles led to a war in the year 1665, which was all the more fiercely waged because it was known that the nonconformists naturally prayed for the success of the enemy, and were ready to join them if opportunity offered. The Dutch fleet, however, was signally defeated in Solebay [June 3, 1665] by the Duke of York and Prince Rupert,<sup>c</sup> and thus a meditated invasion of England came to nothing. On suspicion of being concerned in the project of a Dutch invasion, eight of the old republican party were executed. In the next year the Dutch were again defeated by Prince Rupert and Albemarle,<sup>d</sup> and though the French had by this time joined with them, they were soon obliged to sue for peace.

§ 12. In the year before the war [A.D. 1664] the Dutch had suffered aggression at the hands of the same Duke of York. Charles had, without any fair pretence to right, given to his brother the territory in America known as New Netherlands, when the Duke sent a squadron to seize his new possessions. This was done early in September, when the name of the province was changed from New Netherlands to New York.

§ 13. Whilst the negotiations with the Dutch were going on, it was considered so certain that peace would follow, that no naval preparations were made for the ensuing summer, but everything was wasted on the court. De Witt, who was at the head of affairs in Holland, marked this, and was encouraged by the refugees to

<sup>a</sup> § 48, p. 422.<sup>b</sup> § 41, p. 418.<sup>c</sup> § 41, p. 418.<sup>d</sup> § 3, p. 457.



Invasion by the Dutch.

The Plague in London.

Fall of Clarendon.

strike an unexpected blow. Accordingly, a strong Dutch fleet suddenly appeared at the mouth of the Thames in June, 1667, battered down an unfinished fort at Sheerness, which was meant to replace the strong castle of Queensborough, destroyed by Cromwell, and, in full hope of being joined by the adherents of the "old cause," who were still numerous in the navy-yards, sailed up to Chatham, where several large ships lay, protected, as it was thought, by a heavy chain. But treachery had been at work. Some of the dockyard people had cut the chain, and fastened it again with cords. The Dutch, therefore, easily broke through it, burnt all the vessels but the "Royal Charles," and sent that as a

trophy to Holland. Albemarle,<sup>a</sup> on the first alarm,  
<sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 457. hastened to the spot, and by great exertion prevented

a landing being made. The Dutch lingered in the Thames a few days longer, causing such alarm that ships were sunk as high as Blackwall to bar their passage; but they were beaten near Gravesend by Sir Edward Sprague, and retired after threatening Harwich. A peace, which turned out to be little more than a pretence, followed.

§ 14. Whilst this, the first Dutch war, endured, London was most terribly afflicted by the plague, 10,000 people dying in one week [September, 1665], and in a year after the whole city was destroyed by what has ever since been known as the Fire of London. During the same time, too, an insurrection, forced on by the detestable tools of Charles in Church and State, broke out in

the west of Scotland, the stronghold of the covenan-  
<sup>b</sup> § 25, p. 411. ters.<sup>b</sup> But it was soon suppressed.

§ 15. The close of the Dutch war was speedily followed by the fall of the Earl of Clarendon,<sup>c</sup> once (as Mr. Hyde) a

<sup>c</sup> § 3, p. 457.

member of the Long Parliament, but who joined  
<sup>d</sup> § 41, p. 418. Charles I. at Oxford<sup>d</sup> and had accompanied his son

in all his perilous wanderings. He returned with him at the restoration, and for more than seven years, though holding only the legal office of chancellor, was what would now be called the premier. He was avaricious and corrupt to the last degree, and accumulated a vast fortune. The Duke of York had married his daughter under circumstances discreditable to all parties, and he seemed likely, after his adventurous life, to end his days in honor and affluence. But he gave offence to some of the unworthy favorites about the court, and they threatened to impeach him,

The Cabal.

Doings of the French King.

Earl of Shaftesbury.

charging him with corruption in his office, recommending the dissolution of the parliament, and endeavoring to bring in arbitrary power. Charles, though he professed to maintain his old regard for him, had no wish to have a quarrel with his parliament, and therefore all but commanded him to withdraw. He did so, and died in exile; but his two sons became persons of importance in after years, and his two granddaughters sat on the throne.

§ 16. The king now chose a council, something like the modern cabinet, which was called his Cabal, a word formed by a combination of the initials of the names of the five men who composed it. These were Sir William Clifford, Lord Arlington, Duke of Buckingham, Lord Ashley, and Lord Lauderdale. The latter, once a covenanter himself, ruled Scotland in a most tyrannical manner. These persons were regarded as five of the most unprincipled men in the country.

§ 17. At this time Louis the Fourteenth of France was as great an object of alarm to the Protestant States as Philip of Spain had been in the days of Elizabeth,<sup>a</sup> and, at the desire of his parliament, Charles joined the Dutch and the Swedes in an alliance against him in 1668. But this he did only to get money from them as if for war (for he was quite as much a Roman Catholic as a Protestant), as he had already a secret understanding with Louis, by which each was pledged to assist the other's projects. Louis wished to conquer Holland and enlarge his dominions at the expense of Spain; and Charles desired to be free from all control by his parliament, and, beside, to gain more than they would willingly allow for his idle pleasures. His Cabal readily seconded him; and the alliance against France was allowed to become a dead letter. But the pretence was still kept up, and the parliament, deceived by the false king, readily granted a subsidy for a war against the great enemy of Protestantism. This Charles shamelessly expended for his own purposes; and then, to carry out his agreement with Louis, he prepared for war with the Dutch, by seizing on a very large sum of money belonging to the bankers, as his father had done,<sup>b</sup> which again, as formerly, had been lodged in the Tower as a place of security. This was done on the advice of Ashley, who was, as a reward, created Earl of Shaftesbury. Some infringements of the late peace, and, still more, the shelter given to the refugees, afforded a ready pretext for the war, in which the Dutch suffered severely,

<sup>a</sup> § 37, p. 368.<sup>b</sup> § 13, p. 449.



War with the Dutch.

Opposition to Romanists.

Shaftesbury's Movements.

having to contend with the French on land and the Duke of York and Prince Rupert at sea at the same time. After a two years' war, in which their navy was greatly injured, they sued for peace, which they only obtained on hard terms in 1674.

§ 18. Whilst the war was raging, the king gave great alarm to his parliament by dispensing with the laws against the nonconformists. His brother, the Duke of York, had some time before avowed himself a Romanist, and the king was believed to be one also; hence his "indulgence," as it was called, was looked on with great suspicion, as if designed for the advancement of Romanism. From this time what was called the Country Party arose, consisting at first mainly of royalists, whose devotion to the church converted them into opponents of the king's measures whilst retaining their love for his person; but they were joined afterwards by men of very different principles.<sup>1</sup> Shaftesbury, who was the very soul of intrigue and mischief, and had adhered to every party in succession for the last thirty years, until they appeared on the point of falling, now thought it time to join the popular side, and mainly by his means what was known as the Test Act was passed [A.D. 1673], which rendered Romanists incapable of holding office, and obliged the Duke of York to resign his post of

Lord High Admiral.<sup>a</sup> This was greatly resented by the duke, and Shaftesbury, in return, commenced an agitation to exclude him from the throne on account of his religion.

The attempt failed, though Shaftesbury and his associates resorted to the most unscrupulous means to effect their object.

§ 19. The Cabal was driven from office by the parliament shortly before the close of the Dutch war; but Shaftesbury had already separated from them, and become a vehement patriot. He was now the leader of the opposition, never scrupling to attack either his old colleagues or his successor Danby, against whom he brought charges of corruption, but was unable to procure his impeachment. The king tried to stop this by interposing long intervals between

<sup>1</sup> When this occurred the court party styled them Whigs, and they retorted by calling their opponents Tories. These were opprobrious names for disorderly bands in Scotland and Ireland, but they were accepted by each party, and soon replaced the

terms Cavalier and Roundhead<sup>a</sup> of the preceding reign. These names, with similar significance, yet distinguish the court party

in England and their opponents. They were in use during the war for the independence of the Anglo-American colonies [1775 to 1783] to distinguish the loyalists from the republicans.

<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 451.

Titus Oates and his Colleagues.

Excitement against the Romanists.

the successive meetings of parliament; but here again Shaftesbury came forward and declared that a prorogation of fifteen months, which occurred, was in reality a dissolution. The House of Peers sent him to the Tower, and there he remained for a twelvemonth, when he was released on making submission on his knees. That was in February, 1678. He at once began to intrigue for office; and very soon afterward a matter occurred so exactly suited to his purpose that he was suspected of contriving it.

§ 20. In August, 1678, a man named Titus Oates appeared before the council, at the instance of Dr. Tonge, a leading divine, and informed them that the Jesuits had devised a plot to murder the king and all the chief Protestants, and conquer the country by means of help from France—Coleman, the Duke of York's secretary, if not the duke himself, being concerned in it. The council refused to listen to the tale, but Shaftesbury eagerly adopted it. Oates swore to his story before a magistrate, with some startling additions, and when, a few days afterwards, that magistrate (Sir Edmund Berry Godfrey) was found dead in the fields, this was taken as a certain token of its truth, and that the Protestant massacre had already begun. The parliament at once assembled, and under this excitement passed an act which excluded Roman Catholics from a seat in their assembly. Then five Romish peers were sent to the Tower, and Coleman, the duke's secretary, and three priests, were executed. So fierce did the frenzy of alarm become, that any one who appeared to cast a doubt on the reality of the plot ran imminent risk of being hanged as concerned in it.

§ 21. The rewards that were showered on Oates brought forward a band of systematic perjurers, who went even beyond his story, by accusing the queen of a design to poison the king, and on their testimony three of her servants were executed as the murderers of the magistrate, though there was every reason to suppose that he had committed suicide.

§ 22. Shaftesbury was now forced on the king by the parliament and became president of the council. Under his auspices Oates or Tonge, Dangerfield, Dugdale, or Bedloe—all, even before this, men of infamous character—swore away the lives of thirteen more priests, and were handsomely paid for their services. Oates and Tonge, who were clergymen of the established church, were lodged in the palace at Whitehall, and attended by a guard; but whilst Oates received £12 a week, Tonge, his subordinate, only



Bad Men rewarded.

Anti-Popish Tumult.

A Strange Parliament.

had an occasional £50, as "of the king's bounty," the last sum of the kind being paid early in the year 1680 for his burial. Bedloe, as the great accuser of the queen, was valued almost as highly as Oates, and long continued in the receipt of £10 a week; but the minor villains, Dangerfield and Dugdale, had only £2 or £3 weekly, which, however, they added to by sending in heavy bills, every now and then, for their "expenses about the plot," or for such "further discoveries" as their patrons called for.

§ 23. At last, after two years' endurance, the frenzy began to abate; and Sir George Wakeman, the queen's physician, and three monks, though accused by the whole tribe of perjurers, were acquitted. Shaftesbury was soon afterward dismissed by the king, when he revenged himself by procuring a great anti-popery tumult in London. As that did not effect his restoration, he next attempted to indict the Duke of York as a Romish recusant, which would have entailed the forfeiture of his estate. In this, too, he failed; but there was still belief enough in the plot to procure the condemnation and execution of Lord Stafford, an aged Romanist, in 1680. The king avowed his belief in his innocence, but could not venture to spare his life. Indeed, so vehement was the feeling, that when Charles, as was customary in the case of noblemen, mitigated the horrible sentence for treason to beheading, Lord William Russell, and Cornish, the city sheriff, had the barbarity to question his right to do so.

§ 24. A new parliament met early in the following year [A.D. 1681] and from a well-founded idea of some violent measure by Shaftesbury and his associates, it was ordered to assemble, not as usual at Westminster, where they would have the turbulent Londoners at their call, but at Oxford, where loyalty was in the ascendant. They came with large bodies of armed followers, and one vehement orator, Stephen College, who was known as the "Protestant joiner" and the inventor of a "pocket flail for good Protestants to defend themselves with against the Jesuits," made himself conspicuous. Ribald rhymes, of which he was believed to be the author, were sung in the hearing of the king, which so

enraged the royal guard<sup>a</sup> that during the time the parliament lasted it was with difficulty they could be

withheld from cutting him down; and he was said to have recommended an attack on the Guards, which he did not venture to carry out.

<sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 460.

Shaftesbury's Schemes defeated.    Rebellion in Scotland.    Revolutionary Party.

§ 25. The parliament was entirely under Shaftesbury's control, and fully bent on carrying a bill to exclude the Duke of York from the throne. The king, seeing their power, offered to make any concession they might ask instead of this; but his brother, who had shared his exile, he would not forsake. Finding them resolved on their own course, he dismissed them in a week, and, returning to London, published an address to his people, showing them the real designs of these men, which, if carried out, could only lead to a more desperate war than that which the Long Parliament had waged. The result answered his expectations. No reasonable man wished to see the government pass into the hands of Shaftesbury and his associates, and these self-elected leaders of the nation found themselves at once abandoned. Legal proceedings were taken. The Protestant joiner was executed as a traitor; and Shaftesbury, after offering the most humiliating submissions, only escaped the same fate by fleeing to Holland, where he died, 1683, despised as a baffled incendiary.

§ 26. Shortly before this a rebellion had been attempted in Scotland, the chief event that marked it being the assassination of Archbishop Sharp, who, assisted by the infamous <sup>a § 16, p. 463.</sup> Lauderdale, had terribly persecuted the nonconformists. After this the Duke of York was sent to govern the country, where he remained a considerable time, and re-established the royal authority, in spite of the opposition of the Earl of Argyll (the son of the marquis executed twenty years before),<sup>b</sup> who was tried and convicted, but escaped to Holland in <sup>b § 4, p. 457.</sup> 1681.

§ 27. The so-called popular party had always been strong in the city of London, and they were now made to feel that they had the worst of the conflict. The city charters were declared forfeited on the ground of imposing an illegal toll, and when they were regranted it was with such alterations as made the magistracy dependent on the king, instead of being, as had long been the case, usually the bitter opponent of the government. The same course was taken with several other corporations, for similar reasons.

§ 28. The revolutionary party now resolved on a desperate stroke for power. The king had a natural son, whom he had created Duke of Monmouth, and the idea of a general insurrection was entertained to compel him to declare this young man his successor



A Revolution attempted.      The Leaders executed.      Death of King Charles.

instead of the Duke of York. In this scheme the Lord William Russell already mentioned,<sup>a</sup> the Earl of Essex, Algernon Sydney, who was an exiled republican, and a temporary pensioner of France, and John Hampden, the grandson of the Hampden of the Long Parliament,<sup>b</sup> fully concurred. But others of their party, as Rumbold, Ayliffe, Armstrong, and Ferguson, planned another way of securing the succession by assassinating the king and the duke on their journey between Newmarket and London. The scheme (which is known as the Rye-house Plot, from Rumbold's house, the intended scene of murder) miscarried, and Russell, Sidney, and several others suffered as traitors. Monmouth was pardoned, but for very shame soon fled to Holland.

§ 29. The triumph of the king was now [A.D. 1664] complete, but he did not live long after. The Romish lords, who had been long imprisoned, were set free. Titus Oates was convicted of libelling the Duke of York, and sentenced to such damages as must render him a prisoner for life; and a similar fate befell Samuel Johnson, who had published a book called "Julian the Apostate," also meant to reflect on the duke. The king, now feeling that he, and not his parliament, was the master, dispensed with the Test Act,<sup>c</sup> and restored the duke to all his offices. Many of the rich London citizens were heavily fined, and poorer men set in the pillory, for seditious speeches; and the Rye-house plotters<sup>d</sup> were sought for even in the West Indies, brought home, and executed.

§ 30. Charles did not enjoy the pleasures of absolute rule. He died somewhat suddenly at the palace of St. James, on the 6th of February, 1685, having been formally reconciled to the Church of Rome by the priest John Huddleston, who had preserved his life after the battle of Worcester, so many years before.<sup>e</sup>

§ 31. The character of Charles furnishes ample scope for both blame and pity. It is evident that he was originally of a kind and docile nature; but the inheritance of a taste for vicious company and self-indulgence, combined with the temptations incident to his wanderings in early life, made him a profligate of the worst type, to the gratification of whose desires everything else was made to give way. Occasionally he would rouse himself, and show courage, energy, and generosity, which made his ordinary sloth

Character of Charles the Second.

Accession of James the Second.

and neglect of the duties of his position all the more lamentable. He had, too, such grace of manner, and such readiness in acknowledging the services of his old adherents, that they considered him less to blame than his ministers for the neglect that they experienced. This was undoubtedly true. Their distress was often relieved when the old cavalier or his widow or orphans could get their petitions into the king's own hand without the intervention of ministers or secretaries. His Secret Service accounts remain, and the sums therein entered as "the king's free gift and royal bounty" to loyal sufferers are very considerable. The deepest stain on his character is his cowardice and insincerity in the matter of his fellow-Romanists. Though he stated his belief in their innocence, he sacrificed their lives to his own safety; and he never hesitated to declare himself a member of the Church of England whilst he had any purpose to serve by the deceit. It was only in the last moments of his life that he was prevailed on to drop the mask and avow that he was a Roman Catholic.

---

## CHAPTER II.

REIGN OF JAMES THE SECOND. [A.D. 1685 TO 1689.]

§ 1. So soon as Charles the Second was dead, his brother and successor, James Duke of York, hastened to the council and declared that he would ever maintain the established government both in Church and State. On the same afternoon [Feb. 6, 1685] he was publicly proclaimed king, and as it was known that he was somewhat less vicious than his brother, or at least more quiet and secret in his profligacy, the people answered with acclamations, and not a shadow of opposition appeared. "In the evening," says a cotemporary, "there was great kissing of hands at Whitehall," in which the queen (Anne Hyde, daughter of the Earl of Clarendon)<sup>a</sup> had a fair share. With many gracious words James bade the ministers and great officers of his brother to retain their places.

<sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 457.

§ 2. James had less winning manners than his brother, but he had the character of a man whose word was sacred; and every one, including even the old exclusionists, seemed willing to put



James's fair Beginning.

King of France and Prince of Orange.

the most favorable construction on his conduct. He tried the fidelity of churchmen by going in state to mass, and by releasing a large number of Roman Catholics and Quakers, who were both imprisoned for refusing, though from very different motives, to take the oaths imposed by parliament.<sup>1</sup> But he made amends for this by being crowned, with his queen, according to the Protestant ceremonial, by Sancroft, Archbishop of Canterbury. Both the English and the Scottish parliaments met soon after his accession, and they seemed to vie with each other as to which should show the most confidence in him. But this fair prospect was soon overcast.

§ 3. Louis the Fourteenth of France was now at the height of his power, and the other States saw little hope of checking him unless the new king of England could be induced to join with them. This he was not likely to do, for he had already become a pensioner of France, as his brother had been. The real leader of the league of Protestant States against Louis was William, Prince of Orange, James's nephew, and also his son-in-law. He had married James's daughter, Mary, in 1677; and as his wife was the presumptive heir to the throne—the king having then no son—he had a plausible reason for taking a deep interest in English affairs. He was also Stadtholder of Holland, and the flocking thither of the disaffected from England and Scotland was supposed to be by no means displeasing to him. The Dutch ambassadors at James's court served as a safe means of communication between the refugees in Holland and the revived exclusionist party at home. Though William professed unbounded respect for his father-in-law, he took such good care never to attempt to check any enterprises against him until it was too late, that he labors under the imputation of being quite ready to profit by them if successful, even if they did not originate with him.

§ 4. No sooner was James's accession known in Holland than the various bands of refugees there began to prepare for an attack on him. Far more from their rank than their talents, the Duke of Monmouth and the Earl of Argyle were regarded as their chiefs, but neither could make up his mind to serve under the other, and therefore two separate expeditions were resolved on. Strangely enough, Fletcher of Saltoun, a zealous republican and a Scotchman, chose to go with Monmouth, who

<sup>1</sup> The Roman Catholics would not take the oath of the king's supremacy; <sup>a</sup> the Quakers would not take any oath at all.

<sup>a</sup> 2 29, p. 330.

Expeditions against King James defeated.

The Leaders.

prided himself on his royal blood; whilst Rumbold, an old parliamentary soldier, and Ayloffe, an infidel lawyer, two of the Rye-house plotters,<sup>a</sup> cast in their lot with Argyle,<sup>b</sup> who, after what his sect esteemed many “sinful compliances” with prelacy, was now a Presbyterian and a covenanter of the class that had fled at Marston-moor<sup>c</sup> from the cavaliers, and at Dunbar<sup>d</sup> from the round-heads.

§ 5. In spite of the remonstrances of James’s agent, the expeditions were prepared without any hindrance from the Dutch. Argyle was first ready; but the project was hopeless from the first, not only because he was betrayed by a spy, but from the jealousy of his followers, who allowed him merely the name and not the authority of a leader; for whilst they wished to dethrone the king, they thought he would be well content if he could recover his forfeited estates.<sup>e</sup> He sailed from Holland early in May, 1685, with a small fleet, and repaired to the west of Scotland, where he was joined by many of the common men of his clan, the Campbells; but the gentry had been seized by the government, and other clans and some militia opposed him. After a few slight skirmishes his force melted away, and he was taken prisoner, as were Rumbold and Ayloffe. They all suffered shortly afterward.

§ 6. Whilst this rising was being crushed the parliament had met, and had settled a revenue for life on the king. They had also granted a liberal sum for the navy, when their deliberations were suddenly interrupted by the news that the Duke of Monmouth had landed with a small force at Lyme, in Dorsetshire, on the 11th of June. Following the precedent of Tudor times, he was at once attainted by act of parliament, on the strength of a letter from the Mayor of Lyme, and the sworn testimony of the messengers who had brought it that they had seen him in arms.

§ 7. Monmouth’s insurrection was suppressed almost as easily as Argyle’s, but it was far more severely punished. He had only eighty men with him, but he brought arms for many more, and on his landing he was soon joined by about 6,000 of the nonconformists, who abounded in the west of England. They were mostly cloth-workers and other poor workingmen; though many wealthy traders were heavily fined as his partisans, after the rebellion was suppressed. After a few days spent in trying to disci-

<sup>a</sup> § 28, p. 467.<sup>b</sup> § 26, p. 467.<sup>c</sup> § 46, p. 421.<sup>d</sup> § 7, p. 420.<sup>e</sup> § 26, p. 467.



Duke of Monmouth's Invasion.

His fate.

Judge Jeffreys.

pline his disorderly host, he moved to Taunton, where, having assumed the title of king, he published a declaration charging "James, Duke of York," with every imaginable atrocity, and offering a price for his head. Then he attempted to surprise Bristol, but the Duke of Beaufort held it against him with a body of militia. After a few days more of purposeless wandering about he repaired to Bridgewater, a town marked as particularly Puritanical during the civil war.

§ 8. By this time the royal troops had reached the open plain of Sedgmoor, a few miles off, and Monmouth had the folly to make a night attack on them [July 6, 1685] in their quarters. This, as might have been expected, miserably failed, and he was the first to flee. His men held their ground till full 1,000 of them fell, when they also fled, and the royal general, who was a Frenchman,<sup>1</sup> accustomed to the barbarous warfare of the Continent, summarily executed many of his prisoners on the field. Meanwhile Monmouth, with only two companions, tried to make his way to the coast. He was seized on the borders of the New Forest, and carried to London. At his own urgent request he was brought before the king, and pleaded piteously for life on any terms, even offering to become a Romanist, so that he might live a little longer. But he had accused the king of causing the Fire of London,<sup>a</sup> of murdering Sir Edmund Berry Godfrey,<sup>b</sup> and of poisoning

<sup>a</sup> § 14, p. 462.

<sup>b</sup> § 20, p. 465.

his own brother, and it can hardly be wondered at that he was left to the fate that he had so rashly and wantonly provoked. Some few of his followers who could give useful information against others were allowed thus to earn their lives, but the great body were most severely dealt with, though James did not act so mercilessly as Henry the Eighth and Elizabeth had done under less provocation; for the

<sup>c</sup> § 33, p. 321.

<sup>d</sup> § 22, p. 362.

leaders of the Pilgrimage of Grace<sup>c</sup> and the Northern Rebellion<sup>d</sup> had not charged them personally with murder.

§ 9. Sir George Jeffreys, a judge who had long been accustomed to try criminals at the Old Bailey, made the circuit of the West, holding what, even to this day, bears the name of the "Bloody Assize." He was a man of coarse and brutal nature,

<sup>1</sup> Louis de Duras, a nephew of the celebrated Marshal Turenne. He bore the title of Earl of Faversham, which he had acquired through marrying the heiress of the Sondes family.

Englishmen made Slaves.

The Test Act.

Edict of Nantes revoked.

and seems to have found a pleasure in his repulsive task, in the course of which he hanged 320 persons. Following the cruel example of the parliament in 1651, he ordered above 800 others to be sent as slaves to the West Indies; and what rendered this the more odious was, that the unhappy creatures were granted to court favorites, who made a shameful gain by selling them to the planters, or extorting ruinous sums for pardons from the few that had anything to give. Some of Monmouth's London partisans were also executed, Cornish the sheriff, formerly mentioned,<sup>a</sup> being one of them. Two women also were executed for sheltering fugitives, and their fate excited much compassion. One of them, indeed, was supposed to suffer rather for her husband's offences than her own, she being the widow of the famous "regicide" John Lisle;<sup>b</sup> and the other was betrayed into the hands of the law by the vile wretch that she had succored. For his services in this melancholy business Jeffreys was made lord chancellor.

<sup>a</sup> § 23, p. 466.<sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 433.

§ 10. James had adjourned his parliament when the rebellion broke out, in order that the members might be at liberty to take up arms in his cause if needful, which they were quite ready to do. When they assembled again, he told them that he had been obliged to employ several Romanist officers against the rebels, and having had good service from them, he could not in honor dismiss them; therefore he had dispensed with the Test Act<sup>c</sup> in their favor. He also said that the militia had proved that it could not be trusted, and so he desired a large grant of money to keep a body of regular troops in pay. Both these statements were very displeasing to the parliament. They murmured, and at last granted only one-half of the required sum. The king, after trying in vain to bring their leading men over to his views by personally conferring with them, dismissed them in anger, and they met no more in his reign.

<sup>c</sup> § 18, p. 464.

§ 11. Just at this time Louis the Fourteenth revoked the Edict of Nantes,<sup>d</sup> and in consequence many thousands of French Protestants repaired to England, bringing some useful arts with them, and also filling the country with complaints of the cruelty and bad faith of their Romish sovereign. James acted with kindness to them; but this could not remove the impression that even truly loyal men had already begun to entertain, that both their liberties and their religion were exposed to

<sup>d</sup> § 48, p. 313.



The King induced to re-establish Romanism.

danger at his hands; and some of the clergy, as a mode of showing their distrust, kept their churches closed on the anniversary of his accession.

§ 12. Governments are usually strengthened by unsuccessful rebellions; but it was not so with James, owing to his being in the hands of a treacherous adviser, who afterwards boasted of having purposely induced him to take the steps that led to his ruin. This was his secretary, Robert Spencer, Earl of Sunderland, a man as

base as Shaftesbury himself,<sup>a</sup> who, with the help of

<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 463. Edward Petre, a Jesuit, pushed him on to attack the Church of England, which had suffered so much for his family, and to make efforts for the re-establishment of Romanism. This all moderate Roman Catholics, the papal nuncio, and even the Pope himself, tried in vain to dissuade him from. Sunderland and Petre knew that the king distrusted parliaments, saying that his father had made concessions to them and had lost his head, and they persuaded him not to summon one. They knew also that his heart was bent on raising up his own church, and they easily persuaded him that the Church of England would feel bound by its doctrine of non-resistance, and would never oppose him, let him act as he might.

§ 13. Fortified by this dishonest advice, James now openly dispensed not only with the Test Act,<sup>b</sup> but with the Act of Uniformity,<sup>c</sup> by granting dispensations to a few

<sup>b</sup> § 18, p. 464.

<sup>c</sup> § 5, p. 458.

clergymen, who had become Roman Catholics, still to hold their benefices in spite of its enactments. He bestowed a pension of £1,000 on Bishop Leybourne, a Romish ecclesiastic, and gave large sums for the support of chapels, where priests and monks, not content with proclaiming their own doctrines, attacked those of the church, whilst its preachers were commanded not to reply, on pain of the royal displeasure. Dr. John Sharp, a London clergyman, disobeyed this most unwise order, on which the bishop was commanded to suspend him from his benefice. The bishop, Dr. Compton, alleged that he had no legal power to do so, on which, in defiance of an express statute, a Court of Ecclesiastical Commission was created, by which the bishop himself was suspended from office, though the property of his see was not interfered with.

§ 14. Next, James's own coachman was employed to bring an action for penalties against Sir Edward Hales, a Roman Catholic

Offices filled by Roman Catholics.

Roman Catholics in the Privy Council.

gentleman of Kent, for accepting a military commission, when the judges decided that the king had the power to dispense with the ordinary oaths. In consequence of this decision a large number of Romanists received commissions; and when, in the summer of 1636, a camp was formed on Hounslow-heath, almost all the officers were of that persuasion, many of them being recent converts to what was called, not Catholicism, which was thought too civil, nor popery, which was thought too rude, but “the king’s religion.” Here mass was publicly said, at first in the tents of the chief officers, Lord Faversham and Lord Dunbarton, but soon a large chapel was built, to which the king and most of his courtiers ordinarily repaired.

§ 15. One man was found to speak out what so many others felt, and he suffered accordingly. This was Samuel Johnson, who was already in prison for libelling the king when Duke of York.<sup>a</sup> He now wrote “A Humble and Hearty Address to all English Protestants in the Army,” which was widely distributed in the camp. Some expressions were thought to recommend regicide, and it plainly justified taking up arms in defence of “the Bible, the Great Charter, and the Bill of Rights.” Johnson was degraded from the priesthood and whipped through the streets, and many who entirely disapproved of the king’s proceedings, had yet little sympathy with such an assailant.

§ 16. Strong in his conviction of the fidelity of his army, the king now openly restored the profession of Romanism. Convents were founded in different parts of London, and the Jesuits opened two great schools, to which their known skill in teaching attracted even Protestant scholars. Several Romish peers were sworn of the privy council, and Sunderland avowed his conversion. At Oxford, John Massey, a Romanist, was, by virtue of the dispensing power, admitted as dean of one of the colleges (Christ Church), and Obadiah Walker, the master of another university, opened a chapel where mass was publicly celebrated. Thus stood affairs at the end of the second year of the king’s reign.

§ 17. When James came to the throne, the Duke of Ormond<sup>b</sup> was recalled from Ireland, which he had ruled for more than twenty years, and was succeeded as lord-lieutenant by the Earl of Clarendon, who was the king’s brother-in-law; but the real power was in the hands of Richard Talbot, Earl of Tyrconnel, the general. Talbot was a vehement Romanist,

<sup>a</sup> § 8, p. 459.<sup>b</sup> § 8, p. 459.



Affairs in Ireland.

Breach with the Established Church.

whose object was to raise a Romish army to assist James in his projects on England, and to make Ireland a secure retreat for him should these fail. Clarendon was therefore displaced [A.D. 1687], and Talbot was made lord deputy, which put both the civil and the military power in his hands. He had long avowed his desire to overturn the iniquitous settlement of the land that Charles had,

<sup>a</sup> § 8, p. 459. for a bribe, consented to,<sup>a</sup> and the Protestants now

<sup>b</sup> § 34, p. 415. flocked over to England, exclaiming that another Irish massacre<sup>b</sup> was impending, and increasing the distrust of the king and his Romish counsellors that was now everywhere entertained.

§ 18. Unwarned by these signs, and pushed on by Sunderland and Petre, the king now took the steps that soon brought about an open breach with the Anglican Church, and his own ruin. In these proceedings he had the support of four bishops—Cartwright of Chester, Crewe of Durham, Parker of Oxford, and Sprat of Rochester—all weak, unprincipled men who had once been Puritans, but had joined the Episcopal Church when it was in the ascendant, and were willing to assist in even the worst measures rather than hazard their preferments. His first step was to issue a declaration of liberty of conscience for Romanists and nonconformists, which, however, was but coldly received, the real intention, as in the case of Charles's "indulgence," being but too evident. Then the University of Cambridge was ordered to confer a degree on Alban Francis, a monk, and on its refusal, Dr. Peachell, the vice-chancellor, was deprived of office. Next, Anthony Farmer, a man of bad character, who had been first a churchman, then a dissenter, and now professed to be a Romanist, was recommended to the fellows of Magdalen College, Oxford, for their president. They declined to comply, and chose John Hough, who had been the chaplain of the Duke of Ormond in Ireland.

<sup>c</sup> § 13, p. 474. They were summoned before the Ecclesiastical Commission,<sup>c</sup> and threatened by Jeffreys,<sup>d</sup> who was at

<sup>d</sup> § 9, p. 47. its head, but declined to give way. At last a board of visitors was sent to Oxford, who broke open their doors, drove Hough and the fellows out by force, and placed Parker, the bishop, in possession, Farmer being allowed even by them to be unworthy of the office. This violent interference with property was taken as an indication that the subject was considered to have no absolute right in anything if the king chose to take it

Pope's Nuncio officially received.

Army disaffected.

Revolution.

from him, and it raised a storm that could never afterwards be allayed.

§ 19. The king, however, was easily persuaded that he had triumphed. He re-established the camp at Hounslow, filled every corporation with Roman Catholics or Dissenters, as all nonconformists were now called, gave orders to summon a parliament, and received the papal nuncio in state. Nobles and gentlemen who had hitherto supported him, now resigned office; but he filled up their places with Romanists, and made a progress through the country, where, strangely enough, he was generally well received. So well, indeed, that early in the following year [A.D. 1688] he not only again issued his declaration for liberty of conscience, but ordered that every clergyman should read it in his church on two following Sundays. Sancroft, Archbishop of Canterbury, and six other bishops,<sup>1</sup> presented a petition to the king in his closet, representing that they could not in conscience direct their clergy to obey this order. Instead of listening to them he sent them to the Tower, and soon afterward had them tried for a libel. They were acquitted, and James's fate was sealed.

§ 20. The soldiers in his camp rejoiced in his hearing at the result. Churchmen and Dissenters, Whigs and Tories, were for a time united; and a body of seven "Liberals," as they would now be called,<sup>2</sup> who had long secretly communicated with the Prince of Orange,<sup>a</sup> and shaped their conduct to advance his views, now openly invited him to come with an army to deliver the country from "popery and slavery." The Prince had long expected this, and therefore was prepared for it. He soon after published a declaration, saying that he would come to procure the holding of a free parliament, which should secure the rights and liberties of Englishmen, and should also investigate the birth of a son that had just been born to the king—a matter in which the princess his wife was deeply interested. This declaration, backed as it was by the assembling of a

<sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 470.

<sup>1</sup> William Lloyd, of St. Asaph; Thomas Ken, of Bath and Wells; Sir Jonathan Trelawney, of Bristol; John Lake, of Chichester; Francis Turner, of Ely; and Thomas White, of Peterborough.

<sup>2</sup> They were the Earls of Danby, Devonshire, and Shrewsbury; Lord Lumley Compton, Bishop of London; Henry Sydney, and Edward Russell. All had received some personal affront or injury from the king, and Sidney had seen his brother, and Russell his cousin, lose their heads on the scaffold.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 28, p. 467.



The King alarmed.

Arrival of the Prince of Orange.

King deserted.

fleet and army in Holland, and by riots in London, where the new Roman Catholic chapels were destroyed, caused the king to retrace his late steps. He restored their charters to London and

<sup>a</sup> § 13, p. 474.

<sup>b</sup> § 18, p. 476.

<sup>c</sup> § 12, p. 475.

other towns, dissolved the Ecclesiastical Commission,<sup>a</sup> replaced the president and fellows of Magdalen,<sup>b</sup> and parted with his treacherous advisers Sunderland and Petre.<sup>c</sup> But it was now too late.

§ 21. William sailed from Holland, and, driven by a strong east wind, that kept James's fleet in the Thames, and also hindered Tyrconnel sending troops from Ireland, passed down the Channel, and landed his whole force without opposition at Torbay, in Devonshire, on the 5th of November, 1688. No one joined him at first, as he had been expected to land in Yorkshire. But the signers of the invitation were busy in various parts of the country raising forces, and, worse still for the king, the officers of the royal army were not to be relied on. Lord Cornbury, the king's nephew, set the example of desertion, and was soon followed by Prince George of Denmark, his son-in-law (husband of his daughter Anne), by Lord Churchill, and others. The king, who had joined his troops at Salisbury, now returned in alarm to London, only to learn that his daughter Anne had fled to the insurgents, escorted by Bishop Compton, her tutor, who in this extremity resumed the buff coat and jack-boots of a trooper.<sup>1</sup> "God help me," he cried; "even my own children have forsaken me!" And from this time forward he thought only of securing the safety of his wife and infant child by sending them out of the country.

§ 22. To gain time for this he allowed commissioners to proceed to the prince at Hungerford, when an agreement was made that the invaders should remain at the distance of forty miles from London on one side, and the king's troops as far off in the opposite direction, so that "a free parliament" might meet. But James did not intend to wait for that. He sent his queen and son away by night to France, and followed them in disguise a day later [December 11], but he was stopped near Faversham, being taken for a Romish priest. After a few days' detention there, he was brought back to London, much to the discontent of the Prince and his adherents.

§ 23. As soon as James's flight was known, a number of the peers

<sup>1</sup> He was a son of the Earl of Northampton, and had served in the royal guard in his youth.

King flees to France. Provisional Government. William and Mary proclaimed.

assembled, and, in concert with the citizens of London, invited William to provide for the public security. Jeffreys<sup>a</sup> was seized whilst endeavoring to escape disguised as a sailor, and placed in the Tower, where he died soon afterward. Sunderland and Petre, the papal nuncio, and Bishop Cartwright, had already escaped. On James's return the Dutch troops marched into London, and he was peremptorily ordered to take up his residence at Ham, near Richmond. He obtained permission to go to Rochester instead. Here, if not before, he learned that a plan of imprisoning him abroad had been proposed, and, against the advice of some of his firmest adherents, he at once abandoned the contest and fled to France, where he and his family were most cordially received by Louis the Fourteenth.

§ 24. On the flight of the king government authority was assumed by the House of Lords as soon as they could assemble. About ninety bishops and peers met on the 25th of December, as an Hereditary Senatorial Council. After having declared the throne to be vacant, and asserted that the rule of a Romish prince was not consistent with the welfare of a Protestant State, they requested William of Orange, who was a good soldier, an able statesman, and a firm Protestant, to take the control of public affairs. About one hundred and fifty persons, who had sat in Parliament during the reign of Charles the Second, met the next day as a House of Commons; and so a provisional government was formed. At the request of this government William issued writs for a Convention on the 22d of January following. It met. Long discussions followed. Some did not think it proper to alter the line of succession. They would have a regency to carry on the government until James's son, then seven months old, should be of age. So thought Sancroft, the Archbishop of Canterbury. Others wished to make James's daughter, the Princess Mary,<sup>b</sup> queen. But her husband soon let it be plainly seen that nothing short of the crown for himself would satisfy him.

§ 25. It was at length agreed that, for form's sake, the princess should be associated with him. She had no reluctance thus to supplant her father; and accordingly they were proclaimed King and Queen of England, France, and Ireland on the 13th of February, 1689. The Scottish crown was tendered to and accepted by them a short time afterward. In each case a Declaration of Right, enumerating what were claimed as the ancient liberties of the



Monarchy on a new basis.

Malcontents and Jacobites.

people, was presented, and its observance sworn to by the new rulers. This was far more full and explicit than the promises of good government that former sovereigns had given at their coronation. From this time forward the monarchy was established upon the basis, not of divine right or hereditary succession, but of defined rights and duties; and what the Long Parliament had in vain attempted was at length brought to pass. The new sovereigns were crowned in April [1689], when the ceremony was attended with great public rejoicings.

---

### CHAPTER III.

REIGN OF WILLIAM AND MARY. [A.D. 1689 TO 1694.]

§ 1. THE apparent unity of parties after the flight of James and the coming of William of Orange was deceptive. The ultra-royalists, Romanists, and High Churchmen hoped that William would, after "securing the liberties of the English people," as he proposed to do, in some way reinstate his father-in-law as the legitimate sovereign of the realm, but so hedged by constitutional restraints as to guarantee those liberties. They were sorely disappointed; and when William and Mary were enthroned, the malcontents asserted that the prince, from the beginning, had intended to secure the crown for himself. Very soon the partisans of James, who were called "Jacobites" (Jacobus being the Latin of James), began to plot for the overthrow of the new monarchs, and they were beset with difficulties from the outset.

§ 2. James had many adherents, especially in Scotland and Ireland; and a large number of subjects refused to renounce their allegiance to him. There was disaffection in the army also. It appeared when two Scotch regiments refused to obey orders, on the ground that they were amenable only to the Estates of Scotland, and broke out into open mutiny. They were speedily arrested and conducted to London, when the king pardoned them, but put them out of the way of temptation by sending them to serve in Holland. It was a salutary and needful lesson to prevent insubordination in the army at a critical time, for there was actual insurrection in Ireland, threatened insurrection in Scotland, and

William's Policy.

War with France.

Victory at La Hogue.

impending war with France. All these William was called upon to deal promptly with. Fortunately the parliament was true to his cause, and seconded his measures. It was a whig<sup>a</sup> assembly, and made the Long Parliament<sup>b</sup> its guide.

<sup>a</sup> § 18, p. 464.<sup>b</sup> § 27, p. 411.

§ 3. Personally William was unpopular. He was cold, austere, and sometimes sullen in his manner. He did not speak the English language well. He was surrounded by foreigners to the exclusion of native-born Englishmen. And the wise measure of placing his own tried and experienced officers in command of English troops, created a national jealousy which was detrimental to the public welfare. And so it was that, from the beginning of his reign, William was compelled to meet discontent, opposition, and treachery. He was soon made aware of the fact that he was disliked, and took no pains to appease the uneasiness. He resolved to teach his new subjects that in him they had a stern master. It was a resolution that brought him much trouble.

§ 4. War with France followed immediately on William's accession, but the first battles fought were discouraging. Admiral Herbert had an indecisive action with the French in Bantry Bay, in May, 1689, but it was so nearly a victory that he was created Earl of Torrington. In the following year, however, he sustained a severe defeat near Beachy Head, and the French remained for some time masters of the English Channel. The Dutch suffered greatly in the action; and William, believing that they had been sacrificed to national jealousy, dismissed Torrington. The chief command in the navy was then given to Admiral Russell, one of the many men employed by William, who, it was said, had no faith in the stability of his government, and who therefore served him only by halves, and kept up a correspondence with James, their old master. He, however, gained a victory at La Hogue [May 19, 1692], which hindered an intended invasion of England by the French; but an unsuccessful attack on St. Malo afterward caused Russell to fall into disgrace, and he was removed.

§ 5. The first positive opposition to William's rule came from men who had suffered from James, but who professed not to believe that any earthly power could relieve them from the oaths that they had sworn to him. The chief of these were Sancroft<sup>c</sup> and seven other bishops, who declined to take the oaths to the new government, though the

<sup>c</sup> § 24, p. 479.



Disaffection of Churchmen.      Favorites rewarded.      Civil War in Scotland.

penalty was the forfeiture of their sees. About 400 other High Church clergymen followed their example, at the like sacrifice, and a much larger number of laymen also refused the oaths. Thus was formed a body of men in the State that existed for nearly a century, and was known as the Nonjurors. These men declined to acknowledge William for conscience' sake, but they were not the most formidable opponents of his government.

<sup>a</sup> § 20, p. 477. These were found among the men who had invited him,<sup>a</sup> and had taken office under him, but who were now engaged in ceaseless intrigues against him. William, however, was a keen observer. He knew their baseness, and though he found it convenient to employ them, he gave his confidence only to a few old friends who had accompanied him from Holland, and on whom he lavished wealth and honors without limit.

§ 6. In the first three years of William's reign, forfeited lands in Ireland, to the annual value of £200,000, came into his hands, and were meant to be sold to meet the expenses of the war; but he lavished much the greater part on the foreigners in his employ, to support the new titles he had conferred upon them, beside giving them every considerable post in his court. One especial favorite, Bentinck, whom he had created Earl of Portland, received also the greater part of a Welsh county; and King James's private estate (worth £26,000 a year) was bestowed on Elizabeth Villiers, another favorite, who was created Countess of Orkney. This system was carried to such an extravagant extent that at last [A.D. 1699] the parliament interfered, and insisted on the grants being revoked; but as those who had received them were allowed to keep all that they had drawn from them for years, any services that they had rendered were amply repaid.

§ 7. Though there was deep discontent through the whole of William's reign, accompanied by several plots against his life, there was yet no open resistance to his authority in England. But in Scotland, within a very few months after his accession, a civil war broke out, headed by General Graham of Claverhouse, a devoted partisan of King James, who had created him Viscount Dundee. Dundee had served abroad with renown, and was afterward employed in repressing the proceedings of the freedom-loving Covenanters, though his wife belonged to a noted Puritan family, the Cochrans. As Graham of Claverhouse, or more commonly "Bloody Clavers," he and his dragoons were objects of mingled

A Violent Persecutor.

Civil War in Ireland.

fear and hatred, and he was more detested by the persecuted non-conformists of Scotland than any other man of his day. He dispersed their conventicles, and shot as rebels the friends who kept up communication between them and the Dutch and the old republican party in England. He was summoned to court by James shortly before the Revolution, when he offered to raise his Scottish troops to 10,000 men and attack the invaders. James would not consent to this, but charged him, instead, to return to Scotland and support his cause there. Dundee accordingly attended the Convention at Edinburgh, as the local government was called, but being threatened with assassination he withdrew, with only sixty of his dragoons, and erected the royal standard in the Highlands. The clans flocked to him, and he soon afterward attacked and totally defeated a much larger body of regular troops at Killiecrankie [July 27, 1689], but fell himself in the action, when his followers dispersed, though they did not formally submit to the new government until long afterward.

§ 8. The war in Ireland was of much longer duration, and had, in fact, commenced before James left England. Alarmed at Tyrconnel's proceedings,<sup>a</sup> the Protestants drew together in the north, and fixing on Londonderry as their headquarters, they shut the gates and refused to admit the royal troops. Enniskillen, another stronghold of the Cromwellian settlers,<sup>b</sup> followed their example. The fugitive King James, who, helped by Louis of France, was seeking every opportunity to regain his lost throne, landed in Ireland in March, 1689, with a small French force, and soon had an army around him. He marched against Londonderry, expecting that it would at once surrender, but being disappointed in this, he returned to Dublin, and held a parliament, which repealed the preliminary Act of Settlement,<sup>c</sup> attainted a large number of William and Mary's adherents, and declared that Ireland was no longer a dependency of England. Londonderry was closely invested, and reduced to great distress; but the inhabitants, headed by George Walker, an aged clergyman, held out for 105 days, when they were relieved by succors sent from England.

§ 9. A large body of troops was sent to Ireland under Schomberg, one of William's most trusted officers, in August, 1689; but they remained encamped in a most unhealthy situation for months, and suffered so much from sickness that, in the ensuing year, they



Protestants victorious in Ireland. League against France. National Debt.

were not fit to take the field. William himself passed over in June, 1690, and James advanced from Dublin to meet him. The battle of the Boyne followed [July 1], when the Roman Catholic Irish were defeated with loss, and James very soon afterward returned to France.<sup>1</sup> William besieged Limerick in vain, and then left Ireland. The Earl of Marlborough took Cork and Kinsale, but was soon afterward succeeded by Ginkell, who, in the following year [A.D. 1691], brought the war to a close by gaining the battle of Aghrim, and procuring the surrender of Limerick. For this service Ginkell was thanked by the parliament, and was created Earl of Athlone by the king. Thenceforward Ireland was ruled by the triumphant party with a rigor which so utterly crushed the spirit of the native population who had adhered to James, that they quitted the country by thousands.

§ 10. Soon after his return from Ireland, William went over to the Continent, where by his exertions a fresh league was formed against France; and the Huguenots were induced to join him in regiments by his promise that no peace should be made until the

Edict of Nantes<sup>a</sup> was re-established. It was agreed

<sup>a</sup> § 11 p. 473. that an army of 220,000 men should be maintained, and England had to pay for far the greater part. It was at first attempted to raise the vast sums required by a poll-tax, which ranged from £10 for a peer to 4s. for a workingman, but this being found insufficient, money was borrowed at high interest, and thus was begun the present National Debt of Great Britain. The debt in 1697, when the war ended, was about £5,000,000 (\$25,000,000). It is now (1871) almost \$4,000,000,000, or nearly \$1,800,000,000 more than the debt of the United States at the close of the late civil war, and which is now about \$2,200,000.

§ 11. A horrible affair occurred in Scotland at the beginning of the year 1692. The secretary for Scotland, Sir John Dalrymple (but better known as the Master of Stair), and the Earl of Breadalbane had money intrusted to them to bribe the Highlanders into submission, but neither of them was willing so to employ it. Breadalbane desired to keep it himself, and Stair openly said that lead and steel would answer better. Threatening proclamations were therefore issued, and all the clans but that of Macdonald of Glencoe came in by the appointed time. Owing to a mistake as

<sup>1</sup> From that time until now the Irish Protestants have been called "Orangemen," and the sectarian animosity then engendered still prevails.

The Massacre of Glencoe.

Success of the French.

English reverses.

to the officer that they were to apply to, they were a few days late, but they were accepted, and formally taken into protection. Stair, however, who had a strange hatred against them, concealed this fact, and had no difficulty in getting a written order from the deceived king for "the extirpation of that set of thieves." He at once sent a body of troops among them, raised from the Campbells, who, after residing apparently as friends in their dwellings for a fortnight, suddenly fell on the unsuspecting people, and murdered the old chief and about sixty others, a child eight years old included, in cold blood. At least as many more perished from cold and hunger (it was mid-winter) among the mountains, and a remnant escaped, only because some other troops sent against them happily missed their way. This sad affair is known as the Massacre of Glencoe.

§ 12. Several of William's allies in the Protestant league<sup>a</sup> were but lukewarm in the cause, and for a while the French carried all before them. Their navy had recovered<sup>a</sup> all its losses at La Hogue,<sup>b</sup> and in 1693 they captured the English and Dutch Smyrna fleet, causing a loss to the merchants of upwards of £1,000,000. Their privateers swarmed in the Channel, and the attacks made on several of the French ports failed to do as much damage as had been expected. New explosive machines had been invented for the attack by a Dutch engineer named Meesters, and were employed by the English with excellent effect, but their heavy expense was so loudly complained of by the opposition that the unpopularity of William and his countrymen increased.

§ 13. For a time things went on no better on land, under William's own eye. In 1692 he attacked the French at Steenkirke, and received a terrible defeat, which was made harder to bear by the reported insolence and brutality of Count Solmes, one of his foreign generals, who, it was said, pushed forward some newly-raised English regiments against the French Guards, then esteemed the best troops in the world, and instead of supporting them when hardly pressed, stood aloof with his Germans, and remarked, "Let us see how the bull-dogs will fight." In the next year William was driven out of his entrenched camp at Landen, where the English suffered again severely; but he had the satisfaction of seeing Solmes among the slain.

§ 14. The campaign of the following year raised the hopes of



Peace of Ryswick.

Change in Parliament.

Death of Queen Mary.

William, because he sustained no defeat; and in 1695, mainly owing to the desperate courage of the British troops, he captured the strong town of Namur, and made a prisoner of Boufflers, one of the most renowned French marshals. All the parties to the war had now nearly exhausted their resources; therefore, in 1696 little was undertaken in the field, and negotiations for peace were entered into. After long discussion, a peace was signed at Ryswick, a house between the Hague and Delft that belonged to William, on the 20th of September, 1697. Its terms were highly satisfactory to the English people; for Louis the Fourteenth was thereby compelled to withhold all further support to James, and acknowledge William to be monarch of England. And when the king returned from the Continent he was received with great enthusiasm as a conqueror and deliverer, and peace for England seemed to be assured.

§ 15. Whilst the war went on several changes occurred among the parties at home. The Convention Parliament<sup>a</sup> had been mainly composed of Whigs,<sup>b</sup> but the succeeding parliament [A.D. 1690–1695] was a Tory assembly. By it the undue zeal of the Whigs was controlled, who, like the Tories, wished to proscribe every one not exactly of their own opinions. The two parties, by mutual restraint, secured wiser legislation. The Tories expressed great dissatisfaction at seeing Sunderland<sup>c</sup> again in office [A.D. 1693], and making a boast of having betrayed King James; but William found him useful, and so retained him. In return, an attempt was made to prevent government officers sitting in the House, and an act was passed [November 22, 1694] providing for the calling of a new parliament every three years. To this act the royal assent was given on the 22d of December.

§ 16. Within a week after that royal assent was given, which gratified the English people as a popular triumph, Queen Mary died [December 28, 1694] of malignant small-pox, in the thirty-third year of her age. She was childless. She had been a most exemplary wife and woman. Whilst she admired the commanding intellect of her husband, and loved him tenderly, she was made one of the most unhappy of women by his open unfaithfulness to her. He grieved for her with a passion that seemed foreign to his nature. Thenceforward, by the authority of the Convention Parliament,<sup>d</sup> he ruled as sole sovereign, with the title of William the Third.

<sup>a</sup> § 24, p. 479.<sup>b</sup> § 18, p. 464.<sup>c</sup> § 20, p. 477.<sup>d</sup> § 24, p. 479.

A Family Fend healed.

Plots.

Execution of a Conspirator.

## CHAPTER IV.

REIGN OF WILLIAM THE THIRD. [A.D. 1694 TO 1702.]

§ 1. WILLIAM'S first act after the death of his wife was the consenting to a reconciliation with the Princess Anne, Mary's sister, and wife of Prince George of Denmark. That Princess had shown violent opposition to William and Mary; and the harsh words which she had applied to the king so embittered Mary, that in her dying moments she refused to be reconciled to Anne. The king presented Anne a greater part of Mary's jewels, and appropriated the palace of St. James for her future residence.

§ 2. Rumors of plots for the assassination of William, after the death of the queen, were rife: some were true and some were false. It was difficult to distinguish them. Spies and perjurers were, as usual, plentiful about the court, who were ever ready to swear away the life of any one for the sake of personal gain or the gratification of malice. But some actual plots were exposed. Among these was one to assassinate the king at Turnham Green, in 1696, devised by Sir John Frund and others, who were made to suffer for their crime.

§ 3. From 1696 to 1698 the Whigs were again the ruling party in parliament. Completing what the Tories had begun, they had lately passed a law regulating the mode of proceeding in trials for treason, the chief provision being that there should be two witnesses to the offence. Sir John Fenwick, a Northumbrian gentleman, who had been an active confederate in the Jacobite<sup>a</sup> plot for the invasion of England,<sup>b</sup> lay in prison charged with treason, but one of the two witnesses against him, men of infamous character, suddenly disappeared. He therefore, according to law, must have been acquitted if tried by any ordinary court. But he had, unfortunately, in an interview with William, ventured to charge several of his ministers, and also Admiral Russell,<sup>c</sup> with corresponding with King James—a charge now known to be true, and currently believed even then. The guilty men would not allow so dangerous an accuser to live, and Russell brought in a bill of attainder against him. It was passed, and Sir John was executed on the 28th of January, 1697. He was the last man who was thus dealt with in England.

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 480.<sup>b</sup> § 8, p. 483.<sup>c</sup> § 4, p. 481.



Reduction of the Army. Designs against Spain. King and Parliament disagree.

§ 4. The war being now over, the parliament in which the Tories had recovered their influence set themselves to reduce the army, which they accomplished in spite of William's opposition. They also obliged him to send back his Dutch guards, telling him truly that his real safety was in the affections of his subjects. They made strict inquiries into some alleged enormous bribes that the India Company had given to secure a renewal of their charter; and at last they insisted that the forfeited lands that had been granted

to Portland<sup>a</sup> and others should be sold for the public benefit. William was much offended, and at first threatened to resign the crown, but he soon changed his plan, and corresponded with Louis of France for the partition of the vast Spanish monarchy, on the death of the then sick king. His policy in this matter seems to have been founded on the idea that a war would spring out of it, and put an end to inquiries and interferences at home.

§ 5. In this he judged rightly, though he did not live to take a part in the contest. Charles the Second of Spain was in a dying state, and no less than three princes had claims to his dominions, through marriage. William, above all things, dreaded that they should fall to the King of France, and Louis, to prevent a new coalition, pretended to be willing to claim only a small share for his son, and leave the rest to be divided between the Emperor and the Elector of Bavaria. Though he, as well as the other princes, was pledged to secrecy, he took care that the chief points of the treaty should become known to the King of Spain, whilst he kept back his own share in it. Charles, naturally indignant at the proceeding, determined to thwart the scheme, and therefore made a will leaving all his dominions to a grandson of Louis. On Charles's death, shortly after, the will was published by Louis, and loud were the complaints of his treachery. But he was too strong to be attacked, unless England headed the confederacy. The parliament was unwilling to engage in another war solely to gratify what seemed to be William's ambition, and the Commons impeached Lord Somers the chancellor, Portland, and other ministers who had been engaged in making the partition treaty. A quarrel on a point of form between the Lords and Commons prevented the trial taking place, but both Portland and Somers lost their offices.

§ 6. William, deeply offended, now went over to Holland, sur-

Death of Kings James and William.

Character of William.

veyed the frontier, sent a fleet to lie off Dunkirk, and did other acts calculated to bring on a war, when Louis saved him further trouble. James the Second died in 1701, and Louis at once recognized his son (James Francis Edward) as king.<sup>1</sup> This was an undeniable breach of the treaty of Ryswick.<sup>a</sup> The unfortunate youth was attainted merely on account<sup>a</sup> § 14, p. 485. of his birth, and war with France was determined on. But before anything could be done the crown of England was placed upon the head of another. William, while riding out to Hampton Court [February 21, 1702], was thrown from his horse. His collar-bone was fractured. A fever ensued, and on Sunday morning, the 8th of March, 1702, he died in Kensington Palace. During William's latter days an act for securing the Protestant succession, known as the Act of Settlement, was hastily passed by parliament, in virtue of which the House of Brunswick was, a few years later, called to the throne.

§ 7. William's personal appearance was not striking. He was of middle stature, thin, and of delicate constitution. He had been afflicted with asthma from his infancy. His countenance was quite remarkable. He had an aquiline nose, sparkling eyes, and large forehead. His character seems full of contradictions, but the good evidently preponderated over the evil. Smollett says that "in courage, fortitude, and equanimity, he rivalled the most eminent warriors of antiquity." Like other men in power, and with a long line of predecessors on the throne of England as his precedents, William often gratified his personal desires and ambition without regard to the public good. But whatever may have been his secret motives in the part he took in the revolution of 1688,<sup>b</sup> and his subsequent contests with Louis the Fourteenth, ostensibly in defence of Protestantism, it cannot be denied that the revolution was productive of much good. His reign began a new era in constitutional government, and opened the way toward the attainment of religious and political freedom for the people of the British realm.

<sup>1</sup> He was born June 10, 1688, not long before his father's abdication.<sup>a</sup> During the life of Louis he resided in France, but afterwards he removed to Avignon, which belonged to the Pope, and eventually to Rome, where he died December 20, 1765. He married the Princess Clementina of Poland, had two sons, Charles Edward, called the Young Chevalier, or Young Pretender, and Henry, the Cardinal of York.

<sup>a</sup> § 22, p. 478.



## CHAPTER V.

## REIGN OF ANNE. [A.D. 1702 TO 1714.]

§ 1. ON the death of William, James's youngest daughter, Anne, became [March 8, 1702] monarch of England. She was then in the thirty-eighth year of her age, but was possessed of little more

self-reliance than a girl of fifteen. The Jacobites <sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 480.

had entertained strong hopes that she would reject the crown in favor of her half-brother, James Francis Edward, <sup>b</sup>

who, in order to avoid questions of ceremony in social intercourse, was known as the Chevalier St. George. <sup>b</sup> § 6, p. 488.

But they were disappointed. Anne was a weak woman, who loved to be ruled rather than to rule, and her heart inclined to her brother, but she could never summon the resolution to take any decided step in his favor, at any time. She was an English-woman possessed of great virtues, and was a warm adherent of the Church of England. Her ministers, and not she, ruled England.

§ 2. The whole course of Anne's reign was determined by a romantic friendship which she had formed in early youth for an attendant, Sarah Jennings, a handsome, intelligent girl, a few years older than herself. Sarah married Colonel John Churchill, the son of a Dorsetshire cavalier, who was high in favor with Anne's father when Duke of York, and was a most accomplished courtier as well as a gallant soldier. Soon after his marriage Churchill was made a peer, and when his patron (the duke) came to the throne honors and rewards were lavishly bestowed on him. These, however, could not secure his fidelity, and when the Prince of Orange landed he not only went over to him, but induced the

Princess Anne and her husband to do the same. <sup>c</sup> § 21, p. 478.

William gave him a higher title (Earl of Marlborough), but acted by him as he did by so many others—employed, yet distrusted him—and in 1692 he suddenly deprived him of his various appointments and threw him into the Tower. The princess warmly espoused the cause of the husband of her friend, and Marlborough, when at last set at liberty, busily employed himself in

forming a "Princess's party," which seriously embarrassed William's government. <sup>d</sup> § 1, p. 487.

This was the occasion of the quarrel between the two sisters. <sup>d</sup>

Influence of Marlborough and his Wife.

Successful Wars.

§ 3. Now that Anne had become queen, Marlborough and his wife disposed of everything at their pleasure. Three days after the queen's accession, he was decorated with the Order of the Garter. The next day he was made commander-in-chief of all the forces of the realm: and in December [1702] he was created Marquis of Blandford and Duke of Marlborough. It was Marlborough's pleasure to make war, and accordingly war occupied the far greater part of Anne's reign, bringing him, beside military glory and titles, enormous wealth. The queen's affection for his duchess took an extravagant form. She regarded her as her superior, and was never tired of writing letters to show how honored Mrs. Morley (the queen) felt by the kind notice of Mrs. Freeman (the duchess); such being the names that, at Anne's pressing desire, they employed in their correspondence.

§ 4. In the very first month of Anne's reign, Marlborough was sent to Holland to concert measures "for reducing the power of France within due bounds." The arrangement was made, that England, Holland, Portugal, and some of the Italian princes, should join their forces to those of the Emperor of Germany for the purpose of placing his son Charles on the throne of Spain. Louis, however, had possession of the country, and he had a powerful ally in Germany in the Elector of Bavaria. Marlborough was declared captain-general of the English and Dutch forces, and taking the field at once, he drove the French from the Dutch frontier, and ended his first campaign with the capture of the strong city of Liege. He returned to England for the winter, received the thanks of parliament, and was created a duke, as we have seen.

§ 5. It has been said of Marlborough, that he never fought a battle that he did not win, or besiege a town that he did not take. His second campaign [A.D. 1703] was in accordance with this, and though no great battle was fought, Bonn, Huy, Limburg, and other places were reduced. Under other generals, however, the allies were by no means so successful; and the French gained so many advantages in Germany that the emperor was in danger. Marlborough, therefore, in the next year crossed the Rhine, was joined by the imperialists under Prince Eugene, and soon changed the face of affairs. The allies drove the Bavarians from their intrenched camp at Schellenberg, and, following them up to Blenheim, inflicted a terrible defeat on them and the French, on the



Blenheim Palace.

Marlborough's Wars on the Continent.

13th of August, 1704. The loss was very heavy on both sides. Marshal Tallard, Marlborough's opponent, was made a prisoner, and the Elector became a fugitive. The triumph of Marlborough was complete, and the reward proportionate. He had already received a grant of the royal manor of Woodstock, and it was now voted in parliament that a palace bearing the name of Blenheim should be erected upon it for him. This was begun, but in after years, when he had fallen into disgrace, he had to complete it himself, and he expended more than £70,000 for the purpose.

§ 6. The next year [A.D. 1705] saw Marlborough preparing to invade France from the side of Germany, but the emperor's troops supported him badly, and the progress that the French had made in his absence recalled him to the Netherlands, where he retook Huy, one of their conquests. Henceforth his campaigns were confined to that country, and may be briefly noticed before speaking of the war elsewhere.

§ 7. In 1706 he gained the battle of Ramillies, and the submission of all Brabant was the result, with the recognition of the Austrian Charles as their king. All the following campaign [A.D. 1707] was a trial of skill between Marlborough and one of the most famous of the French marshals, Vendome. Each was a master in his profession, and neither could force the other to a battle. In 1708 the French advanced, and Ghent and Bruges were surrendered to them by the people, as they had found the allies hard masters. But Marlborough was soon on the spot, gained the battle of Oudenarde, retook Ghent, and created a terrible alarm in France by passing the frontier, and laying the country under contribution. He next captured Lille, the strongest fortress on the frontier, and then the proud Louis thought it time to open negotiations, with the view of preventing his further progress.

§ 8. But these negotiations did not prevent another campaign [A.D. 1709], when the most desperate battle of the whole war was fought at Malplaquet, the victors losing more men than the vanquished in storming the French camp. Again Louis sought peace, but his offers were rejected; and the enormous gains that Marlborough drew from the war were commonly, though it is to be hoped unjustly, assigned as the cause. In the campaign of 1710 he reduced several strong towns, and in 1711 he defeated Marshal Villars at Arleux, and captured Bouchain; but this was his last triumph, for a change had taken place at court, and he and his wife, after

The Protestant Allies generally Successful.

War in Spain.

thirty years of unexampled favor and confidence, had been supplanted in the queen's regard. The cause will be noticed presently.

§ 9. During all these years there had been many battles by sea and by land, but with very various fortune. In 1702 Admiral Benbow was mortally wounded in the West Indies, in an attack on the French fleet, which failed because some of his captains deserted him; and Cadiz was unsuccessfully assailed, though several treasure-ships were destroyed at Vigo. In 1704 an invasion of Spain from Portugal was baffled by the Duke of Berwick, who was a natural son of King James and the nephew of Marlborough. Gibraltar was taken by surprise by Sir George Rooke, but as, from the bad condition of his ships, he could not prevent the escape of a French fleet sent to its relief, he was dismissed the service. The year 1705 was one of triumph for the allies in Spain. Sir John Leake destroyed a French fleet near Gibraltar, and thenceforth what remained of their navy in the Mediterranean never ventured out again, but took shelter in the harbor of Toulon. The Earl of Peterborough, in conjunction with Sir Cloudesley Shovel, reduced Barcelona, and hastily traversing a large part of Spain, had the Austrian king everywhere proclaimed. He had nearly accomplished the capture of Madrid, when a quarrel broke out between him and Charles, and the enterprise was abandoned. Peterborough, who was a vain and boastful though brave man, is considered to blame for this; and all his conquests were lost in the following year, when the allies were defeated by Berwick at Almanza. The English fleet, however, hung on the Spanish coast, and conquered Minorca in 1708.

§ 10. Two remarkable reverses of fortune occurred in 1710. In the summer the imperialists were successful, and after some hard fighting they placed Charles in Madrid; but in less than three months he was driven out by Vendome,<sup>a</sup> Marlborough's old opponent. The English under Stanhope, and the imperialists under Stahremberg, were defeated within ten days of each other at Brihuega and Villa Viciosa, and the war in Spain may be said to have closed, though the people of Catalonia, who had warmly espoused the Austrian cause, maintained an obstinate struggle for four years longer.

<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 492.

§ 11. Many actions were fought during the war between small squadrons or single ships, in which a French admiral, Du Guai



Privateering.

Union of England and Scotland.

Commercial Project.

Trouin, originally a common sailor, was often successful; and the English and Dutch commerce suffered very much from the attacks of privateers, fitted out chiefly at Dunkirk or St. Malo. These sometimes sailed six or eight together, and on one occasion they captured the *Advice*, a man-of-war, in Yarmouth roads [A.D. 1711], though not till after two-thirds of her crew had been killed or wounded. Lord Duffus, her commander, was desperately wounded, and remained a prisoner till the end of the war.

§ 12. The queen had, in her very first parliament, recommended the union of England and Scotland, but nothing was done in the matter for some years. At last it was accomplished on the 4th of March, 1707, mainly, it was said, by bribes to some of the leading men in the Scottish parliament. The people of Scotland, in general, were deeply offended, saying that the Duke of Queensberry,

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 484. the High Commissioner of Scotland, and Earl Stair,<sup>a</sup> had sold the independence of their country. In the

hope of reconciling them, a sum of £400,000 was sent, under the pretext of making compensation for various injuries that the Scots had received since the Revolution, but which had never been thought worthy of attention before. Chief among these was the check given to a Scottish enterprise in foreign parts, projected by William Patterson, a Scot, who had founded the Bank of Eng-

<sup>b</sup> § 13, p. 449. land.<sup>b</sup> Encouraged by his glowing promises, his countrymen attempted to establish a great trading colony on the Isthmus of Darien, in 1698, which they called New Caledonia. Its capital was called Edinburgh, and its defensive work was called Fort St. Andrew.

§ 13. This project excited strenuous opposition at all points of the commercial world. The Dutch and English merchants forgot their jealousies to unite against the Darien adventurers, and the project was a ruinous failure. The money lost was estimated at full the half the wealth of the country to be colonized; and of the 3,000 adventurers (beside women and children) who went out in three separate expeditions, only thirty, it is said, survived to return to Scotland. Famine and fever had brought this about, as the governors of the English colonies in the West Indies and other places had orders not to suffer them even to purchase food among them. The recollection of these things sunk too deep into the hearts of Scotchmen to be removed with money, and so high did the discontent at the Union run, that in the next year [A.D. 1708] James

Court Changes.

A new Favorite.

Cabinet Intrigues.

Francis Edward,<sup>a</sup> the “Pretender,” as he was called, thinking an opportunity for obtaining the crown of England might now be offered, landed in Scotland. But he found his friends unprepared for rising, and he soon returned to France.

§ 14. The Duchess of Marlborough was at the height of her power when, unfortunately for herself, she brought Abigail Hill, a poor relative, to court. She was the daughter of a bankrupt merchant, who was also the kinsman of Robert Harley, one of the secretaries of state. Harley belonged to a Puritan family, and had been one of the first to join the Prince of Orange on his landing; but, like most other public men of his day, he had changed his views, and was now a Tory and High Churchman. The queen herself was a zealous friend of the Church, as was shown by her restoring the first fruits and tenths appropriated by Elizabeth,<sup>b</sup> and thus forming a fund that is still known as Queen Anne’s Bounty; and nothing but the overpowering

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 490.  
<sup>b</sup> § 5, p. 353.

influence of the duchess prevailed on her to tolerate a set of Whig ministers, who were popularly regarded as its enemies. Harley, the secretary of state, and St. John, the secretary of war, had other views, and in the new waiting-woman they found the means to effect a palace revolution.

§ 15. Abigail became a favorite with the queen, for her humble manner was a great contrast to the haughty demeanor of the duchess; and she was soon married to Mr. Masham, an officer of the household. By her Harley, who was an enemy of Marlborough, was introduced to private audiences, when he easily persuaded Anne that the Church was in danger from the schemes of his Whig colleagues. Soon after this, a clerk in Harley’s office was detected in carrying on a correspondence with the French, and Harley, though not guilty, was removed; for Marlborough and Godolphin, the treasurer, who had heard of his secret audiences, refused to act with him. St. John, also of a Puritan family,—in fact a freethinker,—professing to be more “High Church” than even Harley, resigned with his friend, and the ex-ministers set zealously to work to make those who remained in office as unpopular with the country as they already were with the queen. The ministers themselves assisted in this by prosecuting Dr. Henry Sacheverell, an obscure clergyman of little moral character and less ability, for a sermon reflecting on the Revolution; and though they procured his condemnation, they ventured to inflict so light



Marlborough shorn of Power. His Exile and Honors. Treaty of Utrecht.

a punishment that it was evident their power was gone. Accordingly, in the summer of 1710 they were dismissed by the queen. Harley and St. John became her ministers, and a new parliament was chosen, in which the Whigs were in a decided minority.

§ 16. Marlborough was still too great from the fame of his victories to be deprived of his command, but the new ministers took the ungenerous mode of disgusting him by refusing the vote of thanks, which he had now for several years received. They also sent out an expedition to the French colony of Canada, under the brother of Mrs. Masham, in the hope of gaining a success that would make his triumphs of less account, and when this failed from the incapacity of their untried general, they brought unfounded charges of corruption against the duke. This last scheme answered their purpose. Marlborough defended himself before his peers with sense and spirit, but finding that he spoke to prejudiced ears, he resigned all his employments in 1711, and with his duchess went abroad, where he remained as long as the queen lived. He was treated almost as a sovereign by the allies with

whom he had acted,<sup>a</sup> who soon found that without him they had no hope of contending successfully

with France.

§ 17. This was also the view that the ministers took, and therefore the Duke of Ormond,<sup>b</sup> the new commander, was ordered to avoid fighting, whilst Prince Eugene, left to his own resources, was defeated at Denain, and town after town acquired by Marlborough fell again into the hands of the French. Whilst this was going on, conferences for peace were opened in spite of the remonstrances of the allies, who considered themselves betrayed, and early in July, 1713, the treaty of Utrecht was concluded. By it Louis gained all he had contended for, on a mere promise not to interfere with the Protestant succession in England, and the cession of Nova Scotia to England. His grandson Philip was acknowledged king of Spain, but was obliged to allow Gibraltar and Minorca to remain with their captors.<sup>c</sup>

These acquisitions, and a shameful contract to supply some of the Spanish colonies with negro slaves, were the reward of almost twelve years' war, which had added £38,000,000 (\$190,000,000) to the national debt, and had called many new taxes (as the stamp duty on newspapers) into existence.

<sup>a</sup> § 4, p. 491.

<sup>b</sup> § 17, p. 475.

<sup>c</sup> § 9, p. 493.

Restoration of Territories.

Court Quarrels.

Death of Queen Anne.

§ 18. From the peace of Utrecht dates the political importance of the colonies of European States. Up to this time, the Spaniards, English, French, and Dutch, had taken little account of them except for mere purposes of trade, but now they had become sufficiently numerous to be valued for the sake of dominion. Accordingly, Hudson's Bay and Newfoundland, which the French had taken, were restored, and Nova Scotia, which the English had conquered, was retained, and a town named Annapolis Royal, in honor of the queen, was founded in commemoration of the cession.

§ 19. But long before the peace was concluded Harley and St. John (now become respectively Earl of Oxford and Viscount Bolingbroke) were at variance. Oxford (Harley) treated the favorite<sup>a</sup> as if she was still his poor relation, whilst Bolingbroke showed her unbounded deference. The latter, therefore, was taken into the queen's confidence, Oxford was displaced, and an attempt to set aside the Act of Settlement<sup>b</sup> would probably have been made had not the queen fell ill just at that time. She had been very much agitated by stormy scenes at court, and on the 30th of July, 1714, she was prostrated by apoplexy. Whilst hardly conscious of what she did, she was prevailed on to commit the care of the government to the Duke of Shrewsbury, a Whig, and died the very next day, the 1st of August, 1714.

§ 20. So passed away Anne Stuart, the last member of her unfortunate family who sat on the British throne, though her successor possessed, in a remote degree, a little of the Stuart blood. She was a woman of middle height, plump, and well-proportioned. Her hair was dark brown; her complexion ruddy; her voice clear and melodious; and her presence engaging. She possessed good mental abilities, but they were not much cultivated by study. She was a pattern of conjugal affection and fidelity. Her tastes were refined, and her court was virtuous. No subject suffered for treason during her reign, and no one was ever suspected of conspiring against her life or even her rule. She died childless at the age of forty-nine years, and in the twelfth of her reign. She bore six children, but they all died young. Even to this day she justly bears the title of "Good Queen Anne."

§ 21. An act had been passed in the year 1705 which provided that certain great officers should administer the government in case the next Protestant successor should not be in the realm at the



Another Foreigner on the Throne.

Religious Aspect of England.

time of the queen's death. Shrewsbury and his party now held these posts, and accordingly they at once proclaimed that the crown had devolved on George, Elector of Hanover, and great grandson of James the First. Bolingbroke did not offer any opposition, but quietly remained in office, though he could hardly hope to be acceptable to the new king.

## CHAPTER VI.

SOCIETY DURING THE LATER RULE OF THE STUARTS [A.D. 1680 TO 1714].

§ 1. LITTLE need be said here concerning the religious aspect of society in England from the Restoration to the close of Queen Anne's reign. Theology gave tone and edge to politics, and all the civil and military transactions of that period partook largely of religious sectarian hues. Theological questions were forced upon the attention at every turn. We have seen Protestantism, untrammelled by hierarchies, assuming many shapes, under the influence of free thought and expression: and all through the seventeenth century it was, in various forms, hotly contesting for supremacy with the Romish and Anglican churches. We have seen it completely victorious in the Church and State when the Protestant succession to the throne of England was secured by constitutional

<sup>a</sup> § 6, p. 488.

law.<sup>a</sup> There was persecution when there was power to persecute, but it was without that sanguinary savagism which prevailed during the sixteenth century. There was bitterness and ostracism, but no one suffered death judicially during the seventeenth century as a heretic in religious belief. It was offences against the State, and not the Church, that called into use the axe and the gibbet. During that century there were immense strides toward religious freedom, and the attainment of a purer Christianity. While the State enforced a law, made in 1673, and known as the Test Act, which required all officers under government, civil and military, to receive the sacrament according to the forms of the Church of England, and to take the oaths against the doctrine of transubstantiation held by the Roman Catholics—a law repealed so late as 1828—a Toleration Act to

## Toleration in Religion.

## Improvement in Government and Laws.

relieve Protestant Dissenters or Nonconformists<sup>a</sup> from the Church of England was passed in 1689. It was very limited,<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 357. it is true. It only exempted persons who took the new oath of allegiance and supremacy, and made a declaration against Popery, from the penalties incurred by absenting themselves from church and holding unlawful conventicles; and it allowed the Quakers to substitute an affirmation for an oath. But it did not relax the rigor of the Test Act.

§ 2. In government and laws there was also great advancement during the seventeenth century in the direction of popular liberty and popular sovereignty. We have seen the government recede from the exalted position of a republic and become the instrument of misrule for weak and profligate princes of the Stuart line in the form of a corrupt and corrupting monarchy, which finally became unbearable and ended in revolution.<sup>b</sup> Then came a purer monarchy, in constitutional form, with the rights of the people defined and guaranteed by charter instead of the brittle promises of monarchs. This was a great and important change. It was a monarchy actually limited by law, and the right of hereditary succession was not only unrecognized, but on the death of Queen Anne the line was absolutely broken, though a member of the Stuart family, in a remote degree, ascended the throne.<sup>c</sup> This new state of things swept away the whole brood of mischiefs having their source in

“The right divine of kings to govern wrong.”

§ 3. The Declaration made to the Prince of Orange, on his accession to the throne,<sup>d</sup> by the parliament, defining the rights and liberties of the subject, and to which the new monarch acceded, was an immense advance toward the full freedom of the people, and has ever been regarded as the great bulwark of the British Constitution. It declared (1) that the king was only the executor of the laws under parliament; (2) that a Court of High Commission<sup>e</sup> for ecclesiastical causes was illegal; (3) that the king had no right to levy money without the consent of parliament; (4) that the subject had a right to petition his sovereign; (5) that it was illegal to raise or keep a standing army in time of peace without the consent of parliament; (6) that Protestant subjects might keep arms for their defence; (7) that the election of members of parliament should be free; (8) that the freedom of speech and debate in par-



## Declaration of Rights.

## Character of the Government.

liament ought not to be questioned elsewhere; (9) that excessive bail ought not to be required, excessive fines imposed, nor excessive punishments inflicted; (10) that jurors should be duly impanelled and returned, and that those who were to pass upon high treason should be freeholders; (11) that all grants and promises of fines and forfeitures of particular persons before conviction were illegal and void; and (12) that for the redress of all grievances, and for the amending and strengthening the laws, parliaments ought to be held frequently. The form of the government was very little altered, but the spirit was radically changed. That change, begun at the Revolution, may be considered completed by the accession of the House of Brunswick in the person of George the First, Anne's successor.

§ 4. Henceforth the political history of the country was the record of what the majority in parliament would or would not have done. The ministers, though nominally the servants of the crown, could never afterward struggle successfully against that majority, and when its views were opposed to theirs, they were and are obliged to quit their office. To meet this altered state of things, one man among them was selected as the premier, or head of the administration, to whom all the rest were bound to give their support whilst they remained in office, which had not been the case under the earlier kings. Those earlier sovereigns were, in fact, their own chief ministers, and they called men to their aid without much care as to whether they agreed among themselves or were acceptable to their other "advisers." The Revolution put an end to this personal government, and the country has ever since had men to administer its affairs who might be called to the strictest account for their conduct without the suspicion of disloyalty to the sovereign. So the Anglo-American colonies in the last century, while expressing the most zealous loyalty to the king, openly and most vehemently, in their petitions, addresses, and proclamations, condemned his ministers as oppressors. It was not until they had declared themselves independent of Great Britain that they denounced the monarch as "a tyrant unfit to be the ruler of a free people."

§ 5. The national industry flourished during the period between the Restoration [1660] and the Revolution [1688], it having received a powerful impulse during the commonwealth [1649 to 1660]. Commerce was much extended. In the year 1668 the East India

Tea first used in England.      Increasing Wealth.      Resources.      Coinage.

Company<sup>a</sup> alone employed about forty vessels in trade with the oriental nations; and it was at the period of the Restoration<sup>b</sup> that tea was first brought into England from China by vessels of that corporation. The quaint Pepys, in his diary, under date of 1661, records:—"I sent for a cup of tea (a Chinese drink), of which I had never drunk before." It was then sold in a liquid state. It was not until after the Revolution that the use of tea in England became at all general. Within ten years [1668-1678] the mercantile shipping of the kingdom was doubled. So, too, was the tonnage and guns of the royal navy. The wealth of the realm was enormous, and was rapidly increasing. At the time of the Revolution land was worth three times what it was at the beginning of that century.

§ 6. The Revolution seriously interfered with the foreign trade of England, but it gave a new impulse to several branches of domestic industry, and so the wealth of the realm was steadily augmented. Yet at the peace of Ryswick<sup>c</sup> it was evident that the resources of the country had been so terribly drawn upon that it was like a man staggering with the weakness of disease. But with peace came returning strength. It was the dawn of a new era of prosperity for England in her agricultural, commercial, and manufacturing operations. In this prosperity the Bank of England, founded by Pater-son,<sup>d</sup> bore a conspicuous part in affording the means for a sound and uniform circulating currency for the whole realm. By acts at the close of the century the government called in all silver coin of its issue, which was replaced by another currency of the full standard weight. The new coins went out of the mint [A.D. 1697] the finest and most beautiful of any in all Europe. The new gold coin, called the guinea (made of gold from the coast of Guinea, in Africa), was first issued in 1662. The figure of Britannia (still retained) sitting on a globe, holding in her right hand an olive branch, and in her left a spear and shield, first appeared on the copper coins of Charles the Second.

§ 7. Holland was the principal purchaser of English goods, especially after the accession of William and Mary [A.D. 1689]; and the plantation trade, as the traffic with the Anglo-American colonies was called, was at that period rising into much importance. It might have been a source of vast wealth to England had not unwise navigation laws, which interfered with the freedom of

<sup>a</sup> § 8, p. 447.

<sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 443.

<sup>c</sup> § 14, p. 485.

<sup>d</sup> § 12, p. 494.



Commerce. Navy. Immigrants. Continental Luxuries Introduced.

trade, restricted the development of the resources of the New World. At the beginning of Queen Anne's reign, about 3,300 vessels, carrying nearly 6,000 guns for self-protection, and manned by 27,000 seamen, were engaged in the merchant service of England; and the royal navy then consisted of about 200 vessels, manned by 45,000 men. Ship-building was encouraged and carried to great perfection, and navigation received the special attention of the government, for already these words of Waller had deep significance:—

“ Others may use the ocean as their road,  
Only the English make it their abode ;  
Whose ready sails with every wind can fly,  
And make a covenant with the inconstant sky ;  
Our oaks secure as if they there took root,  
We tread on billows with a steady foot.”

It was in the year 1700 that the first light-house (the Eddystone) blazed out its beneficent light on the British coast.

§ 8. The revocation of the Edict of Nantes<sup>a</sup> by Louis the Fourteenth [1685] compelled thousands of French Protestant artisans to take refuge in England. These introduced new industrial pursuits, to the great injury of France, for they produced fabrics which had hitherto been imported from across the Channel. The manufacture of silk, fine linen, lace, calico in imitation of the work of the looms of India, paper, and plate-glass was then introduced into England, and so added to the national wealth. While the wars of Queen Anne again interfered with foreign commerce, and greatly increased the burdens of taxation, the internal trade and manufacture of the kingdom were so stimulated that the riches of the realm were largely increased.

§ 9. Charles the Second introduced many continental elegancies into England, and the furniture and interior decorations of houses rose in costliness and show after the Restoration. Turkey carpets were yet seldom used for floors,<sup>b</sup> but the walls were soon hung with the more costly Gobelin tapestries, from the factory in France, established 1677. So early as 1660 oil-cloths began to be used, and the magnificent carved and gilt furniture of France was soon brought into England in large quantities.

§ 10. The gaudy French costume took the place, among the

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 473.

<sup>b</sup> § 14, p. 449.

## Fashions.

nobility and gentry, on the accession of Charles, of the more sober dress, even of the royalists,<sup>a</sup> in the time of the Commonwealth. The dress of a beau consisted of a short-waisted doublet and petticoat breeches; the lining, being lower than the breeches, was tied above the knees. The breeches were ornamented with ribbons up to the pocket, and half their breadth upon the thigh. The waistband was set about with ribbons, and the shirt hung out over them in folds. The hat was high-crowned, ornamented with a plume of feathers. Beneath the knee hung long, drooping lace ruffles. A rich falling collar of lace, with a cloak hung carelessly over the shoulders, and high-heeled shoes, tied with broad ribbons, completed the costume. This was modified towards the close of Charles's reign, when straight square coats, with waistcoats of equal length, and both reaching to the knee, were introduced. The breeches were full, and fastened below the knee with gay ribbons, but sometimes covered by long stockings. A long neckcloth of Flanders lace fell from the throat. Immense curled periwigs covered the head; the shoes were high, and tied with broad ribbons, and the hands were covered with fringed gloves. This was the fashion of "people of quality," and was very little changed until in Queen Anne's reign. The Puritans of both sexes, meanwhile, dressed with conspicuous plainness, and their general style has been preserved until our day in the dress of the more strict Friends, or Quakers.

§ 11. The feminine costume during the time of Charles and James was more showy and extravagant. Cloaks of the richest material, feathers, ribbons, lace, and jewelry abounded. The plainest dress was a white laced waistcoat and crimson silk or satin petticoat. The ladies painted and patched their faces,<sup>b</sup> and wore great periwigs in imitation of the masculine fashion. Upon these were little cocked hats with feathers; and it was a fashionable amusement for ladies, when they met, to try on each other's hats. It was also fashionable for the gentlemen to comb their periwigs in public. With the accession of William and Mary came Dutch modifications. The stomacher was more formally laced, and the short sleeves terminated in large cuffs above the elbows. The petticoat was trimmed with rows of flounces and many furbelows; and the gown was looped up to show them, but extended in a long train behind. Head-dresses were made very high, and the hair was powdered and dis-

<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 451.<sup>b</sup> § 16, p. 450.



Changes in Fashions.

Licentiousness of the Stuart Court and the Nobility.

posed in wavy curls, one above the other. Fans were skilfully used by the ladies, and muffs and perfumed gloves were worn by both sexes. These fashions continued late into Queen Anne's reign. But in 1711 a radical change appeared. The high head-dress was laid aside, and in its place was a low hat with a feather laid on the rim. The hoop was then introduced; and very soon the petticoats were so expanded by it that a fine lady would accord in appearance with the Dutch governor described by Irving as being "five feet six inches in height, and six feet five inches in breadth."

§ 12. The details given by cotemporary writers of the licentiousness of the court and nobility during the reigns of the last Stuarts are most shocking. Happily, the immorality, extravagance, and frivolity of those so-called higher circles did not pervade the great mass of the English people, for the Puritan element was a most potential restraint upon the vices which, flowing over from the continent, threatened to overwhelm England in social ruin. The large towns were corrupted, but the country remained comparatively pure. While London was reeking with abominations—whilst the theatre and court mummeries were absolute schools of wantonness, and gluttony, and drunkenness, and libertinism distinguished "society" in the metropolis—the people throughout the country were content to be amused by the plays at country fairs, and the jollity found at May-poles, sheep-shearings, and harvest-homes. The pleasant beverages of tea, coffee, and chocolate soon took the place of heavier drink at table, and feasts and merry-makings were occasions of wholesome enjoyment. There had become a wide-spread taste for music, never seen since in England; and all through the country musical parties were common, where the violin, flute, and spinnet were the favorite instruments. Field-sports were common, and holidays

<sup>a</sup> § 26, p. 92.

were numerous. Serfdom <sup>a</sup> had disappeared, but organized pauperism, so to speak, had taken its place.

The poor, instead of being cared for by masters, were cared for by parishes. Among the laboring classes there was great poverty, ignorance, and wretchedness, especially in the towns, for wages were low and the necessities of life were high. Eight pence a day, with food, was the wages of a common laborer. More skilled agriculturists received ten pence. That was in the time of Charles; but in the reign of James wages were reduced by law nearly thirty

## Wages.

## Literature and Fine Arts.

## Character of the Latter.

per cent. Artisans and women were paid in about the proportion we have noticed, at an earlier period.<sup>a</sup> While the nobility and the middling classes of England at this time were increasing in wealth and domestic comforts, the condition of the poor was wretched.

<sup>a</sup> § 21, p. 452.

§ 13. Literature and the fine arts fluctuated during the period we are considering. No great literary work appeared in England during twenty years preceding the Restoration. That event gave birth to a brood of obsequious writers, who, influenced by the tone of the court, put forth a flood of vicious literature. Adulation of royalty was the staple sentiment of ballad, madrigal, and drama. Only the great Milton, the young republican poet, stood conspicuously aloof from the vile contagion, and was scowled upon by the court. Others were then working upon the foundations of their future eminence, like John Dryden and Gilbert Burnet; and there were some whose lustre had been acknowledged during the Commonwealth, like Richard Baxter and Dr. Leighton. The names of John Bunyan, Izaak Walton, and Sir William Temple rise before us. After the Revolution came a galaxy of luminaries in literature which shed amazing lustre upon the times of William, and Anne, and George. Among those of greater magnitude were Dryden, Burnet, Locke, De Foe, Prior, Addison, Swift, and Pope. These men and their less conspicuous cotemporaries constructed, upon the earlier foundations laid by Shakespeare and his literary friends, the noble superstructure of English literature which has never been surpassed in solidity and beauty.

§ 14. The fine arts felt the influence of the vicious taste of Louis the Fourteenth after the accession of Charles, his weak imitator. In painting, when it was made "the handmaid of architecture," there was a jumble of history, mythology, and allegory. Foreign artists were chiefly employed in these works. In portraiture, Sir Peter Lely was the great light; but he strained the truth in the introduction of the voluptuous style of the French in pose and costume. Sculpture was almost wholly confined to decoration, though Gibbons, an English artist, produced a fine statue of Charles the Second. In architecture Sir Christopher Wren was most conspicuous, and his grand works are numerous in England. In painting, after the Revolution, Sir Godfrey Kneller disputed with Lely the throne of supreme excellence until the reign of George the First. It was Kneller's misfortune to have his avarice obscure



Taste for Music.

The Sciences Neglected.

Books on Science.

his talents, and he made his great gift wholly subservient to his greed for money. In sculpture there was nothing worth mentioning, and it is difficult to find the name of a sculptor of note during the reign of William and Mary. Music too was much neglected for a while after the Revolution; but on the introduction of the Italian opera in London, in 1701, a taste for such music was rapidly diffused. Under the management of the eminent Handel it attained great popularity; and the grandeur of music was first displayed by that eminent artist in the form of the Oratorio of *Esther*, in 1720. Music in public worship had been constantly improving, and in the time of Queen Anne had reached great perfection.

§ 15. The sciences were but little known in England, while their devotees on the Continent, by investigation, experiment, and discovery were arriving at wonderful and beneficent results. Trigonometry had been introduced from Arabia by the crusaders.<sup>a</sup> Decimal fractions and algebra had increased

<sup>a</sup> § 15, p. 111. the facilities for computation so early as the beginning of the thirteenth century. Early in the sixteenth century, Copernicus had revealed the now accepted theory of the universe. Columbus had noticed the variations of the magnetic needle; the theory of the inclined plane and pulley in mechanics had been explained, and the study of optics had given to the eye the marvellous aid of the lens. So early as 1315 dissection had been performed, and anatomy made a profound study as a science. Medicine, also, had assumed the form of a science. Natural philosophy had engaged the attention of thousands of delighted students, and chemistry had emerged from the shadows of alchemy. All this had occurred while England was almost ignorant of, or at least indifferent to, the great intellectual movements on the Continent.

§ 16. The physical sciences first found devotees in England at the close of the fifteenth century. Linacre founded medical lectureships at Oxford and Cambridge in the early part of the sixteenth century, and was the first president of the Royal College of Physicians, established by Henry the Eighth in 1518. In the latter half of that century some works on zoölogy and botany were published, among which was Turner's *English Herbal*. At the head of modern sciences and navigation, at that time, stood Dr. William Gilbert, who published a treatise entitled *De Magnete*, in the year 1600. Some arithmetics and astronomical treatises

## Taste for Science Introduced.

## The Physical Sciences.

tises were also issued late in the reign of Elizabeth; and the first English translation of Euclid was put forth in 1573. The bold speculations of Bacon,<sup>a</sup> and the brilliant invention of logarithms by Napier, ushered into England a <sup>a</sup> § 28, p. 455. knowledge of and taste for the studies of the continental philosophers of the time, who had revolutionized the entire structure of the mathematical and physical sciences.

§ 17. Astronomy now began to receive much attention in England. The most remarkable of its masters was Samuel Horrocks, who anticipated Newton in several things, and who died at the age of only twenty-two years, in 1641. In the physical sciences we find Harvey credited for the discovery of the circulation of the blood, in 1619, though Sir John Davies, in a poem published in Queen Elizabeth's time, evidently alluded to it as a known fact. But while real truths were found, there were many crude notions and mischievous errors afloat under the name of science, even when the Royal Society was established, in 1662. At about that time the Marquis of Worcester invented and set in motion a steam-engine for raising water, in which an old cannon was the boiler.

§ 18. In the latter part of the seventeenth century Robert Boyle stood at the head of the cultivators of experimental science, with Robert Hooke as a worthy cotemporary. But the greatest discoverer and most brilliant investigator of that age was Sir Isaac Newton, who detected the laws of gravitation and other occult mysteries of nature, and dispelled so much of the darkness that surrounded the truth in science, that the poet seems justified in saying:—

“God said, Let Newton live, and there was light.”

His great treatise on *Optics* first appeared in 1704, and astonished and delighted the groping philosophers with new beams of knowledge; and his *Principia* gave new direction to scientific speculation. Henceforth the Royal Observatory, which Charles the Second established at Greenwich, was a scene of great triumphs in astronomical observation. Newton adorned the reigns of William, Anne, and George the First, and had for his cotemporaries in the exploration of the heavens Gregory, Flamsteed, and Halley, and Hadley the inventor of the quadrant. There were lesser lights that increased in magnitude afterward. And so it was that at the close of Queen Anne's reign and late into that of her



Reigns of the Tudors and Stuarts.

Character of the Rulers.

successor, England could boast of a galaxy of men of science equal to any that ever shone upon the earth.

§ 19. The reigns of the Tudors and the Stuarts, from 1485 to 1714, form, in reality, but one subject for history, as the tyranny of the first was the great and main cause of the errors and calamities of the second. Henry the Seventh and Henry the Eighth were both able men, though cruel and unscrupulous; and Edward the Sixth, Mary, and Elizabeth had ministers who gave a distinct character to each reign. But in all, and through all, an utter intolerance of the least freedom of opinion, and extreme harshness in dealing with offenders of every grade, are ever to be perceived. A portion of the nation, however, always existed that bore this despotism with impatience. This party grew stronger and stronger as the Tudor rule approached its close; and there came but a weak monarch to cope with it.

§ 20. James, son of Mary Queen of Scots,<sup>a</sup> and the first Stuart king of England, had led a life of privation and danger in Scotland, and, when freed from this by his accession to the English throne, he construed the deference that for the first time in his life he met with into a tacit acknowledgment that he was really above all laws and might do just what he pleased. The parliament, however, had no longer the dread of the Tudors before their eyes, and they repaid themselves for their former forced subserviency by exhibiting a marked independence, which was particularly offensive to a feeble but boastful ruler, who sincerely believed that he reigned by divine right, and that kings could do no wrong. He bequeathed the quarrel to his successor, who had too much of his father's "high prerogative" ideas to give way wisely; and the temporary overthrow of both Church and State was the consequence. An interregnum followed, and a Commonwealth appeared as a triumph of popular liberty; but its rule, in some respects, was in reality greater tyranny than that it had suppressed. It had its main strength in the courage and abilities of Oliver Cromwell, and when he died it fell as a matter of course.

§ 21. Restored rulers have seldom shown themselves equal to their difficult position, with old friends to reward and old opponents to conciliate; and Charles the Second and James the Second

<sup>a</sup> § 21, p. 478. were no exceptions to the rule. The Revolution of 1688<sup>b</sup> established a new line of succession to the

throne, and as the precaution was then taken, which had been

## Important events in English History.

neglected at the Restoration, of making a formal enumeration and demand of the ancient rights and liberties of the people, to which William and Mary solemnly assented,<sup>a</sup> the present limited constitutional monarchy of England was at last firmly established. <sup>a</sup> § 3, p. 499.

§ 22. To the time of the Tudors belongs the rapid growth of England's world-wide commerce and powerful navy, though each had been greater in earlier times than is commonly supposed. America was discovered in the reign of Henry the Seventh,<sup>b</sup> and both he and his son were patrons of maritime adventure. Under Edward<sup>c</sup> and Mary,<sup>d</sup> Russia was first approached by sea; and Elizabeth's reign saw the beginning of English trading with the East, the germ of the present empire of India,<sup>e</sup> and of colonization in America, which gave birth to the Great Republic of the West. The first district settled still bears the name of Virginia, in honor of the Virgin Queen, and its first capital, Jamestown, was a memorial of her successor, King James. The hardy enterprise that led to these undertakings also showed itself in frequent attacks on the Spanish possessions in the West Indies, which would now be called piratical, as they were commenced whilst the two countries were professedly at peace; but the people of their own time thought Hawkins, Drake, Frobisher, Raleigh, Cavendish, and other bold adventurers fully justified in anything that they might do, so long as the hated and dreaded Philip of Spain<sup>f</sup> was weakened thereby. <sup>b</sup> § 35, p. 367.  
<sup>c</sup> § 1, p. 329.  
<sup>d</sup> § 1, p. 338.  
<sup>e</sup> § 8, p. 447.  
<sup>f</sup> § 37, p. 368.

§ 23. The dissensions and civil war under the early Stuarts caused England to become weak abroad as well as miserable at home. Her influence was revived by Cromwell,<sup>g</sup> but Charles the Second was the mere tool of France. William the Third may be regarded as the deviser of standing armies and the national debt,<sup>h</sup> both of them being devoted to the great object of his life, the curbing of the power of Louis the Fourteenth, who not only desired to subjugate Holland, but made strenuous attempts to restore James the Second. Under Anne, James's daughter, the same idea of establishing what was called "the balance of power" led to many years of warfare, in which, as we have seen, the Duke of Marlborough gained many great victories, but with no very satisfactory results. <sup>g</sup> § 3, p. 438.  
<sup>h</sup> § 10, p. 484.



## BOOK X.

### THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.

FROM A.D. 1714 TO THE PRESENT TIME.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

REIGN OF GEORGE THE FIRST. [A.D. 1714 TO 1727.]

§ 1. GEORGE, Elector of Hanover, was fifty-four years of age when he was called to the British throne. His father was Ernest-Augustus, Duke of Brunswick-Lunenbourg, and Elector of Hanover. His mother was Sophia, youngest child of Elizabeth, Queen of Bohemia and daughter of James the First. He had once been a suitor for the hand of the Princess Anne, but being refused he married his cousin Sophia, a German princess, whom he caused to be imprisoned in a fortress for more than thirty years upon an undoubtedly false charge of criminal conduct. He was chosen by the English because they had great reverence for what are called hereditary rights; and to perpetuate these, and at the same time secure a Protestant succession, according to law, it was necessary to select a monarch from that branch of the family of James.

§ 2. George was the first sovereign of the Guelph family, or, as it is usually called, the House of Brunswick. He came to England, called in by the Whigs, and, as he was of a harsh nature,

he never tried to conciliate the other party. Bolingbroke<sup>a</sup> and Ormond,<sup>b</sup> being repulsed from his presence, withdrew to France and joined the Chevalier,<sup>c</sup> when an insurrection was determined on, to which

Louis the Fourteenth promised ample support. Oxford was impeached and thrown into the Tower for his share in concluding

the treaty of Utrecht;<sup>d</sup> but as all that he had done had been formally ratified by parliament, it was found impossible to convict him, and he was at last set at liberty [A.D. 1717], after a mere formal trial.

<sup>a</sup> § 19, p. 497.

<sup>b</sup> § 17, p. 496.

<sup>c</sup> § 1, p. 490.

<sup>d</sup> § 17, p. 496.

Reign of George the First.      Corrupt Public Men.      Jacobite Insurrection.

§ 3. For the first seven years of the king's reign, Viscount Townshend, Lord Stanhope, and Sir Robert Walpole were his chief ministers, sometimes acting in concert, and sometimes opposed to each other; for the parliamentary system was not yet fully established. In 1721 Walpole obtained exclusive power, and maintained it for twenty years. He had been secretary for war in Queen Anne's time, and had been expelled the House of Commons and committed to the Tower on well-grounded charges of corruption. He avowed it as his belief that every man has his price, and his long continuance in office was clearly the result of his acting on this maxim. So corrupt did public men become in his time that even the judges were suspected, and Lord Chancellor Macclesfield was convicted of embezzlement, fined £30,000, and expelled from office. Yet Walpole maintained the country in peace for a longer time than had ever elapsed before, and he was at last driven into retirement by men who certainly were not more honest than himself.

§ 4. The king's evident intention to treat all but Whigs as his enemies hastened the insurrection alluded to. It broke out in Scotland in September, 1715, when the Earl of Mar (who had been dismissed from his post of secretary, though willing to act under the new sovereign) set up the standard of James the Eighth of Scotland (the Chevalier or Pretender), and was joined by several other nobles. The English Jacobites took up arms immediately afterward, the principal persons among them being the Earl of Derwentwater, who was a grandson of James the Second, and Mr. Foster, a Northumbrian gentleman of large property and a member of parliament. Each party collected considerable forces, but there seemed to be no military talent among the leaders, and they never could agree on any combined movement. Mar and his forces had an indecisive action at Sheriffmuir, near Dunblane, with the royal troops under the Duke of Argyle, and the Chevalier joined them soon after. He brought them no help, for his great patron, Louis the Fourteenth, died just a week before Mar appeared in arms, and the regent Duke of Orleans was his enemy. He announced his intention of being crowned at Scone, the ancient seat of Scottish royalty;<sup>a</sup> but the ceremony never took place, and in little more than a month he was back again in France, Mar accompanying him, and passing the remainder of his life in exile.

<sup>a</sup> § 8, p. 430.



The Insurgents Defeated. Political Management. Foreign Invasion Threatened.

§ 5. Some of the Scots had joined the English insurgents, and they were less fortunate. After wandering awhile among the Cheviot Hills, Foster, who, without any military knowledge, had assumed the post of general, prevailed on the whole body to march southward. They soon reached Lancashire, and came to a halt at Preston, where they were assailed by troops under Willes and Carpenter, two of Marlborough's old officers, and obliged to surrender at discretion on the same day that the battle of Sheriffmuir was fought. The common men were tried in the country. Many of them were hanged, and the rest shipped off to the colonies, as Monmouth's followers had been thirty years before; but the leaders were brought to London, and several of them executed. Foster escaped from Newgate by bribing the keeper, and Mackintosh, a sturdy Highlander, broke out by force; but the Earls of Derwentwater and Nithsdale, Viscount Kenmuir, Lords Balmerino, Nairne, and Widdrington, were tried and condemned to death, Lord Cowper, an eminent Whig, treating them with a harshness that recalled Judge Jeffreys to the minds of some of the audience. Derwentwater and Kenmuir were executed; but Nithsdale, also sentenced to death, made his escape from the Tower in his wife's clothes; and Balmerino, Nairne, and Widdrington were released after a long imprisonment, their titles and their property being forfeited.

§ 6. The Chevalier had many well-wishers beside those that had appeared in arms, and it was feared that, if an election took place, they would obtain a majority in the next parliament, which according to law should be chosen in 1717. But the Whigs made use of their present power and passed the Septennial Act, which not only provided for making the term of each parliament seven years, but deferred the election for six years. That act was passed on the 26th of April, 1716.

§ 7. The rebellion was scarcely suppressed, when two foreign powers concerted a scheme for a much more formidable invasion. These were Sweden and Spain, and the matter was only one of many wars into which England was drawn through her kings being also electors of Hanover, and thinking far more of the interests of the small country than of the great one. The King of Sweden (Charles the Twelfth) was a warlike prince, who was styled the "Alexander," and also the "Madman" of the North, and who in the earlier years of his reign had made great conquests

## Jacobite Scheme against England, in Spain, Defeated.

from the Danes and the Russians, but was at last defeated by Peter the Great, and passed some years in exile in Turkey. When he returned, he found that some of his acquisitions had been retaken by the Danes, and sold by them to the new king of England. He threatened war, when an English fleet appeared in the Baltic, with which he was quite unable to cope; but his hatred remained undiminished, and he readily entered into a scheme devised by Cardinal Alberoni, the prime minister of Spain, for the restoration of the Stuarts.

§ 8. On Alberoni's invitation the Chevalier <sup>a</sup> repaired to Madrid, and was publicly received as King James the Third. The Spaniards had borne the loss of Gibraltar <sup>b</sup> very uneasily, and the Duke of Ormond <sup>c</sup> assured them that the first act of his master, when placed on the throne, would be to restore it. According to the scheme of Alberoni, 12,000 Swedish troops were to land in Scotland, whilst the Spaniards undertook to send a fleet against England. To man it, the services of the desperate pirates called buccaneers were sought. These men were the terror of the Spanish colonies, and by employing them against the English the crafty cardinal hoped to get rid of two enemies at once. But the scheme entirely miscarried. The King of Sweden was killed before a fortress in Norway, Sir George Byng defeated a Spanish fleet in the Mediterranean, and other officers hunted down the buccaneers in the West Indies. In spite of these circumstances a Spanish fleet was got together in 1719, and sailed, under the command of Ormond, to invade Scotland. But it was dispersed by a storm, and only the vessel in which Ormond was, with 300 followers, reached its destination. On seeing that he had brought so few troops with him, the clans declined to join him, and he returned to the Continent, where he died in exile many years afterward.

§ 9. The apprehensions caused by the designs of Alberoni had scarcely subsided when the nation was disquieted [A.D. 1720] by a far more discreditable cause. This was the well-known South Sea scheme, partly based on the Asiento, or slave contract, already mentioned, <sup>d</sup> and which was to be carried out with renewed vigor now that peace with Spain was restored.

A company had been formed some years before for trading to the South Seas, from which the Spaniards tried to exclude all other nations, and to this company many privileges were conceded by the



The South Sea Scheme.

Insane Stock-jobbing.

Swindlers Punished.

treaty of Utrecht.<sup>a</sup> Not content with these, however, Sir John

§ 17, p. 496.

Blunt and the other directors made a bargain with the government, by which they engaged to relieve the nation from the burden of annuities to the amount of £800,000, which had been contracted in the last reign to carry on the war, by inducing people to take their security instead of that of the State. Of course great privileges were granted to them for this; but the directors dishonestly exaggerated them, as by pretending that the Spaniards had agreed to give the silver mines of Peru in exchange for Gibraltar, and that they were to have the working of them.

§ 10. An insane haste to grow rich now seemed to seize on the whole nation, and every description of property was parted with to invest its price in the shares of the wonderful company, compared with which the company that had for more than a century

<sup>b</sup> § 8, p. 447.

traded to the East,<sup>b</sup> and had already laid the foundations of the Empire of India, seemed poor and inconsiderable. In a short time the shares were sold for ten times their nominal value, the directors promising that in six months they would pay a dividend of fifty per cent. on their cost. But long ere this time arrived, it began to be noticed that some men who had been most active in pushing forward the scheme were parting with their shares, and the people at once saw that they had been deliberately cheated. Their confidence sank as quickly as it had risen, a terrible clamor arose, and a parliamentary investigation followed. The directors were imprisoned, and their estates, valued at £2,000,000, were divided among the sufferers. Several members were expelled from the House of Commons as having been concerned in the fraud, and the popular belief was that every one of the ministers and court favorites, and even the king himself, had received bribes for conniving at it. Lord Stanhope, vehemently defending himself from this charge in the House of Lords [December, 1721], broke a blood-vessel from excitement, and died the following day.

§ 11. The discontent excited by these shameful disclosures caused the renewal of attempts in favor of the Chevalier, but they were frustrated. Mr. Lyster, a lawyer, was executed, and Atterbury, Bishop of Rochester, was banished by a Bill of Pains and

Penalties. He proceeded to France, where he met

<sup>c</sup> § 2, p. 510.

Bolingbroke,<sup>c</sup> ready, to return to England. He had good reason to believe that Bolingbroke had earned his pardon

Mischief-making Bolingbroke. Two Court Parties. Death of the King.

by betraying his associates, and remarked, "We are exchanged." If such was really the case, the king had made a very unwise bargain, as Bolingbroke was a most unprincipled man; and no sooner joined any party than he began plotting against it. The chief use that he made of his return was to widen the breach that already existed between King George and his only son, the Prince of Wales and heir to the throne. The prince was devotedly attached to his persecuted mother, and had risked his life to visit her in her prison.<sup>a</sup> He was naturally indignant at seeing her place taken by infamous women, and at the king's infatuation in bestowing titles on them. His father revenged himself by excluding him from the court, and thus a king's and a prince's party was established.

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 510.

§ 12. George the First imitated William by passing almost every summer on the Continent, though not like him engaged in war. He never took the trouble to acquire the English language, and he found no pleasure but in the company of his German subjects. With them he was popular, for they knew that he had been a brave soldier in his youth, and they were fully sensible of the advantages that they derived from his having gained the British crown. Early in the summer of 1727 he set out on his last visit to them. He was journeying in his coach with his favorite, the Duchess of Kendal, when a letter was thrown in at the window, and on reading it he fell into a fit of apoplexy, of which he died before he could reach the residence of his brother, the Prince Bishop of Osnabruck. This occurred on the 11th of June, when he was in the sixty-eighth year of his age. The contents of this letter are not certainly known; but the popular idea was that it was from his wife, who had died in prison eight months before, and that she summoned him to meet her within a year before the eternal tribunal, to answer for his treatment of her, an innocent woman.

§ 13. Coming, as he did, in contact with men trained in the elegant and literary society of the preceding reign, George I. appeared to great disadvantage. He was naturally sullen and reserved, and he never showed the least inclination to court the favor of his new subjects. They repaid his indifference with dislike, and neither he nor his favorites could appear in public without being received with yells and execrations. This could not be expected to soften his temper, which was harsh and imperious enough already; and he took his revenge in refusing pardon to



Accession of George the Second. War with Spain. Walpole's Peace Policy.

rioters and rebels when they were so unfortunate as to fall into his hands; hence he was more unpopular at the day of his death than when he first landed in England.

---

## CHAPTER II.

REIGN OF GEORGE THE SECOND. [A.D. 1727 TO 1760.]

§ 1. THE Prince of Wales, then forty-four years of age, was proclaimed King of England on the 15th of June, 1727, as George the Second. The announcement created no special enthusiasm, for he was not very popular. He was meanly avaricious; and in person he was diminutive, pinched, and hard. But he could speak English fluently (which his father would not learn); and he was brave as a soldier, just, and somewhat more temperate than he. His wife, Caroline Wilhelmina, of Anspach, was an able and excellent woman; and, fortunately for the realm, she was allowed to rule her husband. He had married her in 1705, and they had lived in harmony for more than twenty years. At his succession he had put Sir Spencer Compton in the place of the able Sir Robert Walpole, his father's chief minister, but the latter was speedily reinstated.

§ 2. Not long before the death of George the First a new war had broken out with Spain, and Gibraltar was besieged. It was not considered to be in any danger, and the fleet that would otherwise have been sent to its relief was despatched to the West Indies under Admiral Hosier. His orders were to watch the Spanish treasure-ships in Porto Bello, but not to attack them unless they attempted to put to sea. He waited in vain for months in that fatal climate, and then died of grief and vexation. Three thousand of his seamen perished also. But the stoppage of the ships brought great distress on the Spaniards for want of money, and they were soon obliged to make offers of peace, which were accepted in 1728.

§ 3. From this time for nearly twelve years Walpole kept the country from any foreign war, though he could not preserve internal tranquillity. Ever since the coming of the continental kings and their foreign favorites, the cost of the court, the army, and the

Taxation Riots.    Lynch Law.    Protestant Allegiance.    Maria Theresa.

navy were all far greater than they had been. New taxes therefore became necessary, and one of these, the malt-tax, caused serious riots in Scotland in 1725, where it was represented as a breach of the conditions of the union ;<sup>a</sup> whilst the introduction of the English revenue laws into that country caused almost daily conflicts between the "gaugers," as they were called, and the people, in which lives were often lost. At the execution of a smuggler in Edinburgh, in the year 1736, a tumult ensued, when John Porteous, the captain of the town-guard, ordered his men to fire on the people, and six of them were killed. He was convicted of murder, and ordered for execution, but received a respite from the authorities in England. The Edinburgh populace, however, was determined that he should not thus escape, and they took their measures with wonderful secrecy and success. On the evening of the 7th of September they suddenly gathered in crowds, secured the city gates with guards, broke open the prison, and carrying Porteous to the usual place of execution, hanged him on a dyer's pole. The government brought in a bill to punish the city magistrates for neglect of duty, but this was strongly opposed by the Scottish members of parliament, and was abandoned.

§ 4. In 1731, the jealousy that was entertained of the designs of France and Spain led to an alliance between England, the Emperor Charles the Sixth, and the Dutch, each party having its own ends to serve. The Dutch still feared French encroachments; England saw both France and Spain, in spite of treaties, give shelter to the Stuarts, and furnish them with money and arms for use on the first favorable opportunity; and the Emperor, though threatened by no one, had a favorite project to carry out. He was that Austrian archduke who had contended for the crown of Spain.<sup>b</sup> Having no son, he wished to secure the succession to his hereditary States, Austria, Bohemia, Hungary, the Netherlands, and other provinces, to his daughter Maria Theresa, and he tried to get France and Spain to guarantee the arrangement, which was embodied in a formal document called the Pragmatic Sanction. He could not effect this alone, but England and Holland gave their guarantee on his suppressing a trading company at Ostend, which they considered injurious to their commerce with the East Indies. Thus the seeds of a long contest were sown; but by the management of Walpole, who wished for

<sup>b</sup> § 7, p. 492.



## Peace Policy Abandoned.

## Vernon's Success against the Spaniards.

peace above all things. open war was postponed for a while. Strangely enough, the English merchants did all they could to thwart Walpole's policy, and at last they succeeded.

§ 5. Passing over, as not connected with English history, the war between France and the emperor, though the Duke of Berwick, the son of King James, was killed in it in 1734, we come to the year 1739, when Walpole was compelled to abandon his peace policy. It was not then the custom for any country to allow foreigners to trade with its colonies; but in spite of this rule hundreds of English ships, from London and Bristol especially, carried on a contraband intercourse with the Spanish possessions. Many of them were seized by the Spaniards, when the owners made such loud complaints, and so exaggerated the treatment that their men met with, that the nation was roused into fury, and Walpole at last found that he must either make war or retire from office. In the House of Commons he tried to calm this warlike frenzy; but he was opposed by Admiral Vernon, a rough seaman, who exclaimed, "Give me only six men of war and I will take that Porto Bello where Hosier and his men perished without being allowed to strike a blow." War was inevitable from that moment.

§ 6. Vernon was taken at his word by Walpole, in the hope, the enemies of the minister said, that he might fail, for he was a troublesome man in parliament. He was appointed to the command in the West Indies, and sailed, with just the six ships that he had asked for, in the summer of 1739. By Christmas came the news that he had made good his boast, and had taken Porto Bello with the loss of only eight killed and twelve wounded. The place was far too unhealthy to be retained, and Vernon left it after destroying the forts and carrying off their fine brass guns as trophies.

§ 7. The Spaniards now roused themselves, and sent so strong a fleet to the West Indies that Vernon was obliged to remain inactive at Jamaica for the whole of the year 1740. Early in 1741 he was joined by several ships, with a large body of troops on board, under the command of General Wentworth. An attack was made on Carthagena, and Vernon, who was of a boastful disposition though a brave man, at once sent a despatch to England giving such assurance of immediate success that public illuminations and rejoicings followed as if the place had been taken. This proved to be a mistake. The garrison made a brave defence, the admiral

Quarrels bring Reverses.

Voyage around the World.

and the general quarrelled, and each made attacks without the support of the other. The rains set in, and after a two months' siege the force withdrew, having lost more than 3,000 men. Vernon was not yet daunted. After refitting at Jamaica, he sailed first to St. Jago in Cuba, and then again to Porto Bello, with the intent of marching across the isthmus and storming the rich town of Panama; but in each case Wentworth, who was described by the admiral as "changeable as the moon," declined at the last minute to co-operate, and nothing was done. Soon afterward both were recalled to England, where Vernon was well received, all the failures being attributed to Wentworth.

§ 8. In 1740 another expedition was despatched against the Spanish colonies, under Commodore Anson; but it suffered more damage than it inflicted. Several ships were lost, and the crews were either drowned or made prisoners; but the *Centurion*, Anson's own ship, returned in 1744, having sailed round the world, plundered the town of Payta in Peru, and captured a Spanish treasure-ship with a cargo valued at £300,000, or \$1,500,000.

§ 9. In the year that this expedition sailed the Emperor of Germany died, and the War of the Austrian Succession<sup>a</sup> commenced. Charles Albert, Elector of Bavaria, disputed the legality of the Pragmatic Sanction, and, with the support of France and Spain, attempted to seize the Austrian States. He was the son of the elector who had fought against Marlborough,<sup>b</sup> and therefore was looked upon in England as an hereditary enemy; beside which his success would add to the strength of France and disturb that "balance of power" which English statesmen thought essential to their safety. The young and beautiful Maria Theresa appeared in the Hungarian Assembly with her infant in her arms, and all swore to live and die in her cause. The feeling was greatly in her favor in England also.

§ 10. Soon after this Walpole was driven from office by Pulteney, Pelham, and others,<sup>1</sup> who had always declaimed against the entanglement in foreign politics that the treaty of 1731 had pro-

<sup>1</sup> Pulteney had been the leader of the opposition to Walpole, but he now declined office, and was created Earl of Bath. He, however, continued to direct the proceedings of Pelham, who took the post of premier. Men of different views joined him, whence his administration was called the "Broad Bottom," or Coalition Ministry. Pelham remained in office until his death in 1754, when he was succeeded by his brother, the Duke of Newcastle.



German Mercenaries.

Hanover.

The King and Prince of Wales.

duced;<sup>a</sup> but when they had thus become ministers they tried to recommend themselves to the king by forwarding all his views far more than Walpole had ever done. Indeed, Walpole had offended his master by his peace policy, though he was so valued on other accounts that he was parted with reluctantly, and even when in retirement his advice was sought by the king. Instead of declaring war, the new ministers took the middle course of paying large bodies of German mercenaries for the service of the queen, and sending English troops to act with them in support of the Elector of Hanover. The king, on his part, took especial care of his native country, and prevented it becoming the theatre of war by promising to vote for the election of Charles Albert as Emperor of Germany, a dignity to which Maria Theresa's husband, Francis, Grand Duke of Tuscany, also aspired, and which he eventually obtained. This was but one of many difficulties that arose from the double character and conflicting interests of the sovereign as an English king and a German prince—a difficulty not entirely removed until the accession of Queen Victoria, in 1837.

§ 11. The king, like his father, was in the habit of passing almost every summer in Germany, and he was also like him in having an opponent in his son Frederick, Prince of Wales, who, under the evil counsel of Bolingbroke, tried to thwart all his measures. Hence his usual companion on his journeys was his second son, William, Duke of Cumberland. The king had served under Marlborough, and though war had not formally been declared with France, he did not hesitate to take command of the allied army [1743], assisted by that son, then only twenty-two years of age. The king's conduct, however, was unskilful, and he suffered himself to be hemmed in by the French in a very dangerous position.

<sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 209. The rashness of the French proved their ruin, just as it had done ages before at Crecy,<sup>b</sup> at Poitiers,<sup>c</sup> and at Agincourt.<sup>d</sup> Confident in their superior numbers, they made a careless attack upon the allies in the open

plain at Dettingen, near the Main, and were totally defeated on the 16th of June, 1743. This is the last time that a king of England has actually commanded an army in the field.

§ 12. In the preceding year Admiral Matthews had been sent to the Mediterranean, and without actually proceeding to hostilities, had hindered the Italian maritime states from giving assistance to

Events of the War.

England Threatened.

The Young Pretender.

the Spaniards. The French, however, gave shelter to a Spanish fleet in Toulon, when Matthews blockaded the harbor. At length, in February, 1744, the French and Spanish fleets came out together, and Matthews attacked them both. He was, however, but badly supported by some of his captains, and the action was indecisive. He and his next in command, Lestock, complained of each other. Courts-martial followed, and Matthews was dismissed the service, though he had fought bravely, and the insubordinate Lestock had not; but he belonged to the ruling party.

§ 13. Declarations of war followed, in Paris and in London, the arrival of the news of the battle off Toulon, and a campaign in Flanders ensued in 1745, when the allies, under the Duke of Cumberland, George's second son, were defeated by the French, under Marshal Saxe, at Fontenoy, on the 30th of April, 1745. The action was desperately contested by the English, but they were not sufficiently supported by their Dutch allies, and at last had to retreat with great loss. The whole of Flanders was speedily overrun by the French, for the English troops were soon called away to meet a rebellion at home.

§ 14. As soon as war had been declared in 1744, the French collected a fleet for the purpose of invading England in the cause of the Chevalier St. George; <sup>a</sup> but it was dispersed by a storm, and the attempt, which was to have been made <sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 490. with 15,000 troops, under the renowned Marshal Saxe, was abandoned. In 1745 the French had changed their policy, and preferred to keep their troops for service in Germany. James Edward, who had landed in Scotland thirty years before, <sup>b</sup> was <sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 511. inclined to remain quiet, but his son, Charles Edward, a handsome, enterprising young man, stole away from him at Rome, repaired to France, and determined to strike a bold stroke for the throne. He sold some jewels, and thus bought a cargo of arms, which he was allowed to put on board a French man-of-war, and under its convoy he embarked in a small vessel with only seven companions. But on the voyage the *Lion*, an English ship, commanded by one of Anson's captains, fell in with the French man-of-war, and after an action of some hours damaged her so severely that she was obliged to return to France. The young prince, however, undauntedly pursued his voyage, though he had now neither arms, ammunition, nor money.

§ 15. Arriving on the west coast of Scotland, Prince Charles



Lochiel and his Piper. Rebellion in Scotland. Young Pretender in Edinburgh.

Edward sent for Cameron of Lochiel, whose family had fought and suffered in the cause of the Stuarts ever since the time of

Dundee.<sup>a</sup> Lochiel told him that, coming as he did,

<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 482.

success was hopeless, and he would do wisely to return to France. The chief's piper had accompanied him on board, and though he could not understand their language, he saw that his master declined to do something that the prince besought him to do. To the born loyalty of the Highlander this was terrible; his color changed, and he paced to and fro fingering his dirk in great agitation. This caught the eye of the prince, and, as he knew a few words of Gaelic, he cried, "Piper, *you* will draw a sword for me!"—"I will, I will!" was the enthusiastic reply; "if no other man in the land draws a sword, I will fight for you, and die for you!" Lochiel could hold back no longer. "Come weal, come woe," he exclaimed, "I follow my prince." The little party landed, and the disastrous rising of 1745 commenced. The vale of Glenfinnan, about twenty miles from Fort William, was selected as the rendezvous, and a pillar now stands there which tells that there the standard of the Stuarts was set up on the 17th of August, 1745.

§ 16. Lochiel and his Camerons were the last to arrive at the appointed spot; but they brought with them two companies of soldiers captured on their march, which was received as an omen of success. As soon as they began to move, Sir John Cope, the commander in Scotland, set out to intercept them; but the insurgents skilfully evaded him, and whilst he was seeking for them among the Grampians, they took possession of Edinburgh without opposition, proclaimed James the Eighth<sup>1</sup> in solemn form, and established Charles Edward in the Palace of Holyrood, where he held a court attended by no inconsiderable number of the Scottish nobility and gentry. One of his first acts was to issue a proclamation, in his father's name, declaring his intention of dissolving the Union, which was still looked on as a national injury.

§ 17. Sir John Cope, on learning that the Highlanders had passed him, instead of attempting to pursue them, embarked his troops at Aberdeen and landed at Dunbar. He marched forward towards Edinburgh, and the Highlanders advanced to meet him. On the 20th of September only a piece of marshy ground called

<sup>1</sup> It must be remembered that James the First of England, the Chevalier's grandfather, was James the Sixth of Scotland.

## Battle of Prestonpans.

## Victorious Highlanders at Edinburgh.

Prestonpans, or Gladsmuir, lay between them, and the passage across seemed so difficult that neither was inclined to attempt it in the face of the other. Each army was of about the same strength (2,500 men); but the royal troops had the advantage of two regiments of dragoons and six pieces of artillery, whilst the Highlanders had only about fifty horsemen, and one small gun, which was carried in a cart, far less for any use to be made of it, but because the men liked to hear it fired when their prince appeared among them.

§ 18. Both armies lay down at night to rest in the field, the regulars, in contempt of their enemy, keeping no other watch than a few dragoons on the edge of the marsh. The Highlanders did not imitate them. No sooner was it quite dark than they sent out numerous scouts, who at length discovered several safe paths through the marsh. These were cautiously traversed in dead silence by the Highlanders; and just as the day broke, they fell with loud shouts upon the dragoons, who, without attempting a stand, fled into the camp, when the guns were captured on the instant, the horse put to flight, and the infantry either killed or captured, with scarcely any loss to the victors. Never before had a disciplined army been routed so quickly or so disgracefully. The cavalry threw away their arms and scattered in all directions, and Sir John fled to Berwick, where Lord Mark Kerr, a veteran of Marlborough's wars, received him with the sarcastic compliment, that he believed him to be the first general that had ever brought the news of his own defeat.

§ 19. The Highlanders returned in triumph to Edinburgh, plentifully supplied with arms and ammunition; and as they had now artillery, though they knew little of its use, they determined to besiege the castle. General Guest, who commanded there, knew that he should serve the government best by inducing them to remain before its walls, rather than proceed at once into England, which the few experienced officers among them strongly advised. He therefore replied very feebly to their fire, as if he was obliged to be sparing of his ammunition; and he wrote several letters to the government which he took good care should fall into the besiegers' hands, saying that he must surrender in a few days if not relieved; at the same time he sent, by other channels, information to London, saying that he was well supplied with everything, and could hold the castle against all Scotland.



The Scottish Court.

Progress of the Rebellion.

Honor of the Scotch.

§ 20. Deluded in this way, the young Chevalier kept his court gayly. He now received arms, men, and money from France, when they seemed not to be wanted. He was joined daily by fresh adherents; and having, after a six weeks' trial, found that the capture of the castle was not to be hoped for, he crossed the border early in November, marching on foot with his men, now 6,000 strong, in the Highland garb, sometimes with one clan, sometimes with another, for he had given up his carriage for the use of Lord Pitsligo, an aged nobleman. Carlisle was surrendered to him, and before the end of the month he reached Manchester, where some 200 Englishmen joined him, being the only body that did so. Here dissensions appeared among his followers, who were disappointed at seeing no symptoms of a rising in their favor, and many of them wished at once to return to Scotland. They were induced, however, to advance as far as Derby, and were then a day's march nearer London than either of the armies, each 10,000 strong, that had been sent to intercept them, under the Duke of Cumberland and Marshal Wade, but which they had eluded as they had done that of Sir John Cope. Terrible alarm now prevailed in London, where the king formed a camp on Finchley Common, and put himself at the head of the troops to fight for his capital, but at the same time prepared for defeat by sending his treasure on board the royal yacht in the Thames.

§ 21. These precautions all proved unnecessary. At Derby the Highlanders absolutely insisted on retreating, and they did so on the 6th of December, carrying the prince with them. He, however, now resumed his ordinary dress, and rode in his coach, surrounded by his life-guard, a troop of Lowland gentlemen, who kept as far distant as possible from the Highlanders, the prince no longer mixing with them. Yet, in spite of their dissensions, they made their retreat with wonderful skill and expedition, and at Clifton Moor, where they were overtaken by the English dragoons of the Duke's army [Dec. 10], they beat them off with such severe loss that they were no longer followed up closely. On the 23d of December they again crossed the border, having marched nearly 600 miles without disorder or plunder. Indeed, so scrupulous were they on this point, that when, in their first march on Edinburgh, they came near Oxenford

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 484.

Castle, the property of the hated Earl of Stair,<sup>a</sup> the Glencoe men claimed as their right to mount guard there and save it from injury, which they did. At their own request the

## Harsh Measures.

## Movements of Troops.

## Battle of Culloden.

English were left as a garrison at Carlisle, they seeming to fear the vengeance of the royal troops less than the hardships of a Highland campaign. They had to surrender to the Duke of Cumberland very soon afterward. The officers were executed, and the common **men sent to the American plantations.**

§ 22. Again established in Scotland, and not as yet molested by pursuers, the young Chevalier, leaving Edinburgh as confessedly beyond his strength, laid siege to Stirling Castle. General Hawley attempted to relieve it, but was defeated at Falkirk on the 17th of January, 1746, and put to flight. From the incompetence or treachery of a French engineer, however, the siege made no progress, and the Highlanders, with one accord, retired to their mountains, promising to return 10,000 strong in the spring.

§ 23. As soon as the roads and the weather allowed, the Duke of Cumberland moved into the Highlands from Aberdeen, his winter quarters, to attack Inverness. He had with him about 1,000 horse and 8,000 foot, many of them veterans from Fontenoy; and others, men who had so disgracefully fled at Prestonpans and at Falkirk, were eager to re-establish their character with their comrades. The Highlanders could not muster above 5,000, but they hoped to repeat the success of Prestonpans by a night attack on the troops in their quarters. The Duke's birthday occurred at this time [April 13], and he halted at Nairn to celebrate it, and to receive supplies from the fleet that accompanied him. These were lavishly distributed among all classes, and the camp was for days **one scene of drunken riot and confusion.**

§ 24. The Highlanders not unreasonably hoped to find the carousing English unprepared. But the difficulties of the twelve miles' march proved greater than had been expected, and daylight came when they were still far from the camp. They then fell back, exhausted and starving, to Culloden Moor, near Inverness, where they were followed by the royal troops, and at about noon [April 16] a desperate fight began. The Highlanders suffered much from the royal guns, whilst their own were almost useless from want of skill, and when they tried a furious charge, led on by Lord George Murray, though they broke the English first line, the second and third kept up a heavy fire which they were not able to withstand. The English then drove them before them at the point of the bayonet, and Hawley's dragoons, breaking in on their flank through a gap made in a park wall, took terrible revenge for their former



## Cruelty of the English Commander.

## Escape of the Pretender.

disgrace. This feeling unhappily actuated not only the men but their officers, and not only the Duke but the government. All alike seem to have been governed by a spirit of vengeance not unlike that which treated the Irish so cruelly a century before.

§ 25. The Duke allowed wounded men to be murdered, and women and children to be driven out to perish. He made an absolute desert for many miles around his quarters, earning thereby the name, not yet forgotten in Scotland, of the Butcher; and General Hawley imitated him but too well. The government had been equally frightened, and proved equally merciless. A shameful price of £30,000 had been put upon the head of the young Chevalier; but neither this sum, on the one hand, nor the frightful severity exercised on the other, could tempt even the poorest to betray him. After a series of hardships only paralleled by the fidelity of his adherents, he escaped to France, where he landed at the end of September, 1746. Probably irritated by his escape, the victors seemed bent on exterminating his partisans, and, except to the Earl of Cromartie, scarcely a single pardon seems to have been granted. Lords Kilmarnock and Balmerino were beheaded, and all the officers and men were treated as the Carlisle garrison had already been.<sup>a</sup> A thorough disarming of the clans

<sup>a</sup> § 21, p. 524.

followed, then a breaking up of the old hereditary authority of their chiefs—a government within a government—and, which galled more bitterly perhaps than all the rest, the picturesque Highland dress was proscribed, under heavy penalties.

§ 26. Extraordinary diligence, too, was shown in tracking offenders. The brother of the Earl of Derwentwater<sup>b</sup>

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 511.

was seized and executed in 1746 on an attainder of 1716; and Dr. Cameron, who had been a surgeon in the rebel army, and was recognized by some royal soldiers whom he had attended, was executed as a traitor in 1750. One culprit, however, suffered in 1747, whose fate no one could regret. This was Simon Frazer, Lord Lovat, who for fifty years had been in the habit of taking bribes from and betraying all parties, but had hitherto escaped the punishment that he so well deserved, for beside his political offences he was one of the most atrocious characters of the age. He had refused to join the Chevalier, and when his son did so with 800 of his clan, he professed to disavow him. But a patent for a dukedom from James the Eighth was discovered when his house was searched, and he was soon after-

Capture of Louisburg.

End of the War of the Austrian Succession.

ward found wrapped up in a blanket, and hid in a hollow tree. He was brought to London, tried, and condemned. He suffered with stoical composure, repeating a Latin verse implying that he rejoiced to die for his country.

§ 27. Whilst the government was thus wreaking its vengeance at home, the war abroad was continued with much variety of fortune. The strong fortress of Louisburg, on Cape Breton, together with the island, was captured from the French on the 28th of June, 1745, by the Anglo-American colonists of Massachusetts Bay, and a British fleet under Admiral Warren. From that time may be dated the rise of the idea of their own strength that led those colonists to shake off their allegiance to the mother country thirty years later. In 1746 a formidable armament, sent to reduce Port l'Orient, in Brittany, under the Admiral Lestock already mentioned,<sup>a</sup> failed disgracefully; but in the follow-  
 ing year Admirals Anson, Hawke, and Warren were  
<sup>a</sup> § 12, p. 520.  
 successful against French squadrons in the same quarter. These victories were balanced by a defeat sustained at Laffelt by the Duke of Cumberland [June 20, 1747], and all parties being now weary of the war, a peace was concluded at Aix-la-Chapelle in October, 1748.

§ 28. The only gainers by this war for the Austrian succession, and which is known in American history as King George's War, were two German powers. Maria Theresa and her husband had all their claims acknowledged, and Frederick of Prussia, the nephew of King George, and afterward known as Frederick the Great, retained the province of Silesia, which he had, without the shadow of a pretext, seized when their fortunes were at a low ebb. All conquests were to be given up, but to insure the restoration of Cape Breton, two noblemen, the Earl of Sussex and Lord Cathcart, were sent to Paris as hostages. This humiliation was greatly murmured at even by those who wished for peace, and the young Chevalier, then living in France, exclaimed: "Poor England! has she sunk so low that her word cannot be taken?"

§ 29. Eight years elapsed before war was formally declared again; but the whole period was one of armed truce, with ceaseless complaints and recrimination between England and France, for their interests were diametrically opposed both in the East and in the West, and the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle made no adequate provision for settling anything. Both had growing colonies in



The American Colonies.      Impending War in America.      War in Germany.

America. The English, a million strong, occupied the seaboard along a line a thousand miles in extent. The French, one hundred thousand strong, were seated chiefly on the St. Lawrence and in Eastern America. They were determined to check the expansion of the English possessions, and to do so they formed alliances with the **savage tribes of the forest.**

§ 30. Commissioners were appointed by the two governments to consider matters; but their decisions were utterly disregarded by the rival trading companies in India, which sought empire, and were equally unacceptable to the colonists in America, who were constantly coming into collision. These, at length, got tired of their fruitless task, and made preparations for a struggle for colonial supremacy. At last an English fleet was sent to India in 1754, and in the next year an army was despatched to Virginia, whilst at the same time two French ships, which were carrying reinforcements to Canada, were attacked and captured without any declaration of war.

§ 31. War, of course, immediately followed, but was not confined to either India or the colonies. Justly provoked at the rapacity of Frederick of Prussia, Austria and France agreed to attempt the partition of his dominions. Frederick, by means of bribes to a clerk, learned the secret, and struck the first blow by invading Saxony. A war in Germany alarmed the British monarch,

arch, for he perceived that his kingdom of Hanover was in jeopardy.<sup>a</sup> To secure its safety he first entered into a treaty with Russia, and next took an army of Hessian mercenaries into pay; but knowing the unscrupulous character of his nephew Frederick, who would be quite as ready to seize on Hanover as he had seized on Silesia, he soon thought it best to espouse his cause, and sent the Duke of Cumberland to his assistance. This brought about the very ill it was meant to prevent. Frederick was defeated at Kolin, and the French then turned their arms against the Duke of Cumberland. He was no match for the French general, Richelieu, and he was soon obliged to enter into a convention at Kloster Seven, by which he withdrew from the contest, and lost Hanover. That was in the year 1757. The king was terribly enraged at this, when the duke (his son) resigned all his employments and retired into private life.

§ 32. In other quarters the war was conducted little to the advantage of England. General Braddock and an army were

Braddock's Defeat.

Loss of Minorca.

Admiral Byng.

William Pitt.

cut off in the wilds of America, by the French and their Indian allies, on the 9th of July, 1755, and the survivors owed their escape mainly to the skill and courage of George Washington, then a major in a colonial militia. In 1756 a French fleet captured Minorca, after a slight action with the English fleet under Admiral Byng. The loss of the island was really owing to the incompetent ministry. When the war broke out, they had not a single foreign possession in a proper state of defence. They left Minorca feebly garrisoned until the enemy were close at hand, and then hurried off Byng, with a fleet not half manned or provided with stores. He was to take two regiments for its relief from Gibraltar; but the governor expected to be attacked himself, and would not spare them, when Byng wrote home, holding him responsible for the consequences. This the ministry took as a reflection on themselves, and when the loss of the island occurred they had the baseness to turn the popular fury against the admiral. He was imprisoned for a time at Greenwich Hospital, and being then put on his trial, he was shot, by sentence of a court-martial, at Portsmouth on the 14th of March, 1757.

§ 33. In spite of the sacrifice of Byng, the Duke of Newcastle, who had become premier<sup>a</sup> in 1754, found himself obliged to quit office, and after a few months' attempt<sup>a</sup> § 4, p. 500. at government by the Duke of Devonshire, the headship of the cabinet passed to William Pitt, a man of a very different stamp from either of them. He had been a cornet of horse, but when he became a member of parliament he inveighed so fiercely against Walpole that his commission was taken from him. He was naturally proud and passionate, and this treatment did not soften his temper. He continued his attack on the minister, and gave offence to the king personally by attaching himself to the household of the Prince of Wales.<sup>b</sup> When Walpole was driven from office, Pulteney,<sup>c</sup> who was the real head<sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 520. of the new ministry, would have included Pitt, but<sup>c</sup> § 10, p. 519. the king would not hear of it. Pitt, however, gave the ministry his support, and received the highly profitable office of paymaster-general. In 1746 he resigned his post, and he remained in opposition as long as Pelham and the Duke of Newcastle continued in office. After some difficulty, caused by the king's still remaining dislike of him, his turn at last came to govern the country, and he did it with a steady hand.



England's Power manifested.

Operations in India.

§ 34. In the year 1758 the French gave out that they were preparing for an invasion of England, and Pitt determined to anticipate them. An expedition was sent against the French arsenal of Cherbourg, which it stormed and took, destroying an immense quantity of stores, and 200 iron guns. Twenty handsome brass pieces were brought off as trophies, and paraded through London in triumph. Attacks on other places on the French coast followed, but were not successful. Pitt therefore took the bold step of sending 20,000 English soldiers to Germany, where they mainly gained the battle of Minden [August 1, 1759], though serving with the Prussians. The English navy also obtained many victories, capturing the French West India Islands, and defeating several squadrons in different places, as at Lagos, the Isle of Aix, and off Brest, where a fleet that had long been blockaded in the harbor was, on coming out, destroyed by Hawke. But these blows, though heavy, were little in comparison with what befell the enemy both in the East Indies and in America, where each party had important territorial possessions.

§ 35. In the former country the rival companies had long, under the pretence of assisting various princes, been really contending for empire. M. Dupleix and Robert Clive are the prominent names in their struggles. Dupleix had made the French influence paramount in India; but acquired such vast riches and power for himself that he became an object of jealousy to the French ministry, and was recalled, prosecuted, and died a ruined man. His successors were incompetent men, utterly unfit to contend with the genius of Clive. He captured their forts, detached the native princes from their alliance, and retook Calcutta, which had fallen into the hands of Surajah-Dowlah,<sup>1</sup> one of the most powerful of them. He soon after overthrew Surajah at Plassey, and bestowed his government on Meer Jaffier, who in return made such vast concessions to the English company, that their dominion there was firmly established [A.D. 1757]. In two years more the French fleet was driven from the Indian seas, and their land forces were shut up in Pondicherry, their sole remaining possession. These successes were the result of Clive's energy and decision, and with but little help from the government at home.

<sup>1</sup> On this occasion 146 Europeans being crowded into a small room, ever since known as "the Black Hole of Calcutta," 123 of them perished by suffocation before the morning.

The French and Indian War in America. Campaigns. Attack on Canada.

§ 36. There was equal success in America. Cape Breton,<sup>a</sup> as we have seen, was restored to the French, by treaty, in 1747. When, eight years afterward, war between <sup>a</sup> § 28, p. 527. England and France again broke out, it was retaken on the 26th of July, 1758, where General Wolfe greatly distinguished himself. The conflict known in America as the French and Indian War had then been going on for three years. While the army of Braddock was suffering disaster in Western Pennsylvania,<sup>b</sup> other <sup>b</sup> § 32, p. 528. British forces, chiefly American, were contending successfully for the mastery on the Upper Hudson and Lakes George and Champlain, under Sir William Johnson and General Lyman.

§ 37. In the following year four little armies prepared to assail the French and their dusky allies at four different points, namely, Crown Point, on Lake Champlain; Niagara, at the mouth of the Niagara River; Fort du Quesne, where Pittsburg, in Pennsylvania, now stands, and the French settlement on the Chaudière River, in Canada. But very little was effected during the campaigns of that and the following year [1757], owing to the extreme tardiness of Lord Loudon, the commander-in-chief in America. The result of the war, so far, was humiliating to British pride, and productive of much irritation of feeling among the Anglo-American colonists.

§ 38. The energy, forecast, and good judgment of Pitt in making plans and choosing men to execute them now changed the aspect of affairs in America, and won the confidence of the Anglo-Americans. He consulted with young Wolfe, who had distinguished himself in the capture of Cape Breton the second time; and the plan of an attack on the important colony of Canada, or New France, as it had been called, was settled between them. The central and western parts were to be assailed by the Anglo-American colonists and British regulars, under Lord Amherst, and they were then to descend the St. Lawrence and join Wolfe in an attack on Quebec, the capital, and the most strongly fortified city in America. But these forces, though successful, did not make as quick progress as had been expected, and when Wolfe arrived before Quebec he found he was left to his own resources.

§ 39. The defenders of Quebec were more than twice as numerous as Wolfe's troops, and were commanded by the Marquis de Montcalm, an officer of great reputation. They occupied a strong position outside the city, and Wolfe was repulsed in an attack on



Conquest of Canada.      Death of George the Second.      His Character and Reign.

it. He persevered until the beginning of autumn, and then carried his whole force farther up the river, above Quebec. On the morning of the 13th September, 1759, he placed his land forces in boats, and, accompanying them himself, passed down the stream to a place since known as Wolfe's Cove. Here he landed, climbed the rocks at a place that had been left unguarded, as being considered inaccessible, and appeared upon a high plateau in the rear of the city, known as the Plains of Abraham. This compelled Montcalm to leave his strong post. In the battle that at once followed on the Plains, the French were totally defeated. Wolfe was killed in the moment of victory, and Montcalm died of his wounds a few days afterward. Quebec was then surrendered, and the whole of Canada was conquered in the course of the following year. Montreal, the last stronghold, was surrounded by 17,000 troops and a thousand Indian warriors, and was compelled to surrender to Amherst on the 8th of September, 1760.

§ 40. These successes were dear to the warlike mind of the king, and they almost reconciled him to the able minister that had been forced on him. The reconciliation might have been completed but for the sudden death of the monarch, which occurred in a month after the fall of Montreal and the consequent extinction of the French power in Canada. On the morning of the 25th of October he drank his chocolate as usual, and soon afterward the ventricle of his heart burst, and he fell dead at the age of seventy-seven years.

§ 41. King George remained all his life thoroughly German, but he was not unpopular with his English subjects, as his father had been, for they saw that he was brave, active, and good-natured, and that he was in the right and his son in the wrong in their quarrels.<sup>a</sup> Hence all but the partisans of the Stuarts were well inclined towards him; and his foreign wars, though not undertaken in the interest of England, but in that of his Electorate of Hanover (for the defence of which he spent his private fortune and his savings), were borne with far less impatience than might have been expected. His son Frederick having died in 1754, he was succeeded by his grandson George, the first of the Brunswick kings that was born in England.

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 520.

Accession of George the Third.

Bute the Favorite.

## CHAPTER III.

REIGN OF GEORGE THE THIRD [A.D. 1760 TO 1820.]

§ 1. PRINCE GEORGE was riding out on horseback near Kew Palace when the news of his grandfather's death was brought to him. John Stuart, Earl of Bute, a gay and formerly a needy Scotch nobleman, who had been the prince's tutor, and was a great favorite with his mother, was then, as usual, his companion on the road. They repaired to Kew, and were soon joined by Pitt, the real head of the government, who presented the new king with a sketch of an address to be pronounced at a meeting of the Privy Council, the chosen advisers of the monarch, when he was told that a speech had already been prepared for that occasion. This satisfied the Great Commoner, as Pitt was called, that his power would be transferred to another.

§ 2. When, on the 18th of November, the king met parliament for the first time, the clause in his speech, "Born and educated in this country, I glory in the name of Briton," excited much enthusiasm; yet there was an uneasy feeling abroad lest his mother's favorite, Bute, might have undue influence over the monarch and make him too partial to that favorite's countrymen. This feeling was manifested on the morning after the prince was proclaimed George the Third, by a paper that was found fixed upon the Royal Exchange, bearing the words, "No petticoat government—no Scotch minister!" Two days after the accession of George, Bute was sworn in as a member of the Privy Council.

§ 3. Pitt saw that Bute, though a subordinate, had the king's confidence, and his haughty spirit chafed at this; but he continued the war with vigor, and captured Belleisle, on the coast of France, not for any use that it could be, but as an exchange, at a future day, for Minorca.\* The French, being now seriously distressed by the war, induced the kings of Spain <sup>a § 9, p. 493.</sup> and of the Two Sicilies to enter into a family compact (they were all relatives) for mutual defence. Pitt learned this, and proposed to make war on Spain at once. Had it been done, some treasure-ships that were on their way to Europe would probably have been captured. He was overruled in the council, and tendered his resignation. To his great surprise it was accepted, and Bute be-



War with Spain.

The National Debt.

Wilkes and the Government.

came premier on the 6th of October, 1761, whilst Pitt lost his popularity by accepting the title of Baroness of Chatham for his wife, and a pension of £3,000 a year for himself.

§ 4. A very short time proved the soundness of Pitt's advice. The treasure-ships were no sooner safe than the Spaniards formally gave notice of the family compact to the ministers. After this defiance they could not avoid declaring war. Two fleets were sent out, which in the course of 1762 carried out a part of Pitt's plan, and captured two most important Spanish possessions. These were, the Havannah in Cuba, and Manilla in the Philippines; but before the news of the last exploit could arrive from the East, Bute was negotiating a peace, which was concluded in 1763. As Pitt had expected, Minorca was given back in exchange for Belleisle; and Canada, Nova Scotia, and some small West India islands were ceded to England; but the debt incurred by the war was so great (the national debt had now risen to £138,000,000, or \$690,000,000), and the advantages gained seemed so small, that much discontent ensued, and Bute was driven from office [April, 1763]. Pitt had denounced the treaty; but Bute was attacked personally and most vehemently in a newspaper called the "North Briton," conducted by John Wilkes, a member of parliament. Its object was to hold up Bute and his fellow-countrymen to odium; but other persons also were attacked, and even the king's mother<sup>a</sup> was not spared. In its last number (No. 45) the king's speech, which described the peace as honorable and beneficial, was commented on with such license that the ministry which had succeeded Bute determined on a prosecution.

§ 5. This was the commencement of a contest that lasted, with slight intermission, for eleven years, and out of which Wilkes, though a man of infamous character in some respects, came victorious. His paper was voted by the House of Commons "a false, scandalous, and malicious libel." It was burnt by the hangman amid a scene of riot, and he was expelled the House. Rather than stand his trial he escaped to France, and was outlawed; but before he went he had obtained £1,000 damages against the Secretary of State for the illegal seizure of his papers at the time of his arrest in May, 1763. In 1768 he returned, his outlawry was reversed on some point of form, and he was elected a member for Middlesex. He was now tried and imprisoned for the libel, which he had again published; and several people were killed in a riot

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 5<sup>33</sup>.

Contest with Wilkes.

The American Colonies discover their Strength.

when he was taken to jail. On this he wrote an inflammatory letter, which the parliament voted a libel, and he was again expelled. The freeholders returned him a second time. The House then declared him incapable of sitting; and though he was a third time returned—for the electors insisted on their right of choice—they adhered to their determination.

§ 6. The city of London next took up Wilkes's cause, and addressed the king in tones of indignant remonstrance at what they termed the tyranny of the parliament. They were unheeded; but when his imprisonment expired they chose him, first, alderman, then sheriff, and his debts and expenses were paid by a body which called itself the Society of the Bill of Rights. When a new parliament assembled [A.D. 1774], he was, for the fourth time, returned for Middlesex, and was now allowed to take his seat. He afterwards became lord mayor, and as such carried up an address to the king, in 1775, praying for the removal of his ministers. In 1782 he procured the erasure from the journals of the resolutions that had been passed against him; and he retained his seat until his voluntary retirement from parliament in 1790.

§ 7. But this discreditable contest was very far from the most important one that sprang from the terms of the peace of 1763. That peace had relieved the English colonists in America from any fear of disturbance from the French, as Canada was made over to England, and their other great settlement, Louisiana, was transferred to the indolent Spaniards. There now remained no enemies on their borders but the Indian tribes; and some successes which they had gained over these, and the part that their troops had taken in the last two wars, had given them a just idea of their strength. This, from their habit of self-government, their skill in the use of the rifle, acquired in the border wars, and the hardihood of their seafaring population, was, on the other hand, fatally undervalued in England. They now numbered about 2,500,000 souls, and were divided into thirteen different colonies, most of them larger in area than European kingdoms. The colonies in the north, or New England States, as they called themselves, had been founded by the Puritans; Maryland, Virginia, and the Carolinas, in the south, were settled mainly by the exiled Cavaliers and Romanists; and the great central States of New York and Pennsylvania by the Dutch and Quakers.

§ 8. Each of these Anglo-American colonies had a governor



Spirit of the Colonists.

Their Political Platform.

Stamp-Act.

appointed by the crown, but in other respects there were great differences in their charters. The English ministry, accustomed to regard them as vassals of the crown, considered that they had no political rights but what these charters conferred, and that even these were subject to be varied or set aside if the interests of the mother country should seem to require it. The colonists naturally took a different view, and their Houses of Assembly were frequently at variance with their governors, especially in the Puritan States, where the free spirit that made their ancestors flee from England more than a century before was as strong as ever. This spirit came gradually to actuate the rest, and notwithstanding their differences of origin, they were at this time all united on the point of yielding just as much obedience to the mother country as they were legally compelled to, and no more, for they had scarcely received any government protection in their infancy, and they were now strong enough to help themselves.

§ 9. The war that had just closed had arisen partly out of the contests of the American colonies with the French settlements on their borders, and had somewhat increased the taxes which were then greatly complained of in England. The Grenville ministry, to lighten the burden, resolved [April, 1764] to tax the English colonies generally, by extending to them some of the stamp duties and imports that England had borne ever since the time of Charles the Second. The West India colonies paid them readily, but the American ones absolutely refused, on the just plea that they were not allowed a representation in parliament when such burdens were imposed. They took the broad ground, and ever maintained it, that taxation without representation is tyranny. The ministry used force to compel the colonies to submit to the impost; but, after a severe struggle with the friends of justice in parliament, the ministers were obliged to give way before a threat that all trade between the oppressed colonists and the mother country should be broken off. The act imposing stamp duties was repealed in March, 1766, but, to save appearances, an act was passed at the same time declaring the power of the parliament to be supreme in all matters of taxation.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> When intelligence of the passage of the stamp-act reached the colonists, it was everywhere denounced. When the stamps arrived, men appointed to distribute them were assaulted. Colonial assemblies, public orators, and the pulpit inveighed against the tyrannical measures. In several cities mobs occurred on the day when the law was

Ministerial Changes.

Taxation resisted.

Bloodshed in Boston.

§ 10. Ever since the retirement of Lord Bute there had been frequent ministerial changes. Grenville succeeded Bute, the Duke of Bedford succeeded Grenville, and the Marquis of Rockingham succeeded Bedford, all in the course of little more than two years. Pitt, who had been created Earl of Chatham on the occasion, succeeded Rockingham in 1766, but he was no longer the all-powerful minister that he had been. He was in bad health, his subordinates supported him but feebly, and the opposition were successful in reducing some of the taxes. To make up for this, a new scheme for taxing the colonies was put in operation, but Chatham had finally quitted office before it was attempted.

§ 11. After the brief administration of the Duke of Grafton, in which a new attempt at colonial taxation was begun, Lord North came into power [A.D. 1770], and remained in office for twelve years. He had what several of the preceding ministers had not, the entire confidence of the king, and during much the greater part of the time he had also the support of the vast majority of the parliament and the nation, which certainly did not look on the colonists as anything else than rebels until their success became very decided. From the first this new taxation scheme, like all others, was resisted by the colonists, because it was regarded as a violation of their sacred rights. No matter how insignificant was the impost, it was the same in principle, and for principle they sternly contended. Their resistance for a long time consisted only in verbal arguments; but when troops were sent to awe and subjugate the people, the irritation became so intense that it was difficult to keep down insurrection. In March, 1770, a collision between the citizens of Boston and the troops there occurred, which resulted in the killing of several of the former. The course of the colonists in regard to the matter was so wise and moderate that it deserved the most tender consideration of a just king and sagacious ministry. But these did not understand the Americans, and the oppressions were continued.

to go into operation, and many packages of stamps were seized and burned. In the midst of the excitement a congress of delegates from the several colonies met [Oct. 7, 1765] in the city of New York, and published some able papers setting forth the grievances complained of and petitioning the king for redress. Merchants entered into agreements not to import goods from Great Britain, and the people of all classes prepared to sustain them by using only their own manufactures. This touched the London merchants most keenly, and they joined the Americans in petitioning for a repeal of the stamp act. The ministry were compelled to listen.



Rebellious Movements. Boston Punished. Continental Congress and its Acts.

§ 12. At length the insolence of the commander of a revenue cruiser, named *Gaspé*, in Narraganset Bay, Rhode Island, so provoked the inhabitants, and particularly the navigators of the Bay, that a party of them went down from Providence one night [June 9, 1772] and attacked and burned the obnoxious vessel, which lay aground. This overt act of rebellion was succeeded at near the close of the following year by the destruction of cargoes of tea in Boston harbor [Dec. 15, 1773], which had been brought

to the country in the East India Company's<sup>a</sup> ships, in spite of the protests of the colonists on account of

the imposition of a duty on the article. This roused the English ministers. By act of parliament the port of Boston was closed and the business was transferred to the neighboring town of Salem; the House of Assembly was dissolved, and several changes were made in the charter of the colony which deprived the people of some of the dearest privileges guaranteed by that instrument. At the same time troops were sent to support the royal authority under General Gage, the commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, who was appointed governor of Massachusetts.

§ 13. The other colonies made common cause with Massachusetts, and, on their own authority, and in spite of their governors, held a general congress of fifty-one delegates at Philadelphia [Sept. 5, 1774], which issued a Declaration of Rights, claiming all the privileges of British subjects and stating instances in which these had been violated. They declared that "to these grievous acts and measures the Americans cannot submit," and they resolved to have no commerce with England until they obtained redress. For this purpose a non-importation league, known as the American Association, was signed by the delegates of all the colonies represented. An address to the king embodying the sentiments of the Declaration of Rights was voted, as also addresses to the Anglo-American colonists, the people of England, and the French Canadians at Quebec. These papers produced a feeling of profound respect and sympathy for the colonists everywhere, excepting in the minds of the blind ministry and the not very wise king; and

Lord Chatham<sup>b</sup> and other leading members of parliament espoused their cause and offered much op-

position to the ministerial scheme.

§ 14. In expectation of a necessity for armed resistance to their oppressors, the Americans, during 1774, formed military organiza-

<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 500.

<sup>b</sup> § 10, p. 537.

Minute-men.

Skirmishes at Lexington and Concord.

Revolution.

tions, whose members were bound to take the field at a moment's warning. These were called Minute-men, and were drilled for service. Gage, who was a judicious commander, knew this, and although he had 5,000 regular troops at different points under him, he did not think it prudent to interfere with the political movements of the people of Massachusetts, who, in the autumn of 1774, chose delegates to form a Provincial Congress at Cambridge, in sight of the British flag in Boston. That Congress made provisions for an army, appointed a commanding general for it, and, in fact, set up an independent government. Gage felt almost powerless; for he had seen, on one occasion, the mere rumor of British troops having assailed the Americans call together nearly 30,000 of the Minute-men of New England. But finally, in the spring of 1775, having 3,000 troops in Boston, he resolved to take measures to crush the rising rebellion by seizing arms and ammunition which he was informed the Americans had collected at Concord, a few miles from the city. Troops were sent for the purpose. These were met on the way at Lexington, where a skirmish occurred [April 19, 1775], when the first blood was shed in the American Revolution. The Minute-men gathered. The troops were attacked at Concord, and were driven back to Boston with heavy loss. Within ten days after these events an army of 20,000 Americans were environing Boston, and forming camps and casting up fortifications to keep Gage and his troops from leaving that peninsula. The other colonists were aroused, and flew to arms. The strongholds of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, on Lake Champlain, were seized by the patriots on the 10th of May [1775]; and at the middle of June, during a single night, a redoubt was thrown up on an eminence near Charlestown, whose cannon commanded Boston. Seeing his danger, and being reinforced, Gage sent out troops to expel the patriots from that vantage-ground [June 17], when the severe battle, resulting in victory for the colonists, known as that of Bunker's Hill, was fought.

§ 15. Meanwhile the Continental Congress of 1774<sup>a</sup> had reassembled [May 10, 1775] at Philadelphia. Already preparations had been made for armed resistance. A navy <sup>a § 13, p. 538.</sup> had been authorized, and Ezekiel Hopkins, of Rhode Island, was appointed commander. "We have counted the cost of this contest," said the Congress, "and find nothing so dreadful as voluntary slavery." They voted to raise an army of 20,000 men; and



Washington in Command. Declaration of Independence. Alliance with France.

two days before the battle of Bunker Hill they appointed George Washington<sup>a</sup> commander-in-chief of all the forces raised or to be raised. They adopted the troops before Boston as a national force, and there (at Cambridge) Washington took command of them on the 3d of July. The Congress agreed to an act of perpetual union of the colonies, and issued paper money. The colonies all regarded the assembly at Philadelphia as a general government, and in the space of a few weeks after the skirmish at Lexington royal power was virtually at an end in all the Anglo-American provinces. Then was begun the American War, which lasted seven years.

§ 16. For nearly a year after the beginning of hostilities the American Congress earnestly sought redress of grievances. War, and threatened extermination of the liberties of the colonies by British and German troops combined, were offered instead. Hopeless of justice, the colonies, by their representatives, declared [July 4, 1776] the several provinces free and independent States, with the national title of THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA. Assuming national functions, the Congress sought the aid and alliance of European governments, and readily found sympathy. Every one of them had felt the haughty power of England in some offensive way, and would gladly see that power weakened. France, smarting under the loss of Canada and the humiliation to which she had been subjected, and Spain, hoping to recover Gibraltar and Minorca, readily listened to American commissioners, and indirectly gave the insurgents secret aid. When its practical sympathy could no longer be concealed, France entered into an open alliance [February 6, 1778] with the struggling colonists, and sent troops and ships to help them; but Spain reserved her army and navy for the defence of her own colonies. Finally, the northern powers of Europe confederated [A.D. 1780] in an attempt to force England to respect the rights of neutrals. It was a league called an Armed Neutrality, which finally led England into a war with a greater part of the civilized world; and her commerce was terribly injured by American privateers, which became numerous and active. Among the privateersmen, John Paul Jones was the most active, and for a while he kept the seaports of the whole island of Great Britain in a state of alarm, as he circumnavigated it and darted into harbors here and there, in the year 1779. He once attempted to burn the shipping in Whitehaven; and for a while, in 1779, British

Invasion of Canada.      British driven from Boston.      Battles North and South.

commerce was suspended, for a united French and Spanish fleet had the command of the British channel.

§ 17. Whilst Washington kept the British troops shut up in Boston during the autumn and winter of 1775-76, a northern army, under General Schuyler, invaded Canada. The chief force was led by General Montgomery, formerly an officer in the British army, who, after capturing Montreal,<sup>a</sup> proceeded to besiege Quebec at the close of the year. There he was <sup>a § 39, p. 531.</sup> killed [December 31, 1775], and his little army was much dispersed. Soon afterward [March, 1776] the British troops under General Howe were driven out of Boston. They retired to Halifax, and then proceeded to get another foothold on the coast. A part of them unsuccessfully attempted to take Charleston, in South Carolina, in June; and finally, after a severe battle between the Americans and the allied British and German troops, on Long Island [August 27, 1776], Howe took possession of the city of New York, and the greater part of the island on which it stands. The Americans made resistance at the northern end of the island, where they had a strong work called Fort Washington. This they maintained until late in the year, when it was captured, chiefly by German troops, after Howe's army had fought Washington's at White Plains, and compelled him to retire to a range of hills northward.

§ 18. Soon after this, Washington and his little army crossed the Hudson, and fled towards the Delaware River, closely pursued by Lord Cornwallis. The Americans crossed the Delaware, and then recruited; and recrossing on the night of Christmas [1776], fell upon and vanquished a body of Germans at Trenton, in New Jersey. After a severe battle with Cornwallis, at Princeton, a few days afterward [January 3, 1777], Washington retired to the hill country of Eastern New Jersey for the winter.

§ 19. The British ministry planned a campaign for 1777 for the seizure of the Hudson River and Lake Champlain. By so doing, and holding a line from New York to Montreal, it was expected to sever New England from the rest of the Union, and so produce a fatal weakness. Sir Henry Clinton, commanding at New York, was to penetrate the country northward, and Sir John Burgoyne was to penetrate it southward, from the St. Lawrence, and meet his coadjutor. This was attempted. The British had learned by sad experience the folly of the boast of one of their officers, that with a company of grenadiers he could put a whole army of



Northern New York invaded.

Battles of Brandywine and Saratoga.

Americans to flight, and acted more discreetly. Burgoyne, with a motley army of 7,000 British regulars and Germans, 3,000 Canadians, and a body of Indians, moved cautiously forward. He captured Ticonderoga,<sup>a</sup> on Lake Champlain, in July; <sup>a</sup> § 14, p. 538. but in two severe battles, one at Stillwater, and the other at Saratoga, on the Upper Hudson, in the autumn, he was defeated, and he and his whole army were made [Oct. 17, 1777] prisoners of war. General Gates, who had been an officer in the British army, commanded the Americans on this occasion.

§ 20. In the mean time Washington had been contesting with the British under General Howe, in Pennsylvania. A severe battle was fought on the Brandywine Creek [Sept. 11, 1777], in which Lafayette, a young French officer, bore a conspicuous part, and was wounded. Washington fell back toward Philadelphia, and again fought Howe at Germantown. There the Americans were defeated. Howe took possession of Philadelphia, and Washington went into winter quarters at Valley Forge, a dreary region in the interior, where his army suffered dreadfully.

§ 21. The surrender of Burgoyne produced a profound sensation in Europe. The Americans were applauded for their prowess. The French government hastened to acknowledge the independence of the United States, and form an alliance with them, with the hope of gaining an advantage over England. England pondered upon the necessity of making peace with her revolted colonies, so as to save her own strength. Many of her statesmen and soldiers began to think the contest hopeless; and the Duke of Richmond, in the House of Lords, moved an address to the king recommending peace, even at the price of conceding the independence of the colonies. The Earl of Chatham arose from his sick-bed to oppose this motion. He wished the Americans to have justice, but he would not consent to a dismemberment of the empire. While speaking vehemently against the motion, as extorted by an unworthy fear of France, he fell down in a fit and died four days afterward. Chatham's views were in accordance with a number of public bodies, and they raised several regiments for the service; but the city of London, under the influence <sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 534. of Wilkes,<sup>b</sup> refused to do aught against the Americans.

Commissioners were appointed to treat for peace; but as the Americans refused to negotiate except on the basis of their independence, the war went on. A French fleet came to help them. The

• Operations North and South.      Surrender of Cornwallis.      End of the War.

British army left Philadelphia in haste, and fled across New Jersey. Washington pursued, and at Monmouth, well on toward Raritan Bay, the two forces had a severe battle on the 28th of June. That night the weary troops lay upon their arms. The British stole away in the darkness and escaped.

§ 22. The Americans were inspirited by the French alliance, and after the battle of Monmouth, the war was carried on upon a more extended scale. There was a large party in the country who adhered to the crown, and were ever ready to assist the British against the patriots. Availing themselves of these malcontents, the British officers made strong efforts in 1779 and 1780 to bring the Carolinas and Georgia under royal rule. These efforts were continued in 1781, when some of the severer battles of the war were fought in that region. But they failed, and Cornwallis, with the British troops, went into Virginia, and established a fortified camp on the York River, at Yorktown. There he was attacked by allied American and French forces—the former under Washington, and the latter under Rochambeau—and also a French fleet under De Grasse. He was compelled to surrender on the 19th of October, 1781, when the British ministers and people were satisfied that a further continuance of the war would be useless. Hostilities soon afterward ceased. Lord North retired from the premiership early in 1782, and his successor, Lord Shelbourne, caused a successful negotiation for peace. A preliminary treaty was signed in November, 1782, and the definitive treaty was signed on the 3d of September, the next year. In November following the last of the British army left the United States.

§ 23. It was only in the contests in America that England had such ill success; and to this the vast extent of the country contributed as much or more than the skill or want of skill of the generals on either side. Though the contest with other powers was severe, and opened with an unsatisfactory action with the French off Brest just after the declaration of war, in the spring of 1778, the British fleet had its triumphs to show, and all the hostile navies suffered more than it did.<sup>1</sup> The Dutch were defeated on the Doggerbank by Parker, and had their ports blockaded, to the destruction of their commerce. The Spaniards almost ruined their army and navy in a fruitless siege of Gibraltar, which was gal-

<sup>1</sup> They had 171 ships of war captured or destroyed; the British lost but 88.



Terms of Peace.

American Loyalists.

Government in India.

lantly held against them and the French for more than three years by General Elliott. The French fleet, which had captured some of the British West India islands, and which had caused the surrender of Cornwallis by its effective co-operation with Washington and Rochambeau,<sup>a</sup> was totally defeated by Admiral Rodney, on the 12th of April, 1782, whilst treaties of peace were under negotiation. This victory made the terms of the treaty less burdensome to the English than they would otherwise have been.

<sup>a</sup> § 32, p. 543.

§ 24. Peace, as we have seen, was at length concluded at Paris, in September, 1783. The independence of the American colonies was acknowledged, and many of the gains of the war that was ended in 1763<sup>b</sup> were lost. But Gibraltar was retained, even at the risk of prolonging the war. The popular feeling in the United States against the Tories, as the loyalists were called, was very bitter for a while, and families, to the number of 100,000 souls, fled from the country. After a temporary shelter in Nova Scotia, many of these received free grants of fertile lands in Canada, between Lakes Ontario, Erie, and Huron, with arms, stores, and provisions, until the time that they could bring the wilderness into cultivation. As they had fought to prevent the dismemberment of the State, they were commonly known as the "U. E. (Unity of the Empire) Loyalists." Several Indian tribes, compromised in the same way, were similarly treated, and the descendants of both races still hold the lands assigned.

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 534.

§ 25. During the whole of the American war the English possessions in India were ably and rigorously governed by Warren Hastings, a man not very scrupulous as to the means employed in securing wealth and power. Hyder Ali, the most active of the native princes, who tried to preserve his country from the grasp of British avarice, was repulsed in several attacks; and Sir Edward Hughes inflicted several severe defeats on the French and Dutch in the Indian seas. After his return to Europe, Hastings was impeached on charges of misgovernment and cruelty, which were well sustained; but, after a trial that lasted seven years, he was, as a necessity of State policy, not only acquitted [A.D. 1795] but allowed a pension.

§ 26. While the war was raging, England had serious domestic troubles, which at one time bore an alarming aspect. Parliament

Riots in London.      Invasion threatened.      Ireland.      The Younger Pitt.

repealed some of the harsh laws against the Roman Catholics, when a flame of intense bigotry burst out all over the realm, and the cry of "No Popery!" was heard on every hand. Riots occurred in many places. There was a fearful one in London in June, 1780, during which a vast amount of property and many lives were destroyed. At about the same time the fear of a French invasion of Ireland induced the ministry to call for volunteers in that country, and full 80,000 were soon enrolled. The officers were mostly Protestants and men of property, and the rank and file were nearly all Roman Catholics. Having arms in their hands, they demanded the concession of rights and privileges which had long been denied them, with a haughtiness that provoked fierce indignation. The government was now compelled to listen and to yield, and the harshness of the penal laws for Ireland was much softened. There was a triumph gained, at the same time, for the Irish parliament, which had hitherto been allowed to discuss such matters only as the English government had already sanctioned. This was a most galling vassalage, and the right to exercise it was now formally renounced. But Protestant intolerance confined the conceded privileges to the Protestant gentry, for they alone were permitted to sit in parliament, and they never showed any desire to use their new powers for the benefit of the great body of the people by whose help they had gained them.

§ 27. The peace concluded in 1763, though necessary, was not popular, and Lord Shelburne was obliged to resign. By a shameful coalition with his old opponent Fox, Lord North again came into power in April, 1783; but before the end of the year they were both dismissed by the king, and the premiership was given to William Pitt, the second son of Lord <sup>a § 10, p. 537.</sup> Chatham,<sup>a</sup> who governed the country for eighteen years—a much longer period than any minister since Walpole.

§ 28. Though only twenty-four years of age when he took office, Pitt displayed consummate ability in dealing with a discontented people and an exhausted treasury. He at once set about reducing expenditures, abolishing needless pensions, and making treaties of commerce with the United States and other countries. He also attempted to effect a reform in parliament, but it was not then felt to be necessary, and his scheme was rejected, as was also a project for fortifications along the coast, to which he had been



Pitt's Administration.

Democracy in France.

led by recollections of the humiliation of 1779.<sup>a</sup> But though thus defeated, his influence was not shaken; and when, in 1788, it became necessary to prepare a Regency Bill, in consequence of the mental malady of the king, his propositions were preferred to those of the opposition. The king's opportune recovery, however, put a stop to the matter.

§ 29. Under Pitt's care the army and navy attained to something of their former strength, and by showing himself prepared for war he compelled the Spaniards to withdraw some groundless claims on a part of the west coast of America (California), which had been taken possession of by the celebrated navigator Captain Cook. As years passed on the steady increase of trade rendered taxation less burdensome, and a scheme was begun in 1786, under the name of the Sinking Fund, which it was hoped would in time extinguish the national debt. This had already decreased £10,000,000 (\$50,000,000) under his management; but an event soon occurred that baffled the calculations of all the statesmen of Europe—the breaking out of the French Revolution.

§ 30. The moral and material aid which France gave to the Americans for the purpose of injuring England, produced fruit quite the reverse of what the French court had anticipated. There was at that time an absolute despotism in France. The distress caused by the wars and extravagance of Louis the Fourteenth and Fifteenth was very great; but no one ventured to complain of the taxes or the extraordinary privileges granted to the nobility and clergy. But when the French officers and soldiers returned from America, filled with republican ideas and aspirations for independence of thought and action which they had imbibed there, they began to question the right of a few to oppress the many. New ideas quickly pervaded the public mind and stirred the pub-

lic heart. In this movement Lafayette<sup>b</sup> was conspicuous. Very soon the rumblings of the volcano of passion in the bosom of society were heard on every hand.

Legislators assumed to be responsible to the people, and the Parliament of Paris, which for hundreds of years had been a mere court for registering royal edicts, now [A.D. 1787] refused to do so, and in consequence the new and grievous taxes which the war had rendered necessary could not be levied.

§ 31. To remedy this the States-General, a body that had not met for nearly two hundred years, was called together; and it, like the

<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 540.

<sup>b</sup> § 20, p. 542.

The French Revolution.

French Egotism.

English Revolutionists.

Long Parliament,<sup>a</sup> soon took all power into its own hands. In a short time the king (Louis the Sixteenth) was in reality a prisoner in his palace, and the representatives of the people proceeded to make society as level as possible. The state prison of the Bastille, which carried in its history the ideal of a tyrannical despotism, was assailed and finally pulled down. The privileges of the nobility and clergy were abolished, and the church property was seized. Instead of assisting to meet the storm, the king's brothers and many of his nobles had fled across the frontier, and were trying to induce foreign sovereigns to take up their cause and restore the former order of things. Under Pitt's guidance England kept aloof; but the Emperor of Austria (who was the brother of Marie Antoinette, the queen of France) and the King of Prussia entered into a treaty for the purpose at Pilnitz, in 1791. The treaty became known, and brought matters to a crisis in France. In the war that at once followed the French forces were at first unsuccessful. This, by Robespierre and other self-chosen leaders of the Paris mob, was declared to be owing to treachery, and the most frightful massacres of imprisoned nobles and priests followed. The unfortunate king, who had in vain accepted constitution after constitution as it was offered to him, was now deposed, and a republic established. He was soon afterward tried on charges of inviting foreigners to invade France, and beheaded. That was in 1793. His queen soon met the same fate. The English ambassador had been already withdrawn, and the Convention (such was the name taken by the new rulers of France) now proclaimed war with England.

§ 32. Even before this the Convention had in reality declared war with all existing governments, by voting that they would give assistance to every nation that wished to "recover its liberty." This invitation to rebellion was not much regarded on the Continent, but there was a democratic party in England who had sympathized with the French from the very first, and who now showed such unmistakable disaffection that severe measures were resorted to by the government to restrain them. They were restrained, but not without danger to the peace of the country, for at one time revolution seemed imminent, and England, instead of being the prey of the revolutionary party in France, proved their firmest opponent.

§ 33. On the breaking out of the war, English troops were sent



## England and France at War.

## Bonaparte's Scheme of Conquest.

to Flanders, where for two campaigns they contended stubbornly but unsuccessfully against the overwhelming numbers of the French, and were then withdrawn, to be employed against the colonies of the enemy. Pondicherry, the Cape of Good Hope, Trinidad, and many places of minor importance fell into their hands. In Europe the war on land was little else than a series of triumphs for the French, who, in the course of the nine years that it lasted [A.D. 1793-1802], overran Holland, Germany, and Italy, overthrew the King of Naples and the Pope, made war on the Turks, and forced the Northern powers and Spain into hostilities with England, from which they suffered severely.

§ 34. Several private men carved their way to fame and fortune in these campaigns, but no one was so successful in this as Napoleon Bonaparte, a young Corsican adventurer, who was ever as ready to fight against the people as for them, if his interest could be thereby served. His pre-eminent ability as a soldier roused the jealousy of the Directory, the form the government had then assumed; but they dared not attempt to suppress him. Therefore, in pursuance of a scheme for Eastern conquest, which, in his ambition to become a second Alexander, he had conceived, he was sent to Egypt, where he made great slaughter of the undisciplined Turks and Mamelukes, and thence marched into Syria, where he sustained his first reverse [A.D. 1799] before the walls of St.

Jean d'Acre (famous in the days of the Crusades)<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 13, p. 149. from Sir Sidney Smith, an English naval officer, at the head of a few British seamen and marines. Though the French, from the destruction of their navy, could not reach India,

they induced Tippoo Saib, the son of Hyder Ali,<sup>b</sup> to take up arms, by the promise of aid that was never sent; but that prince was defeated and killed at Seringapatam, and his dominions were divided among other native princes who had refused to listen to the French emissaries.

§ 35. The successes of the French republicans were balanced by several terrible defeats received from England, at sea, by them and their allies. Lord Howe gained a famous victory over the French fleet on the 1st of June, 1794; Sir John Jervis defeated the Spaniards off Cape St. Vincent, and Admiral Duncan the Dutch at Camperdown, both in the year 1797—a year also memorable for a mutiny in the English fleet at the Nore, which subsided on the redress of some real grievances of which the sailors

The Republic overthrown.

Insurrection in Ireland.

Pitt resigns.

had to complain. In 1798, Sir Horatio Nelson, by the destruction of a powerful navy near the Nile, reduced the French army that had invaded Egypt virtually to the condition of prisoners, though their general, Bonaparte, contrived to escape some time after, and, returning to France, overthrew the Directory,<sup>a</sup> and placed himself at the head of affairs, with the title of First Consul. Though still engaged in war, he put an end to the anarchy that had so long prevailed in France; and when he had apparently established a settled government, England made peace with him, recognizing the French republic [A.D. 1802], but still liberally supporting the thousands of emigrants who had fled to her shores on its establishment.

<sup>a</sup> § 34, p. 548.

§ 36. During several years of the war the French had threatened the invasion of England, but they never attempted it, and if they had, there is no reason for supposing that they would have met with many partisans in that country. But the case was different in Ireland, where their coming was eagerly looked for by many who had imbibed republican principles. There was a stronger bond of unity between the French and the Irish, in their religious agreement, both being Roman Catholic, which had been intensified by Protestant intolerance and oppression. But the English navy either captured or dispersed more than one expedition sent with men and money to Ireland. In spite of this, a revolutionary body, styling themselves "United Irishmen," began an insurrection in that country in the spring of the year 1798, which soon spread over the whole island, and was not suppressed without a lamentable amount of bloodshed. This, after a time, led to the union of Great Britain and Ireland, in 1801, which was the last conspicuous event of Pitt's administration. He had been obliged to promise the Protestant Dublin parliament great concessions, or the measure would never have been accomplished. He also wished to conciliate the Romanists, and, hoping for liberality among his peers equal to his own, he had led them to believe that the Imperial Parliament would treat them more favorably than the Irish one had done. He found himself deceived in this, and with a sense of honor not always shown by statesmen, he resigned office, much against the will of the king. He was succeeded by Mr. Addington, who had long been Speaker of the House of Commons, and who concluded the famous peace of Amiens, on the 27th of March, 1802, which seemed to promise a permanent peace in Eu-



A Delusive Peace.      Napoleon threatens England.      Pitt recalled to office.

rope. Then Englishmen, who had been so long excluded from the Continent, flocked across the Channel. At the beginning of June full 6,000 British subjects were in Paris. Fox and other English statesmen attended Bonaparte's levees, and the excess of friendship exhibited became ridiculous.<sup>1</sup> But this was only a truce, and the war broke out again in 1803.

§ 37. The British national debt had now risen to alarming dimensions; and to lessen the burden of taxation the new minister greatly reduced the army and navy. The First Consul, eagerly watching for an opportunity to break the truce, was now styled the Emperor Napoleon. He seemed in earnest in his threats of

invasion of England. A large army was encamped  
<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 7.      at Boulogne,<sup>a</sup> and apparently only waited for the

French and Spanish fleets to unite in the British Channel for the attempt to be made. Again the navy frustrated the plan. The combined fleets were defeated at Trafalgar by Lord Nelson, who fell in the action [A.D. 1805]; and to the end of the war the French ports were so closely blockaded that all thoughts of invasion became idle, particularly as 400,000 volunteers had appeared in answer to the threat, and some part of Pitt's plan of fortification had been carried out.<sup>2</sup> This volunteer force allowed British troops to be sent on the Continent in much larger numbers than had ever been done before.

§ 38. Mr. Pitt, when he came again into power, had induced Austria and Russia to take up arms against France, but they were defeated at Austerlitz [Dec. 2, 1805], and his own death followed quickly on the receipt of the news. A coalition ministry succeeded him, to which its opponents gave, in derision, the name of "All the Talents." Several expeditions that he had sent out were unsuccessful, though the Cape of Good Hope was again captured, and General Stuart, with a force from Sicily, gained a

<sup>1</sup> Gilray, the eminent caricaturist, ridiculed this in a print representing a lean man (France) embracing and kissing a very fat woman (England). It was entitled "The First Kiss this Ten Years." The Frenchman says: "Madame, permettez me to pay my profound esteem to your engaging person, and to seal on your divine lips my everlasting attachment." The fat Englishwoman replies: "Monsieur, you are truly a well-bred gentleman; and though you make me blush, yet you kiss so delicately that I cannot refuse you, though I was sure you would deceive me again." On the wall just behind there were framed profiles of King George and Bonaparte scowling at each other.

<sup>2</sup> The Royal Military Canal, and the Martello Towers on the Kent and Sussex coasts, were constructed at this time.

Abolition of the Slave-Trade.

Seizure of the Danish Fleet.

decided victory over the French at Maida in 1806. Fox, Pitt's old opponent, though not nominally the premier, was the leading man. He had ever expressed great regard for the French nation, and for Bonaparte in particular; and he now opened negotiations for peace, but they were broken off by his death. The formal abolition of the slave-trade was the act of the ministry of the "Talents," though slavery itself endured nearly thirty years longer in the British possessions. The Duke of Portland next became premier [A.D. 1807], and a vigorous prosecution of the war was resolved on.

§ 39. The first blow was struck in an unexpected quarter. Napoleon had defeated both the Prussians and the Russians, but he felt the want of a fleet, as his own was shut up in his harbors, and was hardly safe there. A secret treaty was therefore made, by which the rulers of Russia and Prussia agreed to compel the Danes to place their really powerful fleet at his disposal. The English ministry, on learning this, sent an expedition to Copenhagen, which offered to take charge of the Danish ships, so as to preserve them from the hands of the French, with the promise of restoring them at the end of the war. The Danes, who had had their fleet destroyed by Nelson a few years before [A.D. 1801], would not trust the English, believing they would suffer the fate of the lamb that put itself under the protection of the wolf. The consequence was, their capital was besieged [A.D. 1807] and taken, and their navy seized and taken to England to keep it out of the hands of Napoleon. This outrage was strongly condemned by every right-minded person.

§ 40. The Danish, Dutch, and French colonies were next assailed by the English, and soon subdued, the most important conquest being the island of Java, which was accomplished by an expedition from India, where the British power was now firmly established. This had been in a great part the work of Sir Arthur Wellesley (afterward the great Duke of Wellington), a young general who had gained the battles of Assaye and Argaum in 1803, and who was now about to undertake a still more arduous task in Europe.

§ 41. Napoleon was now wielding power with a high hand. He had by this time not only made himself Emperor of the French and King of Italy and Protector of the Confederation of the Rhine, but had given thrones to three of his brothers, and dukedoms and



Napoleon's Power in Spain.      The English in Spain.      Wellington Victorious.

principalities in conquered countries to his generals and marshals. He now turned his eyes on Spain and Portugal, and resolved to add those countries also to his empire. He had taken advantage of dissensions in the Spanish court to get the royal family into his power, when he at once sent a large army into Spain, and bestowed the crown on his brother Joseph. At the same time his troops marched into Portugal, and the royal family there also forsook the country and took refuge in Brazil, one of its colonial possessions. But, though thus abandoned by their rulers, neither the Spaniards nor the Portuguese were inclined to submit to the French. They made application to England, where popular feeling ran strongly in their favor, and it was determined to send them help. Thus the famous Peninsular war began, in 1808.

§ 42. The first efforts made were but partially successful. In August, 1808, Sir Arthur Wellesley landed in Portugal, and defeated the French at Vimeira; and soon afterward Sir John Moore advanced into Spain, but not being joined by the Spaniards, as had been expected, he was obliged to retreat, and though he gained a victory at Corunna, he was killed in the action, and his troops returned to England. In 1809, Sir Arthur advanced into Spain, and gained the battle of Talavera; but the French had three armies in the country, each more numerous than his own, and he was obliged to remain on the defensive whilst they scattered the many ill-disciplined bodies of Spaniards.

§ 43. In 1810, the French, led by one of their most renowned captains, Massena, advanced in overwhelming force against Sir Arthur (now Lord Wellington since the battle of Talavera), when he retired slowly before them into the strong lines of Torres Vedras, near Lisbon, which they dared not attack. In 1811 he issued forth, defeating the French at Fuentes-d'Onore, and thenceforth he never returned to Portugal, nor ceased his victorious march towards France. This occupied a period of three years, in which he gained the great battles of Salamanca, Vittoria, Orthez, and Toulouse, besides victoriously sustaining a desperate six days' combat among the Pyrenees, and capturing Ciudad Rodrigo, Pampeluna, St. Sebastian, and numerous other strong places. Under Lord Wellington's command the Spaniards and Portuguese fought bravely beside the British, and the whole formed an army with which, as he himself said, "he could go anywhere, and do anything." Nothing could resist their steady

Progress of the War.

King Insane.

Regent.

Impressments.

march, and before the close of the year 1813 they stood triumphant on the "sacred soil of France."

§ 44. During the progress of the Peninsular war many events of importance had occurred that demand notice. In 1809 a powerful expedition was sent against Walcheren, in the expectation that the Dutch would rise against their French masters; but it failed to effect anything of consequence, and the loss of life from sickness was very great. Soon after this the Duke of Portland died, and was succeeded as premier by Spencer Perceval, who followed his warlike policy, in spite of much murmuring from the opposition. In 1810 the king became hopelessly insane,<sup>a</sup> and henceforth passed his life in retirement. <sup>a</sup> § 28, p. 545.

His eldest son, George, a profligate, and an unprincipled man, nearly fifty years of age, now administered the government as Regent, to which office he was appointed on the 5th day of February, 1811. He had long lived on bad terms with his father, and it was expected that he would choose his ministers from the Whig party; but owing to dissensions among them he did not do so. Mr. Perceval was assassinated in 1812 by a man named Bellingham, who conceived that he had a grievance against the government, when an attempt was again made to form a Whig ministry. It did not succeed, and Lord Liverpool, a well-known diplomatist, became premier, and held the post for many years.

§ 45. From the very beginning of the French Revolution<sup>b</sup> there had been disputes between England<sup>b</sup> and the few powers that remained neutral, because of the haughty pretensions and practices of the former as the alleged "Mistress of the Seas." Under government sanction the commanders of her ships of war claimed and exercised the right of searching the ships of neutrals, not only for enemies' goods, but for English sailors, who, when found, were carried off to serve in the royal navy. The theory of the British government was that no subject could expatriate himself, and could be claimed as a subject wherever found. Upon this plea they seized and impressed English seamen in other service into that of the royal navy, and often took many who were not English. <sup>b</sup> § 31, p. 546.

§ 46. As the war went on the only neutrals left were the Americans, whose carrying trade became large and profitable. It was continually interfered with by British cruisers, who took scores of men from American merchant ships under pretence that they were



English Aggressions.

Americans retaliate.

Indians incited to War.

English deserters. The practice caused great irritation in the United States, and the government sent out men-of-war to protect the merchantmen. A crisis soon came. A British ship of war fired upon and forcibly searched [June 22, 1807] the American frigate *Chesapeake*, off the coast of Virginia, and carried away four seamen claimed to be English subjects and deserters. It was afterwards proven that three of the four were Americans. The outrage aroused the nation, and the President issued a proclamation [July, 1807] ordering all British armed vessels to leave the waters of the United States immediately, and forbidding any to enter them until full satisfaction for the insult should be made. This was tardily given by a declaration, more than four years afterward, that the act was unauthorized by the British government.

§ 47. Meanwhile the British and French governments, like desperate gamblers, played with the world's commerce, peace, and prosperity, in efforts to injure each other. By British "Orders in Council," and Napoleon's "Decrees," ports were declared blockaded, commerce was broken up, and the shipping business of the Americans was reduced to a coast trade. The government adopted

the retaliatory measure of non-intercourse <sup>a</sup> as a means

<sup>a</sup> § 13, p. 538. for obtaining just action on the part of the belligerents, and at times it seemed to be effectual. But both legislation and diplomacy failed, and the British continued to search American vessels, and impress seamen found on board of them into the royal service. Intense irritation was the consequence, and a hot war spirit spread over the land. It was kept in abeyance, however, to the dictates of prudence, until, in the year 1811, it was found that British emissaries, under the sanction of British colonial officers in Canada, and the interest of British fur-traders, were exciting the Indians of the Northwest against the American settlements beyond the Ohio river. A confederation of Indian tribes, for the purpose of exterminating these frontier settlers, was forming when it was effectually broken up by the prompt action of the Governor of the Indian Territory, General Harrison. He was informed of a gathering of hostile Indians near the Tippecanoe creek, and marched a small force to the neighborhood. The Indians attacked him [Nov. 6, 1811], when he defeated, dispersed, and punished them. This state of things caused an immense pressure upon the government in favor of war, from the West and

War against England declared. Invasion of Canada. War on Land and Water.

South, but the people of New England opposed the fiery zeal that sought to plunge the nation into war. The government yielded, however, and formally declared war against Great Britain on the 19th of June, 1812.

§ 48. The first step taken by the Americans was as unwise as it was disastrous. They invaded Canada on its western border, led by General Hull, where they were met, driven back, and the whole army was captured by British regulars and descendants of the "U. E. Loyalists,"<sup>a</sup> under General Brock, on the 16th of August, 1812. Another attempt to invade Canada on the Niagara frontier, in October following, was unsuccessful and almost as disastrous. The little American navy, meanwhile, had been winning honors and respect by several important victories on the ocean.

§ 49. In the year 1813, nearly the whole northern frontier along the lakes, from Detroit to Ogdensburg, on the St. Lawrence, became a theatre of hostilities, with varying fortunes for each party. The young men in the great valleys beyond the Alleghany mountains flocked to the standards of local leaders in great numbers, resolved to win back what Hull had lost. There were stirring movements in the Northwest all summer, and early in the autumn the whole country was thrilled with joy because of a victory won [Sept. 10, 1813] on Lake Erie, by a squadron under Commodore Perry, over a squadron under Commodore Barclay. This seemed to atone for the disasters experienced by the Americans at Frenchtown, a few months before. The victory was followed by another on the river Thames, in Canada, won by Harrison<sup>b</sup> over British and Indians under Proctor and Tecumtha, when all that Hull had lost<sup>c</sup> was recovered. Late in the year a force under General Wilkinson went down the St. Lawrence in boats, intending to attack Montreal.<sup>d</sup> The expedition was unsuccessful, and, after an indecisive battle on the Canada side of the St. Lawrence [Nov. 11, 1813], the American army went into winter quarters in Northern New York. Meanwhile General Jackson was carrying on a successful war against the Creek Indians in Alabama, who were allies of the British, which resulted in their utter prostration in the spring of 1814.

§ 50. During 1813, the American navy and privateers were very active. The British gained an important victory on the 1st of

<sup>a</sup> § 24, p. 544.

<sup>b</sup> § 47, p. 554.

<sup>c</sup> § 48, p. 555.

<sup>d</sup> § 17, p. 541.



Wellington's Veterans in America.

Battle of New Orleans.

Peace.

June, by the capture of the *Chesapeake*; they also destroyed American shipping in the Delaware, and ravaged the coasts of Chesapeake Bay and Virginia, from Havre de Grace, at the mouth of the Susquehanna River, to Hampton Roads, at the mouth of the James. They were repulsed in an attempt to seize Norfolk.

§ 51. The career of Napoleon having been checked by the Allied Powers in Europe, at the beginning of 1814, the British were enabled to send many of Wellington's<sup>a</sup> veterans to America in the spring of that year. Severe battles were fought on the Niagara frontier in the summer, with not very decisive results; and early in the autumn Sir George Prevost advanced from Canada to attack the land and naval forces of the Americans on and in the vicinity of Lake Champlain. A very severe battle was fought at Plattsburgh, by both arms of the service, on the 11th of September, 1813, where the British were repulsed and driven back to Canada. In the meantime a British force under General Ross invaded Maryland, burnt the city of Washington [Aug. 24], the capital of the United States, after a battle four miles from the city, and in September attempted to capture Baltimore. Then the British were repulsed [Sept. 14], and Ross was killed. Their shipping had, during the whole season, greatly harassed the seaports of New England, and in August bombarded Stonington, on Long Island Sound. They were repulsed [Aug. 12, 1814], and left the waters.

§ 52. In the autumn of 1814, General Jackson<sup>b</sup> was busy in the defence of the region of the Gulf of Mexico; and in November he was called to New Orleans, then threatened by a force of British veterans. He collected troops there as rapidly as possible, and with about three thousand men he fought and defeated a much larger number under General Pakenham (who was killed), a short distance below New Orleans, on the 8th of January, 1815. Before this battle, commissioners to treat for peace had finished a successful negotiation at Ghent [Dec. 24, 1814], in Belgium,<sup>c</sup> the news of which reached America early in February, when hostilities ceased. This contest with Great Britain has ever been regarded by the Americans as their second war for independence, inasmuch as it established the character of the government and people for power in diplomacy and war, developed its multifarious resources, and gave the republic a high rank in the family of nations.

<sup>a</sup> § 43, p. 552.<sup>b</sup> § 49, p. 555.<sup>c</sup> § 7, p. 208.

War for the Bourbons.

Napoleon's Successes, Reverses, and Fall.

§ 53. The war of the Allies<sup>a</sup> with France had been originally undertaken for the restoration of the Bourbons, and the members of that family had found shelter first <sup>a</sup> § 51, p. 556. with one continental State and then with another, but they had now for many years been collected in England. In the course of the war opinion changed greatly as to the propriety of foreigners forcing rulers on an unwilling people, and had Napoleon put any limit to his ambition, and his hatred to England as the chief obstacle in his way to universal empire, the Bourbons would probably have been abandoned for the sake of peace. Most of the continental powers were certainly willing to do so, and England, which erroneously attributed the loss of her American colonies mainly to help given by France, had no reason to continue the war merely for the sake of the Bourbons, though her hospitality to them was afforded as freely as ever. But Napoleon's career of wonderful success seems to have disordered his understanding, and he obstinately courted his own ruin. His success against the Austrians in 1809 had enabled him to send those vast armies into Spain that reduced Wellington to the defensive; <sup>b</sup> but they were almost destroyed in the course of the two <sup>b</sup> § 42, p. 552. following years; and when he should have replaced them [A.D. 1812] he failed to do so, and thus really abandoned the contest. This was because he now chose to engage in a war with Russia, hitherto his ally, which demanded all his strength. It failed miserably, with greater loss of life than any expedition of modern times.

§ 54. This disaster raised all Germany against Napoleon, and though he fought desperately he was driven out of the country in 1813. Early in the following year, with Wellington in the south of France, and Russians, Prussians, and Austrians in possession of Paris, he was obliged to abdicate, and then, as the French people seemed to desire it, the Bourbons were restored by the victors. At the instance of Alexander of Russia, the dethroned ruler was allowed to retain the imperial title, and was sent to reside at Elba, a small island on the Italian coast, with liberty to keep a miniature army and navy. The English ministers reluctantly consented to this arrangement to please their powerful ally, and its folly was soon apparent.

§ 55. Napoleon was very restless in his little dominion, and in the spring of 1815 he landed in France, and was rapturously re-



Battle of Waterloo.

A long Peace.

National Debt and Discontents.

ceived by his old army, which took upon itself to decide the fate of the country. The Bourbons withdrew without a struggle, and he marched into Flanders, saying: "I go to measure myself against Wellington." The battle of Waterloo soon took place [June 18, 1815], when he was totally defeated. He then attempted to escape to America; but, failing in this, he surrendered to England, and was sent to St. Helena, an island of the South Atlantic Ocean, where he died in the year 1821. On the 20th of November, 1815, a definite treaty of peace between France and the Allied Powers was signed. The world was then at peace, and England enjoyed that luxury for thirty years afterward.

§ 56. Much as peace was desired, and great as had been the rejoicings when the allied sovereigns and their most distinguished generals visited England in 1814, after the fall of Paris, its return was attended with deep discontent among the people; for almost all the conquests of the war were restored, and the nation found itself burdened with a debt that was enormous. It was then the frightful sum of £865,000,000, or \$4,325,000,000, or over

\$300,000,000 more than it is now.<sup>a</sup> Want of labor

<sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 484. during the long war had caused machinery of every kind to be invented; and when thousands of soldiers and sailors were discharged there was no employment for them. There was also great distress from the high price of food, caused, in a great degree, by the oppressive corn-laws, which restricted the importation of grain so as to protect the interests of the few great landholders and the master agriculturists. When, in 1815, an act was passed which prohibited foreign wheat from being brought into England until the famine price of eighty shillings a quarter should be reached, the people could endure the pressure no longer, and serious riots ensued, in which lives were lost. Want of employment often disposed the laboring classes to listen eagerly to evil advisers; but there were patriotic and benevolent men who saw and felt the folly and injustice of legislation for the benefit of the few to the injury of the many, who stirred the hearts of the people with righteous indignation. The government and the aristocracy became alarmed, and some extremely severe laws against public meetings and so-called seditious publications were passed.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> One of the most noted agitators of that period was William Cobbett, who published a vigorous opposition periodical called "The Political Register." He had been a

Reforms demanded.

Revolutionary movements.

Death of the King.

§ 57. But the distress continued, especially in the manufacturing districts of Lancashire and Yorkshire, and riots for the purpose of destroying machinery became frequent. London, too, had its Spafields riot in 1816,<sup>1</sup> and the unpopularity of the government was shown by the joy evinced at the acquittal of several persons tried for treason or sedition. The question of reform in parliament, which had lain dormant so many years after its abandonment by Pitt,<sup>a</sup> was now revived by the Whigs;<sup>b</sup> but there were others whom this would not satisfy. They became known as Radicals, as they demanded a "radical reform" in everything. They held public meetings, which were attended by immense numbers of persons, where some of the more zealous ones displayed the red cap of the French republicans. Many practised drill and military manœuvres, as if for an appeal to arms, the discharged soldiers proving willing instructors. Royal proclamations were disregarded, and at last a very large meeting at Manchester, in 1819, was dispersed by force, and Henry Hunt, a popular orator, was arrested and imprisoned. But these harsh measures did not quiet the agitation. They deepened the discontent. Disaffection remained, and the whole country was at one time about ready to blaze out into insurrection. Some Scotch weavers appeared in arms near Glasgow, and a few desperate men headed by Arthur Thistlewood, once a militia officer, planned a massacre of the whole of the cabinet ministers at a dinner in February, 1820. This, which is known as the Cato-street conspiracy, was disclosed just in time, by one of the members, to prevent the crime, and five of the plotters were executed. Several more, on pleading guilty, were transported.

§ 58. A little while before the discovery of this plot, George the Third died. That event occurred at Windsor, on the evening of Saturday, the 29th of January, 1820, when he was in the eighty-second year of his age, and the sixtieth of his reign. He married, in 1761, the Princess Charlotte of Mecklenburg-Strelitz, by whom

resident in the United States many years before, where he was a most abusive political writer. He had suffered severe punishments for libel after his return to England, and now, alarmed at the new acts, he fled to America, leaving some of his disciples to suffer.

<sup>1</sup> More than 20,000 persons assembled in Spafields to vote an address to the Prince Regent from the distressed manufacturers, on the 15th of November, 1816. Another meeting was held on the 2d of December following, and terminated in a serious riot.

<sup>a</sup> § 36, p. 549.  
<sup>b</sup> § 18, p. 464.  
<sup>c</sup> § 44, p. 553.



Character of George the Third. Accession of George the Fourth. His Queen.

he had nine sons and six daughters. She was a very exemplary woman, and died only a few weeks sooner than her husband [November 17, 1819], in the seventy-fifth year of her age. The king had been in seclusion about ten years, on account of his insanity. He had, while in possession of his faculties, been always sincerely desirous of the welfare of his subjects, but was too often surrounded by unwise or incompetent counsellors. Himself incapable of perceiving the vast changes that were going on, his mind continued fixed in the principles in which he had been educated, and his people, who were borne forward on the current of events, regarded him as narrow-minded, while satisfied that he meant to do right. In private life he was most exemplary, and his homely familiarity and accessibility endeared him to the people, who regarded him with sincere affection, and called him "the good king."

---

## CHAPTER IV.

REIGN OF GEORGE THE FOURTH. [A.D. 1820 TO 1830.]

§ 1. A BAD man ascended the throne of England on the death of George the Third. It was his son George, then fifty-eight years of age, who was proclaimed king on the 31st of January, 1820, as George the Fourth. He had from his early years led a reckless and discreditable life; had had large debts paid for him by the nation; and had forsaken his wife (his cousin Caroline of Brunswick, whom he married in 1795) after living with her only a single year. He found his chief associates among the Whig party; but when he became Regent [A.D. 1811] he did not change the ministry, and the "Prince's friends," as they styled themselves, remained in opposition. When he became king they made their opposition bitterly felt by taking up the cause of his discarded wife, from whom he sought to be divorced.

§ 2. That princess had been abroad ever since the peace, and the king could not reconcile himself to her returning as queen. He

had no son, and his wish was to imitate Henry the Eighth under similar circumstances,<sup>a</sup> and marry again.

But parliaments in modern days are not as compliant as under

<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 315.

Trial of the Queen.

The King and Parliament.

Ministerial changes.

the Tudors, and Lord Liverpool incurred the king's displeasure by maintaining that the measure would never be agreed to. Large offers were made to the queen to induce her at least to remain on the Continent; but this she refused to do, and came to England. To their discredit, the ministry, rather than resign office, now attempted to carry out the king's views, and she was in reality put upon her trial before the House of Peers, a Bill of Pains and Penalties intended to dissolve her marriage being introduced against her in August, 1820.

§ 3. During that trial the excitement throughout the country was intense. The popular sympathy was all with the queen. The divorce was so vehemently opposed that the ministry were obliged to abandon the scheme, and the king became so much more unpopular than before that he seldom afterward appeared in public in England. He keenly felt the public rejoicing on account of the queen's triumph. His coronation, though splendid beyond example, was but slightly attended from fear of popular tumult, and a very serious riot did occur at the funeral of the queen, who died very soon after her claim to be crowned with him had been disallowed, and admission to Westminster Abbey on that occasion [July 19, 1821] refused to her. She expired on the 7th of August following, a heart-broken woman. The king, who was universally detested by all good and thoughtful persons, afterwards visited Ireland, Hanover, and lastly Scotland [A.D. 1822], and met in each with a kind reception.

§ 4. The king had only started a single day on this last journey when a matter occurred that eventually led to a complete change in the policy of the empire. This was the suicide of the Marquis of Londonderry, the Foreign Secretary, a man who was considered by far the most energetic of the ministers, and the filling up of his office with George Canning, once the friend of the younger Pitt,<sup>a</sup> but now the champion of what had come to be known as Liberalism.

<sup>a</sup> § 27, p. 545.

§ 5. The government in Spain, Portugal, and Italy had long been purely despotic; but the intercourse with England that sprang up during the late war had caused its form of government to be approved by many of the leading men in those countries, though the body of the people took no concern in the matter. Thus the Spanish Cortes framed a constitution during Ferdinand's absence in France, but on his return he set it aside as destructive of his



## Revolutionary Movements.

## Political Equality of Roman Catholics.

just authority. Early in 1820 a part of the army revolted, established the constitution, and reduced the king to a cipher. The example was speedily followed in Naples, in Portugal, and in Piedmont; and at about the same time the Greeks took up arms against the Turks. To prevent the revolutionary example spreading still farther, the emperors of Austria and Russia, and the kings of France and Prussia, came to an understanding, in consequence of which the Austrians crushed the Italians, and the French re-established Ferdinand on the throne of Naples, and the Portuguese king abolished the new constitution. Russia had long been the foe of Turkey, and, in spite of Alexander's scruples about countenancing rebellion, it suited his policy to keep the Greek revolt alive. Many English, French, and Germans went to the assistance of the insurgents, though their governments did not as yet interfere, and food and clothing were sent to them from the United States of America.

§ 6. Whilst the Liberal cause was thus depressed on the Continent, Mr. Canning strove to promote it by acknowledging the independence of the revolted Spanish American colonies—Mexico, Peru, et cetera. He also, in conjunction with Mr. Huskisson, began that change in the narrow commercial policy which has since

repealed the corn-laws<sup>a</sup> and established free-trade.

<sup>a</sup> § 56, p. 558. These matters he carried in spite of the reluctance of several of his colleagues, who looked on him as encroaching upon the authority of the premier;<sup>b</sup> but they were especially

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 500. offended at his advocacy of the Roman Catholic claims to political equality in the State. This had for some years been an open question—that is, one that the Cabinet was not bound to be unanimous upon—and the difference of his views would have been passed over, but for the encouragement that his eloquent speeches gave to the “Catholic Association in Ireland,” a body presided over by Daniel O’Connell, an able and eloquent Irish lawyer, which from humbly petitioning, had now begun to hold menacing language. By Mr. Canning’s influence a bill giving relief to Romanists was passed by the House of Commons, but it was rejected by the Lords (A.D. 1825); and it was understood that not only the king, but his brother the Duke of York, who was the next heir to the throne, was firmly opposed to the principle. The duke, however, died soon afterward, and when the question was revived it was under widely different circumstances.

War with the-Burmese.

Injurious Speculation.

Change of Ministers.

§ 7. A new enemy to England had of late years appeared on the borders of its East Indian possessions.<sup>a</sup> This was the Burmese, a warlike people beyond the Ganges, with whom some dispute about frontiers ripened into a war in 1824. After a two years' contest they were obliged to sue for peace; and at just about the same time the reduction of Bhurtpoor, an Indian stronghold supposed to be invincible from having resisted several former attempts by the British, made a deep impression on many of the native princes.<sup>b</sup> The colonies that had been taken from the French and Dutch had (with the exception of the Cape of Good Hope, Ceylon, and the Mauritius) been restored, and the advocates of the new policy maintained that England gained more by trading with them than by possessing them. Their opponents denied this, but it was allowed that from the time that Mr. Huskisson came into office [A.D. 1823], the revival of trade and commerce had been very great, and in proportion as the workmen obtained employment so did their manifested discontents decrease. But this did not last long. In 1825 a mania for speculation arose, and the consequences were almost as disastrous as those of the South-Sea scheme a century before.<sup>c</sup> Banks failed, establishments were closed, and the starving workmen were ready for any desperate course.

§ 8. In 1826, a constitution being again established in Portugal,<sup>d</sup> British troops were sent to protect that country from a threatened attack by Spain, a step which Mr. Canning's colleagues resented, as if he had acted too much on his own authority. Before they could come to a good understanding the Earl of Liverpool, the premier, was struck down by paralysis [A.D. 1827], when, to the surprise of every one, the king bestowed the post on Mr. Canning, who had long been personally obnoxious to him as a partisan of his queen.<sup>e</sup> The Duke of Wellington,<sup>f</sup> Lord Eldon, Mr. Peel, and four other cabinet ministers, however, absolutely refused to serve with him, and he could only fill their posts with members of the Whig party, though on the question of parliamentary reform he differed entirely from them. He had long been in feeble health, and he died in less than four months after taking office, and without having carried a single measure. A kind of provisional administration followed for a few months, of which Lord Goderich was premier [Aug. 1827 to Jan. 1828].

<sup>a</sup> § 25, p. 520.<sup>b</sup> § 35, p. 530.<sup>c</sup> § 9, p. 513.<sup>d</sup> § 5, p. 561.<sup>e</sup> § 3, p. 561.<sup>f</sup> § 41, p. 551.



Greek Insurrection.      Agitations in Ireland.      Resignation of the Ministry.

§ 9. The Greek insurrection had now continued for some years, and was attended by great cruelties on both sides. The Turks at length summoned Mehemet Ali, the Pasha of Egypt, to their aid, and he sent a fleet and army to the Morea, with the threat that he would carry off the inhabitants as slaves, and colonize the country afresh with his negro soldiery. So hideous a proposal roused the indignation of Europe, and England, France, and Russia sent their ships to prevent its realization. The Turkish and Egyptian fleet lay in the harbor of Navarino, where it was attacked and destroyed on the 20th of October, 1827. The news of the victory was at first very welcome in England, but it soon began to be seen that it was unwise to weaken the Turks too much, and thus advance the designs of Russia, and the ministry became so unpopular that they were obliged to retire. The Duke of Wellington and Mr. Peel became the heads of the government [Jan. 1828], and important events speedily followed.

§ 10. The agitation in Ireland for the political emancipation of the Roman Catholics had never ceased, and O'Connell, its leader, had now entered upon a new mode of action. He took advantage of an election in the west of Ireland, and though legally ineligible, easily procured himself to be chosen a member of the House of Commons. As he knew would be the case, he was refused a seat. This was represented as a fresh outrage on Ireland, and the agitation grew fiercer than ever. The "Catholic Association" continued to meet, in open defiance of the law, and on the other hand the Protestants formed Brunswick Clubs, and made a parade of their hostility. The Duke of Wellington now saw that there was no choice but concession of the Roman Catholic claims or civil war—and "knowing," as he said, "what war really was," he preferred the former. Lord John Russell, at the head of the Whig party, had recently procured the repeal of some acts of the time of Charles the Second, directed against Protestant dissenters<sup>a</sup> which had survived the Revolution, and the Duke justly considered the great majority of the Irish people (his countrymen) at least as much entitled to consideration.

<sup>a</sup> § 19, p. 477.

§ 11. The king in general took no concern in politics, but, like his father, he thought that his coronation oath forbade the concession asked for by the Roman Catholics, and his ministers had great difficulty to gain his consent to what was known as "Catholic Emancipation." The measure was brought forward in 1829, and

Death and Character of George the Fourth.

Religious Freedom.

passed mainly by the votes of the Whigs; but both the Duke and Mr. Peel forfeited, for a time, the confidence of the party with which they had hitherto acted. Mr. Peel was deprived of the honor of representing the University of Oxford, and the Duke had to fight a duel with the Earl of Winchelsea, formerly one of his firmest supporters. In the midst of the confusion that ensued, the king, who had long been an invalid, as a consequence of his self-indulgence, became suddenly worse, and died on the morning of the 26th of June, 1830, from the immediate effects of the rupture of a blood-vessel of the stomach. He was then in the 68th year of his age. He left the throne to his brother William, the Duke of Clarence, his only child, the Princess Charlotte, having died in 1817.

§ 12. George the Fourth was a man of good natural abilities, but he too seldom exerted them for the benefit of his people. He possessed literary and musical tastes; was of a handsome and dignified presence; and was by his admirers styled "the first gentleman in Europe," from the courtesy of his manner. But he always seemed reluctant to appear in public, and he resembled Charles the Second only in the worst parts of that monarch's character. He gave himself up to the guidance of worthless favorites; and he usually let his ministers manage affairs as they chose, so long as they supplied him with ample means for self-indulgence and idle pageantry, and forbore to trouble him to do more than agree to their proposals.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### SOCIETY DURING THE REIGNS OF THE FOUR GEORGES.

§ 1. RELIGIOUS freedom among Protestants steadily gained victories, small but important. The Toleration Act,<sup>a</sup> about to be repealed when Queen Anne died, was soon afterwards somewhat extended. But the Roman Catholics, exempted from its privileges, felt no diminution of the effects of the ban under which they were laid. The first parliament of George the First, after the Jacobite<sup>b</sup> rebellion in 1715,

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 498.

§ 1, p. 480.



Bigotry suppressed by free Discussion.

Schism in the Church.

passed an act containing many hard words and a loud boast of government clemency, requiring every "papist of the age of twenty-one years to register his name and estates, with the yearly rent thereof," the object being, apparently, to subject them to separate taxation.

But the indignation caused by that rebellion, as well as the Jaco-

<sup>a</sup> § 15, p. 521.

bite insurrection in 1745<sup>a</sup> soon cooled, and no extraordinary burdens were laid upon the Romanists. Attempts were made to moderate the harsh laws against them, and also to allow Jews to become naturalized without taking the sacrament; but bigotry prevailed over Christian forbearance, and the High Church<sup>1</sup> influence which caused Defoe, the author of *Robinson Crusoe*, to be fined and imprisoned in 1706 for publishing his able poem, *Jure Divino*, would allow no toleration which might interfere with their power. It was the usual exercise of the tyranny of Might over Right.

§ 2. But reason left free, discussion soon wrought great changes in opinion, and there were two remarkable secessions from the established church. The first occurred in Scotland, where an independent organization, known as the Associate Presbytery, was

<sup>b</sup> § 25, p. 411. formed, and which, in 1743, renewed the Scottish National Covenant, and also the Solemn League and

Covenant.<sup>b</sup>

§ 3. Almost simultaneously with this Scotch schism the Methodists appeared. John Wesley, a young graduate of Oxford, and just ordained a minister in the Church of England, was the founder of a sect so called. They held meetings in the open air and other "unconsecrated places," and were persecuted by the church. George Whitefield, another young preacher, joined them. A separate organization was formed, distinct, but not opposed to the established church. The Society rapidly spread, especially in America, where it is now the most numerous of the Christian sects. There were other and less prominent secessions. In the church the leaven of Christian liberality was at work, which vastly modified its character. The High Churchman of the middle of the eighteenth century was but a lunar reflection of the churchman of the

<sup>1</sup> The distinction of High and Low Church began, in name, in the reign of Queen Anne. The friends of Dr. Sacheverell<sup>a</sup> (among whom was the Queen),

<sup>a</sup> § 15, p. 495. who was prosecuted for preaching two sermons calculated to excite hostility against the Dissenters, were called High Churchmen, and his opponents Low Church, or moderate men.

Dissenters and Churchmen.

Legislation.

Financial Transactions.

time of Laud<sup>a</sup> and Sancroft.<sup>b</sup> Dissenters were gradually relieved of burdens; but the last—the necessity of receiving the sacrament in the Church of England as a qualification for holding certain offices, and the denial of their right to the solemnization of their marriages in their own chapels or in a registry office—was not taken off until the year 1836. In the mean time some of the fiery enactments against the Roman Catholics had been repealed, and at length they were emancipated, as we have observed.<sup>c</sup> In the Anglo-American colonies the dissenters were an overwhelming majority, especially in New England, and efforts to establish episcopacy in America—a joint domination of Church and State, as in England—were vigorously resisted and defeated. Controversy ran high for many years before the kindling of the American Revolution [A.D. 1775]; and after the Declaration of Independence, in the summer of 1776, the churchmen in America, especially the clergy, generally adhered to the crown, though there were numerous exceptions.

<sup>a</sup> § 24, p. 410.<sup>b</sup> § 5, p. 481.<sup>c</sup> § 11, p. 564.

§ 4. The amount of legislation during the period we are considering was very great. That of the closing years of the eighteenth century and the earlier years of the nineteenth century almost equalled that in the whole preceding period of the British monarchy. It may be classed under the four heads (1), Constitutional legislation; (2), Legislation relating to real and personal property; (3). Criminal or penal legislation; and (4), Financial legislation. Our limits will not allow us to specify the important acts to which these titles obviously refer, and we will only note that which consummated the political union of Ireland with England, on the first of January, 1801,<sup>d</sup> and the fact that, during the excitements in England caused by the French Revolution,<sup>e</sup> a vast number and variety of penal acts were passed.

<sup>d</sup> § 26, p. 549.<sup>e</sup> § 31, p. 546.

§ 5. The financial transactions of England during the first fifteen years of this century far transcended everything else of the kind known in the history of the world. Never before, in any country were such stupendous pecuniary means wielded by a government as did that of England wield from 1803 to 1815, the period of the great war with Napoleon.<sup>f</sup> The loans were enormous. The amount raised by loans and exchequer-bills, or treasury notes, never amounted to less than \$50,000,000 a

<sup>f</sup> § 37, p. 550.



Taxation and Property.

Eminent Men.

American Colonies.

year, and on one occasion [A.D. 1814], rose to \$230,000,000. Taxation was increased every year. The total amount paid in taxes in 1801 was \$170,000,000, and in 1815 it had reached \$360,000,000. And yet, during all that time, the wealth of England grew more abundant, and the value of taxable property was largely increased. It was at the middle of the period we are considering that Sir William Blackstone flourished, and by his writings made clear the obscurities of the laws and jurisprudence of Great Britain. His *Commentaries on the Laws of England*, first made in a series of brilliant lectures at Oxford, begun in 1753, were published between the years 1764 and 1770, and made his name immortal. And it is in the records of this period that the great names in Government and Law of Walpole, the Pitts (father and son), Burke, Fox, Thurlow, Mansfield, Elgin, Bentham, Erskine, Canning, and Brougham, and a host of lesser but brilliant ones appeared.

§ 6. Truly marvellous was the advancement of the national industry during the reigns of the Georges. There was wiser, but yet not very wise, legislation in regard to trade and commerce in the earlier part of the period, for the English mind could not yet comprehend how free-trade, that gave foreigners a chance for profit in traffic with Englishmen, could add to the wealth of Englishmen. The old systems of exclusiveness—of monopolies and tariffs for the protection of domestic industry—were rigidly adhered to, but with some sensible modifications. The value of the American Plantations, as the colonies were called, was, for a long time, entirely underrated. Even so late as 1715, William Penn offered to sell to the crown his lordship of Pennsylvania for £12,000, or \$60,000! And it was not until intercolonial wars revealed the marvellous resources of the American settlers that English statesmen regarded them with much concern in connection with the national industry, and then only with a view to making them tributary to the national treasury.

§ 7. It was at the beginning of this period that the great South-Sea scheme, which had an important effect upon the nation, began its work. The public floating debt in 1710 was about £10,000,000, or \$50,000,000, and it was proposed to the holders of the securities to form a joint-stock company to engage in a monopoly of the trade to the South Seas. The promises of enormous profits were numerous, and the company was eagerly formed. It was managed

The South-Sea Scheme.      Shipping.      Sugar Islands.      Emigration.

unwisely at first, and afterward dishonestly. Shares were eagerly sought, and gambling in them was carried on most insanely for a time by nearly all of the wealthy persons of the kingdom, of both sexes. The cunning directors, by false lures, raised the price of shares from £100 to £1,000. The bubble burst in 1720, leaving the fortunes of many families in utter ruin. Wide-spread demoralization and vast injury to the national industry was the result. Speculation had not only seized upon the shares of other corporations, but caused a large number of new ones to be formed, which, from the beginning, were nothing but the implements of swindlers for acquiring wealth. The stock of the East India Company,<sup>a</sup> originally £100 a share, rose to £445, and the Bank of England shares, originally £96, rose to £260. The reaction was most disastrous.

§ 8. In the year after the explosion of the South-Sea scheme [A.D. 1721] parliament passed laws for the encouragement of commerce, trade, and manufactures; and in 1725 the South-Sea Company endeavored to retrieve some of its losses by whale-fishing in the Northern Seas. It lost in the effort nearly a million dollars, and in 1732 it disappeared from public view.

§ 9. At the opening of the reign of George the Second<sup>b</sup> the country was beginning to recover from the blow inflicted by unhealthy speculation, and general prosperity was felt for many years afterward. The tonnage of its shipping was largely multiplied; the price of land greatly increased; money became abundant at lower rates of interest; and all classes indulged in better and more expensive styles of living. One great source of this prosperity was in the outlying possessions of Great Britain—its sugar islands in the West Indies and its North American colonies. In one year [A.D., 1734] the sugar islands produced 85,000 hogsheads of the sweet product, and Great Britain consumed 70,000 hogsheads of it. In 1860 Great Britain consumed 400,000 hogsheads of sugar. At the same time the American colonies were rapidly increasing in population and products of industry. Over 6,000 emigrants went to Pennsylvania alone (mostly from Ireland) in the year 1729;<sup>1</sup> and the other colonies all felt the stimulus of

<sup>1</sup> Of the 6,208 persons who emigrated to Pennsylvania in that year, 243 were Germans from the Palatinate; 267 English and Welsh; 43 Scotch; and the remaining 5,655 all, or nearly all, Irish. The Germans were all passengers, the Scotch all servants, and the English, Welsh, and Irish, partly passengers and partly servants.



American Industries. Navigation Laws. Manufactures. Iron and Coal.

emigration. Industries of every kind flourished in these colonies—agriculture, fisheries, ship-building, and manufactures of every sort—and these might have become sources of immense wealth to the mother country had not a most unwise selfishness been practically manifested. It was the policy of the government to encourage the colonists in agricultural pursuits, but to make them entirely dependent upon Great Britain for every fabric. For this purpose laws were made for restricting trades and manufactures in the colonies; and these oppressive measures, under  
<sup>a</sup> § 14, p. 539. the general name of navigation laws, were among the most powerful causes that led to the Revolution of 1775.<sup>a</sup>

§ 10. The manufacture of woollen, silk, and linen fabrics found great encouragement during the first half of this period. Cotton from the East Indies was found upon looms here and there in the reign of George the First. So early as 1733, Wyatt made a machine by which the first thread of cotton was spun “without the intervention of the human fingers.” At the same time workers in metals were abundantly and profitably employed; and the iron trade, employing 200,000 persons, was deemed the third of the national manufactures. New processes for making iron for use were discovered. In districts where iron manufactures had been carried on for centuries, wood had become scarce. A supply was sought in Ireland, and the immense forests of America were regarded as the great resource thereafter. The wealth in coal, lying in the bosom of the earth under English soil, was known, and a reward was offered to the man who should make bar iron with coal. It was successfully done in 1740, and then the vast coal-fields found new consumers. The copper manufacture was also extensive, and in 1742 Sheffield plate was first manufactured in the town of that name. The earthenware made in England previous to 1760 was comparatively crude, but at about that time Wedgwood began operations which carried it to great perfection within ten years. For a long time English watches had been in great repute on the continent. Printing type was first made in England in 1720; and the first stereotype plate ever made came from the hand of William Ged, in Edinburgh, in 1725.

§ 11. Inventions just hinted at produced a complete revolution in the cloth manufactures of England during the latter half of the eighteenth century, and brought cotton fabrics into universal use. The great demand of weavers for cotton yarn stimulated invention,

Spinning and Weaving Machines. Whitney's Cotton-Gin. Cotton Manufacture.

and the hint given by Wyatt caused John Hargreaves, a weaver, to invent a spinning-machine in 1764, which first had eight spindles, but the number was soon increased to eighty, each spinning a thread at the same time. Hargreaves was so persecuted by the hand-spinners that he left his native place and set up a mill in Nottingham. Soon afterward, Richard Arkwright, a barber, came to the same place with a spinning-machine of his own invention, which was a great improvement on Hargreaves'. This, with a carding-machine that Arkwright invented, made vast improvements in the cotton manufacture. Its increase was wonderful, and in 1782 Arkwright's mills employed about 5,000 persons.

§ 12. In 1779 Samuel Crompton invented a machine which vastly increased the manufacturing power, for in a short time after its invention each machine carried 2,200 spindles, all of which were kept in operation by one attendant. So rapidly did these machines produce cotton yarn that the supply of raw cotton, everywhere cleaned of seed by the slow process of hand labor, was not sufficient, for the power-looms invented by Edward Cartwright, in 1785, were working rapidly with the spinners. A want was soon supplied by Eli Whitney, an American, who, in the last decade of the century, invented the cotton-gin for cleaning the wool, which performed the work of a thousand hands in a given time. This stimulated the production of cotton and the cotton manufacture; and it is estimated that at the present time there are 40,000,000 spindles at work, of which 22,000,000 are in Great Britain. Almost simultaneous with the inventions of Hargreaves and Arkwright was that of the steam-engine, by James Watt, which was soon extensively employed where water-power could not be better used.

§ 13. British commerce and trade were seriously affected by the revolt of the American colonies; but immediately after the war that had ensued, the exports of Great Britain increased nearly fifty per cent., and the tonnage of its ships almost ninety per cent. A commercial treaty was formed with France [A.D. 1787]; but a proposition for a similar one with the United States was rejected by the British ministry almost with scorn. The idea prevailed in England that the mere league of States which composed the national government of the United States, under the articles of Confederation, could not long endure, and that they would soon become British colonies again. But when a truly national government was



Commerce and Commercial Relations with the United States.      Agriculture.

formed, by the Constitution of 1787, England eagerly sought to negotiate a commercial treaty, and it was done.

§ 14. At that time the British fisheries were an important part of the national industry. In 1789, about 2,500 vessels of every kind were employed in the various operations of the cod-fishery off the coasts of Newfoundland alone. At the same time the amount of tea brought annually into England averaged 19,000,000 pounds, and other traffic with the East was enormous. The slave-trade on the coast of Africa was also profitable. The slave-ships carried their human cargoes to the West Indies, and then went to England laden with the products of those islands. In the year 1787 the market value of slaves carried from Africa in British ships was

£900,000, or \$4,500,000. The French Revolution<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 31, p. 546. finally involved Great Britain in a long war, and for many years her commerce was in a wretchedly unsettled state. Her finances were deranged; and in 1797 the Bank of England suspended specie payment. A paper currency then became a legal tender, when there was in the country gold to the value of £22,000,000, or \$120,000,000, a little more than was in the United States Treasury at one time in 1869.

§ 15. During the long reign of George the Third<sup>b</sup> the useful arts made wonderful advancement in England. We have

<sup>b</sup> § 58, p. 559. already considered some of the inventions connected with them. There seemed to be an energy in the nation that overcame every obstacle, and whatever was needed was produced. The discoveries of chemists and physicists were wedded to the ingenuity of mechanics, and invention produced grand results in the development of new implements of labor. Agriculture partook of the general impulse toward improvement, and new methods of culture brought larger returns to the husbandman. The breeding of live stock was an important branch of the business, and new and valuable varieties were frequently introduced by importations and crossing. Corn-laws were enacted for the protection and benefit of producers, but they were immediately more hurtful than useful to the people. And yet the high price of grain—caused partly by these laws, and partly by an increased demand, because of labor drawn from the farm to the factory and workshop, and the rapid increase in population—was of permanent benefit to the nation. It caused vast domains that were lying idle to be brought under cultivation. From 1770 to 1779 no less than 1,200,000 acres

Improvements in Agriculture.

Wages and Expenses.

Transportation.

in England were enclosed and cultivated for the first time; and from 1780 to 1800, other tracts to the amount of 1,300,000 acres were so treated, and thus augmented the national wealth.

§ 16. High prices stimulated production. New kinds of farming implements were made and profitably used; and such was the product of the land and the high prices therefor, that in the year 1795 £20,000,000, or \$100,000,000, it was estimated, went into the pockets of the British farmers. Yet *all* England—even a majority of the population of England—were not prosperous, in the best sense of that term. The great masses—the laborers for wages out of clerical channels—were not adequately paid. Their remuneration for a day's work in 1800 was but a trifle more than it was seventy years before, when the necessities of life were much cheaper. The wages of mechanics and unskilled laborers in 1800 could not purchase a third part of the quantity of such necessities they would buy three-quarters of a century before. The consequence was a great increase of pauperism and suffering. The rich had become richer, and the poor poorer. Such was the case until the close of the reign of the last George. Statistics show the melancholy fact that the social condition of the laboring classes in England had very little improved since the time of the Plantagenets, several centuries before.

§ 17. During this period there were great improvements in road-making and other means for transportation. During the earlier years of George the Third's reign, the roads in Great Britain were in a wretched state; and even at the beginning of the present century there had been very little improvement. But the needs of transportation for farm produce, and facilities for carrying the mails and travellers, called for good roads, and first turnpiking and then the stone roads made by MacAdam soon came into general use. Bridge-making, upon new methods, advanced at the same time toward perfection, and in this connection Telford and Rennie were conspicuous. Statistics show that in 1815 there were 108,000 miles of highways for commercial travel in England and Wales. The first suspension-bridge was built by Rennie early in this century. Canals had then been in operation in Scotland and England for about forty years. Then came, in the course of time, railways to compete with these artificial rivers. So early as 1805 an iron railway was opened to connect Croydon with the Thames; and in July, 1814, the first locomotive, constructed by Stevenson, that



Coal Mining.

Manufactures.

Literature and Scholars.

ever took the place of a draught-horse, pulled eight carriages, or cars, at the rate of four miles an hour. Steam navigation was also introduced into England soon after Fulton had achieved his triumphs in America. The first steamboat built in Great Britain was constructed in Scotland, in the year 1812.

• § 18. It was during this period that coal-mining, in connection with the manufacture of iron on a large scale, became a most important branch of the national industry, while the manufacture of iron assumed the position of a staple industry. Before the close of the last century there were larger iron-works in England than anywhere else in the world. One establishment in Shropshire consumed 500 tons of coal a day in the business. Guns and swords became a staple of Birmingham manufacture. So early as 1787 there were 4,000 persons employed there in making guns for the African market alone. Birmingham has ever since continued to lead all other places in the world in the extent and variety of its metal manufactures. Calico-printing had become an extensive business in England before the close of the last century; copper cylinders, with engraved devices, having been introduced so early as 1785. The woollen manufacture kept pace with other industries, and maintained the relatively exalted position which it had held for centuries. Before the close of this period England had become the greatest workshop in the world for the manufacture of everything useful and ornamental known among civilized men.

§ 19. In Literature, Science, and the Fine Arts, the achievements of this period were marvellous. Our limited space will allow us to do little more than notice the names of the greater men whose works of intellect made that period one of the most remarkable in the history of civilization.

§ 20. At the funeral of Queen Anne, Defoe, Addison, Steele, Burnet, Pope, Swift, and Bolingbroke formed a brilliant assemblage whose names have become immortal. When Addison died, a few years afterward, Swift stood at the head of prose-writers, and Pope led the poets. Prior, Congreve, Cibber, Farquhar, and Vanbrugh were the most conspicuous dramatists. Following on came Young, Blair, Thomson, Collins, Akenside, Shenstone, Parnell, Savage, and Gray, in poetry; Mandeville, Hutcheson, Berkeley, and Hartley, in philosophy; Warburton, Hoadley, Atterbury, Butler, Middleton, Secker, and Watts, in theology; and Richardson, Fielding, Sterne, and Smollett, in fiction. Richardson has

## Literature and Literary Men in the Eighteenth Century.

been styled the inventor of the modern English novel. Cotemporaneous with these was Lady Mary Wortley Montagu, whose brilliant *Letters* were published in 1763, about a year after her death.

§ 21. Goldsmith holds the first rank among the poets in the first quarter of the reign of George the Third. *The Traveller* and *The Deserted Village* form the solid foundations of his fame as a poet. His chief poetic cotemporaries were Churchill, Falconer, the brothers Wharton, Chatterton, and McPherson, the author of the poems of Ossian. The dramatic literature of that time was very voluminous, in which the leading names are Goldsmith, Garrick, and Foote. Horace Walpole's tragedy of *The Mysterious Mother* was never acted. Goldsmith's *She Stoops to Conquer* was a favorite for a long time. Garrick was also an inimitable actor. So also was Foote, who wrote and played no less than twenty-two comic pieces. Following these writers were Macklin, Murphy, Cumberland, Colman, Mrs. Cowley, and Sheridan, the father of the brilliant Richard Brinsley Sheridan, all of whom but one lived until the close of the last century.

§ 22. A host of excellent feminine writers appeared during the first half of the reign of the third George. The most conspicuous of these were Mistresses Sheridan, Cowley, Brooks, Lennox (a native of New York), Montagu, Chapone, Macaulay (who came to America on purpose to visit Washington), Hannah More, Barbauld, Charlotte Smith, Inchbold, and Misses Sophia Lee, Frances Burney, Anna and Helen Maria Williams, and Catherine Talbot.

§ 23. The Periodical Essay, begun in Queen Anne's time, was revived late in the reign of George the Second, chiefly by the eminent Dr. Samuel Johnson. Earlier in that reign the *Gentleman's Magazine* (yet published) was begun, and just before its close Edmund Burke commenced [A.D. 1759] the *Annual Register*, which he chiefly conducted for many years. Of the more solid writers of that time stand pre-eminent Johnson and Burke, and the author of the *Letters of Junius*, as essayists and political writers; Hume, Reid, Kames, and Priestley as metaphysicians; Hume, Robertson, and Gibbon as historians; Adam Smith as a political economist; in the mathematical and physical sciences, Black, Cavendish, Herschel, Hutton, the Hunters, and Sir Joseph Banks; in theology, Clarke, Warburton, South, Horsley, and Priestley; in belles-lettres, Chesterfield, Hawkesworth, Melmoth, Jenyns, Bryant, and Pot-



Later Literary Celebrities.

Fine Arts.

Royal Academy.

Painting.

ter; and in voyages of discovery, Commodore Byron, and Captain Cook the discoverer of the Sandwich Islands.

§ 24. With these were cotemporaries whose fame was established a little later, such as Cowper, Darwin, Sir William Jones, Dr. Wolcott (Peter Pindar), from whom Byron caught the inspiration of his *Don Juan*; Burns, and Pye, the poet-laureate, who, like poet-laureates generally, was a very inferior bard. Godwin, Mary Wolstoncroft, Pinkerton, Roscoe, Gillies, and Paley were conspicuous in the world of literature at the close of the last and the beginning of this century. Then appeared, in daily increasing lustre, those lights whose radiance mingles with that of the intellectual luminaries of our day. Among the most conspicuous of these were the poets Byron, Moore, Scott, Wordsworth, Campbell, Shelley, and Keats; among essayists, Lamb, Southey, and Coleridge; Playfair, Davy, the younger Herschel, and Brewster in mathematical science; in history, Mackintosh and Lingard; in theology, metaphysics, and political and miscellaneous literature, Professor Wilson, Dugald Stewart, Thomas Browne, Robert Hall, Dr. Chalmers, Hazlitt, Cobbett, and Lord Brougham.

§ 25. The fine arts had a sickly existence in England from the time of Queen Anne to the accession of George the Third. The only artist whose works promise to be immortal was William Hogarth, son-in-law, without leave, of Sir James Thornhill, an eminent decorative painter. His series of moral dramas, engraved by himself, are yet regarded as wonderful triumphs in art. He achieved great fame in his lifetime, and was the pet of friends and dread of enemies, for the satire of his pencil was most keen. It even si-

<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 534. lenced the abuse of John Wilkes.<sup>a</sup> Cotemporaries rose

into eminence, and in 1759 a society of artists made a public exhibition of the works of British painters for the first time. This led to the founding of the Royal Academy of Fine Arts.

§ 26. Portrait-painting was then the most remunerative branch of art in England, and in it Sir Joshua Reynolds, who had studied in Italy, had achieved great fame at the beginning of the reign of George the Third. He was compelled to contend with a most pernicious public taste, but persevered, and effected a complete revolution in art. He established truth in drawing, exquisite beauty in coloring, and grace and ease in composition. He had a most earnest and able co-worker in Benjamin West, a native of Pennsylvania, and a Quaker. These and a few other artists, British and

## Artists.

## Sculpture and Engraving.

## Music.

foreign, founded the Royal Academy of Fine Arts in 1768. West established a taste for historical painting; and Wilson and Barry, cotemporary artists, founded the English school of landscape, which had no successful rival until a few years ago, when American artists bore away the palm. Wilson was to landscape what Reynolds was to portraiture, while Gainsborough was also an excellent portrait-painter. Allan Ramsay, son of the Scotch poet, and John Singleton Copley, a native of Boston, Massachusetts, were worthy assistants of Reynolds and his friends in the work of art reform. From that time the English school of painting has ever held a high rank for truthfulness to nature.

§ 27. Sculpture was in a worse state in England than painting, before the accession of George the Third. Roubilliac, a French artist who had settled in England, first gave the art eminence there. He was chiefly employed in monumental sculpture. The first public monument erected by him was that to the memory of Wolfe, in Westminster Abbey. His statue of Handel, the finest work of the kind that had ever been executed in England, gave him great fame. Other good artists followed; and sculpture has held a high rank in England for half a century or more.

§ 28. Engraving made considerable progress early in this period. Bartolozzi, an Italian, who was a cotemporary of Reynolds, introduced the stipple style of engraving, which took the place of mezzotint. He engraved a vast number of the sketches of his friend Cipriani. In line engraving little of merit was done until Woollett and Strange appeared, with their exquisite landscapes, early in the reign of George the Third. A little later Sharp, the most eminent line engraver that has yet appeared, astonished men of taste with his marvellous engravings of single figures and groups, entirely in line, and which no artist excepting the now venerable Asher B. Durand, of New York, ever equalled. Durand's engraving of Vanderlyn's *Ariadne* is equal to anything ever done by Sharp. At about the time when the three British artists named flourished, Thomas Bewick revived the art of wood-engraving, which had become, by neglect, an absurdity in art. He carried it to great perfection, and by showing its marvellous capacities became a public benefactor.

§ 29. Between the death of Queen Anne and the accession of George the Third, sacred music in the oratorio and the cathedral service had attained almost its present perfection. But the



## Music and Musical Entertainments.

## Costumes.

Italian opera languished, and secular music was in a low state. Musical clubs were formed at about the beginning of George the Third's reign, and there was seen some improvement in the public taste, when, in May and June, 1784, the famous *Handel Commemoration* took place in Westminster Abbey.<sup>1</sup> Its fame spread over Europe and received royal commendations. Its home effect was to define throughout the British islands a taste for sacred music of the highest order. Secular music felt the new awakening, and the spinnet and harpsichord, and finally the piano-forte, became the rivals of the violin and flute, as instrumental accompaniments of the voice.

§ 30. In the closing decade of the last century, Salomon gave the concert a great popularity in England. The delightful social musical performance known as the glee became very popular at about the same time, and musical composition was pursued with energy. It may be truthfully asserted that no people on the globe are at this day so thoroughly educated in the best music as those of England.

§ 31. There was not much change in the general features of the costume of the fashionable people of England from the time of Queen Anne until the close of the American war for independence. Wigs of great size were worn by both sexes until in the reign of George the Second [A.D. 1729 to 1760], and powder was generally used. The ladies wore hooped petticoats during all that period; but the era of their greatest extravagance was about 1745, when they wore immense ellipses, extending far on each side of the wearer. The coats and breeches of gentlemen consisted of dark-colored velvets and cloths, and light silk or satin vests, all trimmed, sometimes with gold and silver lace. They also wore small straight swords. The ladies wore flowered silks. The gown had wide short sleeves. It was looped up at the sides or front, so as to show rich petticoats. At the time when the enormous elliptical hoop was in vogue they wore little gypsy hats that superseded the high-crowned hat of an earlier date.

§ 32. At the accession of George the Third, and some time before, the gentlemen wore tie-wigs, with large curls on each side of the head, and the hair was bagged or queued behind. The ladies had

<sup>1</sup> The music was Handel's exclusively. The band consisted of 513 performers, led by Jobb Bates, an amateur. The royal family and all the eminent and titled persons of the kingdom attended these performances, five in number. The profits were a little more than £7,000, of which sum £6,000, or about \$20,000, were allotted to the Royal Society of Musicians, and £1,000 (\$5,000) to the Westminster Hospital. These performances were repeated annually until 1791, when the members of the band exceeded 1,000.

Change in Fashions.

Style of Living.

Politics and Politicians.

their hair curled down the sides, with flowers, and powdered. Lace tippets, with clasps of gold and precious stones, were much used. Diamond necklaces and ear-rings were very fashionable; and both sexes wore shoe-buckles that sparkled with diamonds. The gentlemen wore cocked hats, sometimes richly laced. The opening of the vest was filled with fine ruffles, and the wrists were encircled by them. The ladies wore elegant bracelets over long gloves.

§ 33. After the close of our Revolution, in 1783, and with the opening of the French revolution in 1789, the stately old fashions began to change, and some of the most ridiculous costumes for both sexes disappeared. Thanks to Reynolds<sup>a</sup> and his co-temporary artists, the wigs were discarded, and the curling or flowing natural hair, powdered and floured, came into vogue; and until late in the first quarter of this century almost every year saw a change in the fashions of the ladies. Early in the closing decade of the last century powder began to be discarded, and long plumes formed a part of the head-dresses. Bonnets began to take the place of hats. Waists of dresses grew shorter. Hoops were discarded before the year 1800, for the French Republicans had assumed the simplicity of Greek and Roman costume. The dress of gentlemen took the general form of that of the present day. The pantaloon succeeded the short breeches, while the scantiness of pattern in the dresses of the ladies was conspicuous, and evoked the special attention of satirists and caricaturists. One of the most remarkable of the caricaturists of Great Britain, Gilray, flourished at this period.

<sup>a</sup> § 26, p. 576.

§ 34. The style of living among persons of rank and wealth in England was not less elegant, but more refined and less extravagant in ornamental display than in the previous period. The furniture displayed much better taste. Mahogany was first introduced in the manufacture of cabinet-ware early in this period, and in 1745 Brussels carpets were first made in England. After that carpeted floors were as common among the wealthy as now. New phases of domestic life appeared. The freedom of political discussion introduced new modes. Club-houses became very numerous, and there men were found more frequently than in their own dwellings. The theatre, and even Punch in the streets, became political satirists. So bold were their displays of free speech that Robert Walpole caused an act to be passed for its restraint. In



## A Fashionable Beau.

## Immorality and Folly in Social Life.

the reign of the two Georges feminine politicians were numerous, and in public places the political party to which a lady belonged was indicated by the arrangement of the patches on her face—a

<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 450. fashion that yet held sway.<sup>a</sup> The *Spectator* tells us of a Whig lady who had a natural mole on the Tory side of her brow, by which she was sometimes mistaken for an ally by her political opponents.

§ 35. During a greater portion of the reign of the first two Georges the morals of society in England were in a low state. The taint which Charles the Second and his licentious court inflicted upon the nation still festered, for the practice of the court yet sanctioned irregularities among the people. The revelations of social depravity made by cotemporary essayists stagger credulity. The whole aspect of society among the aristocracy was artificial, hollow, and demoralizing. Shallow coxcombs seemed to give tone to manners.<sup>1</sup> Gallantry was the chief form of personal intercourse between the sexes, sometimes innocent, but most generally otherwise. Language was continually upon stilts. Every word and act, and even dress, were made to conform to the taste and humor of the gentler sex. Metaphor took the place of common sense. Classic literature furnished expressions of real or pretended emo-

<sup>1</sup> According to cotemporary writers, the fashionable beau received visits in bed from ten till twelve o'clock, when he lay in state, his powdered periwig lying beside him on the sheets. His dressing-table was sprinkled with love poetry, a canister or two of Lisbon snuff, which was allowed to besmear the upper lip, with the idea that it imparted an air of peculiar sagacity to the whole countenance. A smelling-bottle and trinkets completed the group. He arose at twelve, and completed his toilet by three o'clock, during which time he well perfumed his clothes; soaked his hands in washes to make them white and delicate; tinged his cheeks with carmine so as to give them a

<sup>a</sup> § 16, p. 450. gentle blush; arranged a few patches<sup>a</sup> on his face to give the effect of moles and dimples; dipped his handkerchief in rose-water and powdered his linen. The tying of his cravat and the adjustment of his wig and hat were matters of grave importance. Then he practised attitudes and smiles before his looking-glass, dressed, and was carried to a coffee or chocolate house, where he displayed his wit and gallantry, kissing a tailor's bill that he pulled from his pocket, saying it was a sweet billet-doux from his mistress. He insulted with impunity, by impertinent conversation, the usually pretty barmaid of the coffee-house, and after spending an hour there repaired to the theatre, where he shifted himself from boxes to pit, in order to display himself and the glittering ring upon his finger, as he conspicuously took pinches of snuff. He considered it shockingly vulgar to attend to the play, so he turned his back upon the stage. After having exhibited himself to his satisfaction at the theatre he would go to the park, and there, fluttering from lady to lady in never-ceasing shallow chattering, would be rewarded with many a tap of a fan on his shoulder, and the endearing epithets, "Mad fellow!" "Dear, tormenting devil!"

## Shallow Education.

## Comparative purity of the Rural Population.

tions in the business of courtship. Set phrases were always used. Angels, seraphs, goddesses, furies, sweet Paphian delights, Venus, Cupid, Hymen, rack, tortures, and demons, were words ever on the lips of lovers.

§ 36. So shallow was the education of women, and so vicious their moral and intellectual training, that they received all this hollow flattery and apparent devotion as truth. A fashionable woman was considered sufficiently educated when she could barely read and write, and had learned enough of the conventional etiquette of society to enable her to not offend its rules. She went into society at the age of fourteen or fifteen years. Her reading (if she read at all) was limited and demoralizing, consisting chiefly of the worthless and often licentious productions of current literature, and the equally corrupting plays of the period. A young gentleman was considered fitted for any business of life when he had mastered a certain amount of Greek and Latin, and could write a few shallow verses. Then he travelled; came home with foreign airs, vices, and follies, and plunged into all the excesses of social dissipation. Gambling, and often excessive drinking, were common to both sexes, and all other vices were in their train. The ignorance, frivolity, and viciousness of the aristocracy of that period was amazing. Superstition flourished. Credulity made rich harvest-fields for charlatans of every kind, especially in the medical profession; and fortune-tellers were the most revered prophets of that "higher class" of men and women who seldom frequented places of worship, and who knew little of the moral precepts contained in the Scriptures.

§ 37. The vices and frivolities of the court and metropolis descended, in some degree, to the "common people" and the rural districts, and yet so strong was the barrier of class, that the country remained comparatively pure. While vicious plays, bull-baits, and prize-fights were delighting the Londoners, fox-hunting, shooting-matches, foot-ball, cricket, and many rude but healthful rural sports were delighting the country squires and their tenantry and neighbors. The country ladies were a quiet, home-loving race, taking great pleasure in being Lady Bountifuls to the poor. Christmas was the great feast-time, when sober beverages and wholesome food abounded. The manners of the peasantry were as simple as in the days of Elizabeth.<sup>a</sup> Education was as limited as then, and superstition was as prev-

<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 352.



Amusements.

Drunkenness and Pauperism.

Fortune-telling.

alent and powerful.<sup>1</sup> In out-of-door sports—such as foot-ball, cudgel-playing, and racing—the girls participated with the young men. Grinning and whistling matches<sup>2</sup> were favorite amusements at country fairs. Excessive beer-drinking became a prevailing vice, and in towns gin-drinking became so terrible in its effects that parliament passed acts for restraining intemperance. Pauperism fearfully increased toward the close of the reign of George the Second, and the workhouses established by his immediate predecessor were filled with the indigent. The condition of the “common people” at that period—morally, intellectually, and corporeally—was a disgrace to the wealthy and enlightened Christian nation whose aristocracy was pampered by a wasteful prodigality of luxurious and sensual indulgences.

§ 38. George the Third, his Queen, and court, almost instantly made a salutary impression. The sovereigns were moral and religious. The purification of the nation began with their accession, and it has worked surely and potentially ever since, in spite of the vicious influence of the regency and reign of George the Fourth. No aristocracy on the earth is so pure and truly noble as that of England.

## CHAPTER VI.

REIGN OF WILLIAM THE FOURTH [A.D. 1830 TO 1837].

§ 1. A GOOD man took the seat of the last George, as sovereign of England. During his earlier manhood he was in active service

<sup>1</sup> A damsel anxious to know something of her destined husband was directed to run until she was out of breath so soon as she heard the first notes of the cuckoo, after which, on pulling off her shoe, she expected to find in it a hair of the same color as that of her future mate. If she wished to see his full person, she was to sow hemp-seed on Midsummer Eve, and command her lover, in a rhyming couplet, to follow and mow; when, behold, on looking over her shoulder she would see him at her heels. The first bachelor a girl met on St. Valentine's morning was supposed to be her destined husband. If on May-day a girl brought home a snail and put it upon the ashes of the hearth, the little reptile in crawling about would mark the initials of her true lover's name; or if she pared a pippin and threw the rind over her head, it would, on falling, form such initial. If a girl suspected her lover of inconstancy, she had only to purloin his garter and tie it with her own, in a true-love knot, to bind his heart to her beyond the power of escaping.

- The candidates for the prize grinned hideously through horse-collars; and in

Accession of William the Fourth.

Condition of Europe.

in the royal navy; and all through life he had the easy, affable manners of a seaman, without the least sign of pretence because of his rank and station. He was the third son of George the Third, and was in the sixty-fifth year of his age when he ascended the throne, in the summer of 1830, with the title of William the Fourth. He had married, in 1818, Adelaide of Saxe-Meiningen, by whom he had two daughters, who died very young. His accession was hailed with delight by the people. Unlike his brother, the Duke of York, he had never taken any part in politics, but he was believed to incline to the Whigs. He, however, retained his brother's ministers in office until their late allies voted them out on a money question, a few months after his accession.

§ 2. At the time of William's accession Europe was violently agitated by a revolutionary spirit which was evidently widespread and powerful. It broke out into open manifestation in France. Louis the Eighteenth, though placed upon the throne by the aid of foreign powers, had maintained his position in peace; but his brother, who succeeded him in 1824, as Charles the Tenth, was so utterly regardless of the chartered rights of the people that he was driven from his seat [July, 1830], and was succeeded by his cousin, the Duke of Orleans, who was called to the throne by Lafayette<sup>a</sup> and others [Aug. 7, 1830], as a constitutional monarch, with the title of Louis Philippe, King of the French. <sup>a</sup> § 30, p. 546.

§ 3. The revolutionary spirit now spread rapidly. In Belgium, in Brunswick, in Poland, the people rose in arms, and even far-distant Brazil, in South America, expelled its emperor, a Portuguese prince.—an event that led to a sanguinary war in Europe shortly afterward. The Duke of Wellington saw in these commotions a warning that alarmed him, and he declared that he would not begin a reform demanded by popular clamor that might end in a revolution. This unpopular declaration, followed by the Duke advising the king not to attend the Lord Mayor's dinner [November 9, 1830] for fear of a popular tumult, caused a great panic, as there seemed to be indications of a revolution, and the funds fell three per cent. A few days later, in a debate on the Civil List, the ministry were defeated [November 15, 1830], and they resigned.<sup>b</sup> The Whigs then came into office, <sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 500.

whistling, the person who could whistle through a whole tune without being put out by the drolleries of merry-makers was the victor.



Reform Measures.

Change in Representation.

Affairs in Ireland.

after an absence of more than twenty years, and declared their intention to press reform measures in parliament.

§ 4. Earl Grey was the premier, and he had the strength of Lords Brougham, Lansdowne, Palmerston, and Melbourne as his associates. Lord John Russell was the leader of the House of Commons. By the latter a reform bill was introduced in March, 1831, but it appeared far too sweeping a change to many, and the ministers, after carrying the second reading by a majority of one only, suffered defeat in committee, and dissolved the parliament. A new House of Commons, elected under great excitement, passed the bill [June 24, 1831]; but the Peers rejected it on the second reading, on the 7th of October following. Desperate riots and bloodshed followed in many places, but particularly at Nottingham, where the castle was destroyed, and at Bristol, where several public buildings were burnt and one hundred persons were killed or wounded. Early in the following year the bill was again passed by the Commons [March, 1832], when the Duke of Wellington, and about one hundred peers who had hitherto opposed it, alarmed by the rumblings of the revolutionary volcano, withdrew from their House, by agreement, so as to leave a majority for the bill. It finally became law in June following.

§ 5. The Reform Bill provided for depriving of representation in parliament boroughs having a population of less than 2,000, and allowing only one representative for boroughs having less than 4,000. The effect of the act was to take 143 members from decayed boroughs, and to bestow them partly on counties, but chiefly on manufacturing towns of importance, where, generally speaking, Liberal ideas prevailed. Between forty and fifty new boroughs were created. The larger counties were divided into districts, and the elective franchise, regulated by property qualifications, was greatly extended. The carrying of this bill was undoubtedly as great a revolution in government as any that had taken place since that of 1688.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 23, p. 478.

§ 6. At this time the state of Ireland was frightful. It was on the verge of revolution and civil war. The Roman Catholics had been favored by political emancipation; but there were other burdens of which the members of that church complained. Among these was the levying of tithes for the support of the established church, which was equally distasteful to Romanists and Protestant dissenters.<sup>b</sup> The resistance to the col-

<sup>b</sup> § 19, p. 477.

Irish Coercion Bill. Revolution threatened. Agitators in and out of Parliament.

lection of tithes was so violent that it was abandoned. Collectors were murdered or maimed, and there were frequent hostile engagements between the police and the peasantry. To remedy the growing evil of insubordination, the government introduced a Coercion Bill, which, while it offered a remedy for many things complained of, empowered the Lord-lieutenant of Ireland to prevent all public meetings supposed to be of a dangerous character, and to place disturbed districts under martial law.

§ 7. The Reformed Parliament met on the 5th of February, 1833, when the king found that partisan politicians had arranged matters in connection with the franchise to subserve their own party interests. Population was professedly the guide, but the disfranchising process had been so managed that many inconsiderable places, where Whig leaders had influence, had been spared the pruning-knife. The honest king was offended, and ever afterwards he distrusted the Whig party. But they were too powerful then to heed his displeasure. There was an overwhelming majority of Reformers in the House of Commons, and at one time fears were entertained that the church, the aristocracy, and all of the privileged institutions would be swept away. Nothing but the natural conservatism of Englishmen preserved them. Sir Robert Peel, who had offended the Tory party by his liberality,<sup>a</sup> had again become their trusted leader, and

<sup>a</sup> § 11, p. 564.

stood at the head of a Conservative party in the kingdom, composed of men of all shades in politics. The Tories now dropped their old name and called themselves Conservatives. Peel's organization of the party was admirable, and they had a promise of a return to official power.

§ 8. The noted William Cobbett<sup>b</sup> had a seat in the new parliament as a representative of a Lancashire borough, and Daniel O'Connell<sup>c</sup> was also there. They were the agitators of reforms which alarmed all property-holders. Cobbett proposed such changes in relation to the currency as amounted almost to the repudiation of the national debt; while O'Connell, with threats and arguments, demanded a repeal of the union of Ireland with

<sup>b</sup> § 56, p. 558.

<sup>c</sup> § 6, p. 562.

<sup>d</sup> § 36, p. 549.

Great Britain.<sup>d</sup> The latter had many and powerful partisans. And while these leaders of factions were pressing their measures a numerous body called Chartists<sup>1</sup> had appeared. Their friends

<sup>1</sup> Composed chiefly of the working people of England, who demanded what they



Abolition of Slavery.

Further Reforms demanded.

Change of Ministry.

in parliament declared that the Reform Bill had only transferred power from the Tories to the Whigs, and fell far short of what the people rightfully demanded. They were, in fact, the revived

<sup>a</sup> § 57, p. 559. Radicals of 1816,<sup>a</sup> and, like them, held many and often tumultuous popular meetings. Soon after this

Trades Unions rose into notice, and caused riots in many places.

§ 9. Two important questions occupied much of the attention of parliament in 1833. These were, the abolition of slavery and amendment of the poor-laws. The popular agitation in England of the subject of slavery had made its impression on the colonies where it existed, and where there were many very intelligent men of color, chiefly mulattoes. These impressions finally excited action, and caused servile insurrections in Jamaica and the Mauritius. Wilberforce, Fowell Buxton, and others had for years urged the abolition of slavery, and they now had the satisfaction of seeing the ripe fruit of their benevolent efforts in the passage of an act [August 28, 1833] for its total extinction throughout the British dominions, for the promotion of industry among their slaves, and for compensation to the slave-holders for their losses. For the latter purpose the sum of £20,000,000, or \$100,000,000, was appropriated. Slavery terminated on the first of August, 1834.

§ 10. Before the poor-law question could be reached there was a change in the administration. Earl Grey had not met the expectations of the people. He had commenced his administration with promises of reform and retrenchment of expenses, but had made little progress in either. The Reform Act was already declared to stand in need of reform; the retrenchment consisted chiefly in reducing the army and navy to a dangerous weakness; and the professed desire for peace had for its commentary the guaranteeing by England of the thrones of the young queens of Spain and Portugal, which threatened to involve the country in war with half the nations of Europe. At length a proposed extension of the Irish

Coercion Bill <sup>b</sup> brought a crisis in the administration.

<sup>b</sup> § 6, p. 584.

Grey was so stung by some remarks made by O'Connell that he suddenly resigned his office, in July, 1834. Lord Melbourne now became prime minister, and a new poor-law was speedily passed, which was generally considered so harsh in its

called the *People's Charter*, the six points of which were: *Universal Suffrage*, *Vote by Ballot*, *Annual Parliaments*, *Payment of the Members*, the *Abolition of the Property Qualification* (which was enacted in June, 1858), and *Equal Electoral Districts*.

## Reform Measures.

## Interference in Foreign Affairs.

provisions that it was actually oppressive. It was modified, and has worked beneficently. Melbourne was not much liked by the king, and the monarch observed with satisfaction the steady Conservative reaction which justified him at length in summarily dismissing Melbourne [Nov., 1834] and calling Peel<sup>a</sup> to the premiership. The Duke of Wellington was called to the Foreign Secretaryship. The new ministers dissolved the parliament, hoping by a new election to have a supporting legislature. They were disappointed, for on the assembling of parliament they found themselves in a minority, and in April, 1835, were compelled to resign,<sup>b</sup> when the Melbourne ministry, with the exception of Lord Brougham, returned to office.

§ 11. The Melbourne ministry was now in alliance with O'Connell and the Irish members, and proceeded to carry out other reforms. The most prominent of these were the Municipal Reform Bill, and a bill to allow dissenters, or non-conformists,<sup>c</sup> to marry in their own chapels. They also carried measures for tithe commutation<sup>1</sup> [Aug. 13, 1836], and a general Registration Act. These measures, all tending to greater freedom and power on the part of the people, were met by opposition at every step, even by the Conservatives, whose very name implies a willingness to allow things to remain as they were in England, in defiance of the disturbing pressure of the manifested progressive spirit of the age. They received important modifications at the hands of Sir Robert Peel.

§ 12. Allusion has been made to the proposition of the Grey ministry to guarantee the thrones of Spain and Portugal to young queens. During several years of William's reign there were fierce strifes in both countries, in which Englishmen took a prominent part, though war was never declared. Don Pedro, the expelled Emperor of Brazil,<sup>d</sup> went to Europe, and sought to place his daughter, Donna Maria, on her rightful throne of Portugal, which his younger brother, who had been regent, had usurped. Pedro sought aid from England, and was allowed to raise quite a powerful force there; and Admiral Napier, of the British navy, was appointed to command Pedro's fleet. Napier soon decided the contest in favor of the young queen by

<sup>1</sup> Tithes, or tenths, were first claimed in England by Augustin, and were allowed by Ethelbert, about the year 600. By a constitutional decree made in an English synod in 786 they were enjoined, and in a general assembly held by Ethelwold, in 844, tithes were first granted to the English clergy.

<sup>a</sup> § 7, p. 585.

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 500.

<sup>c</sup> § 19, p. 477.

<sup>d</sup> § 3, p. 583.



Civil War in Spain meddled with.

War with the Chinese.

capturing the whole of Miguel's fleet off Cape St. Vincent on the 3d of July, 1833. For this exploit his own sovereign created him Count Cape St. Vincent, and Donna Maria made him a first-class grandee of Portugal.

§ 13. This war for the succession in Portugal had scarcely concluded when another broke out in Spain. King Ferdinand had been persuaded to set aside the Salic Law of the Bourbons, that allowed no woman to reign, and his young daughter Isabella, now [1871] in exile, was made his successor in 1833, when she was less than three years of age, to the prejudice of her uncle, Don Carlos. She was placed under the guardianship of her mother, Queen Christina. Don Carlos resolved to vindicate his asserted right under the Salic Law. A fierce civil war ensued, in which the parties took respectively the names of Carlists and Christinos. As queen Christina promised a liberal government, England became a party to the Quadruple Alliance,<sup>1</sup> which guaranteed the succession to the Spanish and Portuguese thrones. A legion (10,000 men) was allowed to be raised in England for the service of little Isabella; but the Spaniards looked upon these foreign troops with jealousy. The legion suffered severe losses by sickness and otherwise, without the opportunity of acquiring much military glory. The survivors returned to England in 1837; but the war continued three years longer, and was then decided in favor of Isabella by Merato, a Carlist general, who joined her troops.

§ 14. William's reign was marked by the beginning of an unholy war against the Chinese by British forces, with the avowed object of compelling the Chinese government to allow trade in opium, which had been the means of injuring the health and corrupting the morals of millions of its people. For a long time the trade in opium, raised in the British possessions in India, with the Chinese had been enormously profitable, for the inhabitants of China eagerly sought the happy delirium of the drug. Their government, seeing its pernicious effects, endeavored to suppress the traffic, but the British continued it in spite of laws. So persistent were they in this that the emperor became exasperated, and when an English embassy under Lord Amherst reached Peking, in 1816, he re-

<sup>1</sup> There was a Quadruple Alliance formed between Great Britain, France, and the Emperor of Germany, in 1718 and 1719, for the purpose of guaranteeing the succession of the reigning families of Great Britain and France, and settling the partition of the Spanish monarchy.<sup>a</sup> It led to war.

<sup>a</sup> 2 4, p. 468.

The Opium Trade.

Death of King William.

Treaty with China.

fused to see them. Then followed such rigid prohibitory laws that, in course of time, the traffic was almost destroyed, to the relief of the Chinese from the great curse. The British government in India<sup>a</sup> resolved to protect its subjects in the nefarious trade, and the home government sent armed vessels to Canton in 1831 and 1834 to intimidate the Chinese government. They failed to do so. But at the same time English smugglers of the drug were furnished with armed ships to carry on the injurious trade. The energetic Governor Lin, of Canton, was aroused. He concentrated there a large force and compelled British merchants to deliver up all their stock of opium, worth \$20,000,000, which was destroyed in March, 1839. Then the use of opium was made a capital crime. An army was sent from India to co-operate with the English warships against the Chinese towns and fortifications, when the English naval forces took the island of Hong Kong, and the India army put Canton to ransom and occupied several ports. By treaty in 1842, Hong Kong was ceded to the English, and an indemnity of \$21,000,000 was paid to them; and in 1843 the trade with China was opened to all nations. This was a gain for the interests of commerce and civilization. The terms of the treaty were not observed by the opium-traders, and after disputes and skirmishes another war broke out.

§ 15. While the troubles in the East and the reform measures in parliament were going on, the aged king's strength began to fail, and in May, 1837, when he was in the seventy-second year of his age, he was seized with a dangerous illness. But ever kindly in feeling, he gave a ball in honor of the birthday [May 24] and the majority of his niece Victoria, the heir to the throne he was about to leave. He sent her an elegant piano as his present on the occasion; and he afterward, when in an almost dying condition, sent a request to the Duke of Wellington not to omit the usual dinner on the anniversary of the victory at Waterloo.<sup>b</sup> He failed rapidly, and at two o'clock in the morning of the 20th of June, he died. The Archbishop of Canterbury was with him. A short time after the king's departure, three carriages drove up and speedily bore away the Primate, the Earl of Albemarle, and Sir Henry Hallford the royal physician, to Kensington Palace, where, on their arrival at five o'clock, the Duchess of Kent, and her daughter Victoria, then become queen, stood in the morning sunlight expecting the news. The messengers of the solemn tidings then rode away, and very

<sup>a</sup> § 35, p. 530.<sup>b</sup> § 55, p. 557.



Accession of Victoria. Her Popularity. Insurrectionary Spirit prevailing.

soon the proclamation went forth that the king was dead and Victoria was monarch of Great Britain.

## CHAPTER VII.

### REIGN OF VICTORIA. [FROM A.D. 1837.]

§ 1. VICTORIA, the only child of Edward Duke of Kent,<sup>a</sup> who died long before, had just passed her eighteenth birthday when she was called to occupy the British throne. <sup>a</sup> § 15, p. 589. The immediate political effect of that accession was the dissolution of the connection between the crowns of England and Hanover.<sup>b</sup> The succession of the latter had been settled <sup>b</sup> § 10, p. 519. only in the male line, and it now became the inheritance of Ernest Duke of Cumberland, the eldest surviving son of George the Third. The young Queen was received by the people with great joy, and entered upon her duties while millions of loyal subjects were invoking the choicest blessings of Heaven upon herself and her reign. Lord Melbourne was retained as premier, with his associates in the Cabinet, the most active of whom was Lord John Russell, whose zeal in favor of the Dissenters<sup>c</sup> <sup>c</sup> § 11, p. 587. was shown by his pressing several measures for their benefit, such as the abolition of church rates; but he could not succeed in carrying them.

§ 2. An insurrectionary spirit was now abroad in England and in some of her colonies. The Chartist leaders<sup>d</sup> were <sup>d</sup> § 8, p. 585. very active in fanning the discontents of the working-classes, which were intensified by a dearth of food, caused by the unfavorable harvests of 1838, and consequent distress among the poor. In the autumn of 1838, many large Chartist meetings were held in the northern counties, and when the shorter days came they were held by torch-light. At one of them, near Manchester, 200,000 persons were present. In the following year a National Convention was gathered in London, composed of delegates from the working-classes, and a petition was presented by it so numerously signed that it was necessary to roll it into the House of Commons in half a cask. That body refused to receive it, when

Insurrection in Canada. Domestic Agitations. Affairs in the East Indies.

riots occurred in many places. At Newport the disturbance was suppressed at the cost of about twenty-five lives.

§ 3. Meanwhile an insurrection had broken out in Canada, where discontents from causes inseparable from colonial relations had prevailed for a long time. This occurred at about the time of the queen's accession. We have observed that the American Loyalists,<sup>a</sup> who settled in Western or Upper Canada, had remained firm in their allegiance down to the close of the war in 1815. After that many thousands of persons from the United States, attracted by the fertility of the soil, settled among them, and there widely diffused their Republican spirit, not only among the descendants of those Loyalists, but also among the French settlers in Lower Canada and later colonists from England. The insurrection had for its object the establishment of an independent government. Large numbers of persons in the United States, chiefly young men living along the borders, sympathized with the struggling colonists and went over to their aid. The rising was put down. Some persons taken in arms were hanged, others were transported, while others suffered confiscation of property.

§ 4. While the Chartist agitation was at its height, a more orderly and dignified movement for the benefit of the people was going on. This was the work of the Anti-Corn-Law League, which was formed at Manchester, in September, 1838, having for its object the abolition of the restrictions upon the importation of grain and the promotion of free-trade principles. The most influential member of that League was the late Richard Cobden, in whom the people had unbounded confidence.

§ 5. Jealousy of the power of Russia in interfering with British India, by promoting discontent among the native princes and people, caused a large army to be sent out to counteract the machinations of the great Northern power. The army entered Cabul, and placed on the throne [A.D. 1839] Shah Soojah, the son of a prince driven out thirty years before, instead of Dost Mahommed, supposed to be a pensioner of Russia. In 1841 the country rose in rebellion. The British army was compelled to retreat, and perished almost utterly among the mountain passes. The Shah was put to death soon afterward.

§ 6. In 1842 an "avenging expedition" was sent into that country, which committed great havoc and then withdrew; but the fate



## War with Egypt.

## Marriage of Queen Victoria.

of the former had made a deep impression, and several of the native States ventured again to take arms. The Mahrattas were routed at Maharajpooor [A.D. 1843], and the Sikhs at Moodkee, Ferozeshah, and Soobraon [A.D. 1845, 1846], and the large province of Scinde were added to the British Indian Empire.<sup>a</sup> But the impression remained that it would not be impossible to overthrow that empire, and it gave rise to a still more formidable outbreak a few years later.

§ 7. There was another war in the year 1839, having the preservation of the Turkish empire for its professed object, but was prompted quite as much by jealousy of the designs of Russia as the Cabul war had been. Mehemet Ali, the pasha of Egypt, whose fleet was destroyed at Navarino,<sup>b</sup> had since made war successfully against his master the Sultan. In 1839 he was in possession of Syria, and was known to be abetted by both France and Russia. As he refused to withdraw on the joint demand of Turkey, England, and Austria, a fleet was sent to coerce him. The Syrians, who had been much oppressed by the pasha, were supplied with arms and money, and rose against him. A camp of English marines was formed at the foot of Lebanon; the famous cities of Tyre, Sidon, Berytus, and Acre were taken, and the Egyptian troops, after a defeat among the mountains, left the country. Soon afterward the pasha's own chief port, Alexandria, was in danger, for the French ministry, which had promised him its support, was overawed by the English fleet, and abandoned him. At this crisis Commodore Napier, to whom most of the successes in Syria were owing, adroitly took advantage of the pasha's alarm, and, on his own responsibility, concluded a treaty with him [A.D. 1841], which closed the war. After some little delay the treaty was ratified by the government; and it is in virtue of this that Egypt is now an hereditary monarchy in all but in name.

§ 8. Whilst these wars were going on, the queen married her cousin, Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg, of whom she was deeply enamored. He was a man of refined taste and most benevolent and enlightened views, and he was the means of conferring many essential benefits on his adopted country. Breaking through the routine of former reigns, the queen and her consort visited the continent, and yearly took up their summer residence in Scotland. Ireland was less visited, as its climate was found not to agree with the health of her Majesty. Besides, that island, for

Affairs in Ireland.

Corn Law, and Anti-Corn-Law League.

several years, was not a country that could be visited with pleasure by a British sovereign, for O'Connell, having achieved Catholic Emancipation, had turned his attention to obtaining a repeal of the Union.<sup>a</sup> Weekly meetings were held in Conciliation Hall, in Dublin, and "monster meetings" were held in various parts of the country.

§ 9. Tara Hill was a favorite place of assemblage. It was an ancient seat of Irish monarchy, and O'Connell was popularly regarded as the "uncrowned king" of the country. Large sums were collected for the Agitator, and the country seemed to be on the verge of revolution at one time. But the great Irish leader was too useful to the Whig ministry in other matters for them to venture to interfere with him.

§ 10. The Melbourne ministry, never very strong, were made unpopular among the Protestant inhabitants of the realm because of their close alliance with O'Connell; and when, in the spring of 1841, Sir Robert Peel carried a resolution of want of confidence in them, by a single vote, they resigned. Peel then became premier the second term, with a strong cabinet, in which the Duke of Wellington took a seat without any office. He found the finances of the country in a bad state, owing to the false economy of his predecessor, and to put the exchequer in a more satisfactory condition, he introduced and carried [A.D. 1842] a new and more satisfactory corn-law; an act imposing an income-tax of sevenpence sterling in the pound—a measure formerly employed only in time of war—and a customs act repealing several oppressive duties. These measures were opposed by the Conservatives,<sup>b</sup> the great body of whom refused to follow Peel, and because of their adhesion to the principle of levying heavy duties they were henceforth called Protectionists, with Lord Stanley as their leader.

§ 11. The Anti-Corn-law League<sup>c</sup> continued to keep up an agitation which greatly embarrassed the premier. It had a powerful coadjutor in Providence. The summer of 1845 was wet and cold, and the harvest was deficient not only in Great Britain but throughout Europe. In Ireland, almost the entire potato crop—the food staple of the peasantry—was diseased, and this calamity, repeated the next year, produced a famine in whole districts. To relieve the distress, parliament voted £10,000,000, or \$50,000,000. This state of things gave the League power-

<sup>a</sup> § 36, p. 549.<sup>b</sup> § 11, p. 587.<sup>c</sup> § 4, p. 590.



Ireland agitated.

O'Connell and O'Brien.

Revolutions.

ful arguments; and when, in the spring of 1846, storms and showers were frequent, the popular cry was, "It rains repeal." The premier could stand the pressure no longer, and he procured a repeal of the obnoxious bill [June, 1846], to take effect gradually.

<sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 593. This offended the great body of his supporters a second time,<sup>a</sup> and he retired to private life.

§ 12. Ireland was still agitated and distressed. O'Connell was no more her champion. In the height of his power, and while in attendance upon a "monster meeting," he was arrested [October 14, 1843], by order of the premier (Peel), and tried and condemned, with some coadjutors, for conspiracy and sedition, by the Court of Queen's Bench, in Dublin. The judgment was afterward reversed by the House of Lords, as a matter of State policy and necessity; but it was a severe blow to the great Agitator. His health was then failing. He went to the continent with a hope of regaining it, but died at Genoa, in May, 1847. His mantle of influence in Ireland fell upon weaker shoulders, and when, in 1848, there was made a feeble attempt at insurrection, William Smith O'Brien assumed to take the great Agitator's place as leader. He failed. The rising was put down, and O'Brien and several of his associates were found guilty of high treason. The death penalty was commuted to banishment to the penal colony of Botany Bay.

§ 13. Lord John Russell<sup>b</sup> became premier on the retirement of

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 584. Peel, and held the post, though amid much discontent at home and numerous revolutions abroad, until 1852.

<sup>c</sup> § 2, p. 583. Louis Philippe<sup>c</sup> was expelled from France and a republic established; the whole of Italy was convulsed and the Pope driven from Rome; the Hungarians rose in arms, and the Poles made some feeble efforts to imitate them; whilst Smith O'Brien made his abortive insurrection in Ireland, and 20,000 Chartists assembled in London [April 10, 1848] for the purpose of presenting a petition to parliament. Smith O'Brien's party were dispersed by the police, and the Duke of Wellington took such effective military precautions in London, in connection with 150,000 citizens, who were enrolled as special constables, as prevented any mischief being done on that occasion.

§ 14. Scarcely had the excitement on these matters subsided when the Pope (now returned to Rome, and protected by a French army) named Dr. Wiseman a cardinal, and twelve other clergymen bishops of sees created for them by his authority in England. This

The First Crystal Palace.      Death of Wellington.      Alliance with France.

invasion of the queen's prerogative was greatly resented. An act called the Ecclesiastical Titles Bill was passed [August, 1851], forbidding the use of these titles under a penalty of £100, and the alarm soon subsided.

§ 15. The following year saw the first of those exhibitions of the products of all nations that have since become so common and which was considered as symbolical of free-trade principles. Prince Albert<sup>a</sup> was its great promoter, and it was held in an enormous building in Hyde Park, where his Memorial now stands, known as the Crystal Palace, it being composed of iron and glass. The second exhibition was held on the same spot, in 1862; but it had not the advantage of the Prince's guidance, for he had died, after a brief illness, not long before. The Exhibition building was styled by hopeful men the Temple of Peace, and the advocates of free-trade declared that nations were now so united by their commercial interests that war was no longer possible. Happily in one sense, but unfortunately in another, statesmen, who hold in their hands the issues of peace and war, did not share the pleasant delusion, and the army and navy were not dismissed as useless, for one of England's greatest wars was at hand.

§ 16. Lord John Russell<sup>b</sup> was compelled to resign early in 1852, and was succeeded by Lord Stanley, who had then become Earl of Derby. But the life of that cabinet was short. Derby failed to carry some favorite measures, even after he had resorted to the measure of dissolving the parliament, and in December following he also was compelled to retire. He was succeeded by Lord Aberdeen, who formed a sort of coalition cabinet. Meanwhile the great captain and statesman, the Duke of Wellington, had expired, and been honored by a magnificent public funeral.

§ 17. The Aberdeen Cabinet now entered into an alliance with the Emperor of the French for the purpose of preventing Russia from overrunning and crushing Turkey, which seemed to be its design. That emperor was an unscrupulous adventurer, who, by the prestige of the name and deeds of his uncle, the Emperor Napoleon, was elected President of the French Republic established in 1848, after the flight of Louis Philippe.<sup>c</sup> By fraud and force he seized the government [December 2, 1851], dissolved the existing Constitution, made himself supreme

<sup>a</sup> § 8, p. 592.

<sup>b</sup> § 13, p. 594.

<sup>c</sup> § 13, p. 594.



English Troops on the Danube. Demands of Russia. Preparations for War.

ruler of France, and, in 1853, re-established the empire of his uncle. With this perfidious man England became a partner in a war against Russia, declared in 1854, after a year of fruitless negotiation. English troops (the Guards) were sent to the East so early as February, 1854, and while they were inactive for months among the marshes of the Danube, fever and cholera decimated them.

§ 18. That Russia, under the plea of protection of all the members of the Greek Church residing in the Turkish dominions, on account of some violence some of them had suffered in Palestine at the hand of Latin monks, designed to seize and hold Constantinople and the Turkish empire preparatory to pushing conquests eastward, admits of little dispute. The Czar Nicholas made the demand for such protection on the Sultan of Turkey. It was refused, when Russian troops crossed the frontier into Wallachia and Moldavia, where they were defeated by Turkish troops under Omar Pacha, at Oltenitza, on the 4th of November, 1853. And so war was begun several months before it was actually declared.

§ 19. Nicholas calculated for success on the weakness of Turkey—"the sick man," as he metaphorically called the empire—the subservience of Germany, the unsettled state of France, and the connivance of England, which he hoped to bribe by offering Egypt as its share of the effects of the "sick man." Turkey claimed the assistance of England on the faith of treaties: the usurper in France, under the title of Napoleon the Third, now bore absolute sway over that people, and Austria and Prussia stood aloof. A combined English and French fleet went to the Black Sea, and shut up the Russians at Sebastopol, and in 1854 these two governments declared war against Russia. The English troops sent to the Crimea, on which stands Sebastopol, were commanded by Lord Raglan, and the French by Marshal St. Arnaud. At the same time Sir Charles Napier was despatched to the Baltic with a British fleet. It was not until September that the first troops sent out to the Danube were put in motion, and, landing on the Crimea, gained the battle of Alma on the 20th of September, 1854.

§ 20. While English statesmen knew the power of Russia to be very great, an English parliamentary orator declared it was a mistake, and boasted that the empire of the Czar could be "crumpled up like this sheet of paper," which he threw on the floor. This

War with Russia.

Operations in the Baltic.

Siege of Sebastopol.

boast went abroad and its effect was dreaded. The Russians then had two strong fleets in the Baltic, lying in the fortified harbors of Cronstadt and Sweaborg. When war was declared they were frozen in; but it was feared they would unite in the spring, sail out of the Baltic, and retort the boastful language by attempting to land on the east coast of England, where so many Norsemen invaders from the same direction<sup>a</sup> had begun their ravages in the olden time. To prevent this, Napier was<sup>a</sup> § 1, p. 27. sent to the entrance of the Baltic with fifteen steam-ships before the navigation was open.

§ 21. Napier's fleet was, when it sailed, fit only for display and not for use. The vessels were far too large to get near the Russian fortifications, and they were hurried off with weak, untrained crews, and had not pilots, or even a proper supply of ammunition. Notwithstanding these disadvantages, the admiral made his passage through fogs and storms, training his men on the way; but as the Russians would not come out to fight, he could only keep them blocked up in their harbors, which he had no means of attacking, for the gunboats needed for the purpose were never sent to him. After a time he was joined by a French squadron, with some troops, when the strong fortress of Bomarsund was besieged and taken [August 16, 1854], which was the only trophy of the war in the Baltic. The French soon after retired; but the English admiral remained until the Russians were again rendered safe by being frozen in, and did not reach England till near Christmas.

§ 22. Whilst Napier had been in the Baltic, the allies had fared badly in the Crimea. Sebastopol was found to be a far more formidable place than had been supposed, and it had a very strong garrison—about 50,000 men in the fortress and on the heights—amply supplied, and resolved to hold it to the last extremity. It could only be reduced by a regular siege, and the English army had arrived without any preparation for passing the winter in so rigorous a climate. Beside this, the enemy were numerous and active, and the besiegers, consisting of English, French, and Turks, were likely to become besieged in their camps. On the 25th of October, an order improperly delivered led Lord Cardigan and some 600 light horsemen to attack a complete army of Russians at Balaklava, to the south of Sebastopol, in which they lost nearly one-half of their number; and on the 5th of November the Russians became the assailants, in the gray of the morning, at Inker-



Relief for Soldiers.

The Baltic Fleet.

Death of the Czar.

man, an exposed part of the English position. The division attacked suffered most severely, and was only saved from destruction, so overwhelming was the number of the assailants, by the opportune succor of a French corps.

§ 23. The news of these events caused great exertions to be made by the public to relieve the wants of the troops, and Florence Nightingale and many other ladies went out to the East to nurse the sick and wounded. But almost as great as these exertions was the indignation against the ministers, whose cruel carelessness had allowed them to embark in so vast an undertaking with so little provision for its success. Just at this time the Baltic fleet returned, having accomplished all that it was originally sent to do, namely, to prevent the escape of the Russians, and taken Bomarsund into the bargain. But the ministers had sent further orders, just as the winter was setting in, for Sir Charles to attack Cronstadt, and as he had refused to expose his fleet to certain destruction by attempting to carry out the impossible order, he was deprived of his command. But he was a man of sense and spirit, and showed so conclusively that it was the ministry who were to blame, that they were driven from office within a month afterwards [February, 1855].

§ 24. Lord Palmerston, a statesman who had been in office under many previous administrations, and had long been Foreign Secretary, now became premier, with several members of the late cabinet under him; but the unpopularity of some of them was so great, particularly of Sir James Graham, the First Lord of the Admiralty, on whom was laid most of the blame in the Napier matter, that they were obliged to retire, and the war was thenceforward conducted without any complaints of ministerial neglect, though the progress made with the siege of Sebastopol was very slow. The Baltic fleet sent out in 1855, under a new commander, and supplied with gunboats, trained seamen, pilots, and abundance of stores—in short, with all that the former commander asked for in vain—never ventured near the formidable Cronstadt, and contented itself with firing on Sweaborg from the safe distance of three or four miles.

§ 25. The Russian emperor died early in the second year of the war [March 2, 1855], but this did not bring peace. The army before Sebastopol was not large enough to invest it completely, and supplies were constantly poured in, so that the allies were, in reality,

Fall of Sebastopol.

Peace.

Political Results.

China.

contending against the whole force of the empire. Lord Raglan and Marshal St. Arnaud, the English and French commanders,<sup>a</sup> died during the siege; but it was carried on <sup>a § 19, p. 596.</sup> by their successors, and at last, in September, 1855, after a siege for about a year, Sebastopol fell, and the allies stood triumphant amid the blood-stained ruins. The blow struck fell very heavy on the Russians, and virtually ended the war, as their forts, and docks, and a fine fleet, all were destroyed; but the cost to the victors in blood and treasure was so great that they were quite ready to listen to proposals of peace. Accordingly a peace was concluded at Paris on the 30th of March, 1856, which gave the Turkish empire a little longer breathing-time, and raised the Sardinians to an equality with the great powers, they having sent a contingent to the Crimea, though with no cause of complaint against Russia, at a time when any help was but too welcome. Meanwhile Austria and Prussia, whose interest seemed to be in checking the power of Russia, held aloof. The political results of the war were the abolition of the Russian protectorate in the Danubian principalities; the establishment of the freedom of the Danube and its mouth; the banishment of both Russian and Turkish ships of war from the Black Sea, excepting a few small vessels as a maritime police, and the placing of the protectorate of the Christian subjects of the Sultan in the joint hands of the contracting powers. It was on this basis that the definitive treaty of peace was signed at Paris.

§ 26. Though the income-tax had been doubled to carry on the war, it was found at its close to have added £33,000,000 to the national debt; and the rejoicings for the peace had scarcely concluded when news came of fresh difficulties with the Chinese.<sup>b</sup> They had seized a smuggling vessel, which <sup>b § 14, p. 588.</sup> they were entitled to do under the regulations; but Sir John Bowring, the English governor of Hong Kong,<sup>c</sup> with a <sup>c § 14, p. 588.</sup> seeming readiness to protect the lawbreakers in their nefarious trade, took this as a national affront, and bombarded Canton. That was in the summer of 1857. This proceeding was much discussed in England, and was generally regarded as far too high-handed; but the mischief was done, and another Chinese war commenced. This, however, attracted comparatively little attention at first, from the fact that a war springing out of Russian intrigue existed with Persia, and that the British power in India



British Empire in India.

Discontents of the Sepoys.

seemed threatened with ruin from a mutiny in the Sepoy or native army at about the same time.

§ 27. The history of the British empire in India is a history of a great wrong, however much the establishment of that empire may have conduced to the advancement of civilization and Christianity. It was begun, as we have seen, by the English East India

Company.<sup>a</sup> That company became rich and powerful, and in 1698 obtained a grant of Calcutta and two adjoining villages, with a right of jurisdiction over the inhabitants, and leave to erect fortifications. Then the seed of empire was planted, but the political power of the company did not begin until 1748, when they began making conquests of territory by expelling native princes from their provinces. So early as 1715 they purchased thirty-seven villages contiguous to Calcutta. The French traders in the East became jealous of the increasing power of the English and interfered, but were defeated in 1751, after which the company were unrestricted in the pursuit of schemes of aggrandizement.

§ 28. The government of Warren Hastings was cruel and aggressive, and greatly extended the dominions of the British; and in 1792, his successor, Lord Cornwallis, compelled Tippoo Sahib, the Sultan of Mysore, to give up one-half of his dominions and over \$16,000,000 in bullion. Seven years later Seringapatam was conquered, and after a long series of bloody wars, and the exercise on the part of the English of measures justified only by the ethics of the highwayman, that *Might makes Right*, the British, in 1849, became masters of almost the entire peninsula of Hindostan, from Cape Comorin to the Himalaya Mountains and the Indus. Oppression felt, and a perpetual sense of injury, caused revolts, which were occasions for terrible deeds on the part of the conquerors as well as the conquered. The most conspicuous of these was the **mutiny of the Sepoys** above mentioned.

§ 29. This powerful body had been raised by the India Company, and it had acquired a high degree of military efficiency under its English officers. Great regard was always paid to its wishes and prejudices, and it remained firmly attached to its white employers so long as the company was allowed to manage its affairs in its own way. Indeed the feeling between each regiment and its colonel was something like the tie of clanship among the Highlanders. He was, in Indian phrase, their "father and mother;" his

Unwise Rule in India.

Mutiny.

Causes of Exasperation.

power they regarded as absolute, and he could do no wrong in their eyes. But Lord William Bentinck, who was appointed Governor-General of India in 1828, put an end to this state of things. He was an enthusiastic Liberal, who had tried to govern Sicily in a parliamentary way when the British troops held that island [A.D. 1812], and he wished to bring all Indian institutions to the English model. In the words of the Duke of Wellington, who knew him well, "He changed everything and settled nothing."

§ 30. Refusing to see how different the circumstances of England and India were, and how impossible it was to rule Asiatics without an approach to the despotism to which they were accustomed, Lord Bentinck not only reduced the pay of the European officers, but stripped them of authority, obliging them to send the most trivial complaint to the government, instead of deciding it on the spot. The consequence was, that the Sepoys soon lost their former feeling of mingled respect and awe, and became turbulent and mutinous. Alarmed at this, another Governor-General (Lord Dalhousie) retraced some of his predecessor's steps; but not content with that, he needlessly irritated the Sepoys by depriving them of many long-established privileges, which were not only of money value to them—for instance, any cause of theirs in the courts was disposed of out of turn; they paid no tolls or customs, and their letters were carried free—but a source of pride. Several regiments of the Bengal army resented this by absolutely refusing to embark for service against the Burmese in 1852, and they were allowed to prevail, other forces being substituted.

§ 31. The army was thus made discontented and aware of its power at the same time; and, to increase the danger, the purely European ideas of the governors, fresh from England, led them to give mortal offence to the native princes. The company had been careful to preserve to these the shadow of power, and they cared for nothing more. But when Lord Dalhousie seized on the dominions of the King of Oude, on the plea of misgovernment [A.D. 1856], however true that might be, he alarmed every native chief, from the highest to the lowest, and it only wanted a single spark to light up the deep discontent into a flame. This was soon supplied by the neglect of the prejudices and feelings of the natives, which, since a change had been effected in the position of the company, had taken the place of the deference formerly paid.

§ 32. Just about the time of the annexation of Oude, a new



Force of Superstition.

Insurrection and Massacre.

Insurgents crushed.

kind of cartridge for the use of the Enfield rifle was issued to the native army. In their use these cartridges were greased with mutton-fat and wax. The Sepoys were told that it was the fat of swine and cows, both abominations to the Hindoos and Mahomedans, the use of which would affect their social position. The deposed king and his crafty minister spread abroad the idea that there was some pollution about it, so that all who used it would lose caste and at length be forced to become Christians. The government unwisely took no steps to explain the matter, and when a regiment of cavalry at Meerut refused the cartridges, almost 100 men were imprisoned. Their comrades at once broke open the jail, released them, and also some 1,500 desperate prisoners, and at once began murdering every European that they could meet. That was on the 10th of May, 1857. They then seized on Delhi, where one of the deposed princes resided, made him their king, and invited Hindoos and Mahomedans alike to join them in driving the English from India. The city contained a vast store of arms, it being a great arsenal, yet without a European garrison, and they were well prepared to stand a siege whilst awaiting succor. A force was marched against them, but it was not till the month of September that the city was taken, with great loss of life.

§ 33. In the mean time other regiments had risen in every quarter, and whilst some marched to join their comrades in Delhi, others spread over the country, committing the most horrible atrocities. In most cases they commenced with the murder of their officers; but in some others these owed their lives to the good-will of their men, being warned to make their escape. In July the great station of Cawnpore was obliged to surrender to Nana Sahib, a native, who had a personal grievance, when the whole of the Europeans—men, women, and children—were pitilessly massacred. Lucknow, the capital of Oude, however, held out until relieved by Sir Colin Campbell, a Peninsular veteran, who had been despatched from England as soon as the news of the mutiny arrived, in November. Under his able management the mutineers and their sympathizers among the native princes were put down; but this was not effected without a two years' struggle. The imminence of the danger had shown that the India Company, as restrained by its charter of 1833, was unequal to the task of governing so large a country; accordingly all its possessions were

War with China. Threats of the French. Jews admitted to Parliament.

transferred to the crown, and the queen was formally proclaimed sovereign of India on the 2d of August, 1858, the Governor-General (Lord Canning) taking henceforth the title of Viceroy. Then Queen Victoria became Empress of India—the supreme ruler over 200,000,000 subjects there.

§ 34. During all this period the war with China had gone on, the French also bearing a part in it. Canton was taken, the forts at the mouth of the Peiho stormed, and in October, 1860, Peking, the capital, was reached, and the emperor's summer palace plundered. The Chinese government then agreed to a peace, which conceded many commercial advantages to the English. By the enterprise of Lord Elgin, who, as plenipotentiary to China, exercised a general supervision of the British trade to the remote East, communications were, shortly before this, opened with Japan, and an important commerce has been the result; but the attempt to establish friendly relations with Abyssinia, by means of some German missionaries, was not so successful.

§ 35. Early in the year 1858 an Italian named Orsini, and other conspirators, attempted to assassinate the Emperor Napoleon the Third, and as the plot was believed to have been devised by Italian refugees in England, some French military men, supposed to be instigated by the emperor, uttered loud threats of invasion. These were answered by the immediate formation of volunteer corps, which in 1859 numbered 150,000 men, and at the beginning of 1870 reached 190,000. Lord Palmerston tried to procure an alteration in the law regarding such conspiracies, but this could not be listened to in the face of threats, and he was obliged to retire from office. Lord Derby then became premier, and held the post from February, 1858, to June, 1859; but nothing of importance occurred, excepting the passage of a law for the admission of Jews to seats in parliament. A new parliament, in 1859, restored Lord Palmerston to power, and he continued premier until his death, in October, 1865.

§ 36. During this, Palmerston's last administration, society was in a most uneasy state in England and on the Continent, and many political and social changes occurred. But England interfered less in the affairs of other nations than ever before. Palmerston's policy was one of non-interference—a policy conspicuously in contrast with that of his administration as Foreign Secretary from 1830 to 1841, and from 1846 to 1851, when he was praised by



Preparations for War.

Civil War in America.

Tripartite Alliance.

some and blamed by others because, in effect, he undertook the government of the world. The continental commotions and the events of the civil war in America caused him to make all necessary preparations against attack. The army was increased, and the sum of £11,000,000, or \$55,000,000, was voted for fortifications, and an almost equally large sum was expended in building enormous iron-clad ships and constructing equally enormous guns.

§ 37. The unfriendly attitude assumed by Lord Palmerston and his cabinet toward the government of the United States, when the great civil war broke out in the spring of 1861 was a grave mistake. The impression had gone abroad the previous winter that the Union would certainly be destroyed by the secession of States, and the Republic be broken into fragments. Lured by the offer of free-trade, by the Southern Confederacy that was formed in February, the British Cabinet not only persuaded the Queen to acknowledge those Confederates, by proclamation [May 13, 1861], to be legally belligerents and possessed of belligerent rights, but

<sup>a</sup> § 17, p. 595. entered into a secret agreement with the Emperor of the French,<sup>a</sup> to act in concert in giving encourage-

ment to the insurgents in arms. That cabinet went so far as to give official notice to other governments of that evident understanding between those two leading powers, thereby endeavoring to array all Europe against our Republic. Evidently believing that the United States were then almost helpless through the distractions of civil war. England and Spain, deceived by the false pretences of the Emperor of the French, entered into an alliance with France against the comparatively feeble Republic of Mexico, on our southern border, for the purpose, it was believed, to give moral and material aid to the insurgents when it should seem to be expedient. England and Spain soon discovered the perfidy of Napoleon and the iniquity of his schemes, and withdrew; but the Emperor of the French proceeded to overthrow the Mexican Republic, and to establish a monarchy there. It was short-lived.

§ 38. For a long time the British Government, British orators, statesmen, and publicists, and the British press in the interest of the government, indulged in the most unfriendly language and acts toward the government of the United States and its adherents. British ships continually ran the blockade of Southern ports with supplies for the insurgents. A member of the British Parliament built war-ships for the Confederates, with which to assail Ameri-

## Belligerent England.

## American Help for English Sufferers.

can commerce, and they were equipped and manned by British subjects, and welcomed, with their plunder, in British colonial ports. And when the commander of a United States ship-of-war boarded a British packet-ship [November 8, 1861], and took therefrom two ambassadors of the Confederates, the British Government, without making a demand for redress, or waiting to hear whether the Government of the United States approved the act, made extensive preparations for war, and ordered troops to Canada for the purpose.<sup>1</sup> Meanwhile the Government of the United States had disavowed the act [November 30], and ordered the restoration of the prisoners to a British vessel.

§ 39. The friendly attitude of the British ruling class toward the Confederates deluded the latter with the belief that the British government would acknowledge their independence and nationality and give them material aid. This delusion caused the prolongation of the war at least two years. Immense sums of money had been lent to the Confederates by individuals of an association composed of members of the British aristocracy and merchants, for the avowed purpose of aiding the Confederates to overthrow the Republic. These naturally desired their success, while the ship-builders and blockade-runners, and the ship-owners, profiting by the destruction of American commerce by the sea-rovers that the British government allowed to go out of port in spite of the remonstrances of the American ambassador, were quite willing that the war should go on.

§ 40. While the ruling and mercantile classes of England were friendly to the Confederates, the great mass of the people prayed for peace and the triumph of our Government. The cotton famine caused by the war produced wide-spread distress in the manufacturing districts of England, where the mill-wheels ceased revolving. And here it seems proper to mention the fact, that when the war was at its height, and British vessels sailing under Confederate flags were destroying American shipping and ruining American commerce, the merchants and others of the city of New York sent a large ship [A.D. 1862] laden with provisions for the starving working-people of Lancashire and other districts in England, of the value of \$100,000. And our government was compelled, by

<sup>1</sup> The St. Lawrence river was frozen at the time, and the troops could not reach Canada by water. Our Secretary of State, with grim humor, offered to grant them permission to cross our territory by railway from Portland, in the State of Maine.



An expensive Blunder.

Reform Act.

The Fenians.

considerations of humanity, to send a war-ship to protect that vessel of mercy from the touch of Anglo-Confederate cruisers then roving the sea and making the Atlantic luminous with burning American ships.

§ 41. The unfriendly conduct of the British governing class was a woful blunder. It alienated the hearts of friends. The immense sums loaned to the Confederates were lost. The captures of blockade-runners were so numerous that the losses of the business far exceeded the profits, and the government was held responsible for the losses sustained by Americans from the depredations of the Anglo-Confederate cruisers. That blunder cost the British nation at least \$100,000,000.

§ 42. Earl Russell (the Lord John Russell of former times)<sup>a</sup> now became premier, and followed the non-intervention policy, so that a brief but fierce war between Prussia and Austria [A.D. 1866] passed away without England being mixed up in it, even although the kingdom of Han-

<sup>b</sup> § 41, p. 532. over,<sup>b</sup> which had formerly been the cause of so many contests, was seized by the victorious Prussians, who became the leading people in Germany. Earl Russell, instead of mixing in

<sup>c</sup> § 4, p. 584. the quarrel, turned his attention to the Reform Act of 1832.<sup>c</sup> It had for many years, and by very different parties, been denounced as unfair and insufficient. Lord Palmerston had tried to stifle action on the subject, and Russell had incurred much unpopularity by declaring that he considered it a final measure. In 1854 he brought in a bill for its amendment, but this was dropped in consequence of the war in south-eastern Europe. The subject was revived by the Derby administration in 1859, and in 1860 by Earl Russell, but nothing was done. It was now again brought forward, but its provisions were not acceptable to the new parliament, and the ministry had to resign [June, 1866], when the Earl of Derby came into office for the third time, with Benjamin Disraeli as the leader of the House of Commons.

§ 43. An organization composed of natives of Ireland, and known as the Fenian Brotherhood, now began to give the British government much trouble. The avowed object of the leaders was, and is, to effect the independence of Ireland. The Brotherhood began to assume shape in Ireland, the United States, and Canada, in 1859 and 1860. Being unrestrained by law in the United States, and that country having a very large native Irish population, the

## The Fenians.

association soon grew to ponderous proportions in that country. The first congress of the order was held in Chicago [November, 1863], and the second in Cincinnati, in 1865, when the Brotherhood was reorganized. Its system for concert of action over large spaces was perfect, and in the year last named the membership of the Brotherhood was stated to be about 80,000. In Ireland the society is known as the "Irish Revolutionary Brotherhood." So bold were some of the newspapers there in its interest, and so threatening was its power in 1865, that troops were sent from England to Ireland, martial law was established in some counties, and the conductors of some newspapers were tried and sentenced to penal servitude. The chief, or "Head-Centre," James Stephens, escaped from a Dublin prison and fled to America.

§ 44. In the year 1866 the Fenians in the United States made hostile demonstrations toward Canada, and so committed acts of hostility to the governments of the United States and Great Britain. The Canadians were quickly aroused to meet the danger, and the United States government promptly took measures to suppress the movement, which became general along our northern frontier. Arms which the belligerents had gathered were seized. But a large number of the Brotherhood, armed, invaded Canada from Buffalo on the 1st of June, 1866. They were speedily repulsed, and the United States took ample measures to prevent any further violation of its laws. A Fenian congress was held at Troy in September; but there were no more hostile movements of importance in the United States during that and the following two years. But these formidable preparations here, and an attempt at revolution in Ireland, in March, 1867, kept the British government painfully alert. The attempt near Dublin and in the south was promptly put down, without much bloodshed; but many arrests were made. In December an attempt was made to liberate some of the prisoners in the Clerkenwell jail, in London, by blowing in the wall with gunpowder. It did not succeed; but a whole street of houses were shattered and many persons were killed. Another attempt to invade Canada, from Vermont, was made in the summer of 1870; but it was such a signal failure that it brought the whole movement into disrepute.

§ 45. Soon after the close of the civil war in America [A.D. 1865], the United States government claimed from the British government indemnity for the citizens of this country for losses sustained



Claims on England.

War in Abyssinia.

Reform Bills passed.

by the depredations of the Anglo-Confederate cruisers already mentioned.<sup>a</sup> An American ambassador was sent almost for the special purpose of urging and settling those claims, but nothing was effected. Some questions arose touching the correctness of the doctrine of the queen's proclamation acknowledging the Confederates as belligerents,<sup>b</sup> which complicated the matter, and the subject remained an open and irritating question. Early in 1871 a joint commission was appointed by the two governments, to negotiate for a settlement of those claims. The Commissioners met at Washington, and a treaty was made which promised justice and peace. It was speedily ratified by both parties.

§ 46. It has been mentioned that the attempts to open trade between England and Abyssinia had not been satisfactory. An active and ambitious emperor of that country, named Theodore, claiming to be a descendant of King Solomon by the Queen of Sheba, became very angry in 1863, because an autograph letter which he sent to Queen Victoria, asking permission to place an ambassador at her court, was unanswered. Late in that year he imprisoned the British consul and some missionaries, chaining each to an Abyssinian soldier. Efforts were made from time to time to obtain their release, but failed. At the same time a civil war was raging in Abyssinia; yet this did not deter the emperor from defying the English when they threatened him with war. A military expedition was finally sent, under Sir Robert Napier. After a march of 400 miles from the sea to Magdala—the emperor's stronghold—that place was stormed and taken [April, 1868], the captives, several of them women and children, were liberated, and Theodore died by his own hand when he saw that all was lost.

§ 47. In March, 1867, Mr. Disraeli, Chancellor of the Exchequer and leader of the House of Commons, introduced a very moderate Reform Bill for England and Wales, which, after several amendments, became a law by receiving the royal signature on the 15th of August. It was not to go into effect until 1869. It very widely extended the elective franchise, and so increased the power of the people.<sup>1</sup> Similar bills for Scotland and Ireland were afterwards passed [A.D. 1868], by which the former gained fifteen members of Parliament and the latter five. This measure was hailed with great joy throughout the United Kingdom, as a triumph for

<sup>1</sup> The registration for the election of November, 1868, furnishes the data for the fol-

Disestablishment of the Irish Church.

The apprehended Effects.

the champions of universal suffrage, toward which the liberal statesmanship of Great Britain is tending.

§ 48. At the close of March, 1868, Mr. Gladstone, the eminent liberal leader in the House of Commons, introduced a resolution for the disendowment and disestablishment of the Irish Church. This just measure, relieving the great body of the Irish people, who have no religious sympathy with that church, from the burden of its support, brought upon its author a storm of abuse from the champions of Church and State. The popular feeling was with Mr. Gladstone, and just a month after he introduced the resolution, the House of Commons adopted it by a majority of 65. In July following parliament was prorogued, and in the autumn a new election took place, the great question in the canvass being that concerning the Irish Church. It was the most exciting canvass since the passage of the Reform Bill of 1832.<sup>a</sup>

There was a majority of 112 out of a membership of 658 against the ministry. The latter resigned early in December [A.D. 1868], when the queen called Mr. Gladstone to the premiership, which position he still [A.D. 1871] holds.

§ 49. The Irish Church question was the most important subject presented to the consideration of the new cabinet. That church had an endowment whose revenues amounted to about \$3,000,000 annually. Its membership numbered about 700,000. It had two archbishops, ten bishops, and about 1,700 clergy. The opposition to the measure was very strong, especially among churchmen, who regarded it as an initial step toward the disendowment and disestablishment of the English Church—the complete severance of the legal union of Church and State. But the measure, after a severe struggle, was carried in the House of Lords, and it became a law [August, 1869], to go into effect on the first of January, 1871.

Following table of elections in England and Wales, which shows the extension of the franchise there by the Reform Act of 1868:—

	Electors in 1866.	Electors in 1868.	Increase.
Boroughs.....	514,026	1,220,715	706,689
Counties.....	542,623	791,916	249,283
Total.....	1,056,659	2,012,631	955,972

The registered voters were not quite one-tenth of the population, while in the United States they range from one-fifth to two-ninths of the population.



War between France and Germany. Temporal Power of the Pope ended. War Clouds

§ 50. During the last half of the year 1870 all Europe was violently agitated by a terrible war that raged in France, between that country and United Germany; but England, with unaccustomed wisdom, refrained from interference, excepting in the way of feeble moral influence. Thereby lives and treasure were spared to Great

Britain. The war was one of the greatest crimes on  
a § 37, p. 550.

record. The usurper on the French throne <sup>a</sup> had been for years keeping that country in an attitude so threatening as an increasing military power, that other countries (especially Prussia, of which he was intensely jealous) were compelled to keep up large standing armies at an enormous expense, as a householder would furnish bolts against a burglar. At length, in fear of his own discontented people and the army he had been strengthening, he made war upon Prussia before declaring it, by pushing an armed force across the frontier. It was an act of aggression without the shadow of an excuse. The Emperor of the French supposed the other German powers, jealous of Prussia, would be his allies, and he regarded the capture of the Prussian capital, in the course of a very short campaign, as a certainty. His mistake was soon apparent. All Germany united against him. The French armies were driven back, defeated, and captured; the emperor made a prisoner; and the empress (who had been appointed Regent of France) and her son, the heir apparent, became exiles. The Germans overran France, and on the first of March, 1871, the German army, with the Prussian king, who had been proclaimed Emperor of united Germany, entered Paris in triumph, after allowing the French people to form a government, which they did, with the venerable M. Thiers as President of a provisional republic. Soon afterward there was an insurrection in Paris, which cost 60,000 lives and a vast amount of property destroyed by fire.

§ 51. During the same period the temporal power of the Pope of Rome, after an existence of 1,100 years, was, by the overwhelming voice of the people of the "States of the Church," in Italy, ended. It was a bloodless revolution. Italy (like Germany) became again united, under King Victor Emmanuel, and Rome was made its capital. In this movement, also, England refrained from meddling. Her political sky was serene during 1870, excepting some threatening clouds in the form of a sharp and almost hostile diplomatic correspondence between the cabinets of London and St. Petersburg. It was in relation to a treaty made after the Cri-

Characteristics of England.

Area of Great Britain and Ireland.

mean war,<sup>a</sup> intended to restrain Russia from aggressive movements toward the British dominions in India. Russia claimed that the treaty was made by her under compulsion, and that she had a right to withdraw from it. And so the matter rested when this paragraph was written, in July, 1871.

<sup>a</sup> § 5, p. 439.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE PRESENT CONDITION OF GREAT BRITAIN.

§ 1. IN all that constitutes a truly great people, England, in the broader meaning of that word, appears in the front rank of nations. In jurisprudence; in the exploits of war and the arts and pursuits of peace; in the diffusion of the effulgence of Christianity and commerce, and consequently of civilization over vast regions of mental and spiritual twilight; in geographic and scientific discovery; in labours of philanthropy at home and abroad; in æsthetic culture; in the restraints of law, the perfection of the family, and the salutary influences of home life. England is unrivalled in its satisfactory ministrations to the loving student of mankind.

§ 2. The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland has an area of 120,870 English square miles, and a population of about 31,000,000. Its colonial possessions stretch over nearly one-half of the North American continent, nearly the whole of India, large portions of the continent of Africa, the whole of the great insular continent of Australia, islands of Oceanica, and the East and West Indian and Mediterranean Seas, and the port of Aden, near the Red Sea, by which the time of passage to India has been shortened from six months to one. The assertion first made by the Spaniards concerning the empire of Great Britain, that upon it "the sun never sets," is true to-day.

§ 3. The commerce of Great Britain, considering the area and population of the United Kingdom alone, is enormous, according to the average given in the latest official reports since 1868. The statistics of commerce, as well as of other things, in that period, are given here in round numbers:—



## Commerce, and the Army and Navy.

The value of the yearly imports into the United Kingdom was £295,000,000, or \$1,475,000,000. That of the exports was £228,000,000, or \$1,140,000,000. Of the imports, \$216,000,000 were from the United States, while from all her colonies the total amount was only \$335,000. The exports to the United States were \$120,000,000, and to the British colonies \$269,000. Three-sevenths of the imports consisted of raw cotton, grain, wool, tea, and raw silk. The customs revenue was collected almost entirely from duties on chickory, cocoa, chocolate, coffee, grain, dried fruits, spirituous liquors, sugar, molasses, tea, tobacco, snuff, and wine. And nine-tenths of the whole revenue was collected from the five articles, spirituous liquors, wine, tobacco, sugar, and molasses.

§ 4. The number, tonnage, and manning of British vessels were: 20,500 sailing vessels of an aggregate tonnage of 4,746,000, and 155,000 men; and of steam vessels, 1,728, with an aggregate tonnage of 826,500, and 44,000 men. The total commercial marine consisted of 22,228 vessels, of an aggregate of 5,572,000 tons burden, and 199,400 men.

§ 5. The British navy consists of about 650 vessels of all kinds, of which nearly one-half are in reserve, and many of them entirely worthless. This fleet is manned by 34,000 sailors, with officers; 6,500 boys, and 7,000 marines, making a total of 47,500. The iron-clad fleet consists of between 40 and 50 vessels, whose aggregate cost is about £11,000,000, or \$55,000,000.<sup>a</sup> The annual expense of the navy is about \$50,000,000 a year.

§ 6. The total army force proper of Great Britain, in the regular service, is 128,000 men. Besides these there are about 64,000 soldiers in service in India, making a total of 192,000. Besides these two standing armies, provision is made for four classes of reserves, namely, the disembodied militia, 129,000; the yeomanry cavalry, 15,000; volunteers, 200,000 (of whom 175,000 are considered effective), and the army reserve, of unknown numbers, composed of enrolled pensioners and others. The total number of men enrolled for armsbearing, and fit for effective duty, is about 320,000. Both arms of the united service have a great burden of superannuated and retired officers on their pay-rolls, which adds nothing to the efficiency of the service, but largely to the cost. The pay of officers is generally very large. The commander-in-chief of the army receives a salary of \$30,000 a year, and, being

<sup>a</sup> § 26, p. 603.

## Manufactures, Minerals, and Revenue.

a duke (Duke of Cambridge), receives, besides, an annuity of \$60,000.

§ 7. The textile industry of Great Britain is of marvellous extent, and employs about 160,000 persons. These are engaged in the manufacture of wool, cotton, flax, and silk fabrics. The average annual import of raw cotton is about 1,000,000,000 pounds, of which one-third is exported in the form of cotton cloth. The average import of wool is over 250,000,000 pounds, of which more than 100,000,000 are exported in the form of woollen cloth. The average import of flax is valued at about \$20,000,000, and the amount of raw silk, brought chiefly from Japan, China, and India, is about 7,000,000 pounds. There are in the United Kingdom, engaged in textile industries, 6,420 factories, with about 42,000,000 spindles and 50,000 power-looms.

§ 8. The total production of minerals from the earth, in a year, is valued at nearly \$218,000,000, of which coal is the most important in quantity and value. In one year 104,000,000 tons were raised, valued at \$130,000,000. Next was pig-iron, of which 5,000,000 tons were smelted, valued at \$62,000,000. Nearly 10,000 tons of copper were produced, valued at almost \$4,000,000; and about 158,000 tons of copper ore were raised, valued at over \$3,000,000. Of lead, 72,000 tons were produced, valued at nearly \$7,000,000; and 95,000 tons of lead ore were raised, valued at nearly \$6,000,000. Of tin ore, 14,000 tons were raised, valued at about \$4,000,000, and more than 10,000 tons of metallic tin were produced, valued at \$4,500,000. The silver mines yielded over 800,000 ounces, valued at more than \$1,000,000. A little more than 1,500,000 tons of salt were produced, valued at almost \$6,000,000; and of clay, fine and fire, over 1,000,000 tons were brought into use, and valued at full \$1,500,000.

§ 9. The annual revenue of Great Britain is about \$360,000,000, and expenditures, \$340,000,000; of which \$100,000,000 come from excise duties; \$47,000,000, from stamps; from assessed taxes, \$18,000,000; from income tax, \$45,000,000, and the remainder from duties on imports. The amount annually paid to the royal family, for the queen's personal income, expenses of her royal household, and annuities and pensions for her children, is \$2,500,000. The queen also receives from her private revenue as Duchess of Lancaster, about \$145,000 a year; and the Prince of Wales, as Duke of Cornwall, receives about \$276,000 a year. The



## Travel.

## Income.

## Pauperism.

interest and the cost of the management of the national debt consumes about two-fifths of the gross income of the kingdom. The average share in that debt<sup>a</sup> of each individual of the population is about \$128, and in the annual interest about \$4.40.

§ 10. The facilities for travel in Great Britain have been vastly increased within the period of thirty years. Fine roads have been made in every direction, and stage-coaches and private carriages, comfortable and elegant, abound. The first railway in England for carrying passengers was opened in 1825. It was worked with horse power. The first railway upon which locomotives were used was in France, the next year; and in 1828, carriages ran swiftly upon the Manchester and Liverpool Railway, by the same power. There are now [A.D. 1871] seventy railways in the United Kingdom, having an aggregate length of 14,000 miles. Upon the construction and finishing of these about \$1,400,000,000 have been spent.

§ 11. It is estimated that three per cent., or about 1,000,000, of the population of the United Kingdom belong to the landholder or aristocratic class, including the families of 350,000 landholders; about 20 per cent., or 6,000,000, to the middle class, traders, and brain-workers, and 77 per cent., or 23,000,000, to the "lower class," or manual laborers. The total annual income of the population is estimated at \$3,000,000,000. Of this amount the middle and "upper classes"—7,000,000 of the population—receive \$1,750,000,000, and the 23,000,000 of the laboring class receive \$1,250,000,000. The former class receive a sum equal to \$250 a head, and the latter class \$54.35 a head. The incomes of the manual labor class, with very few exceptions, are exempted from taxation, as no income less than \$500 is taxed.

§ 12. Pauperism is frightfully prevalent in Great Britain, and has largely increased within the last five years. The fluctuations in the prices of raw manufacturing materials have made mill-owners cautious, and the number of skilled laborers out of employment at the beginning of the year 1870 was very large. At that time one-tenth of the entire population of the kingdom were in the receipt of temporary or permanent relief. In England and Wales alone the number of persons who received relief was over 2,000,000. In Scotland the number was 222,000, or one in every fourteen of the population. In Ireland the ratio was one in eight.

## Crime.

## Ignorance.

## Popular Education.

This depressed state of labor caused a great increase of emigration. Many fled from almost actual starvation. The number of persons who left the United Kingdom for other countries, in 1869, was about 220,000. At a meeting held in London, at near the close of that year, to consider the subject of emigration, the Lord Mayor stated that there were between 70,000 and 80,000 skilled artisans then in Great Britain who could not find employment, and that they either must be removed from the country or starve! There must be a pressing need for radical social reforms in a country where so vast a number of the most productive citizens are compelled to emigrate or famish—a number representing nearly half a million dependent souls. In Scotland, at the same time, the number of vagrants had increased 18,000 in the course of two years.

§ 13. Crime, often the child of cruel poverty, seems to be on the increase in England. The number of persons arrested and tried for various offences in England and Wales alone, in 1869, was more than 500,000, of whom about 350,000 were convicted and punished. In Scotland and Ireland the number was equally large in proportion to the population. The police force of the kingdom numbered about 41,000, and were maintained at an annual expense of \$14,000,000. There were between 60 and 70 reformatory schools for juvenile criminals, in which there were nearly 7,000 of both sexes, kept at an annual expense of over \$600,000.

§ 14. While the statistics of popular education in Great Britain do not make a very pleasant impression, there are signs and evidences of speedy and rapid improvement. Thirty years ago 33 per cent. of the men and 48 per cent. of the women who were married could not write their names. Now the percentage of each sex who cannot write their names is only a little over 20.

§ 15. The entire appropriation for the promotion of popular education, made in 1869 by parliament for the United Kingdom, was a little more than \$6,000,000, or about 20 cents for each person in the kingdom. There were then about 16,000 elementary schools subject to public aid; but in all of these the standard of attainment was quite low. Teachers' wages had been much advanced, and a much better class of instructors were promised. The average price for a masculine teacher of highest grade was \$457 a year, and for a feminine teacher of the same grade, \$281 a year. The cost of maintaining these 16,000 elementary schools



## Public and Private Schools.

## The Anglican Church.

was nearly \$8,000,000, which sum was provided partly by the government, the income from endowments, scholars' fees, and the funds of the national school societies. The government appropriated about \$2,400,000 of the amount, a sum but a little more than one-half the amount spent by the State of New York (with less than one-seventh of the population of the United Kingdom) for the same purpose at the same time.

§ 16. Besides these annual-grant schools, there were many of a lower grade, taught by inferior teachers, which received no government aid, and in which were about 1,000,000 pupils. At the same time, about 300,000 scholars were under tuition in private schools of a much higher grade. There were, also, between 40 and 50 colleges, or normal schools, for the professional instruction of teachers, in which there were accommodations for 21,000 pupils, and the attendance was about 16,000. There are also numerous parochial schools, sustained by the Established Church and the different Dissenting denominations; endowed schools, great and small; ragged and evening schools, and the special schools of institutions or guilds. For higher education, in England, are the three great universities of Oxford, Cambridge, and London, and smaller colleges established by religious denominations; the universities of Edinburgh, Glasgow, Aberdeen, and St. Andrew's, in Scotland; and Trinity College and the University of Dublin, Queen's College, at Belfast, and several smaller colleges belonging to religious societies, in Ireland.

§ 17. But all of these facilities for education (happily increasing) are totally inadequate to supply the needs of the people. Ignorance is frightfully prevalent. The poorer classes, exposed to the temptations to which education is often a foil, have not the means for general enlightenment, and the significant fact remains that Great Britain pays annually more than twice as much money for the maintenance of a police force as for popular education.

§ 18. The Anglican Church, established by Henry the Eighth,<sup>a</sup> is yet the State church in England and Wales, to which all the others are tributary. The sovereign is the titular head. It is managed by two archbishops (of Canterbury and York) and twenty-eight bishops. There are about 12,000 parishes and 200 extra-parochial places, each of which has its parson, or parish "priest," a rector, or vicar. These are supported by tithes, rates, or parish dues, and in part by endowments. The

<sup>a</sup> § 44, p. 326.

## Churches of Scotland and Ireland.

## Energy of the Nation.

whole annual income of the Established Church is about \$25,000,000. The church population is estimated at 12,500,000, for whom there are 5,500,000 sittings provided. There are, besides the houses of worship belonging to the Established Church, nearly 5,000 other buildings used for the same purpose, by Roman Catholics and the various Dissenting denominations.<sup>1</sup> The incomes of the two archbishops are large—that of Canterbury \$75,000, and of York \$50,000, a year. Some of the bishops have large salaries, but the great body of the inferior clergy are not well paid. Twenty-four of the bishops have seats in the House of Lords.

§ 19. The Established Church in Scotland is Presbyterian in its form of government. There are no bishops or clergy of supreme authority over other clergy. The ruling body is a General Assembly of 386 members. It is a high ecclesiastical court. The clergy are supported by tithes and State stipends. But the dissenters from this church comprise about two-thirds of the population. Of these the most important belong to the Free Church of Scotland, which seceded from the Established Church in 1843, and the United Presbyterian Church, formed by a coalition of fragments, some of which broke off so early as 1741. There are nearly 25,000 Episcopalians in Scotland, and some of the different Dissenting denominations. The Established Church has about 1,250 places for public worship, 1,300 ministers, and 1,800 Sunday-schools, with 140,000 scholars. The Free Church is supported by voluntary contributions.

§ 20. There is now, as we have seen, no Established Church in Ireland.<sup>a</sup> The great majority of the population are Roman Catholics. They claim 4,500,000 of the <sup>a § 49, p. 609.</sup> 6,000,000 inhabitants. The remaining million and a half are divided among churchmen (700,000) and the various dissenters.

§ 21. The history of England, whose outlines we have traced in this volume, is a marvellous revelation of what human energy may accomplish. The people of that little country, occupying part of an island, have been for almost a thousand years eminently conspicuous for their force. During all that time no successful foreign invader has trodden the soil, while aggressive expedition after expedition have sailed from its coasts and made important con-

<sup>1</sup> Of these almost one-third belonged to the Independents, or Congregationalists, who arose in England, with Thomas Brown as a leader, in the sixteenth century, and were sometimes called "Brownists."



Strength of the Nation.

Natural Features and Remarkable Events.

quests. From its inherent energies there has been a most vigorous outgrowth of civilization, almost without interruption, slower at times than in other lands, but of greater vitality, and which is still developing new strength for the nation. It has been growing stronger, richer, and wiser every day. He who argues from the fact that England is less aggressive and warlike than formerly, and that pauperism and crime are increasing within the borders of the United Kingdom, that it has passed the meridian of its glory, has, undoubtedly, erroneous conceptions of its vigor. It is a giant in his prime, somewhat diseased; but it has a constitution strong enough to endure the application of any remedies that shall promise restoration of health. The medicine most needed is the elevation of the people—morally, socially, and politically—through the healthful ministrations of education, and the practical diffusion throughout the whole social system of the principles of Liberty, Equality, and Fraternity.

§ 22. These words have often been misused; nevertheless they are the expression of that which, combined with industry, economy, and intelligence, form the solid foundations of a flourishing State.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### NATURAL FEATURES AND REMARKABLE EVENTS.<sup>1</sup>

§ 1. THE following geographical, topographical, and historical notes may be useful to the reader after a perusal of the preceding narrative of the most important events in British history:

§ 2. The extreme north of Scotland<sup>2</sup> is marked by two rocky promontories, called Cape Wrath, to the west, and Duncansbay

Head,<sup>a</sup> to the east. Both of them are famous in the long contest of the Norsemen<sup>a</sup> (or Danes, as they are less correctly termed) with the Scots. On the eastern shore we

<sup>1</sup> A consultation of the maps in this volume, while reading this chapter, will make it more instructive to the student.

<sup>2</sup> Known by the Romans as Caledonia. It was invaded by the Scots, a Celtic race, from Ireland [A.D. 503]. They established a kingdom there, and in the reign of Kenneth McAlpin, in the ninth century, they became the dominant race, and called the country Scotland.

## Natural Features and Remarkable Events.

pass the Ord of Caithness, and the Dornoch and Moray Friths, the latter of which is the outlet of the chain of lakes that stretch from the German to the Atlantic Ocean, and are made navigable by the Caledonian Canal. On their banks are Fort George, Fort Augustus, and Fort William, built to restrain the Highlanders.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 23, p. 24.

§ 3. At the east end of the lakes is Inverness, which is considered a provincial capital, and the moor of Culloden, on which the partisans of the Stuarts were defeated by the Duke of Cumberland in 1746.<sup>b</sup> Beyond Fort George is Nairn; then the bluff rock called Burgh-Head, near which is the decayed city of Elgin; then the river Spey; next Banff Bay, beyond which is Kinnaird's Head, the north-eastern point of Scotland.

<sup>b</sup> § 24, p. 525.

§ 4. Turning southward, we have in succession Aberdeen, famous for its colleges, as also for its trade; Montrose, Dundee, and the Frith of Tay; the city of St. Andrews, and the Frith of Forth, on the shores of which are found, beside the capital city of Edinburgh (founded by the Saxon King, Edwin<sup>c</sup>—Edwinsburgh), many places renowned in Scottish history. Crossing the Forth we have North Berwick, Dunbar, St. Abb's Head, Eyemouth, and thus reach the Tweed, the boundary of Scotland on that side.

<sup>c</sup> § 18, p. 35.

§ 5. The western coast, though picturesque in the extreme, has few objects of general historic interest, probably from the affairs of the country having been but imperfectly recorded. Off its shores lie the isles called the Hebrides,<sup>d</sup> which were long in the possession of the Norsemen. The most interesting are Iona and Staffa—the one famous for its early religious foundations, and as the burial-place of forty-eight kings, and the other for its romantic caves, which preserve the names of traditionary early heroes. These islands were once ruled by chiefs called the Lords of the Isles,<sup>e</sup> who were often dangerous rivals to the kings of Scotland; many of them allied themselves with the English kings, and the title is now borne by the Prince of Wales.

<sup>d</sup> § 9, p. 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 3, p. 265.

§ 6. Beyond the Hebrides stretches the peninsula of Cantyre, which almost approaches Ireland, and beyond this the once wild district of Galloway extends to the Solway Frith, on the opposite shore of which is seen the English county of Cumberland. In the interior of Scotland are found the loftiest mountains of Great



## Natural Features and Remarkable Events.

Britain. There are the Grampians, where the Caledonians sheltered themselves from the power of Rome.<sup>a</sup> From these mountains flow, on the east side, the Dee, the Tay, and the Forth, on which are found Aberdeen, Perth, and Stirling;<sup>b</sup> Edinburgh, the capital, is built near the mouth of the latter river.

§ 7. The Cheviot or Teviot hills divide England and Scotland. They have been the scene of innumerable contests between the two nations, and one of them in particular is the subject of the ancient ballad of Chevy Chase.<sup>c</sup> Among them rise the Clyde, on which stand Glasgow, Dunbarton, and Greenock; the Tweed, on which, or its tributaries, are Jedburgh, Melrose, Kelso, Berwick,<sup>d</sup> and other places famed in border history; also the Liddel, Esk, Annan, and Nith, which unite to form the Frith of Solway, near which is Carlisle.<sup>e</sup>

§ 8. Entering England, it will be seen that the whole western side of the country, including Wales, is mountainous, or at least hilly, and that the eastern portion is a plain, with only occasional high ground. The southern part, however, between the English Channel and the Thames and Severn, has ranges of hills, which at length rise almost to mountains; in Wiltshire a branch shoots off, traverses Berkshire and Buckinghamshire, under the name of the Chiltern hills, and, getting gradually lower, extends into Suffolk.

§ 9. The east coast of England, from Berwick as far as the Humber, is generally lofty, and it has many places of historical interest. The field of Flodden<sup>f</sup> (and probably that of Brunanburg)<sup>g</sup> lies not far distant from Berwick. Bamborough Castle owes its origin to Ida, the founder of the kingdom of Northumbria.<sup>h</sup> Near it is Holy Island, which was one of the earliest places ravaged by the Norsemen,<sup>i</sup> while Scarborough was burnt by them in almost their last attack on England. Whitby had a famous monastery; and Flamborough Head and Spurn Point have witnessed many hostile landings.

§ 10. On the western side of the same district are Cumberland, a mountainous region, where many of the Britons found shelter from the Saxons, with the Isle of Man,<sup>j</sup> long a Norse kingdom, off its coasts. Then succeeds the low sandy shore of Lancashire, beyond which lies a small part of Cheshire,

<sup>a</sup> § 44, p. 17.<sup>b</sup> § 22, p. 191.<sup>c</sup> § 19, p. 224.<sup>d</sup> § 12, p. 200.<sup>e</sup> § 32, p. 195.<sup>f</sup> § 6, p. 310.<sup>g</sup> § 5, p. 53.<sup>h</sup> § 4, p. 31.<sup>i</sup> § 7, p. 41.<sup>j</sup> § 9, p. 2.

## Natural Features and Remarkable Events.

between the rivers Mersey and Dee. The western bank of the Dee is North Wales.

§ 11. Of the rivers that rise on the west side of the mountains in the north of England, we may notice the Eden, on which stands Carlisle; the Lune, on which is Lancaster; and the Mersey, on which (and its tributary, the Irwell) the great modern towns of Manchester and Liverpool are placed.

§ 12. On the east side of the same chain are the Tyne, the Wear, and the Tees, on which stand Hexham (once a bishop's see, and also the scene of a great battle),<sup>a</sup> Newcastle, Durham, Barnard Castle, and Stockton; and as we get farther south, in Yorkshire, the Swale and the Ure, with Richmond and Ripon on their banks; the Ouse, the Wharfe, the Aire, and the Calder, on which stands York, famous even in the time of the Romans;<sup>b</sup> Tadcaster, near which the Lancastrians were defeated at Towton;<sup>c</sup> Leeds, a place of vast trade, and Pontefract and Wakefield,<sup>d</sup> celebrated for battles and sieges.

§ 13. Wales which forms the western coast between the Dee and the Bristol Channel, abounds in historical monuments. The Isle of Anglesey was the last retreat of the Druids.<sup>e</sup> Bardsey Island was formerly esteemed holy, so that many Welsh princes and bishops desired to be buried there, as St. David and Merlin are said to have been. St. David is the representative of the early British church.

§ 14. Pembroke Castle and its district were once a county palatine, endowed with almost kingly privileges, and received so many English and Flemish settlers<sup>f</sup> that it is still known as Little England beyond Wales. Pembroke and the neighboring county of Glamorgan abound in castles built by the Norman invaders of Wales;<sup>g</sup> and on the eastern side of the county can be traced, for more than 120 miles, the remains of a vast fortification, called Offa's Dyke,<sup>h</sup> by which an Anglo-Saxon monarch endeavored to protect his dominions against the ravages of the Welsh.

§ 15. The Welsh streams mostly flow into the sea, on its west or south coasts, after a short course. Such, however, is not the case with the Dee or the Severn. The Dee rises near the coast in the northern part of the country, but turns to the east and then to the north, and passes by Wrexham, Chester, and Flint, into the Irish

<sup>a</sup> § 4, p. 266.<sup>b</sup> § 44, p. 17.<sup>c</sup> § 1, p. 264.<sup>d</sup> § 24, p. 263.<sup>e</sup> § 19, p. 5.<sup>f</sup> § 9, p. 108.<sup>g</sup> § 24, p. 102.<sup>h</sup> § 32, p. 38.



## Natural Features and Remarkable Events.

Sea. The Severn rises in the central part of Wales, runs north-eastward to Shrewsbury, and then turning south flows past Bridgnorth, Worcester, Tewkesbury, Gloucester, and Berkeley (all noted towns in English history), into the Bristol Channel. Many streams run into it, of which may be mentioned the Teme, the Wye, and the Monnow. On their banks are Ludlow, Hereford,

<sup>a</sup> § 10, p. 109. Ross, Monmouth, and numerous other places celebrated in the history of the Welsh Marches,<sup>a</sup> or the

border country, as the district of the Severn river was formerly called.

§ 16. To the mountains of the north of England succeed the Peak of Derbyshire and the Moorlands of Staffordshire. Among these last rises the Trent, which passes by or near Stafford, Lichfield, Derby, Newark, and Gainsborough, and being joined by the Don and other streams forms the Humber, near the mouth of which is Hull, in Yorkshire, on the north, and Grimsby, in Lincolnshire, on the south.

§ 17. From the Humber the east coast is generally low and fringed by sandbanks, as in Yarmouth Roads, presenting many difficulties to the navigator, but thus offering an invaluable school for the instruction of a maritime nation. St. Botolph's-town (now Boston), once a place of very great trade, may be noticed; the great estuary of the Wash; Yarmouth and Lowestoft, Southwold

<sup>b</sup> § 13, p. 423. bay, the scene of a sea-fight with the Dutch;<sup>b</sup> Dun-

wich, once a great city, now half ingulfed by the sea; the rivers Orwell, Stour, Colne, Blackwater, and Crouch, and the

<sup>c</sup> § 18, p. 23. mouth of the Thames, here twenty miles wide. The Norsemen settled in great numbers in this district.<sup>c</sup>

§ 18. In the great central and eastern plain of England we find many rivers, on which important towns and cities are placed. The largest and every way the most important is the Thames, which rises in Gloucestershire, and flows into the sea between Essex and Kent, after a course of more than 200 miles. On or near its banks

<sup>d</sup> § 6, p. 47. are, among other places of historical interest, Cirencester,<sup>d</sup> Oxford, Windsor, and London. Of celebrated

places on or near other streams may be named Lincoln and Boston on the Witham; Leicester on the Soar; Coventry, Kenilworth, Warwick, and Evesham, on the Avon; Northampton and Peterborough, on the Nen; Bedford, Ely, and Lynn, on the Ouse; Cambridge, on the Cam; Norwich, on the Wensum; Ipswich, on the

## Natural Features and Remarkable Events.

Orwell ; Colchester, on the Colne ; and Maldon, on the Blackwater, once the capital of a British king, and, when a Roman colony, burnt by the troops of Boadicea.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 33, p. 15.

§ 19. This plain and the Staffordshire moorlands have been the scene of many fierce battles. The Saxons and the Norsemen had contests in almost every part ; but the latter were generally successful, and had in central England five strong fortresses, known as the Five Burghs (Leicester, Stamford, Derby, Nottingham, Lincoln).<sup>b</sup>

<sup>b</sup> § 4, p. 51.

§ 20. Richard the Third was killed at Bosworth<sup>c</sup> in Leicestershire. In the wars of the Roses<sup>d</sup> there were battles at Bloreheath, Northampton, St. Albans, and Barnet. Lambert Simnel<sup>e</sup> was defeated at Stoke on Trent, in Nottinghamshire, and Charles I. at Naseby,<sup>f</sup> in Northamptonshire. And during the great Civil War, battles and sieges occurred at Edgehill,<sup>g</sup> at Gainsborough, Newark,<sup>h</sup> and many other places. Crossing the Thames from Essex, we reach Kent, where Cæsar,<sup>i</sup> and Hengist, and Horsa,<sup>j</sup> and St. Augustine landed ;<sup>k</sup> which contains the North and South Forelands, Dover Castle,<sup>l</sup> Sandwich, and Hythe, and Romney, all Cinque Ports,<sup>m</sup> and the modern camp at Shorncliff.

<sup>c</sup> § 11, p. 281.

<sup>d</sup> § 21, p. 262.

<sup>e</sup> § 6, p. 297.

<sup>f</sup> § 48, p. 423.

<sup>g</sup> § 41, p. 418.

<sup>h</sup> § 49, p. 423.

<sup>i</sup> § 22, p. 12.

<sup>j</sup> § 4, p. 28.

<sup>k</sup> § 15, p. 34.

<sup>l</sup> § 20, p. 161.

<sup>m</sup> § 10, p. 157.

§ 21. The south and west parts of England abound with celebrated ranges of hills, which rise in the west into mountains, and give off very many streams, on which famous towns are placed. The North and South Downs traverse Kent, Surrey, and Sussex, having a hollow tract between them called the Weald, which was once the bed of an inlet of the sea.

§ 22. To the Downs succeeds the forest district of Hampshire, on the coast, with high ground to the north and west, in Wiltshire<sup>n</sup> and Dorsetshire. As we get farther westward the land rises more and more, and in Somersetshire, Devonshire, and Cornwall, it attains in some places to nearly an equal height with the mountains of Cumberland and Wales, and at last ends in a mass of rocks well known as the Land's End.

<sup>n</sup> § 28, p. 319.

§ 23. Commencing with Kent, among the streams of the district we have the Medway, on which stand Tunbridge, Maidstone, Rochester, Chatham, and, at its junction with the Thames, Sheerness. On the Stour stands Canterbury.<sup>o</sup> The river once flowed into the sea by two mouths, the waters of

<sup>o</sup> § 18, p. 11.



## Natural Features and Remarkable Events.

which separated the Isle of Thanet<sup>a</sup> from the mainland, and were guarded by the Roman forts of Regulbium and Ritupæ. Their ruins are now called Reculver and Richborough.

§ 24. Cæsar landed on Deal beach,<sup>b</sup> and the Saxons' first possession was the Isle of Thanet. The Norsemen quartered themselves in Shepey.<sup>c</sup> William the Norman marched through Kent, and burnt Dover;<sup>d</sup> and Louis, the son of a French king, besieged it in vain.<sup>e</sup>

§ 25. Passing on to Sussex, we see Pevensey bay, where the Normans landed;<sup>f</sup> Battle, where they began the conquest of England;<sup>g</sup> Pevensey, on the site of a famous British town; Anderida, destroyed by the Saxons;<sup>h</sup> Rye and Winchelsea, members of the Cinque Ports,<sup>b</sup> Beachy head, where the English and Dutch fleets were defeated by the French.<sup>i</sup> Lewes, on the Ouse, was the scene of a battle where Henry the Third was made prisoner;<sup>j</sup> Arundel Castle, on the Arun, has stood many sieges; and Chichester, on the Lavant, has its name from Cissa, the second of the South Saxon kings.<sup>k</sup>

§ 26. In Hampshire, Porchester Castle was a Roman station; and Portsmouth, the great modern arsenal, is named from Porta, one of the early Saxon invaders.<sup>l</sup> The New Forest<sup>m</sup> is still a remarkable monument of the Norman rule. Winchester,<sup>n</sup> on the Itchin, was once the capital of England; and Southampton, at the mouth of the same river, a celebrated seaport ages ago, was occasionally the residence of Canute.<sup>o</sup> Off the coast lies the Isle of Wight.<sup>p</sup> It contains Newport and Carisbrook<sup>q</sup> Castle, which are connected with the history of Charles the First, as is Hurst Castle, on the opposite Hampshire shore.

§ 27. The bold cliff called Hengistbury Head, on the border of Dorsetshire, connects that county with early Saxon history. It has also many Roman camps; the ruins of Corfe<sup>r</sup> and Wareham Castles, where many captives of high rank have been starved to death; Sherborne, which was once a bishop's see; Portland, the scene of a sea-fight with the Dutch;<sup>s</sup> and Lyme, a seaport, where the Duke of Monmouth landed to raise a rebellion against James the Second.<sup>t</sup>

## Natural Features and Remarkable Events.

§ 28. Inland from Dorsetshire and Hampshire lies Wiltshire, and beyond that Somersetshire, which reaches to the arm of the sea called the Bristol Channel. In Wiltshire is Salisbury Plain, with its wonderful circles of stone (Stonehenge), and barrows, or burial mounds of the early inhabitants. On the Avon is Salisbury, and on the Kennet, Marlborough, both famous in history. In Somersetshire are Bath and Bristol, both on the Avon, the former a Roman city; Wells, renowned for its beautiful cathedral; Bridgewater and Taunton, on the Tone and the Parrett, celebrated for the sieges that they have sustained; Glastonbury, one of the earliest seats of Christianity in Britain,<sup>a</sup> and the sepulchre of King Arthur;<sup>b</sup> and Athelney, the retreat of Alfred.<sup>c</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 15, p. 34.<sup>b</sup> § 7, p. 28.<sup>c</sup> § 2, p. 46.

§ 29. Beyond Somerset and Dorset is the county of Devon. It is washed by the sea, both north and south, and possesses the noble harbor of Plymouth Sound, beside the anchorage of Torbay, where William the Prince of Orange landed.<sup>d</sup> On the north shore is Hartland Point, with Lundy Island (once belonging to the Knights Templars)<sup>e</sup> in the distance. On the south shore is Dartmouth, an ancient seaport, with Totness, ten miles from the mouth of the Dart river, the scene of a very early battle with the Saxons. Exeter, on the Exe, is a Roman city, which stood a siege from the Normans in the year after the battle of Hastings.<sup>f</sup> The southern part of Devonshire is fertile, but in the north are the wild and rugged tracts called Exmoor and Dartmoor, which abound in minerals, and also in cromlechs, barrows, and logan stones, the traces of the earliest inhabitants.

<sup>d</sup> § 21, p. 478.<sup>e</sup> § 23, p. 204.<sup>f</sup> § 12, p. 81.

§ 30. The river Tamar divides Devonshire from the still more rugged Cornwall. This district was long the stronghold of a number of the Britons, who maintained their independence amid its rocks and moors; they were called by the Saxons, the West Welsh, and till comparatively modern times they used a language that much resembled that of the Welsh. In Cornwall are found St. Michael's Mount, one of the places where the ancient Britons traded with the Phœnicians;<sup>g</sup> Tintagell Castle, the reputed birthplace of King Arthur;<sup>h</sup> St. German's, now a village, but once a bishop's see; way-side crosses, and even a church, which are thought to have been erected 1,400 years ago, and still earlier monuments resembling those of

<sup>g</sup> § 10, p. 3.<sup>h</sup> § 7, p. 28.



## Natural Features and Remarkable Events.

Dartmoor. On the coast is the Lizard Point, which is the most southern land of Great Britain, and along the shores are Fowey, Falmouth, Penzance, St. Ives, and Padstow, all frequently mentioned in English history.

§ 31. The Irish and the French coasts must be briefly noticed. On the east coast of Ireland are Carrickfergus, where Edward  
<sup>a</sup> § 12, p. 200. Bruce landed to attempt the conquest of the country; <sup>a</sup> Drogheda, near which the battle of the Boyne  
<sup>b</sup> § 9, p. 483. was fought; <sup>b</sup> Dublin, the capital; Wicklow, a port  
<sup>c</sup> § 6, p. 41. of the Norsemen; <sup>c</sup> and Wexford, where the English  
<sup>d</sup> § 21, p. 139. conquest of Ireland was begun.<sup>d</sup> On the south coast  
 are the famous harbors of Waterford, Cork, Kinsale, and Bantry  
 Bay, near which last an indecisive battle took place with the  
 French fleet in 1689.<sup>e</sup> On the west coast, up the river  
<sup>e</sup> § 4, p. 481. Shannon, is the city of Limerick, once possessed by  
 the Norsemen; Galway, which was the last place in Ireland that  
 held out against the Commonwealth; <sup>f</sup> and Killala,  
<sup>f</sup> § 1, p. 428. where a French force landed in 1798.<sup>g</sup> On the north  
<sup>g</sup> § 36, p. 549. coast is Lough Foyle, a large inlet of the sea, at the  
<sup>h</sup> § 8, p. 483. head of which stands Londonderry, famous for its  
 successful defence against James the Second.<sup>h</sup>

§ 32. The coasts of France are connected with English history from many naval battles having been fought on them, and many of their towns having once been in English hands. On the Mediterranean, or southern coast, we have the city of Toulon, captured by  
 the English in 1793; Marseilles, whence Richard the  
<sup>i</sup> § 6, p. 146. First sailed for the Holy Land; <sup>i</sup> and Cannes, where  
<sup>j</sup> § 55, p. 557. Napoleon landed from Elba,<sup>j</sup> and re-established the  
<sup>k</sup> § 11, p. 109. Empire, which gave occasion for the battle of Waterloo. On the north coast are Calais<sup>k</sup> and Boulogne,<sup>l</sup>  
<sup>l</sup> § 1, p. 7. both formerly English possessions, and which have in  
 more modern times been repeatedly attacked by English fleets; the  
 river Somme, up which is Abbeville, near which the battles of  
 Crecy<sup>m</sup> and Agincourt<sup>n</sup> were fought; the Seine, which  
<sup>m</sup> § 11, p. 109. traverses Normandy, on which stand Havre de Grace,  
<sup>n</sup> § 7, p. 247. Harfleur, Honfleur, Rouen, Mantes, Paris, and Meaux,  
 beside many other places mentioned in the wars between England  
<sup>o</sup> § 6, p. 219. and France. Westward of the Seine we find Bayeux,  
<sup>p</sup> § 4, p. 481. Barfleur, Cherbourg,<sup>o</sup> and Cape La Hogue,<sup>p</sup> with the  
 Channel Islands, the only remnants of the duchy of Normandy

## Natural Features and Remarkable Events.

now possessed by the British monarch. Brittany stretches still farther west, having at its extremity Brest and the Isle of Ushant, and then, proceeding eastward, Quiberon, Belleisle, <sup>a</sup> § 48, p. 373. and Nantes.<sup>a</sup> Farther south are La Rochelle, the Isle of Oleron, and the river Gironde, up which is Bordeaux, one of the last of the English possessions in France. <sup>b</sup> § 9, p. 134. It was the capital of the great duchy of Guienne,<sup>b</sup> <sup>c</sup> § 1, p. 144. which when held by Prince Richard (afterwards Richard Cœur de Lion)<sup>c</sup> extended to the Pyrenees.

THE END.





# APPENDIX.

---

## I. ROYAL FAMILIES AND PRINCIPAL COTEMPORARY EUROPEAN SOVEREIGNS FROM A.D. 1066.

WILLIAM I.—The Conqueror. Natural son of Robert, Duke of Normandy. Born 1027. Married Matilda of Flanders, 1054. Began to reign in England, 1066. Died September 9, 1087. Issue: four sons and five daughters.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—Malcolm III. *France*—Philip I. *Germany*—Henry IV. *Popes*—Alexander II., Gregory VII., Victor III.

WILLIAM II.—Third son of William I. Born about 1060. Crowned September 26, 1087. Killed August 2, 1100. Never married.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—Malcolm III., Donald VII., Duncan II., Edgar. *France*—Philip I. *Germany*—Henry IV. *Popes*—Victor III., Urban II., Pascal II.

HENRY I.—Youngest son of William I. Born 1068. Crowned August 5, 1100. Married Maud of Scotland, 1100, and Adalais of Louvain, 1121. Died December 1, 1135. Issue: one son and one daughter.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—Edgar, Alexander I., David I. *France*—Philip I., Louis VI. *Germany*—Henry IV. *Popes*—Pascal II., Gelasius II., Calixtus VI., Honorius II., Innocent II.

STEPHEN.—Grandson of William I. Born about 1096. Married Matilda of Boulogne about 1134. Crowned December 26, 1135. Died October 25, 1154. Issue: three sons and two daughters.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—David I., Malcolm IV. *France*—Louis VI., Louis VII. *Germany*—Henry V., Lothaire II., Conrad III. *Popes*—Celestine II., Lucius II., Eugenius III., Anastasius IV.

HENRY II.—Grandson of Henry I. Born March 25, 1133. Married Eleanor of Guienne, 1150. Crowned December 19, 1154. Died July 6, 1189. Issue: five sons and three daughters.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—Malcolm IV., William I. *France*—Louis VII., Philip II. *Germany*—Frederick Barbarossa. *Popes*—Adrian IV., Alexander III., Lucius III., Urban III., Gregory VIII., Clement III.

RICHARD I.—Eldest surviving son of Henry II. Born September 13, 1157. Crowned September 3, 1189. Married Berengaria of Navarre, 1191. Died April 8, 1199. No legitimate issue.



COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—William I., the Lion. *France*—Philip II. *Germany*—Frederick Barbarossa, Henry VI., Philip. *Popes*—Clement III., Celestine III., Innocent III.

JOHN.—Youngest son of Henry II. Born December 24, 1165. Married Isabel of Gloucester, 1189. Divorced, and married Isabel of Angoulême, 1199. Crowned May 27, 1199. Died October 19, 1216. Issue: two sons and three daughters.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—William I., Alexander II. *France*—Philip II. *Germany*—Philip, Otto IV. *Pope*—Innocent III.

HENRY III.—Eldest son of John. Born October 1, 1207. Crowned October 28, 1216. Married Eleanor of Provence, 1236. Died November 16, 1272. Issue: two sons and two daughters, besides five children who died young.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—Alexander II., Alexander III. *France*—Philip II., Louis VIII., Louis IX., Philip III. *Germany*—Frederick II., Conrad IV., William. *Popes*—Honorius III., Gregory IX., Celestine IV., Innocent IV., Alexander IV., Clement IV., Gregory X.

EDWARD I.—Eldest son of Henry III. Born June 18, 1239. Married Eleanor of Castile, 1254; Margaret of France, 1299. Proclaimed king November 20, 1272. Died July 7, 1307. Issue: six sons and ten daughters.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—John Baliol, Robert (Bruce) I. *France*—Philip III., Philip IV. *Germany*—Rudolph, Adolphus, Albert. *Popes*—Gregory X., Innocent V., Adrian V., Vicedominus, John XX., Nicholas III., Martin IV., Honorius IV., Nicholas IV., Celestine V., Boniface VIII., Benedict XI.

EDWARD II.—Eldest surviving son of Edward I. Born April 25, 1284. Received as king July 8, 1307. Married Isabella of France, 1308. Deposed January 7, 1327. Murdered September 21, 1327. Issue: two sons and two daughters.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—Robert (Bruce) I. *France*—Philip IV., Louis X., John I., Philip V., Charles IV. *Germany*—Henry VII., Louis IV. *Popes*—Clement V., John XXI.

EDWARD III.—Eldest son of Edward II. Born November 13, 1312. Proclaimed king January 7, 1327. Married Philippa of Hainault, 1328. Died June 21, 1377. Issue: seven sons and five daughters.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—Robert I., David II., Edward Baliol, Robert (Stuart) II. *France*—Charles IV., Philip VI., John II., Charles V. *Germany*—Louis IV. and Frederick, Louis IV., Charles IV. *Popes*—Peter de Cobarrio, Benedict XII., Clement VI., Innocent VI., Urban V., Gregory XI.

RICHARD II.—Grandson of Edward III. Born April 3, 1366. Succeeded to the throne June 22, 1377. Married Anne of Bohemia, 1382, and Isabella of France, 1396. Deposed September 30, 1399. Date of death unknown. No issue.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*Scotland*—Robert II., Robert III. *France*—Charles V., Charles VI. *Germany*—Wenceslaus. *Popes*—Gregory XI., Urban VI., Clement VII., Boniface IX., Benedict XIII.

HENRY IV.—Grandson of Edward III. Born 1366. Married Mary de Bohun, 1387, and Joan of Navarre, 1403. Called to the throne by Parliament September 30, 1399. Died March 20, 1413. Issue: four sons and two daughters.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*Scotland*—Robert III., James I. *France*—Charles VI., Henry VI. of England till 1436. *Germany*—Frederick Rupert, Jossus, Sigismund. *Popes*—Benedict III., Innocent VII., Gregory XII., Alexander V., John XXII.

**HENRY V.**—Eldest son of Henry IV. Born August 9, 1388. Succeeded to the throne March 21, 1413. Married Catherine of France, 1420. Issue: one son.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*Scotland*—James I. *France*—Henry VI. of England till 1436, Charles VII. *Germany*—Sigismund. *Popes*—John XXII., Martin V.

**HENRY VI.**—Only son of Henry V. Born December 6, 1421. Proclaimed king September 1, 1422. Married Margaret of Anjou, 1445. Deposed March 3, 1461; restored October 9, 1470; again displaced April, 1471. Date of death unknown. Issue: one son.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*Scotland*—James I., James II., James III. *France*—Charles VII., Louis XI. *Germany*—Albert II., Frederick III. *Popes*—Martin V., Clement VII., Eugenius IV., Amadeus VIII., Felix V., Nicholas V., Calixtus III., Pius II.

**EDWARD IV.**—Eldest surviving son of Richard, Duke of York. Born April 29, 1442. Called to the throne by Parliament, March 4, 1461. Married Elizabeth (Woodville) Grey, 1463. Died April 9, 1483. Issue: three sons and seven daughters.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*Scotland*—James III. *France*—Louis XI. *Germany*—Maximilian I. *Spain*—Ferdinand and Isabella, in whom the crowns of Castile and Arragon were united. *Popes*—Pius II., Paul III., Sixtus IV.

**EDWARD V. AND RICHARD III.**—Edward, eldest son of Edward IV. Born November 4, 1470. Proclaimed king April 9, 1483. Nominal reign ended June 22, 1483. Date of death unknown. Richard, youngest son of Duke of York. Born October 21, 1450. Called to the throne by Parliament, June 26, 1483. Married Anne of Warwick, 1472. Killed August 22, 1485. Issue: one son, who died young.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*Scotland*—James III. *France*—Charles VIII. *Germany*—Maximilian I. *Spain*—Ferdinand and Isabella. *Popes*—Sixtus IV., Innocent VIII.

**HENRY VII.**—Only son of Edmund Tudor, Earl of Richmond. Born 1456. Became king August 22, 1485. Married Elizabeth of York, 1486. Died April 21, 1509. Issue: three sons and four daughters.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*Scotland*—James III., James IV. *France*—Charles VII., Louis XII. *Germany*—Maximilian. *Spain*—Ferdinand II. *Popes*—Innocent VIII., Alexander VI., Pius III., Julius II.

**HENRY VIII.**—Eldest surviving son of Henry VII. Born June 28, 1491. Came to the throne, April 22, 1509. Married Catherine of Arragon, 1509; Anne Boleyn, 1532; Jane Seymour, 1536; Anne of Cleves, 1540; Catherine Howard, 1540; and Catherine Parr, 1543. Died January 28, 1547. Legitimate issue: one son and two daughters.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*Scotland*—James IV., James V., Mary. *France*—Louis XII., Francis I. *Germany*—Maximilian, Charles V. *Spain*—Ferdinand V., Charles V. of Germany. *Popes*—Julius II., Leo X., Adrian VI., Clement VII., Paul III.



**EDWARD VI. AND MARY.**—Edward, only surviving son of Henry VIII. Born October 12, 1537. Crowned January 28, 1547. Died July 6, 1553. Mary, daughter of Henry VIII. by Catherine of Arragon. Born February 18, 1516. Ascended the throne July 6, 1553. Married Philip of Spain, 1554. Died without issue, November 17, 1558.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*Scotland*—Mary. *France*—Henry II. *Germany*—Charles V., and King of Spain. *Popes*—Paul III., Julius III., Marcellus II., Paul IV.

**ELIZABETH.**—Daughter of Henry VIII. by Anne Boleyn. Born September 7, 1533. Crowned November 17, 1558. Died March 24, 1603. Never married.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*Scotland*—Mary, James VI. *France*—Francis I., Charles IX., Henry III., Henry IV. *Spain*—Philip II., Philip III. *Germany*—Ferdinand I., Maximilian II., Rudolph II. *Popes*—Paul IV., Pius IV., Pius V., Gregory XIII., Sixtus V., Urban VII., Gregory XIV., Innocent IX., Clement VIII.

**JAMES I.**—Only son of Mary Queen of Scots. Born June 19, 1566. Married Anne of Denmark, 1590. Was James VI. of Scotland when he came to the throne of England, March 24, 1603. Died March 27, 1625. Issue: two sons and one daughter, besides several children who died young.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*France*—Henry IV., Louis XIII. *Germany*—Rudolph II., Matthias, Ferdinand II. *Spain*—Philip III., Philip IV. *Popes*—Clement VIII., Leo XI., Paul V., Gregory XV., Urban VIII.

**CHARLES I.**—Eldest surviving son of James I. Born November 16, 1600. Succeeded to the throne March 27, 1625. Married Henrietta Maria of France, 1625. Beheaded January 30, 1649. Issue: three sons and two daughters, besides children who died young.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*France*—Louis XIII., Louis XIV. *Germany*—Ferdinand II., Ferdinand III. *Spain*—Philip IV. *Popes*—Urban VIII., Innocent X.

**CHARLES II.**—Eldest surviving son of Charles I. Born May 29, 1630. Came to the throne May, 1660. Married Catherine of Braganza, 1662. Died February 6, 1685. No legitimate issue.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*France*—Louis XIV. *Germany*—Leopold I. *Spain*—Philip IV., Charles II. *Popes*—Alexander VII., Clement IX., Clement X., Innocent XI.

**JAMES II.**—Second surviving son of Charles I. Born October 15, 1633. Married Anne Hyde, 1660, and Mary of Modena, 1673. Succeeded to the throne February 6, 1685. Driven from it December 11, 1688. Died in exile September 6, 1701. Issue: one son and two daughters.

**COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.**—*France*—Louis XIV. *Germany*—Leopold I. *Spain*—Charles II. *Pope*—Innocent XI.

**WILLIAM III. AND MARY.**—William, Prince of Orange, and grandson of Charles I. Born November 4, 1650. Married Mary, daughter of James II., November 4, 1677. Called to the throne jointly by a convention, February 13, 1689. Mary died December 28, 1694. William died March 8, 1702. No issue.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*France*—Louis XIV. *Germany*—Leopold I. *Spain*—Charles II., Philip V. *Russia*—Peter the Great. *Popes*—Alexander VIII., Innocent XII., Clement XI.

ANNE.—Youngest daughter of James II. Born February 6, 1665. Married George of Denmark, 1683. Ascended the throne March 8, 1702. Died August 1, 1714. Issue: two sons and four daughters, who all died young.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*France*—Louis XIV. *Germany*—Leopold I., Joseph I., Charles VI. *Spain*—Philip V. *Russia*—Peter the Great. *Prussia*—Frederick I., Frederick William. *Pope*—Clement XI.

GEORGE I.—Great-grandson of James I. Born May 21, 1660. Married Sophia Dorothea of Zell, 1682. Succeeded to the throne August 1, 1714. Died June 11, 1727. Issue: one son and one daughter.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*France*—Louis XIV., Louis XV. *Germany*—Charles VI. *Spain*—Philip V. *Prussia*—Frederick William I. *Russia*—Peter the Great; Catherine I. *Popes*—Clement XI., Innocent XIII., Benedict XIII.

GEORGE II.—Son of George I. Born November 10, 1683. Married Caroline of Anspach, 1705. Ascended the throne June 11, 1727. Died October 25, 1760. Issue: three sons and five daughters.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*France*—Louis XV. *Spain*—Philip V., Ferdinand VI., Charles III. *Germany*—Charles VI., Charles Albert VII., Francis I. *Prussia*—Frederick William I., Frederick the Great.

GEORGE III.—Grandson of George II. Born June 4, 1738. Succeeded to the throne October 25, 1760. Married Charlotte of Mecklenburg-Strelitz, 1761. Died January 9, 1820. Issue: nine sons and six daughters.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*France*—Louis XV., Louis XVI., Napoleon I., Louis XVIII. *Spain*—Charles III., Charles IV., Ferdinand VII., Joseph Bonaparte. *Germany*—Francis I., Joseph II., Leopold II., Francis II. *Prussia*—Frederick II., Frederick William II., Frederick William III. *Russia*—Elizabeth, Peter III., Catherine III., Paul I., Alexander. *Popes*—Clement XIII., Clement XIV., Pius VI., Pius VII.

GEORGE IV.—Eldest son of George III. Born August 12, 1762. Married Caroline of Brunswick, 1795. Made Regent February 5, 1811, and became king January 29, 1820. Died June 26, 1830. Issue: one daughter.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*France*—Louis XVIII., Charles X. *Austria*—Francis I. (Francis II. of Germany). *Prussia*—Frederick William III. *Spain*—Ferdinand VII. *Russia*—Alexander, Nicholas. *Popes*—Pius VII., Leo XII., Pius VIII.

WILLIAM IV.—Third son of George III. Born August 21, 1765. Married Adelaide of Saxe-Meiningen, 1818. Became king June 26, 1830. Died June 20, 1837. Issue: two daughters, who died young.

COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*France*—Louis Philippe. *Austria*—Francis I., Ferdinand I. *Prussia*—Frederick William III. *Spain*—Ferdinand VII., Maria Isabella. *Russia*—Nicholas. *Popes*—Pius VIII., Gregory XVI.

VICTORIA.—Grand daughter of George III. Born May 24, 1819. Became queen regnant June 20, 1837. Married Albert of Saxe-Coburg, 1840. Issue: four sons and five daughters.



COTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.—*France*—Louis Philippe, Napoleon III. *Austria*—Ferdinand, Francis Joseph. *Prussia*—Frederick William III., Frederick William IV., William I., the latter made Emperor of Germany 1871. *Spain*—Maria Isabella II., Amadeus I. *Russia*—Nicholas, Alexander II. *Italy*—Victor Emmanuel, King of United Italy, 1870. *Popes*—Gregory XVI., Pius IX. The temporal power of the Popes ended in 1870, when Victor Emmanuel became King of United Italy.

Just before the Reformation, early in the 16th century, the Pope of Rome, claiming to be king of kings, established the following royal table of precedence:—

1. King of Rome, heir to German	8. King of Scotland.
2. " France. [Empire.	9. " Hungary.
3. " Castile and Spain.	10. " Navarre.
4. " Arragon.	11. " Cyprus.
5. " Portugal.	12. " Bohemia.
6. " England.	13. " Poland.
7. " Sicily.	14. " Scandinavia.

## II. CHRONOLOGY OF EVENTS IN THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

### B.C.

- 55. Romans first invade Britain.
- 54. Second Roman invasion.
- 23. First coin made in Britain.

### A.D.

- 43. Third Roman invasion.
- 50. Caractacus sent prisoner to Rome.
- 59. Suetonius commands in Britain.
- 60. Christianity first preached in Britain.
- 61. Boadicea makes war on the Romans.
- 78-84. Agricola subdues Britain.
- 117. Insurrection against the Romans.
- 120. Emperor Hadrian in Britain.
- 197. An Emperor proclaimed in Britain.
- 210. Emperor Severus in Britain.
- 286. Rebellion and usurpation of Carausius.
- 294. Carausius murdered.
- 364-418. Incursions of northern barbarians.
- 367-383. Revolts in the army in Britain.
- 410. Roman rule in Britain ends.
- 457. Hengist founds the Kingdom of Kent.
- 477. Kingdom of Sussex founded.
- 519. Kingdom of Wessex founded.
- 547. Kingdom of Northumbria founded.
- 587. Kingdom of Mercia founded.

### A.D.

- 597. Arrival of St. Augustin.
- 709. Saxon laws promulgated by Ina.
- 787. First arrival of the Danes in England.
- 800. Egbert chief ruler.
- 810-12. Egbert subdues the Welsh.
- 824. End of the Saxon Heptarchy.
- 827. First sole monarch of England.
- 853. Tithings granted to the Church.
- 871. Alfred the Great enthroned.
- 897. Alfred subdues the northern invaders.
- 905-924. Struggles with the Norsemen.
- 924. Foundations of the British monarchy laid.
- 927-938. Contests with the Danes, Scotch, and Welsh.
- 945. Athelstan grants Cumberland to Malcolm King of Scotland.
- 955. Title "King of Great Britain" first used.
- 961. Married clergy supplanted by unmarried clergy.
- 991. First land-tax levied in England. Arithmetic first introduced.
- 993-1008. The Norsemen ravage England.
- 1006-1013. Sweyn of Denmark ravages England and becomes its monarch.

A. D.

- 1013. Canute proclaimed King.
- 1042. Accession of Edward the Confessor.
- 1051. William, Duke of Normandy, visits England.
- 1066. William the Norman conquers England.
- 1068. Tax of Danegelt and ringing of the curfew bell re-established.
- 1069. The land of England distributed among the Normans.
- 1070. Feudal system introduced.
- 1079. Courts of Chancery and Exchequer established. The New Forest created.
- 1085. Domesday Book completed.
- 1087. Accession of William Rufus.
- 1088. Rebellion of Bishop Odo.
- 1089-'93. War against the Scotch and Welsh.
- 1098. Westminster Hall built.
- 1100. Accession of Henry I.
- 1105. Henry takes Normandy from his brother.
- 1127. House of Plantagenet founded.
- 1135. Stephen usurps the throne.
- 1138. War against the Scots.
- 1140. Maud makes war on Stephen.
- 1141. Maud proclaimed Queen.
- 1145. Maud flies to Normandy.
- 1148. Stephen crowned at Lincoln.
- 1153. Compromise effected.
- 1154. Henry Plantagenet crowned Henry II.
- 1157. Henry subdues the Welsh.
- 1159. War against France.
- 1172. Ireland conquered.
- 1185-'87. Henry's sons rebel.
- 1189. Accession of Richard I.
- 1190. Richard engages in the Crusades.
- 1192. Richard, returning home, is imprisoned.
- 1194-'98. War between England and France.
- 1204. English dominion in France broken up.
- 1207. Monks driven out of England.
- 1208. The Pope places England under an interdict.
- 1209. The Pope excommunicates King John.
- 1210. The Irish brought under English laws.

A.D.

- 1211. The English absolved from allegiance. Their King deposed by the Pope.
- 1213. Degradation of King John.
- 1215. Magna Charta wrung from the King.
- 1215. Civil War. Accession of Henry II.
- 1221. French invaders expelled.
- 1223. French declaration of war against England.
- 1227. Magna Charta cancelled.
- 1253. Magna Charta solemnly reaffirmed.
- 1258. Parliament assembles at Oxford.
- 1262. War between the King and barons.
- 1264. The King made prisoner at Lewes.
- 1265. Foundation of the British constitution of government laid.
- 1272. Accession of Edward I.
- 1282. The Welsh conquered.
- 1290. The Jews persecuted and exiled.
- 1291-'92. Fiery disputes in Scotland referred to the King.
- 1295. War against France and Scotland.
- 1296. The King of Scotland made prisoner.
- 1299. Wallace leads an insurrection.
- 1305. Wallace executed.
- 1306. Robert Bruce made King of Scotland.
- 1307. Accession of Edward II.
- 1308. Knights Templars abolished.
- 1313. War against Scotland renewed.
- 1314. Battle of Bannockburn.
- 1318. The Scots defeated in Ireland.
- 1322. The Earl of Lancaster defeated.
- 1326. England invaded by the English Queen-Consort.
- 1327. The King imprisoned and murdered. Accession of Edward III.
- 1333. Baliol crowned King of Scotland.
- 1340. King of England assumes the title of "King of France."
- 1346. Battle of Crecy. Battle of Neville's Cross.
- 1347. Calais surrenders to the English.
- 1348. First Great Plague in London.
- 1356. English victory at Poitiers.
- 1369. Wickliffe's tenets first promulgated.
- 1376. Death of the Black Prince.
- 1377. Accession of Richard II.
- 1381. Wat Tyler's Rebellion.
- 1384-'85. War with France and Scotland.
- 1399. Rebellion of the Duke of Lancaster. Accession of Henry IV.



A.D.

- 1401. Fires of persecution first lighted in England.
- 1403. Battle of Shrewsbury.
- 1405. Insurrection in the North.
- 1409. British troops sent to France.
- 1413. Accession of Henry V.
- 1414. Slaughter of the Lollards.
- 1415. Battle of Agincourt.
- 1417. Second capture of Calais.
- 1420. King of England heir to the crown of France.
- 1422. Accession of Henry VI. Proclaimed King of France.
- 1429. Siege of Orleans.
- 1430. Murder of the "Maid of Orleans."
- 1450. Jack Cade's Rebellion. English driven from France.
- 1456. Beginning of the "War of the Roses."
- 1459. Earl of Warwick first styled "The King-maker."
- 1460. Battle of Wakefield.
- 1461. Duke of York crowned as Edward IV.
- 1464. King Henry imprisoned.
- 1470. King Henry released by Warwick.
- 1474. Printing introduced into England.
- 1483. Accession of Richard III.
- 1485. Invasion of England and accession of Henry VII.
- 1486. Lambert Simmell, an impostor, claims the crown.
- 1487. Court of Star Chamber instituted.
- 1493. Perkin Warbeck, an impostor, claims the crown.
- 1495-'97. Warbeck invades England.
- 1499. Warbeck is executed.
- 1504. Origin of the royal family of Stuart.
- 1507. Extortions of the "Ravering Wolves."
- 1509. Accession of Henry VIII.
- 1512. Invasion of France.
- 1519. Exaltation of Cardinal Wolsey.
- 1529. Henry sues for a divorce from Catherine of Arragon.
- 1534. Henry declared to be the supreme head of the Church.
- 1532-'43. Henry marries five wives and murders two of them.
- 1546. Unbelievers in the doctrine of transubstantiation burned at the stake.
- 1547. Accession of Edward VI.

A.D.

- 1549. Reform of the Church liturgy.
- 1552. Sternhold and Hopkins translate the Psalms.
- 1553. Accession of Mary.
- 1554. Church of Rome restored in England. Wyatt's Rebellion. Mary marries Philip of Spain. Execution of Lady Jane Grey.
- 1558. Calais surrendered to the French. Accession of Elizabeth.
- 1559. Protestant Church restored.
- 1570. Elizabeth excommunicated by the Pope.
- 1580. Spaniards land in Ireland.
- 1584. The Jesuits opposed. Virginia discovered.
- 1587. Execution of Mary Queen of Scots.
- 1588. Spanish Armada destroyed.
- 1598. Rebellion in Ireland.
- 1601. Trade monopolies and patents abolished.
- 1603. Accession of James I.
- 1604. James styled "King of Great Britain," by union with Scotland.
- 1605-'06. The Gunpowder Plot.
- 1611. Translation of the Bible published.
- 1618. Execution of Sir Walter Raleigh.
- 1625. Accession of Charles I.
- 1626. The King defies Parliament.
- 1627. War against France declared.
- 1629. Tonnage and ship-money levied by the King.
- 1635-'38. Resistance to ship-money levy.
- 1639. War against Scotland.
- 1640. Invasion of England by the Scots. Meeting of the Long Parliament.
- 1641. Execution of Strafford. Courts of Star Chamber and High Commission abolished.
- 1642. Civil War commences.
- 1644. Battle of Marston Moor.
- 1645. Battle of Naseby and defeat of the royal forces.
- 1647. The King surrendered to the English.
- 1649. Execution of the King. England declared to be a Republic.
- 1650. Prince Charles contends for the throne.
- 1651. Prince Charles invades England.
- 1653. Dissolution of the Long Parliament. Cromwell made Protector.
- 1655. War against Spain.

A.D.

- 1658. Cromwell dies and his son becomes Protector.
- 1659. Officers of the army seize the Government.
- 1660. Accession of Charles II.
- 1662. Religious Uniformity Act passed.
- 1665. War against the Dutch.
- 1666. Great naval battle with the Dutch.
- 1667. England invaded by the Dutch.
- 1668. Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.
- 1672. War against Holland.
- 1683. Rye-House Plot.
- 1685. Accession of James II.
- 1688. William, Prince of Orange, invades England. James abdicates.
- 1689. Accession of William and Mary.
- 1690. Triumph of Protestants in Ireland in the battle of the Boyne.
- 1692. Massacre of Glencoe. Battle off La Hogue.
- 1694. Death of Queen Mary.
- 1697. Treaty of Ryswick.
- 1702. Accession of Queen Anne. War of the Spanish Succession.
- 1703. Naval victories over the French.
- 1704. Battle of Blenheim. Capture of Gibraltar.
- 1706. Battle of Ramillies.
- 1707. Union with Scotland accomplished.
- 1708. Battle of Oudenarde.
- 1709. Battle of Malplaquet.
- 1711. Duke of Marlborough deprived of offices.
- 1712. Battle of Denain.
- 1713. Treaty of Utrecht.
- 1714. Accession of George I.
- 1715. Rebellion in Scotland.
- 1718. Quadruple Alliance formed.
- 1721. Explosion of the South-Sea Bubble.
- 1722. Suspension of the Habeas Corpus Act.
- 1725. Treaty of Vienna.
- 1727. Accession of George II.
- 1732. Silk manufacture in England.
- 1733. First cotton-spinning machine in England.
- 1739. War against Spain declared.
- 1740. Anson circumnavigates the globe.
- 1741. Carthage captured.
- 1744. War declared against France.
- 1745. Rebellion in Scotland.
- 1746. Battle of Culloden.

A.D.

- 1747. French fleet defeated.
- 1748. Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.
- 1752. "New Style" in the calendar adopted.
- 1753. British Museum founded.
- 1755. Defeat of Braddock in America.
- 1756. War declared against France.
- 1757. Beginning of "The Seven Years' War."
- 1758. Threatened invasion of England.
- 1759. Battle of Minden. Capture of Quebec by the English.
- 1760. Conquest of Canada. Accession of George III.
- 1761. Surrender of Pondicherry to the English.
- 1762. War against Spain.
- 1763. Treaty of Paris.
- 1764. An Englishman discovers the true longitude.
- 1765. American Stamp Act passed.
- 1766. Stamp Act repealed.
- 1768. Royal Academy of Fine Arts founded.
- 1769. Captain Cook circumnavigates the globe.
- 1770. The "Boston Massacre" occurs.
- 1773. Tea destroyed in Boston harbor.
- 1774. Troops ordered to Boston.
- 1775-'83. The American Revolution.
- 1780. Defeat of the Spanish fleet.
- 1781. Surrender of Cornwallis.
- 1782. Irish Parliament declared independent.
- 1783. Peace with the United States of America.
- 1785. First power-loom in England.
- 1789. Commencement of the French Revolution.
- 1793. War begun against France.
- 1797. Defeat of Dutch and Spanish fleets.
- 1798. Rebellion in Ireland. Naval victories over the French.
- 1799. Important conquests in India.
- 1801. Union of Ireland with England.
- 1802. Peace with France.
- 1803. Renewal of war against France. British conquests in India.
- 1805. War against Spain.
- 1807. Danish fleet seized by the British.
- 1803-'15. Wars against Napoleon.
- 1811. Prince of Wales appointed Regent.
- 1812-'15. War against the United States.
- 1815. Battle of Waterloo.
- 1818. Death of Queen Charlotte.



## A.D.

- 1820. Accession of George IV. Cato Street Conspiracy.
- 1821. Death of Queen Caroline.
- 1824. Free-trade measures in Parliament.
- 1825. A ruinous commercial panic.
- 1827. Battle of Navarino.
- 1828. Test and Corporation Acts repealed.
- 1829. Roman Catholic Relief Bill passed.
- 1830. Accession of William IV.
- 1832. Parliamentary Reform Bill passed.
- 1833. Assembling of the first Reform Parliament.
- 1834. West Indies Emancipation Bill passed.
- 1835. Municipal Corporation Bill passed.
- 1837. Accession of Victoria.
- 1838. Abolition of slavery in all British Colonies. Insurrection in Canada.
- 1839. Capture of Aden.
- 1840. Marriage of the Queen. War against China.
- 1841. Union of the Canadas.
- 1843. Disruption of the Church of Scotland. Victories in India.
- 1846. Destruction of the Sikh army. Repeal of the Corn Laws.

## A. D.

- 1848. Revolutions in Europe.
- 1849. Subjugation of the Sikhs. Repeal of the Navigation Laws.
- 1851. Royal Industrial Exhibition.
- 1852. Louis Napoleon declared to be Emperor of France.
- 1853-'55. War in the Crimea.
- 1856. Peace with Russia.
- 1857. Mutiny of native troops in India.
- 1858. East India Company abolished, and Fenian League begun.
- 1859. The Queen declared Sovereign of India.
- 1861-'65. Civil War in America. English Ministers sympathize with the insurgents.
- 1865. Claims for spoliation by Americans.
- 1867. Dominion of Canada created.
- 1868. War against Abyssinia.
- 1871. Disendowment and disestablishment of the Irish Church. Joint Commission of England and the United States make a treaty for the settlement of claims for spoliation.

# INDEX.

---

## A.

- Abyssinia, war against, 608.  
 Acre, capture of, 148, 150.  
 Acts, Registration, 587; Septennial, 512; Test, 468; Conformity, 359; Uniformity, 458.  
 Agincourt, battle of, 248, 249.  
 Agricola, career of, in Britain, 16.  
 Alfred the Great, accession of, 46; reign of, 46 to 50.  
 Alexander, Pope, aids William of Normandy, 80.  
 Alliance, tripartite, concerning Austria, 517.  
 America, discovery of, 367; military operations in, 531, 532; Civil War in, 604, 605; loss of the English by the Civil War in, 606.  
 American War for Independence, 539 to 543; Civil War, 604.  
 Americans make war against Great Britain, 554, 555.  
 Anabaptists, views and fears of, 332.  
 Angles, whence came the, 30.  
 Anglo-American colonies, power and number of, 527, 528; condition of, 535; struggle for the rights of, 535 to 543.  
 Anglo-Irish, origin of, 141.  
 Anlaf, a Norwegian leader, in England and Ireland, 53 to 55.  
 Anne, Queen, accession of, 490; reign of, 490 to 497.  
 Anti-Corn-Law League, 591, 593.  
 Ashdown, battle of, 67.  
 Argyle, Earl of, expedition and fate of, 470 to 472.  
 Armada, the Invincible, 371, 372.  
 Armed neutrality, 540.  
 Armies, English and French, assemblage of, for the crusades, 147.  
 Army, character of the Parliamentary, 423.  
 Arteveldt, Jacob van, 208.  
 Athelney, isle of, retreat of Alfred at, 46.  
 Arthur, King, stories of, 28.  
 Ascalon, destruction of, by the English, 150.  
 Assembly at Oxford, 68; Scottish, 458.  
 Assemblies to consider the affair of a Becket, 132.  
 Austria, Duke of, imprisons Richard I.—excommunicated, 152.  
 Austrian succession, war about the, 519.

## B.

- Baliol, Edward, King of Scotland, 207.  
     John, King of Scotland, 187, 190.  
 Baltic, English fleet in, 596, 598.  
 Bannockburn, battle of, 200.  
 Banner of William of Normandy, 80.  
 Barnet, battle of, 270.  
 Baronets, how and for what purpose created, 397.  
 Battle Abbey, 84.  
 Bedford, Duke of, Regent of France, 253.  
 Belesme in Normandy and England, 107, 113, 122.  
 Belknap, Sir Robert, enforces the first poll-tax, 220.  
 "Benevolence" levied, 272, 394.  
 Bertha, Queen, and Christianity, 34.  
 Berwick, 200, 207, 266.  
 Becket, Thomas à, career of, 128 to 137; shrine of, plundered, 323.  
 Biscayans, 211.  
 Bishop, the Boy, 237.  
 Bishops, British and Roman, at variance, 36; deprived of their sees, 343, 355.  
 Boadicea, Queen, her wrongs and revenges, 15.



- Bonaparte, Napoleon, campaigns of, 548;  
     First Consul, 549; deceives English  
     statesmen, 550.  
 Bonner, Bishop, restores the Latin ser-  
     vice in the English church, 329.  
 Bosworth, battle of, 281.  
 Bothwell forces Mary of Scotland to  
     marry him, 360.  
 Bordeaux, taken by the English, 190.  
 Boyne, battle of, effect of the, 484.  
 Blackheath, battle of, 303.  
 Blenheim, battle of, 492.  
 Bloreheath, battle of, 262.  
 Braddock, defeat of, 529.  
 Bradshaw, John, leader in Parliament,  
     436.  
 Breda, declaration of, 443.  
 Brest, capture of, by English, 219.  
 Bretigny, treaty of, 213.  
 Britain, divisions of, 21, 23; origin of  
     name of, 192.  
 British islands, 1, 2; chiefs, position of,  
     17; emperor, 19; monarchy, founda-  
     tion of, 52.  
 Britons, defence of, against Saxon in-  
     vaders, 31.  
 Britwalda, a title of honor, 31.  
 Bruce, Robert, King of Scotland, career  
     of, 191 to 194; Edward, in Ireland,  
     Robert III., 194, 195.  
 Brunswick, house of, 510.  
 Brutus, story of, 191.  
 Buckingham, Duke of, chief regent, 223;  
     General, 263; Chief-Justice of Wales,  
     278; Duke of, 400, 403, 404.  
 Burgundy, Duchess of, sends troops to  
     Ireland, 298.  
 Burley, Sir Simon, insurrection of, 221.  
 Burgoyne, effects of surrender of, 542.  
 Burmese, war against the, 563.
- C.
- Cabal, origin of, 463.  
 Cade, Jack, insurrection of, 259.  
 Calais, 210, 247, 250, 256, 260, 261, 350.  
 Caledonians, campaign against, 18.  
 Caligula, Emperor, conduct of, 13, 14.  
 Canada, conquest of, by English, 532;  
     insurrection in, 591.  
 Canterbury, made the seat of the primate  
     of England, 34; persecution by arch-  
     bishops of, 246.  
 Canute, proclaimed King of England, 66;  
     after career of, 67 to 70.  
 Cape Breton, capture of, 527.  
 Caractacus sent in chains to Rome, 14.  
 Carausius, Emperor in Britain, 18.  
 Carlisle, events at, 524, 525.  
 Caroline, Queen, trial, sufferings, and  
     death of, 561.  
 Cartismandua, Queen, 13.  
 Castles on the borders of Wales, 123.  
 Castle-building, 234; castle-men, 96.  
 Catholics, Roman, emancipation of, 562,  
     564; encroach upon the Queen's pre-  
     rogative, 594.  
 Catus, Decianus, oppresses the Britons, 15.  
 Cavalry, Norman, at Hastings, 82.  
 Cæsar, Claudius, invades Britain, 14.  
 Cæsar, Julius, invades Britain, 7, 11, 12.  
 Cecil, Sir William, counsellor of Queen  
     Elizabeth, 352 to 356.  
 Celts, in the British islands, 3, 4.  
 Cerdic, founds Wessex, 31.  
 Charioteers, skill of British, 10.  
 Charles I., accession of, 400; reign of,  
     400 to 427.  
 Charles, Prince, proclaimed King, 443;  
     in Scotland and England, 430, 431; es-  
     capes to France, 431; prepares for a  
     new invasion, 441; becomes King, 456.  
 Charles II., accession of, 456; reign of,  
     456 to 468.  
 Chartists, origin of, 585.  
 Charters for freedom, 221, 222.  
 Chepstow, Richard, in Ireland, 139.  
 Chevalier, the ("Pretender"), 490 to 513.  
 Chevy Chase, ballad of, 225.  
 Chivalry, 217, 236.  
 Christianity in Great Britain, 20, 33 to 36.  
 China, war against, 588, 599, 603.  
 Church, the, quarrels with the State, 98;  
     treasure of, seized, 100; liberty of, de-  
     manded, 126; headship of, claimed by  
     Henry VIII., 324.  
 Cinque Ports, 158; inhabitants of join  
     Dé Montfort, 178; fleet and men of,  
     179, 190.  
 Civil War, threatened, 157; kindled, 161,  
     178, 180.  
 Claims for spoliation by Anglo-confeder-  
     ate cruisers, 607, 608.  
 Coinage, first, in England, 13.  
 Colonies, European, 497.  
 Commission, Court of High, 354; abolish-  
     ed, 416.

- Commissions, Scotch, action of, in the case of Charles I., 429.
- Commons, origin of House of, 230 ; their exclusive control of taxation, 244 ; members of, imprisoned, 416.
- Commonwealth, establishment of the, 428.
- Confessor, Edward the, patron saint of England, 78.
- Confiscation of lands, general, 100.
- Conformity, Act of, 359.
- "Congregation of the Lord," 358, 360.
- Constitutional government, efforts for, in Europe, 561, 562.
- Continental Congress, American, 538.
- Covenant, the Scotch, 411.
- Cranmer, Thomas, courtier, prelate, and martyr, 316 to 349.
- Crecy, battle of, 210.
- Cressingham, Hugh, treasurer of Scotland, 190.
- Crimea, war in the, 596 to 599.
- Cromwell, Oliver, career of, 404 to 440 ; Richard, 441, 442 ; Thomas, implement of Henry VIII., 320 to 325.
- Crusades, origin and character of, 111, 112.
- Cumberland, Duke of, in Germany, 520 ; career of against the Scotch insurgents, 524, 526 ; helps Frederick the Great and loses Hanover, 528.
- Culloden, battle of, 525.
- Curfew bell, origin of the, 101.
- Cymbeline, image of, on coins, 13.
- D.
- Danegelt, tax called, 96.
- Danelagh, ravages in, 51.
- Danes, name for Norsemen, 47.
- Danish fleet seized by the English, 551. ships appear in the Humber, 99.
- Darc, Jeanne, "Maid of Orleans," career and sufferings of, 255, 256.
- Darien, trading colony in, 494.
- Darnley, Henry, husband of Mary Queen of Scots, 360.
- Debt, national, of Great Britain, 484, 496, 546, 558.
- De Breauté, leader of King John's mercenaries, 161.
- De Burgh, Hubert, regent of England, 172.
- Declaration of Rights, 479, 498.
- Decrees of Napoleon and British Council, 554.
- Deira, Saxon kingdom of, 23.
- Denmark, in league against the "Conqueror," 103.
- Distress in England, 558, 559, 605 ; riots because of, 559.
- Divine right of kings to rule, 394, 395, 399.
- Divorce of Henry VIII., 316, 317.
- Domesday Book, 103.
- Dominion, the Old (Virginia), 441.
- Douay, Bible translated in the college at, 363.
- Douglas, Earl of, regent of Scotland, 207.
- Druids, religion and influence of, 5.
- Dunkirk, capture of, 438.
- Dunstan, Archbishop, career of, 55 to 62.
- Dutch, the, invade England, 462 ; war with, renewed, 463 ; troops of, in England, 479.
- Dyke, Offa's, 39.
- E.
- East India Company, formation of, 447.
- East Indies, affairs in, 530.
- Edgecote, battle of, 268.
- Edgehill, battle of, 418.
- Edinburgh, burnt by the English, 224 ; captured by the English, 274 ; burnt, 331 ; riot in, 517 ; castle besieged, 523.
- Edmund, Ironsides, chosen King of the Saxons or English, 67 ; The Elder, founds the British monarchy, 52.
- Edward, The Confessor, accession of, 73 ; reign of, 73 to 78 ; remains of, enshrined, 181 ; The First, accession of, 182 ; reign of, 182 to 195 ; The Second, accession of, 196 ; reign of, 196 to 204 ; The Third, accession of, 205 ; reign of, 205 to 214 ; The Fourth, accession of, 265 ; reign of, 265 to 274 ; The Fifth, accession of, 275 ; murder of, 276 ; The Sixth, accession of, 329 ; reign of, 329 to 336 ; The Black Prince, 211 to 213 ; Plantagenet, fate of, 304.
- Edwin of Deira, conversion of to Christianity, 35, 36.
- Elector Palatine, son-in-law of James I., 396, 398.
- Ella, founder of Sussex, 31.
- Elizabeth, Queen, accession of, 352 ; reign of, 352 to 357.
- Emperor, in Britain, 16, 17.
- England, origin of name of, 30.



English liberty, origin of, 87.

Erkenwin founds Essex and Middlesex, 31.

Ethelbert, first Christian King of Saxon blood, 34.

Ethelburga introduces Christianity among the Northumbrians, 35.

Eustace, of Boulogne, visits England, with armed retainers, the result, 75.

Evesham, battle of, 180.

Exeter, Duke of, invents the rack for torture, 258.

## F.

Factions, Neville and Woodville, 267.

Fairfax, Sir Thomas, lord general, 422, 429, 430.

Fawkes, Guy, engaged in the gunpowder treason, 390.

Fenians, 606, 607.

Feudal system, 96, 97, 98.

Five Burghs, the, 51.

Fleet, Alfred's, 48; British, sent against the Norsemen, betrayed, 65; of William of Normandy, 80; English, employed by crusaders, 146 to 150; number and character of the English—the French, defeated near Brest, 309; the English, against the Spanish navy, 370, 371; the Spanish, for invading England, 370, 371, 372.

Flemings, settle on the borders of Wales, 109; in Pembrokeshire, 123, 131; trade with, 215.

Flodden, battle of, 310.

Fools, feast of, 237.

Fort, Agricola's chain of, 16; established by Ethelfleda, 51; built by William the Conqueror, 99.

France, in connection with English history, 156, 188, 189, 192, 213, 215, 225, 243, 246, 247, 250, 302, 309, 311, 349, 481, 484, 485, 527, 528, 543, 544; brilliant military career of, 548; at war with Germany, 610.

Frederick the Great assisted by the English, 528.

French, the, on the English coast, 250; acknowledge Henry of England as their King, 251; invade England, 261; successes against the English, 485; revolution, 546.

## G.

Galgacus, last champion of the North Britons, 16.

Gauls in Britain, 4.

George I., accession of, 510; reign of, 510, 515; The Second, accession of, 516; reign of, 516 to 532; The Third, accession of, 533; reign of, 533 to 560; The Fourth, accession of, 560; reign of, 560 to 565.

Geoffrey, of Anjou, founds the house of Plantagenet, 124.

Germany, Emperor of, imprisons Richard I. and defies the Pope, 152; Emperor of, helps Henry VIII., 309.

Glencoe, massacre of, 485.

Gloucester, Duke of, protector of England, 253; Richard, Earl of, becomes King, 276.

Godwin, Earl, procures the crown for his son Harold, 78.

Gravelines, battle of, 350.

Great Britain, present condition of, 611; natural features and remarkable events of, 618.

Grey, Lady Jane, becomes Queen of England, 336; death of, 342.

Gunhilda, story of, 71.

Gunpowder treason, or plot, 389, 390.

## H.

Halidon Hill, battle of, 207.

Harfleur, capture of, by the English, 247.

Hastings, battle of, 81.

Hawkins, Admiral, author of the slave-trade between Africa and America, 361.

"Heir of France," a title of Henry V. of England, 251.

Huguenots, the, 358, 373, 374.

Hundred Years' War, origin of, 207.

Heptarchy, the Saxon, rise of, 30; end of, 40.

Hermit, Peter the, preaches a crusade, 111.

Hexham, battle of, 266.

High Commission, Court of, established, 354; abolished, 416.

Highlanders, Scotch, invasion of England by, 524; defeated at Culloden moor, 525.

Homildon Hill, battle of, 240.

Howard, Admiral, commander of the fleet against the Spanish Armada, 370.

I.

Ida, founder of Northumbria, 31.  
 Impressment of seamen, 553, 554.  
 Income of the king, how derived, 164.  
 Independents, 423, 459.  
 India, English possessions in, 544; the British empire in, 600; Sepoys of, and their revolt, 600, 602; Victoria Empress of, 603.  
 Indies, East, affairs in, 591.  
 Insurgents, doings of, 221, 222.  
 Insurrection, against the Normans, 96; in time of Richard III., 278; in Cornwall, 303; in favor of monasteries, 321, 322, 333, 334; Wyatt's, 341; in Wales, 342; known as "rising of the North," 362; in Ireland, 374, 375; against Cromwell, 438; Booth's, 442; in Scotland, 462, 467; Monmouth's and Argyle's, 471; in Scotland, 482; Jacobite, 511; in Canada, 591.  
 Interference, English, in the affairs of other nations, 563, 587, 588, 592.  
 Invasion of Britain by the Romans, 7; by the Spaniards, expected, 370; expected, 512, 513, 530.  
 Ireland, geography of, 2, 42; scholars and monks in, 93; civil war in, 138, 141, 363; colonized by Protestants, 397; civil war in, 429; Protestant royalists in, 433; affairs in, 460; war in, 483; Protestant intolerance in, 545; union of with England, 549; disturbances in, 584; agitation in, 593; distress in, 594.  
 Irish Church, disestablishment of, 609; Irish Coercion Bill, 585, 586.  
 Isabella, Queen, rebels against her husband and invades England with foreign troops; savage career and character of, 203, 204.  
 Isles, Lord of the, 265.

J.

Jacobites, 480.  
 Jamaica, capture of, 438.  
 James I. (Sixth of Scotland), accession of, 389; reign of, 389, 399; The Second, accession of, 469; reign of, 469 to 479.  
 Java, island of, conquered by the English, 551.  
 Jesuits, alleged plot of, 465, 466.  
 Jews, massacre of, 144.

John, accession of, 154; reign of, 154 to 162.  
 Judges of Charles I., how treated, 456, 457.  
 Jury, trial by, 50.

K.

Kent, kingdom of, founded, 30; invaded by "The Conqueror," 84.  
 King's evil, supposed cures of, 78.  
 Knights first heard of, 98.  
 Knights Templars, Order of, suppressed, 204; of St. John, 326.

L.

La Hogue, victory at, 481.  
 Lancastrians, 261, 262, 265, 272.  
 Laud, William, Archbishop, persecutions by, 406; in Scotland, 410; execution of, 420.  
 Laws, Alfred's, 48, 49; Roman, in Britain, 24.  
 Lawyers, first appearance of, in England, 231.  
 Levellers, 424; treatment of, 439.  
 Lewes, battle of, 179.  
 Lochiel joins the Young Pretender, 522.  
 Lollards, persecutions of, 241, 246.  
 London, resists the Norsemen, 65; besieged by Canute, 67, 85; walls of, cast down, 175, 180; citizens of, oppressed, 176; king and queen insulted in, 178; insurgents in, 221; plagues in, 215, 462.  
 Londonderry, siege of, 483.  
 Long Parliament, 412.  
 Lords, House of, assume government authority, 478; provide for a monarch, 479.  
 Louis, of France, invited to rule England, 161; Prince, driven from England, 171.  
 Louis XIV., of France, revokes the Edict of Nantes, 474.  
 Louis Napoleon in league with Great Britain against Russia, 596.  
 Loyalists, American, 544.

M.

Magna Charta wrung from King John, 160; character of, 164; revised and published, 171; repeatedly confirmed, 175; confirmation of demanded, 190.



Malcolm, King of Scotland, in England, 109, 110.  
 Mandubratius wins Britain to the Romans, 11.  
 Marchers or borderers, 109; oppressions of, 185.  
 Margaret of Anjou, Queen, career of in England, 263 to 268.  
 Marlborough, Duke of, career of, 490 to 496.  
 Married clergy, succeeded by the unmarried, 59; restored, 61.  
 Marston Moor, battle of, 421.  
 Mary, Queen, accession of, 339; reign of, 339, 352.  
 Mary, Queen of William III., death of, 486.  
 Mary Queen of Scots, career of, 358 to 361.  
 Massachusetts Bay, colony of, 399.  
 Massacre of Norsemen, 64.  
 Maud, son of, the first of the Plantagenet monarchs, 124; career of, 124 to 129.  
 Mechanics at the Welsh court, 89.  
 Methven, battle of, 195.  
 Militia, origin of, 48.  
 Monarchy, establishment of on a new basis, 480.  
 Monasteries founded by Alfred, 48; by Athelstan, 53; by Dunstan, 58; sinks of pollution, 87; suppressed, 318, 321; destruction and plunder of, 322, 323; cherished by the people, 333.  
 Monmouth, Duke of, plots in favor of, 467; his career, 470, 473.  
 Montfort, Simon de, bold operations of, 176 to 180.  
 Montrose, Earl of, raises the royal standard in Scotland, 421.  
 Mortimer's Cross, battle of, 263.  
 Murray, Regent of Scotland, 360, 361.

## N.

Nantes, edict of, 374; edict of, revoked, 473.  
 Napoleon, the Emperor, threatens England, 550.  
 Naseby, battle of, 423.  
 National debt, 496, 546, 558.  
 Navy, the British, 62, 165; the French, 218, 219.  
 Navarino, battle of, 564.  
 Netherlands, the, 361, 363.

Neville's Cross, battle of, 210.  
 Newburn, battle of, 412.  
 Newbury, battle of, 421.  
 New Forest, how formed, 102.  
 Nobles, acts and fate of treacherous, 238.  
 Nonjurors, origin of, 482.  
 "No Popery" riots, 545.  
 Norman nobles, property of confiscated, 122; kings, personal appellations of, 129.  
 Normans, fill offices, 73; overrun Wales, 188; build castles there, 109; in Ireland, 141.  
 Normandy, affairs in, 107, 121, 156, 250, 257.  
 Northampton, battle of, 263.  
 Norsemen, invade and ravage Britain, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 50, 62, 63; settle in Ireland, 41.  
 Norway, "Maid of," Queen of Scotland, 187.  
 Norwegians, defeated by Harold, 80.

## O.

Oates, Titus, 465, 468.  
 O'Connell, Daniel, agitations of, 562, 593, 594.  
 Offa, last great prince of the heptarchy, 39.  
 Orange, William, Prince of, leader of the Protestant league, 470; invited to England, 477; goes, and is a successful invader, 478.  
 Orleans, siege of, 255; "Maid of," 255, 256.  
 Otterburn, battle of, 224.  
 Oxford, University of, founded, 93; tumult at, 174; provisions of, 177.

## P.

Pagan temples destroyed, 36.  
 Papal power, dislike and restriction of, 216, 228; claims and operations of, 229; court, taxes paid to by England, 229.  
 Patterson, William, founder of the Bank of England, 494.  
 Parliament, British, prototype of, 179; at Winchester and Marlborough, 180, 181; royal demands on, 183; action of, against Gaveston—appoints a regency, 205; tries State prisoners, 235; the "Wonder-working," 223, 226; judicial character of, 231;

- character and acts of, 238; the "Unlearned," 241; action concerning the Yorkists and Lancastrians," 268; acts against a queen, 278, 280; subserviency of, 328; confiscates church property, 335; legitimates the title of Queen Elizabeth, 354; requests the execution of Mary of Scotland, 369; the "Addled," 394; quarrels with King James, 394, 396, 398; declares the right of free discussion, 396; acts of the King against, 397; abolished for a season, 407; prepares for war—ordinances of, 419; the "Rump," 425; abolishes monarchy and House of Lords, 428; unpopularity of, and acts, 433, 434, 435; dissolved by Cromwell, 435; the "Barebones," 436; Cromwell's, 439; a royalist, 443; savages in, 457, 458; at Oxford, 466; of William and Mary, 481; of Scotland proclaims Charles II. as King, 429; the "Reformed," 585.
- Parliaments, triennial, authorized, 486.
- Peace between England and the United States, 543.
- Peers, servants of the court made, 122; House of, created, 440.
- Peninsular war begun, 552.
- Persecution, the Marian, 346, 347, 348.
- Petition of Rights, 403.
- Philip of Spain, husband of Queen Mary, 344, 368, 374.
- Phœnicians visit Great Britain, 3.
- Plague in London, 215, 462.
- Plantagenet, first monarch of the house of, 124; origin of name of, 129; Edward, bad treatment of, 296.
- Plot, Gunpowder, 390, 391; Rye House, 468.
- Plots by English exiles, 349.
- Poitiers, battle of, 212.
- Poll-tax, how first imposed, 219.
- Pope of Rome, claims supremacy and infallibility, 56; interference of with Magna Charta, 161; power of, felt in England, 163; revenue of, from England, 176; supremacy of, denied by Henry VIII., 318; excommunicates Queen Elizabeth, 362; temporal power of, ends, 610.
- Prerogative, the royal, high claims for, 394, 395.
- Presbyterians, action of, 456, 459.
- Prestonpans, battle of, 523.
- Pretender (James Francis Edward), to the throne, 489; lands in Scotland, 495. The Young, in Scotland, 521 to 526; aided by France, 524; escapes to France, 526.
- Pride's Purge, 425.
- Protectorate, the, 437.
- Protestant worship prohibited, 344; States, leagues of, 470; refugees in England, 473.
- Puritans, origin of the name of, 357; war of, in the Anglican Church, 365; advocate separation of Church and State, 366; proceedings against, 366, 367; lack of patriotism, 370; ascendancy of, in Parliament, 391; persecuted, flee to Holland—found a colony in America, 391; republicans, 411.
- Q.
- Quadruple alliance, 588.
- R.
- Radicals, rise of, 559.
- Raleigh, Sir Walter, schemes of, 367, 368, 389, 395.
- "Ravens Wolves" of Henry VII., 306.
- Reform Bill, incidents connected with the, 584.
- Reformation, English, 330.
- Regency, Council of, in Scotland, depose Baliol, 190.
- Regent, Prince George appointed, 553.
- Revolutionary spirit prevails, 561, 562, 583, 590, 594.
- Revolts of the Roman army and navy, 18, 19.
- Richard I., accession of, 144; reign and career of, 144 to 154.
- Richard II., accession of, 217; reign of, 217 to 228.
- Richard III., accession of, 277; reign of, 277 to 282.
- Richmond, Earl of, aspires to the throne, 280; invades England, 281.
- Romans invade Britain, 7 to 16; rule of, 17; abandon Britain, 19; allegiance to ended, 19.
- "Root and Branch" faction, 412, 415.
- Roses, War of the, 245, 260, 262.
- Rowena, story of, 28.
- Royal families of England and cotemporary sovereigns, 629.



Royalists, sufferings of, 459.

Russia, war with, 596.

Rye House plot, 468.

Ryswick, treaty of, 486.

## S.

Safety, Committee of, 442.

St. Bartholomew's eve, 365.

St. John, Order of the Knights of, dissolved, 326.

St. Quentin, battle of, 349.

Saladin, leader of the Saracens, 142, 150, 151, 152.

Saxon era, the, 27.

Saxons, the, in Britain, 29, 30; at Hastings, 81, 82, 83; join William Rufus, 106.

Scandinavian sea-kings, 27.

Scilly Isles, conquest of the, 54.

Scotland, tribes in Highlands of, 24; expeditions against, 53, 76, 102, 202, 328; a dependency of England, 186; claimants for the crown of, 187; affairs in, 207, 243, 265, 274, 284 to 288, 328, 359.

Scots, 19; invade England, 102, 200, 207, 210, 224, 310, 327; betray and sell King Charles, 423.

Scots, Mary, Queen of, pretensions of, to the crown of England, 358; career of, 358 to 361.

Scriptures, the, translated by Wicliffe, 230.

Seminaries established by English Romanists, 363.

Seminarists in England, 363, 364.

Severus, wall of, 18, 19.

"Ship-money," 407, 408.

Shrewsbury, battle of, 241; royal army collected at, 418.

Simmel, Lambert, pretender to the English throne, 297, 298.

Slaves, traffic in, 88, 92.

Slavery, abolition of, 586.

Sluys, naval battle at, 209; naval battle near, 225.

Society, before the Saxon invasion, 24; during the Saxon era, 85; during the Norman and early Plantagenet period, 162; from the year 1200 to 1400, 228; during the rule of the later Plantagenets, 288; in the time of the Tudors, 377; during the first half of the 17th century,

444; during the later rule of the Stuarts, 498; during the reigns of the two Georges, 565.

South-Sea scheme, 513, 514.

Spain, war against, 396; marriage treaty with, 398; partition of monarchy of proposed, 488; war against, 493, 516, 518, 519, 534.

Spanish intrigues in Ireland and operations on the coast, 374.

Stamp Act, American, 536.

Star Chamber, Court of, 297, 314, 416.

Statutes, how recorded, 230; against the Church of Rome swept away, 345; of Mary, repealed, 354.

Stephen, usurps the throne, 125; reign of, 125 to 129.

Stirling Castle, operations at, 191, 192, 193, 200, 525.

Stokè-upon-Trent, battle of, 298.

Stuart, Arabella, 389, 395, 396.

Stuarts, the, 388.

Suetonius overruns a part of Anglesey, 15.

Sweyn, a Norwegian King, in England, 63 to 75.

## T.

Taxation, opposed, 536, 537.

Taxes, 103, 123; riots caused by, 517.

Tea, destruction of at Boston, 538.

Test Act, repealed, 468.

Torbay, William of Orange lands at, 478.

Toulon, battle at, 521.

Towton, battle at, 264.

Trafalgar, naval battle of, 550.

Tribute, imposed on the Britons, 12, 13; on Kings of North Wales, 53; to the Norsemen, 63, 65; levied on the lands, 69; to the Pope, 174.

Tudors and Stuarts, time of the, 508.

Tyler, Watt, insurrection of, 220, 222.

## U.

Uniformity, Act of, 458.

Union of England and Scotland, 494, 495; of Ireland with England, 549.

"United Irishmen," insurrection of, 549.

Universities of Oxford, Cambridge, and Paris, 234.

Utrecht, treaty of, 496.

## V.

- Valhalla, the Scandinavian, 86.  
 Vernon, Admiral, 517, 518.  
 Victoria, Queen, accession of, 590 ; marriage of, 592 ; reign of, 590 to 618.  
 Virginia, colony of, 392.  
 Volusenus explores the British coast, 8.  
 Vortigern, story of, 28.

## W.

- Wakefield, battle of, 263.  
 Wales, subdued by William the Conqueror, 102.  
 Walls of Agricola and Hadrian, 17 ; Roman, 24.  
 Wallace, William, invades England, 191 ; career and character of, 193.  
 War, between England and the United States, 554 to 556 ; of England against the Chinese, 588, 589 ; in the Crimea, 596 to 599 ; against Abyssina, 608.  
 Warbeck. Perkins, pretender to the throne, 301 to 304.  
 Warwick, Earl of, the "King-Maker," 259.  
 Waterloo, battle of, 558.  
 Welsh, the, resist the Norman invaders and plunder England, 109 ; hated by Normans, 123 ; starved in dungeons,

157 ; repel their English oppressors—  
 are subdued, 184 ; in arms, 189, 200 ;  
 form an alliance with the Scotch, 200 ;  
 struggle for independence, 239 ; final  
 submission, 243.

Westminster Abbey, original building of,  
 77.

Wickliffe, John, 216, 229, 230.

William I., of Normandy, invades Eng-  
 land, 80 ; becomes king, 85 ; reign of,  
 85 to 105 ; The Second (Rufus), acces-  
 sion of, 105 ; reign of, 105 to 115 ; The  
 Third, accession of, 480 ; reign of, 480 to  
 489 ; William and Mary, accession of,  
 480 ; reign of, 480 to 487 ; The Fourth,  
 accession of, 582 ; reign of, 582 to 589.

Witenagemote, the Saxon parliament, 84,  
 85, 88.

Worcester, battle of, 431.

Wyatt, Sir Thomas, insurrection of, 341,  
 342.

## Y.

Yeomanry, English, origin of, 301.

York, town of, seized by Norsemen, 51 ;  
 Normans massacred at, 99.

York, Duke of, succeeds Bedford in France,  
 256 ; made Protector, 260, 261.

Yorkists, adherents of the family of the  
 Duke of York, struggling for the crown,  
 261, 262, 263, 279, 296, 297, 299.















LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 021 933 835 1